

ARCHITECT'S JOB NO. 21-66

DATED: February 1, 2022

COPY NO: \_\_\_\_\_

**NEW JROTC FACILITY FOR  
PLEASANT GROVE HIGH SCHOOL**

PSCA #9324

**OWNER**

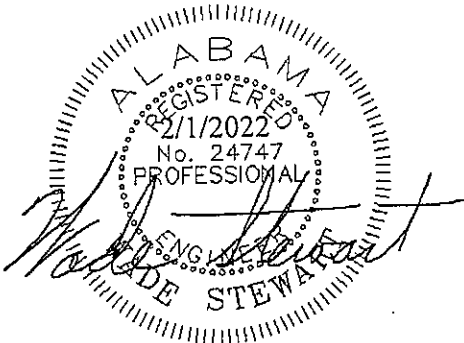
JEFFERSON COUNTY BOARD OF EDUCATION  
2100 18<sup>TH</sup> STREET SOUTH  
BIRMINGHAM, AL 35209

**BOARD MEMBERS**

MRS. CARITA VENABLE  
MR. OSCAR S. MANN  
MR. EDDIE BROWN  
MR. RONNIE DIXON  
MRS. DONNA J. PIKE

President  
Vice President  
Board Member  
Board Member  
Board Member

DR. WALTER B. GONSOULIN, JR.      Superintendent



**LATHAN  
ARCHITECTS**  
LATHAN • BRYANT • CALMA



**SPECIFICATION INDEX**  
**NEW JROTC FACILITY FOR PLEASANT GROVE HIGH SCHOOL**  
**Architect Job No. 21-66**

Title Sheet  
Index  
Project Team List  
List of Drawings  
General Contractor's Qualifying Conditions

**BIDDING REQUIREMENTS**

Advertisement for Bid  
Pre-Bid Procedures  
Pre-Bid RFI Form  
Digital Plan Room Sign-on Instructions  
Instructions to Bidders  
E-Verify Memo  
Proposal Form  
Attachment - Accounting of Sales Tax  
Form of Bid Bond

**CONTRACT FORMS**

Construction Contract  
Performance Bond Form  
Payment Bond Form  
State of Alabama Disclosure Statement  
Application and Certificate for Payment  
Inventory of Stored Material  
Progress Schedule and Report  
Contract Change Order  
Change Order Justification  
General Contractor's Roofing Guarantee  
General Contractor's Five Year Building Envelope Guarantee  
Certificate of Substantial Completion  
Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims  
Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens  
Consent of Surety to Final Payment  
Form of Advertisement of Completion  
Detail of Project Sign  
Detail of PSCA Plaque

**CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT**

General Conditions of the Contract

**DIVISION 1 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

01010 Alternates  
01020 Allowances  
01025 Summary of Work  
01030 Special Project Requirements  
01035 Special Project Procedures  
01040 Project Coordination  
01045 Cutting and Patching  
01200 Temporary Facilities and Controls  
01300 Quality Control Services  
01350 Shop Drawing Submittals  
    • Electronic Submittal Agreement

01360	Product Substitution Procedures
	• Substitution Form
01400	Materials and Equipment
01410	Special Inspections
	• Statement of Special Inspections
	• Final Report of Special Inspections
	• Agent's Final Report
	• Contractor's Statement of Responsibility
	• Fabricator's Certificate of Compliance
	• Schedule of Special Inspection
01700	Project Clean-Up
01800	Change Order Procedures
01900	Warranties
01910	Contract Close Out

#### **DIVISION 2 – SITEWORK**

02125	Site Protection
02280	Soil Poisoning
02300	Earthwork
02410	Lawns and Planting
02510	Water Distribution
02530	Sanitary Sewerage
02630	Storm Drainage
02710	Chain Link Fencing
02741	Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving
02751	Site Concrete Walks, Curbs & Paving

#### **DIVISION 3 – CONCRETE**

03300	Cast-in Place Concrete
-------	------------------------

#### **DIVISION 4 – MASONRY**

04200	Unit Masonry
-------	--------------

#### **DIVISION 5 – METALS**

05500	Miscellaneous Metals
-------	----------------------

#### **DIVISION 7 - MOISTURE PROTECTION**

07210	Building Insulation
07213	Pre-Engineered Metal Building Insulation
	• Certification of Roofing System
07720	Wall Flashing
07910	Caulking and Sealants

#### **DIVISION 8 – WINDOWS AND DOORS**

08110	Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
08215	Flush Wood Doors
08420	Aluminum Framed Storefronts
08710	Finish Hardware
08810	Glass and Glazing

#### **DIVISION 9 - FINISHES**

09260	Gypsum Drywall and Light Gauge Metal Framing
09300	Tile
09510	Acoustical Panel Ceilings
09672	Epoxy Resinous Flake Flooring
09672	Tackable Wallcovering
09910	Paint



**DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES**

10110	Markerboards and Tackboards
10426	Identifying Devices
10530	Protective Cover Walkway
10800	Toilet Accessories

**DIVISION 12 - FURNITURE & FIXTURES**

12100	Fire Extinguishers
12150	Miscellaneous Furniture and Fixtures
12300	Laminate Clad Casework
12492	Mini Blinds

**DIVISION 13 – SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

13100	Pre-Engineered Steel Building
-------	-------------------------------

**DIVISION 15 – PLUMBING AND FIRE PROTECTION**

15405	Plumbing Identification
15410	General Provisions - Plumbing
15420	Testing, Cleaning and Adjusting (TCA)
15450	Materials and Methods - Plumbing
15480	Insulation - Plumbing
15490	Fixtures and Equipment – Plumbing

**DIVISION 15 - MECHANICAL**

15010	General Provisions - HVAC
15020	Testing, Balancing and Adjusting (TBA)
15050	Materials and Methods - HVAC
15080	Piping Specialties - HVAC
15180	Insulation - HVAC
15205	Air Purification System
15300	Variable Frequency Drives
15740	Coils
15760	Heat Pump Units
15763	Energy Recovery Units
15820	Fans
15840	Ductwork
15860	Duct Accessories
15870	Outlets
15880	Filters
15900	Controls

**DIVISION 16 – ELECTRICAL**

16000	Electrical
-------	------------

**PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE AGENDA (Sample)**

NOTE: This Index is for convenience only. Its accuracy and completeness are not guaranteed, and it is not to be considered part of the Specifications. In case of discrepancy, the Specifications shall govern. Certain items may be included by means of notes on the Drawings; such items are not necessarily covered in the Specifications. Contractor shall verify all existing conditions and all dimensions at the project site.



**NEW JROTC FACILITY FOR PLEASANT GROVE HIGH SCHOOL**  
**Architect's Job No. 21-66**

**OWNER:** JEFFERSON COUNTY BOARD OF EDUCATION  
2100 18<sup>th</sup> Street South  
Birmingham, AL 35209

**ARCHITECT:** LATHAN ASSOCIATES ARCHITECTS, P. C.  
300 Chase Park South, Suite 200  
Hoover, AL 35244  
Phone: 205-988-9110  
Contact: Ryan Vernon, AIA

**CIVIL:** LBYD  
880 Montclair Rd #600  
Birmingham, AL 35213  
Phone: 205-251-4500  
Project Engineer: Chris Harkins

**STRUCTURAL:** STRUCTURAL DESIGN GROUP  
300 Chase Park South, Suite 125  
Hoover, AL 35244  
Phone: 205-824-5200  
Project Engineer: Craig Winn

**MECHANICAL:** DEWBERRY/ EDMONDS ENGINEERING  
2 Riverchase Office Plaza  
Suite 205  
Hoover AL 35244  
Phone: 205-988-2069  
Contact: Wade Stewart, HVAC, Scott Carlisle, Plumbing

**ELECTRICAL:** STEWART ENGINEERING  
P. O. Box 2233  
Anniston, AL 36202  
Phone: 256-237-0891  
Contact: Shawn Crawford



**LIST OF DRAWINGS**  
**NEW JROTC FACILITY FOR PLEASANT GROVE HIGH SCHOOL**  
**DRAWINGS INDEX (Set - 53 Total Sheets)**

**GENERAL DRAWINGS**                      **(2 SHEETS)**

T1.0	TITLE AND INDEX
LS1.1	LIFE SAFETY PLANS

**CIVIL DRAWINGS**                              **(9 SHEETS)**

C0.1	CIVIL NOTES
C1.0	SITE DEMOLITION PLAN
C2.0	SITE LAYOUT PLAN
C3.0	GRADING AND DRAINAGE PLAN
C4.0	SITE UTILITY PLAN
C5.0	EROSION CONTROL PLAN
C6.0	LAYOUT GRADING AND DRAINAGE PLAN – ALTERNATE
C7.0	DETAILS
C7.1	EROSION CONTROL DETAILS

**ARCHITECTURAL (16 SHEETS)**

A2.1	FLOOR PLAN, LEGENDS, AND DETAIL - BASE BID
A2.2	ROOF PLAN, LEGENDS, AND DETAILS - BASE BID
A2.3	DOOR AND WINDOW SCHEDULE, LEGENDS, AND DETAILS
A3.1	BUILDING ELEVATIONS
A3.2	BUILDING SECTIONS
A3.3	WALL SECTIONS
A5.1	ENLARGED TOILET PLANS, ELEVATIONS, LEGEND, AND DETAILS
A6.1	INTERIOR ELEVATIONS AND DETAILS
A7.1	REFLECTED CEILING PLAN, FINISH FLOOR PLAN, LEGENDS, AND DETAILS
A10.1	FLOOR PLAN, DETAIL, AND LEGENDS - ALTERNATE
A10.2	ROOF PLAN, LEGENDS, AND DETAILS - ALTERNATE
A10.3	BUILDING ELEVATIONS - ALTERNATE
A10.4	BUILDING SECTIONS - ALTERNATE
A10.5	INTERIOR ELEVATIONS - ALTERNATE
A10.6	DETAILS - ALTERNATE
A10.7	REFLECTED CEILING PLAN, FINISH FLOOR PLAN AND LEGENDS – ALTERNATE

**STRUCTURAL**                              **(10 SHEETS)**

S1.0	GENERAL NOTES
S1.1	GENERAL NOTES CONTINUED
S1.2	TYPICAL DETAILS
S1.3	TYPICAL DETAILS
S1.4	TYPICAL DETAILS
S2.1	FOUNDATION PLAN
S2.1B	ALTERNATE FOUNDATION PLAN
S2.2	ROOF FRAMING PLAN
S2.2B	ALTERNATE ROOF FRAMING PLAN
S3.1	SECTIONS AND DETAILS

**PLUMBING (4 SHEETS)**

P0.01	PLUMBING – SCHEDULE, NOTES, LEGENDS & DETAILS
P0.02	PLUMBING - RISERS
P1.01	NON-PRESSURE–FLOOR PLANS
P1.02	PRESSURE - FLOOR PLANS

**MECHANICAL DRAWINGS (7 SHEETS)**

M0.01	HVAC – LEGENDS, SCHEDULES AND NOTES
M0.02	HVAC - CONTROLS AND DETAILS
M0.03	HVAC - DETAILS
M0.04.	HVAC – DETAILS & OSA CALCULATIONS
M0.05	HVAC - OSA CALCULATIONS
M1.01	HVAC – FLOOR PLANS
M2.01	PIPING - FLOOR PLANS

**ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS (5 SHEETS)**

E1.1	SCHEDULES, SYMBOLS, AND NOTES
E2.1	SITE PLAN AND SINGLE LINE DIAGRAM
E3.1	FLOOR PLAN – LIGHTING
E4.1	FLOOR PLAN – POWER
E5.1	FLOOR PLAN – AUXILIARIES

## QUALIFYING CONDITIONS FOR GENERAL CONTRACTORS:

The following conditions and terms may be required upon Owner's request and it shall be each Contractor's responsibility to ensure that they meet the minimum requirements set forth.

General Contractors wishing to bid on this school project shall meet the following minimum provisions regarding responsibility, in addition to all other requirements listed herein: Contractor shall have constructed not less than one educational project of similar size and complexity within the last five (5) years, with similar costs prorated for construction cost increases and Contractor shall be capable of 100% bonding of materials and 100% bonding of labor. All General Contractors wishing to bid shall have a minimum of five (5) years of experience doing business under the same firm name in which the bids are submitted. Joint venture contracts will not be approved.

Each General Contractor shall submit a list of all educational projects within the last five years and a statement from the Owners certifying faithful performance that construction completion was, or will be, obtained without protracted delay and/or defective work for the project. Full explanation should be submitted for any delayed completion. Inexperienced or non-responsible contractors are precluded from bidding and award.

Each General Contractor shall submit names and qualifications of main construction personnel to be placed on this project. The proposed project superintendent and the project manager shall have a minimum of five (5) years of work experience in their respective positions in managing and constructing projects similar in size, complexity and cost. Resumes of project superintendent and project manager shall be submitted. The Owner reserves the right of approval of the project superintendent.

Equivalent experience and qualifications will be considered where the bidder can demonstrate special management and construction abilities, expert workmen and past experience in constructing similar complex structures of similar size and cost such as hospitals, college buildings, multi-story office buildings, court houses, jails, hotels, etc. No consideration will be given to wood frame, residential projects, parking structures, small one story strip shopping centers, warehouses and industrial buildings, etc. Under this provision of equivalency, no consideration or award will be given to any contractor whose comparable project value is less than 50% of the value of the project under bid.

Each General Contractor bidding on this project will be required to demonstrate that his major Subcontractors are capable of pre-qualifying under the same conditions stated above.

All personnel required on the job site must at all times be in possession of **state issued** photo identification subject to examination by Owner or their representative. Other security requirements may also be in place and is the responsibility of the General Contractor to abide by all school rules.

The Owner and its representatives shall be the sole judge of the Contractor meeting the requirements set forth. The Owner's decision in determining qualified General Contractors will be final. The Owner reserves the right to act in its best interests in this determination process to waive all technicalities and informalities and to select the best qualified responsible General Contractors who comply with the above stated provisions.

All of the above information shall be required upon the Owner's request and may be considered a condition for award of contract.





## ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS

Sealed proposals, in duplicate, from Qualified General Contractors will be received by the Awarding Authority: Jefferson County Board of Education, 2100 18th Street South, Birmingham, AL 35209, on Thursday March 17, 2022, until 2:00 p.m., local time,

### **NEW JROTC FACILITY FOR PLEASANT GROVE HIGH SCHOOL**

**Architect Job No. 21-66**

**PSCA No. 9324**

**Bid # 12-22**

At such time and place, the bids will be opened and read. Bid Opening shall be videoed by the Architect. Bids that are received via mail and not presented at the bid opening are to be considered non-responsive. It is the responsibility of the bidder to assure that bids are presented at the time of the bid if they choose to mail the bid. Contractors must notify the Awarding Authority if a bid is to be received by mail.

**A MANDATORY Pre-Bid Meeting will be held at Jefferson County Board Office on Wednesday, March 9, 2021, at 10:00 a.m.** All General Contractors expecting to submit a bid are strongly encouraged to have a representative at the pre-bid meeting. Covid-19 Meeting Restrictions shall be adhered to.

A cashier's check or bid bond payable to Jefferson County Board of Education in an amount not less than five (5) percent of the amount of the proposal, but in no event more than \$10,000.00, must accompany the bidder's proposal for each project. Performance and Payment Bonds and evidence of insurance as required in the bid documents will be required at the signing of the Contract.

Drawings and specifications for the project may be examined at the Office of Lathan Associates Architects, P.C., 300 Chase Park South, Suite 200, Hoover, AL 35244, and at the Digital Plan Room at Alabama Graphics ([www.algraphicsplanroom.com](http://www.algraphicsplanroom.com)) . Password is lathan.

Prior to issuance of plans and specifications, all Contractors must provide evidence that they are properly licensed for the classification of work for this project. Evidence shall be in the form of a copy of current license clearly indicating all classifications, or sub-classifications, bid limits, license number; and expiration date.

General Contractor Bidders may obtain two (2) sets of hard copy drawings and specifications from the Architect for each project upon receipt of deposit check in the amount of \$200.00 per set made payable to Lathan Associates Architects, P.C. General Contractors will then be placed on Official Bidders List. Deposit will be refunded in full on the first two sets issued to each General Contractor Bidder upon the return of documents in reusable condition within ten (10) days after receipt of bids. Additional sets of drawings/specifications and digital copies will be available to General Contractors for purchase directly from the documents printer: Alabama Graphics. Addenda and other proposal information will be issued only to holders of drawings and specifications distributed by the Architect and on the Official Bidders List. Release of contract documents to the bidder does not imply acceptance of the bidder's qualifications by the Owner or Architect.

General Contractors who obtain drawings and wish to withdraw from the Bidders List must do so in writing to the office of the Architect prior to bid date, otherwise deposit will be forfeited. Deposit will be refunded in full on sets issued to each General Contractor Bidder submitting a bonafide bid, upon the return of documents in good, reusable condition within ten (10) days after receipt of proposals.

Bids received from General Contractors who are not on the Official Bidders List may not be accepted or opened. Lathan Associates Architects, P.C. makes no guarantee for plans and specifications obtained by Contractors and Vendors from sources other than the printed contract documents provided by their firm. Contractors and Vendors who base their pricing from contract documents obtained from other electronic sources, either in part or whole, do so at their own risk.

Bids must be submitted on proposal forms furnished by the Architect or copies thereof, issued either with the original contract documents or by addendum. General Contractors shall not use Proposal Forms other than those provided in the contract documents.

All bidders bidding in amounts exceeding that established by the State Licensing Board for General Contractors must be licensed under the provisions of Title 34, Chapter 8, Code of Alabama, 1975. The Bidder must display current General Contractor's License Number on the outside of the sealed envelope in which the proposal is delivered, or it will not be considered by the Architect or Owner. The Owner reserves the right to reject any or all proposals and to waive technical errors if, in the Owner's judgment, the best interests of the Owner will thereby be promoted.

Jefferson County Board of Education  
Awarding Authority

Lathan Associates Architects, P.C.  
205-988-9112

## PRE-BID PROCEDURES

### 1. OBTAINING PLANS AND SPECIFICATIONS

#### A. General Contractors

General Contractors must contact the office of the Architect and give the following information about their company:

1. Name, address, phone, email address, Alabama General Contractor's License Number, Bid Limit, and Bid Classification as it appears on current license. This is required in order for Architect to verify that Contractor is currently licensed in a classification that qualifies the General Contractor to bid on the subject project.
2. A maximum of two (2) sets of plans and specifications will be issued to the General Contractor after qualifications have been confirmed and deposit has been received.
3. General Contractors must obtain the contract documents directly from the Architect and be placed on the Architect's official Bidders List. General Contractors may NOT obtain plans, specifications, proposal forms, and other contract documents exclusively from an Internet source, or any source other than the Architect. **If the General Contractor is not on the official Bidders List, their proposal may not be received and recognized at the bid opening.**
4. The following Plan Rooms are used:
  - a. Alabama Graphics Digital Plan Room is also used. See attachment for contact information. **Project Password is Lathan.**
  - b. Refer to Advertisement for Bids for list of Plan Rooms and addresses of Awarding Authority and Architect.
5. Addenda are only sent to the Plan Rooms, the Awarding Authority and the General Contractors who are on the Official Bidders List. Addenda are not sent to Subcontractors and/or Vendors.
6. Electronic files and/or CAD files are not considered to be Contract Documents.
  - a. Errors may occur during translation and Lathan Associates Architects, P.C. makes no representation or warranty as to any information contained therein. It will be the responsibility of the General Contractor, Subcontractor and/or Vendor to verify all layouts, dimensions and other information for accuracy with the Contract Documents and subsequent Addenda.
  - b. Electronic files and/or CAD files will not be sent by the Architect, Engineers or Consultants to Contractors for bid purposes.

#### B. Subcontractors and Vendors

1. Subcontractors and Vendors may obtain plans and/or specifications from the following sources:
  - a. Plan Rooms listed in Item 4 above.
  - b. General Contractors
  - c. View set at office of Architect or Awarding Authority.

2. Architect's office will not release plans and specifications to Subcontractors and Vendors.
3. Architect's office will email a copy of Bidders List to Subcontractors and Vendors upon request. Bidders List is also available on Alabama Graphics Digital Plan Room.

## **2. DEPOSIT ON PLANS AND SPECIFICATIONS**

- A. Deposit will be returned to General Contractors under the following conditions:
  1. Plans and specifications must be returned to the office of the Architect within thirty days of bid date.
  2. Plans and specifications must be bound in the same manner as originally received from the Architect.
  3. Plans and specifications must be in good, reusable condition. Missing pages/sheets, excessive markings, use of highlighters, and other detrimental conditions may cause forfeiture of deposit. Rule of thumb: If the Architect cannot present the set to the successful Contractor for use in construction, then the set will be destroyed, and cost of re-printing is used from the proceeds of the forfeited deposit.
  4. General Contractors who obtain plans and specifications and wish to withdraw from the Bidders List must do one of the following prior to bid date:
    - a. Return plans and specifications to the office of the Architect, or
    - b. Submit a letter to the office of the Architect stating request to be withdrawn, otherwise, deposit will be forfeited.

## **3. REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI's)**

- A. All RFI's must be numbered and made in writing to the Architect's email [rfi@lathanassociates.com](mailto:rfi@lathanassociates.com). Please include your name, company name, telephone number, and fax number so that we may respond appropriately. Verbal RFI's will not be answered. All RFI's must be in writing.
- B. The Team List provided within the Specification Manual is for informational purposes only and should not be used to contact Engineers and/or Consultants directly with questions regarding the project.
- C. All questions that need to be directed to an Engineer / Consultant must be routed through the Architect's office. If applicable, the Architect will contact the appropriate Engineer / Consultant for information.
- D. Bids shall be based upon the official Contract Documents consisting of Plans, Specifications and Addenda. Architect assumes no responsibility for information used by Contractors outside the official Contract Documents.
- E. We will not respond to any correspondence received via any e-mail other than the one listed.

#### **4. REQUESTS FOR PRODUCT APPROVAL**

- A. All Requests for Product Approval must be made in writing to the office of the Architect. Requests must be accompanied by Product Substitution Form completed and signed found in Specification Section - 01360 and may be delivered/ mailed/ or emailed to Lathan Associates Architects, P.C., 300 Chase Park South, Suite 200, Hoover, AL 35244. [rfl@lathanassociates.com](mailto:rfl@lathanassociates.com). Please include your name, company name, telephone number, fax number or email address so that we may respond appropriately.
- B. Vendor/Contractor submitting Request for Product Approval must submit data sheets and other such fact-based documentation for substitution with items clearly marked to show compliance with product originally specified. Request must identify model number of substitution that complies with product originally specified. Architect and Interior Design staff will not review Requests for Product Approval that are catalogs and/or binders of manufactured products without separate details showing comparison between specified product and requested substitution.
- C. Products approved by Architect, Interior Designer, Engineer and/or Consultant shall be contingent upon meeting or exceeding the specification and drawing requirements.
- D. The Team List provided within the Specification Manual is for informational purposes only and should not be used to contact Engineers and/or Consultants directly with requests for product approval.
- E. All requests that need to be directed to an Engineer /Consultant must be routed through the Architect's office. If applicable, the Architect will contact the appropriate Engineer / Consultant for approval of product.



## PRE-BID REQUEST FOR INFORMATION FORM

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Company Submitting Request: \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

E-Mail \_\_\_\_\_

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Architect Job No. \_\_\_\_\_

Send to [rfi@lathanassociates.com](mailto:rfi@lathanassociates.com)

RFI NO. \_\_\_\_\_

## RESPONSE:

For Architect's Use:

Reviewed By / Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Responded By/ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Processed by Addendum No. \_\_\_\_\_

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_





## Digital Plan Room Sign-On Instructions

To access the Digital Plan Room, please click on the following link. You will want to add this as a trusted site for future emails.

<https://www.algraphicsplanroom.com>

You will need to register to the plan room as a user. Click "**Log In**" on lower left side. You will need to do a search to see if your company already exists on the plans room. Once you register your company and contact information click on "**Private Jobs with Passwords**" and enter the password provided.

Password for this project is lathan.

For technical assistance please call, Customer Service 205.252.8505 or [customerservice@algraphics.com](mailto:customerservice@algraphics.com).



# INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

## CONTENTS

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Bid Documents</u>   | 9. <u>Withdrawal or Revision of Bids</u>                              |
| 2. <u>General Contractor's</u><br><u>State Licensing Requirements</u>         | 10. <u>Opening of Bids</u>  |
| 3. <u>Qualifications of Bidders</u><br><u>and Prequalification Procedures</u> | 11. <u>Incomplete and Irregular Bids</u>                              |
| 4. <u>Preference to Resident Contractors</u>                                  | 12. <u>Bid Errors</u>   |
| 5. <u>Examination of Bid Documents and</u><br><u>the Site of the Work</u>     | 13. <u>Disqualification of Bidders</u>                                |
| 6. <u>Explanations and Interpretations</u>                                    | 14. <u>Consideration of Bids</u>                                      |
| 7. <u>Substitutions</u>   | 15. <u>Determination of Low Bidder by</u><br><u>Use of Alternates</u> |
| 8. <u>Preparation and Delivery of Bids</u>                                    | 16. <u>Unit Prices</u>  |
|   | 17. <u>Award of Contract</u>  |

### 1. BID DOCUMENTS:

The Bid Documents consist of the Advertisement for Bids, these Instructions to Bidders, any supplements to these Instructions to Bidders, the Proposal Form and the Accounting of Sales Tax, and the proposed Contract Documents. The proposed Contract Documents consist of the Construction Contract, the Performance Bond and Payment Bond, the Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplemental, and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications and all addenda issued prior to execution of the Construction Contract. Bid Documents may be obtained or examined as set forth in the Advertisement for Bids.

### 2. GENERAL CONTRACTOR'S STATE LICENSING REQUIREMENTS:

When the amount bid for a contract exceeds \$50,000, the bidder must be licensed by the State Licensing Board for General Contractors and must show the Architect evidence of license before bidding or the bid will not be received by the Architect or considered by the Awarding Authority. A bid exceeding the bid limit stipulated in the bidder's license, or which is for work outside of the type or types of work stipulated in the bidder's license, will not be considered. In case of a joint venture of two or more contractors, the amount of the bid shall be within the maximum bid limitation as set by the State Licensing Board for General Contractors of the combined limitations of the partners to the joint venture.

### 3. QUALIFICATIONS of BIDDERS and PREQUALIFICATION PROCEDURES:

a. Any special qualifications required of general contractors, subcontractors, material suppliers, or fabricators are set forth in the Bid Documents.

b. The Awarding Authority may have elected to prequalify bidders. Parties interested in bidding for this contract are directed to the Advertisement for Bids and Supplemental Instructions to Bidders to determine whether bidders must be prequalified and how they may obtain copies of the Awarding Authority's published prequalification procedures and criteria.

c. Release of Bid Documents by the Architect to a prospective bidder will not constitute any determination by the Awarding Authority or Architect that the bidder has been found to be qualified, prequalified, or responsible.

**4. PREFERENCE to RESIDENT CONTRACTORS:**

(If this project is federally funded in whole or in part, this Article shall not apply.)

a. In awarding the Contract, preference will be given to Alabama resident contractors and a nonresident bidder domiciled in a state having laws granting preference to local contractors shall be awarded the Contract only on the same basis as the nonresident bidder's state awards contracts to Alabama contractors bidding under similar circumstances.

b. A nonresident bidder is a contractor which is neither organized and existing under the laws of the State of Alabama, nor maintains its principal place of business in the State of Alabama. A nonresident contractor which has maintained a permanent office within the State of Alabama for at least five continuous years shall not thereafter be deemed to be a non-resident contractor so long as the contractor continues to maintain a branch office within Alabama.

**5. EXAMINATION of BID DOCUMENTS and the SITE of the WORK:**

Before submitting a bid for the Work, the bidders shall carefully examine the Bid Documents, visit the site, and satisfy themselves as to the nature and location of the Work, and the general and local conditions, including weather, the general character of the site or building, the character and extent of existing work within or adjacent to the site and any other work being performed thereon at the time of submission of their bids. They shall obtain full knowledge as to transportation, disposal, handling, and storage of materials, availability of water, electric power, and all other facilities in the area which will have a bearing on the performance of the Work for which they submit their bids. The submission of a bid shall constitute a representation by the bidder that the bidder has made such examination and visit and has judged for and satisfied himself or herself as to conditions to be encountered regarding the character, difficulties, quality, and quantities of work to be performed and the material and equipment to be furnished, and as to the contract requirements involved.

**6. EXPLANATIONS and INTERPRETATIONS:**

a. Should any bidder observe any ambiguity, discrepancy, omission, or error in the drawings and specifications, or in any other bid document, or be in doubt as to the intention and meaning of these documents, the bidder should immediately report such to the Architect and request clarification.

b. Clarification will be made only by written Addenda sent to all prospective bidders. Neither the Architect nor the Awarding Authority will be responsible in any manner for verbal answers or instructions regarding intent or meaning of the Bid Documents.

c. In the case of inconsistency between drawings and specifications or within either document, a bidder will be deemed to have included in its bid the better quality or greater quantity of the work involved unless the bidder asked for and obtained the Architect's written clarification of the requirements before submission of a bid.

## 7. SUBSTITUTIONS:

a. The identification of any product, material, system, item of equipment, or service in the Bid Documents by reference to a trade name, manufacturer's name, model number, etc. (hereinafter referred to as "source"), is intended to establish a required standard of performance, design, and quality and is not intended to limit competition unless the provisions of paragraph "d" below apply.

b. When the Bid Documents identify only one or two sources, or three or more sources followed by "or approved equal" or similar wording, the bidder's proposal may be based on a source not identified but considered by the bidder to be equal to the standard of performance, design and quality as specified; however, such substitutions must ultimately be approved by the Architect. If the bidder elects to bid on a substitution without "Pre-bid Approval" as described below, then it will be understood that proof of compliance with specified requirements is the exclusive responsibility of the bidder.

c. When the Bid Documents identify three or more sources and the list of sources is not followed by "or approved equal" or similar wording, the bidder's proposal shall be based upon one of the identified sources, unless the bidder obtains "Pre-bid Approval" of another source as described below. Under these conditions it will be expressly understood that no product, material, system, item of equipment, or service that is not identified in the Bid Documents or granted "Pre-Bid Approval" will be incorporated into the Work unless such substitution is authorized and agreed upon through a Contract Change Order.

d. If the Bid Documents identify only one source and expressly provide that it is an approved sole source for the product, material, system, item of equipment, or service, the bidder's proposal must be based upon the identified sole source.

e. **Procedures for "Pre-bid Approval".** If it is desired that a product, material, system, piece of equipment, or service from a source different from those sources identified in the Bid Documents be approved as an acceptable source, application for the approval of such source must reach the hands of the Architect at least ten days prior to the date set for the opening of bids. At the Architect's discretion, this ten day provision may be waived. The application for approval of a proposed source must be accompanied by technical data which the applicant desires to submit in support of the application. The Architect will give consideration to reports from reputable independent testing laboratories, verified experience records showing the reputation of the proposed source with previous users, evidence of reputation of the source for prompt delivery, evidence of reputation of the source for efficiency in servicing its products, or any other pertinent written information. The application to the Architect for approval of a proposed source must be accompanied by a schedule setting forth in which respects the materials or equipment submitted for consideration differ from the materials or equipment designated in the Bid Documents. The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitution is upon the proposer. To be approved, a proposed source must also meet or exceed all express requirements of the Bid Documents. Approval, if granted, shall not be effective until published by the Architect in an addendum to the Bid Documents.

## 8. PREPARATION and DELIVERY of BIDS:

### a. DCM Form C-3: Proposal Form:

(1) Bids must be submitted on the Proposal Form as contained in the Bid Documents; only one copy is required to be submitted. A completed DCM Form C-3A: Accounting of Sales Tax must be submitted with the Proposal Form.

(2) All information requested of the bidder on the Proposal Form must be filled in. The form must be completed by typewriter or hand-printed in ink.

(3) Identification of Bidder: On the first page of the Proposal Form the bidder must be fully identified by completing the spaces provided for:

- (a) the legal name of the bidder,
- (b) the state under which laws the bidder's business is organized and existing,
- (c) the city (and state) in which the bidder has its principal offices,
- (d) the bidder's business organization, i.e., corporation, partnership, or individual (to be indicated by marking the applicable box and writing in the type of organization if it is not one of those listed), and
- (e) the partners or officers of the bidder's organization, if the bidder is other than an individual. If the space provided on the Proposal Form is not adequate for this listing, the bidder may insert "See Attachment" in this space and provide the listing on an attachment to the Proposal Form.

(4) Where indicated by the format of the Proposal Form, the bidder must specify lump sum prices in both words and figures. In case of discrepancy between the prices shown in words and in figures, the words will govern.

(5) All bid items requested in the Proposal Form, including alternate bid prices and unit prices for separate items of the Work, must be bid. If a gross sum of bid items is requested in the Proposal Form, the gross sum shall be provided by the bidder.

(6) In the space provided in the Proposal Form under "Bidder's Alabama License", the bidder must insert his or her current general contractor's state license number, current bid limit, and type(s) of work for which bidder is licensed.

- (7) The Proposal Form shall be properly signed by the bidder. If the bidder is:
- (a) **an individual**, that individual or his or her "authorized representative" must sign the Proposal Form;
  - (b) **a partnership**, the Proposal Form must be signed by one of the partners or an "authorized representative" of the Partnership;
  - (c) **a corporation**, the president, vice-president, secretary, or "authorized representative" of the corporation shall sign and affix the corporate seal to the Proposal Form.

As used in these Instructions to Bidders, "authorized representative" is defined as a person to whom the bidder has granted written authority to conduct business in the bidder's behalf by signing and/or modifying the bid. Such written authority shall be signed by the bidder (the individual proprietor, or a member of the Partnership, or an officer of the Corporation) and shall be attached to the Proposal Form.

(8) Interlineation, alterations or erasures on the Proposal Form must be initialed by the bidder or its "authorized representative".

**b. DCM Form C-3A: Accounting of Sales Tax**

A completed DCM Form C-3A: Accounting of Sales Tax must be submitted with DCM Form C-3: Proposal Form. Submission of DCM Form C-3A is required, it is not optional. A proposal shall be rendered non-responsive if an Accounting of Sales Tax is not provided.

**c. Bid Guaranty**

(1) The Proposal Form must be accompanied by a cashier's check, drawn on an Alabama bank, or a Bid Bond, executed by a surety company duly authorized and qualified to make such bonds in the State of Alabama, payable to the Awarding Authority.

(2) If a Bid Bond is provided in lieu of a cashier's check, the bond shall be on the Bid Bond form as stipulated in the Bid Documents.

(3) The amount of the cashier's check or Bid Bond shall not be less than five percent of the contractor's bid, but is not required to be in an amount more than ten thousand dollars.

**d. Delivery of Bids:**

(1) Bids will be received until the time set, and at the location designated, in the Advertisement for Bids unless notice is given of postponement. Any bid not received prior to the time set for opening bids will be rejected absent extenuating circumstances and such bids shall be rejected in all cases where received after other bids are opened.

(2) Each bid shall be placed, together with the bid guaranty, in a sealed envelope. On the outside of the envelope the bidder shall write in large letters "Proposal", below which the bidder shall identify the Project and the Work bid on, the name of the bidder, and the bidder's current general contractor's state license number.

(3) Bids may be delivered in person, or by mail if ample time is allowed for delivery. When sent by mail, the sealed envelope containing the bid, marked as indicated above, shall be enclosed in another envelope for mailing.

**9. WITHDRAWAL or REVISION of BIDS:**

a. A bid may be withdrawn prior to the time set for opening of bids, provided a written request, executed by the bidder or the bidder's "authorized representative", is filed with the Architect prior to that time. The bid will then be returned to the bidder unopened.

b. A bid which has been sealed in its delivery envelope may be revised by writing the change in price on the outside of the delivery envelope over the signature of the bidder or the bidder's "authorized representative". In revising the bid in this manner, the bidder must only write the amount of the change in price on the envelope **and must not reveal the bid price.**

c. Written communications, signed by the bidder or its “authorized representative”, to revise bids will be accepted if received by the Architect prior to the time set for opening bids. The Architect will record the instructed revision upon opening the bid. Such written communication may be by facsimile if so stipulated in Supplemental Instructions to Bidders. In revising the bid in this manner, the bidder must only write the amount of the change in price **and must not reveal the bid price.**

d. Except as provided in Article 12 of these Instructions to Bidders, no bid shall be withdrawn, modified, or corrected after the time set for opening bids.

#### **10. OPENING of BIDS:**

a. Bids will be opened and read publicly at the time and place indicated in the Advertisement for Bids. Bidders or their authorized representatives are invited to be present.

b. A list of all proposed major subcontractors and suppliers will be submitted by Bidders to the Architect at a time subsequent to the receipt of bids as established by the Architect in the Bid Documents but in no event shall this time exceed twenty-four (24) hours after receipt of bids. If the list includes a fire alarm contractor and/or fire sprinkler contractor, Bidders will also submit a copy of the fire alarm contractor’s and/or fire sprinkler contractor’s permits from the State of Alabama Fire Marshal’s Office.

#### **11. INCOMPLETE and IRREGULAR BIDS:**

A bid that is not accompanied by data required by the Bid Documents, or a bid which is in any way incomplete, may be rejected. Any bid which contains any uninitialed alterations or erasures, or any bid which contains any additions, alternate bids, or conditions not called for, or any other irregularities of any kind, will be subject to rejection.

#### **12. BID ERRORS:**

a. **Errors and Discrepancies in the Proposal Form.** In case of error in the extension of prices in bids, the unit price will govern. In case of discrepancy between the prices shown in the figures and in words, the words will govern.

b. **Mistakes within the Bid.** If the low bidder discovers a mistake in its bid, the low bidder may seek withdrawal of its bid without forfeiture of its bid guaranty under the following conditions:

(1) **Timely Notice:** The low bidder must notify the Awarding Authority and Architect in writing, within three working days after the opening of bids, that a mistake was made. This notice must be given within this time frame whether or not award has been made.

(2) **Substantial Mistake:** The mistake must be of such significance as to render the bid price substantially out of proportion to the other bid prices.

(3) **Type of Mistake:** The mistake must be due to calculation or clerical error, an inadvertent omission, or a typographical error which results in an erroneous sum. A mistake of law, judgment, or opinion shall not constitute a valid ground for withdrawal without forfeiture.



**(4) Documentary Evidence:** Clear and convincing documentary evidence of the mistake must be presented to the Awarding Authority and the Architect as soon as possible, but no later than three working days after the opening of bids.

The Awarding Authority's decision regarding a low bidder's request to withdraw its bid without penalty shall be made within 10 days after receipt of the bidder's evidence or by the next regular meeting of the Awarding Authority. Upon withdrawal of bid without penalty, the low bidder shall be prohibited from (1) doing work on the project as a subcontractor or in any other capacity and (2) bidding on the same project if it is re-bid.

### **13. DISQUALIFICATION of BIDDERS:**

Any bidder(s) may be disqualified from consideration for contract award for the following reasons:

**a. Collusion.** Any agreement or collusion among bidders or prospective bidders in restraint of freedom of competition to bid at a fixed price or to refrain from bidding or otherwise shall render the bids void and shall cause the bidders or prospective bidders participating in such agreement or collusion to be disqualified from submitting further bids to the Awarding Authority on future lettings. (See § 39-2-6, Code of Alabama 1975, for possible criminal sanctions.)

**b. Advance Disclosure.** Any disclosure in advance of the terms of a bid submitted in response to an Advertisement for Bids shall render the proceedings void and require re-advertisement and rebid.

**c. Failure to Settle Other Contracts.** The Awarding Authority may reject a bid from a bidder who has not paid, or satisfactorily settled, all bills due for labor and material on other contracts in force at the time of letting.

### **14. CONSIDERATION of BIDS:**

**a.** After the bids are opened and read publicly, the bid prices will be compared and the results of this comparison will be available to the public. Until the final award of the contract, however, the Awarding Authority shall have the right to reject any or all bids, and it shall have the right to waive technical errors and irregularities if, in its judgment, the bidder will not have obtained a competitive advantage and the best interests of the Awarding Authority will be promoted.

**b.** If the Bid Documents request bids for projects or parts of projects in combination or separately, the Bid Documents must include supplements to, these Instructions to Bidders setting forth applicable bid procedures. Award or awards will be made to the lowest responsible and responsive bidder or bidders in accordance with such bid procedures.

### **15. DETERMINATION of LOW BIDDER by USE of ALTERNATES:**

**a.** The Awarding Authority may request alternate bid prices (alternates) to facilitate either reducing the base bid to an amount within the funds available for the project or adding items to the base bid within the funds available for the project. Alternates, if any, are listed in the

Proposal Form in the order in which they shall cumulatively deduct from or add to the base bid for determining the lowest bidder.

b. If alternates are included in the Proposal Form, the Awarding Authority shall determine the dollar amount of funds available and immediately prior to the opening of bids shall announce publicly the funds available for the project. The dollar amount of such funds shall be used to determine the lowest bidder as provided herein below, notwithstanding that the actual funds available for the project may subsequently be determined to be more or less than the expected funds available as determined immediately prior to the time of the opening of bids.

c. If the base bid of the lowest bidder exceeds the funds available and alternate bid prices will reduce the base bids to an amount that is within the funds available, the lowest bidder will be determined by considering, in order, the fewest number of the alternates that produces a price within the funds available. If the base bid of the lowest bidder is within the funds available and alternate bid prices will permit adding items to the base bid, the lowest bidder will be determined by considering, in order, the greatest number of the alternates that produces a price within the funds available.

d. After the lowest bidder has been determined as set forth above, the Awarding Authority may award that bidder any combination of alternates, provided said bidder is also the low bidder when only the Base Bid and such combination of alternates are considered.

#### **16. UNIT PRICES:**

a. **Work Bid on a Unit Price Basis.** Where all, or part(s), of the planned Work is bid on a unit price basis, both the unit prices and the extensions of the unit prices constitute a basis of determining the lowest responsible and responsive bidder. In cases of error in the extension of prices of bids, the unit price will govern. A bid may be rejected if any of the unit prices are obviously unbalanced or non-competitive.

b. **Unit Prices for Application to Change Orders.** As a means of predetermining unit costs for changes in certain elements of the Work, the Bid Documents may require that the bidders furnish unit prices for those items in the Proposal Form. Unit prices for application to changes in the work are not a basis for determining the lowest bidder. Non-competitive unit prices proposed by the successful bidder may be rejected and competitive prices negotiated by the Awarding Authority prior to contract award. Unit prices for application to changes in the work are not effective unless specifically included and agreed upon in the Construction Contract.

#### **17. AWARD of CONTRACT:**

a. The contract shall be awarded to the lowest responsible and responsive bidder unless the Awarding Authority finds that all the bids are unreasonable or that it is not in the best interest of the Awarding Authority to accept any of the bids. A responsible bidder is one who, among other qualities determined necessary for performance, is competent, experienced, and financially able to perform the contract. A responsive bidder is one who submits a bid that complies with the terms and conditions of the Advertisement for Bids and the Bid Documents. Minor irregularities in the bid shall not defeat responsiveness.

b. A bidder to whom award is made will be notified by telegram, confirmed facsimile, or letter to the address shown on the Proposal Form at the earliest possible date. Unless other

time frames are stipulated in Supplemental Instructions to Bidders, the maximum time frames allowed for each step of the process between the opening of bids and the issuance of an order to proceed with the work shall be as follows:

(1) Award of contract by Awarding Authority	30 calendar days after the opening of bids
(2) Contractor's return of the fully executed contract, with bonds and evidence of insurance, to the Awarding Authority	15 calendar days after the contract has been presented to the contractor for signature (from the Lead Design Professional)
(3) Awarding Authority's approval of the contractor's bonds and evidence of insurance and completion of contract execution	20 calendar days after the contractor presents complete and acceptable documents to the Architect
(4) Notice To Proceed issued to the contractor along with distribution of the fully executed construction contract to all parties.	15 calendar days after final execution of contract by the Awarding Authority, by various State Agencies if required and by the Governor if his or her signature on the contract is required by law

The time frames stated above, or as otherwise specified in the Bid Documents, may be extended by written agreement between the parties. Failure by the Awarding Authority to comply with the time frames stated above or stipulated in Supplemental Instructions to Bidders, or agreed extensions thereof, shall be just cause for the withdrawal of the contractor's bid and contract without forfeiture of bid security.

c. Should the successful bidder or bidders to whom the contract is awarded fail to execute the Construction Contract and furnish acceptable Performance and Payment Bonds and satisfactory evidence of insurance within the specified period, the Awarding Authority shall retain from the bid guaranty, if it is a cashier's check, or recover from the principal or the sureties, if the guaranty is a bid bond, the difference between the amount of the contract as awarded and the amount of the bid of the next lowest responsible and responsive bidder, but not more than \$10,000. If no other bids are received, the full amount of the bid guaranty shall be so retained or recovered as liquidated damages for such default. Any sums so retained or recovered shall be the property of the Awarding Authority.

d. All bid guaranties, except those of the three lowest bona fide bidders, will be returned immediately after bids have been checked, tabulated, and the relation of the bids established. The bid guaranties of the three lowest bidders will be returned as soon as the contract bonds and the contract of the successful bidder have been properly executed and approved. When the award is deferred for a period of time longer than 15 days after the opening of the bids, all bid guaranties, except those of the potentially successful bidders, shall be returned. If no award is made within the specified period, as it may by agreement be extended, all bids will be rejected, and all guaranties returned. If any potentially successful bidder agrees in writing to a stipulated extension in time for consideration of its bid and its bid was guaranteed with a cashier's check, the Awarding Authority may permit the potentially successful bidder to substitute a satisfactory bid bond for the cashier's check.

END of INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS





Kay Ivey  
Governor

Bill Poole  
Director of Finance

STATE OF ALABAMA  
DEPARTMENT OF FINANCE  
REAL PROPERTY MANAGEMENT  
Division of Construction Management

P.O. Box 301150, Montgomery, AL 36130-1150  
770 Washington Avenue, Suite 444, Montgomery, AL 36104  
Telephone: (334) 242-4082 Fax: (334) 242-4182



Mickey Allen  
Assistant Finance Director  
Real Property Management

Frank Barnes, Director  
Construction Management

## E-Verify Memorandum of Understanding

Instructions for inclusion in project manuals.

Per DCM's May 29, 2012 bulletin *Guidance on Act 2012-491 Amending the Alabama Immigration Law*: "Contractors (including architects and engineers) will ... be required to enroll in the E-Verify program and to provide documentation of enrollment in the E-Verify program with their contracts or agreements."

Upon completing enrollment in the E-Verify program available at <https://www.e-verify.gov/employers/enrolling-in-e-verify>, an E-Verify Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) is issued to the enrolled business. The same E-Verify MOU can be repeatedly used until any information in the business's E-Verify user profile is updated, at which time E-Verify updates the printable Company Information section of the MOU, while the original signatory information remains the same. Typically, an E-Verify MOU is 13-18 pages long depending on business type and number of employees.

**DCM requires a copy of the entire current E-Verify MOU document including the completed Department of Homeland Security – Verification Division section (with name, signature and date included) to be submitted as an attachment to each Construction Contract original and to each Agreement Between Owner and Architect original.**



## PROPOSAL FORM

To: Jefferson County Board of Education Date: \_\_\_\_\_

In compliance with your Advertisement for Bids and subject to all the conditions thereof, the undersigned,

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Legal name of Bidder)

hereby proposes to furnish all labor and materials and perform all work required for the construction of

**WORK:** New JROTC Facility for Pleasant Grove High School, Architect Job No. 21-66

in accordance with Drawings and Specifications, dated, February 1, 2022 prepared by Lathan Associates  
Architects, P.C., 300 Chase Park South, Suite 200, Hoover, AL 35244, Architect.

The Bidder, which is organized and existing under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_,

having its principal offices in the City of \_\_\_\_\_,

is: \_\_\_\_\_ a Corporation \_\_\_\_\_ a Partnership \_\_\_\_\_ an individual \_\_\_\_\_ (other) \_\_\_\_\_

**LISTING OF PARTNERS OR OFFICERS:** If Bidder is a Partnership, list all partners and their addresses; if  
Bidder is a Corporation, list the names, titles and business addresses of its Officers:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
**BIDDER'S REPRESENTATION:** The Bidder declares that it has examined the site of the Work, having  
become fully informed regarding all pertinent conditions, and that it has examined the Drawings and  
Specifications (including all Addenda received) for the Work and the other Bid and Contract Documents  
relative thereto; and that it has satisfied itself relative to the Work to be performed.

**ADDENDA:** The Bidder acknowledges receipt of Addenda Nos. \_\_\_\_\_ through \_\_\_\_\_  
inclusively.

**ALLOWANCES:** The Bidder acknowledges by initials \_\_\_\_\_ that he/she has read Specification  
Section 01020 - Allowances and has included cost of same in bid.

**ALABAMA IMMIGRATION LAW COMPLIANCE:** The Bidder acknowledges by initials \_\_\_\_\_ that he/she will  
comply with H.B. 56 - Alabama Immigration Law Compliance.

**BASE BID:** For construction complete as shown and specified, the sum of \_\_\_\_\_  
Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_)

**ALTERNATES:** If alternates as set forth in the Bid Documents are accepted, the following adjustments are  
to be made to the Base Bid:

Alternate No. 1 (Additional Construction) (add) \$ \_\_\_\_\_

**UNIT PRICES:** See Attachment

**BID SECURITY:** The undersigned agrees to enter into a Construction Contract and furnish the prescribed Performance and Payment Bonds and evidence of insurance within fifteen calendar days, or such other period stated in the Bid Documents, after the contract forms have been presented for signature, provided such presentation is made within 30 calendar days after the opening of bids, or such other period stated in the Bid Documents. As security for this condition, the undersigned further agrees that the funds represented by the Bid Bond (or cashier's check) attached hereto may be called and paid into the account of the Awarding Authority as liquidated damages for failure to comply.

Attached hereto is a: *(Mark the appropriate space and provide the applicable information.)*

\_\_\_\_ Bid Bond, executed by \_\_\_\_\_ as Surety,  
\_\_\_\_ cashier's check on the \_\_\_\_\_ Bank of \_\_\_\_\_,  
for the sum of \_\_\_\_\_ Dollars  
(\$ \_\_\_\_\_) made payable to the Awarding Authority.

**BIDDER'S ALABAMA LICENSE:**

State License for General Contracting: \_\_\_\_\_

License Number

Bid Limit

Type(s) of Work

**CERTIFICATIONS:** The undersigned certifies that he or she is authorized to execute contracts on behalf of the Bidder as legally named, that this proposal is submitted in good faith without fraud or collusion with any other bidder, that the information indicated in this document is true and complete, and that the bid is made in full accord with State law. Notice of acceptance may be sent to the undersigned at the address set forth below.

The Bidder also declares that a list of all proposed major subcontractors and suppliers will be submitted at a time subsequent to the receipt of bids as established by the Architect in the Bid Documents but in no event shall this time exceed twenty-four (24) hours after receipt of bids.

**Legal Name of Bidder** \_\_\_\_\_

**Mailing Address** \_\_\_\_\_

**\* By (Legal Signature)** \_\_\_\_\_ (Seal)

**\* Name & Title ( print)** \_\_\_\_\_

**Telephone Number** \_\_\_\_\_

**Email Address** \_\_\_\_\_

\* If other than an individual proprietor, or an above named member of the Partnership, or the above named president, vice-president, or secretary of the Corporation, attach written authority to bind the Bidder. Any modification to a bid shall be over the initials of the person signing the bid, or of an authorized representative.

**Note:** A completed DCM Form C-3A: Accounting of Sales Tax must be submitted with DCM Form C-3: Proposal Form. Submission of DCM Form C-3A is required, it is not optional. A proposal shall be rendered non-responsive if an Accounting of Sales Tax is not provided.



## PROPOSAL FORM ATTACHMENT

### UNIT PRICES

For certain items of **credit or extra work**, if required, the undersigned proposes UNIT PRICES as follows:

<u>EARTH EXCAVATION</u>	General	\$ _____/per cu.yd.
	In Trenches	\$ _____/per cu. yd.
<u>EARTH FILL</u>	General	\$ _____/per cu. yd.
<u>UNDERCUTTING OF UNSUITABLE SOILS</u>		\$ _____/per cu. yd.
<u>LEAN CONCRETE</u>		\$ _____/per cu. yd.
<u>DENSE GRADED AGGREGATE</u>		\$ _____/per cu. yd.

Note: All grading shown on the drawings shall be included in the Base Bid as Unclassified to required subgrade elevations. This Base Bid grading shall include the required cutting and filling of the existing grade to the proposed subgrade elevation. Onsite Geotechnical engineer shall determine if unsuitable soils are present.

Refer to SECTION 02300 - EARTHWORK for additional information regarding undercut & replacement of unsuitable soils.

Note: Costs for profit and overhead shall be included in Unit Prices.

Note: Unit Prices are provided for the addition to or deletion from the contract Base Bid.

BIDDER (to be signed by an Officer of the Company)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Name/Title) by \_\_\_\_\_  
(Legal Signature)

WITNESS (to the above signature)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Name/Title) by \_\_\_\_\_  
(Legal Signature)



**ACCOUNTING OF SALES TAX**  
**Attachment to DCM Form C-3: Proposal Form**  
**Proposal Form**

**To:** Jefferson County Board of Education **Date:** \_\_\_\_\_  
(Awarding Authority)

**NAME OF PROJECT:** New JROTC for Pleasant Grove High School

**SALES TAX ACCOUNTING**

Pursuant to Act 2013-205, Section 1(g) the Contractor accounts for the sales tax NOT included in the bid proposal form as follows:

			<u>ESTIMATED SALES TAX AMOUNT</u>
BASE BID:			\$ _____
	Description		
Alternate No. 1	Add Construction	(add)	\$ _____

**Failure to provide an accounting of sales tax shall render the bid non-responsive. Other than determining responsiveness, sales tax accounting shall not affect the bid pricing nor be considered in the determination of the lowest responsible and responsive bidder.**

Legal Name of Bidder \_\_\_\_\_

Mailing Address \_\_\_\_\_

\* By (Legal Signature) \_\_\_\_\_

\* Name (type or print) \_\_\_\_\_

\* Title \_\_\_\_\_ (Seal)

Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

Email Address \_\_\_\_\_

Note: A completed DCM Form C-3A: Accounting of Sales Tax must be submitted with DCM Form C-3: Proposal Form. Submission of DCM Form C-3A with DCM Form C-3 is required, it is not optional. A proposal shall be rendered non-responsive if an Accounting of Sales Tax is not provided.



# BID BOND

The **PRINCIPAL** (*Bidder's company name and address*)

Name:

Address:

The **SURETY** (*Company name and primary place of business*)

Name:

Address:

The **OWNER** (*Entity name and address*)

Name:

Address:

The **PROJECT** for which the Principal's Bid is submitted: (*Project name as it appears in the Bid Documents*)

**KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS**, that we, the undersigned Principal and Surety, jointly and severally, hereby bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns to the Owner in the **PENAL SUM of five percent (5%) of the amount of the Principal's bid, but in no event more than Ten-thousand Dollars (\$10,000.00).**

**THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION** is that the Principal has submitted to the Owner the attached bid, which is incorporated herein by reference, for the Project identified above.

**NOW, THEREFORE**, if, within the terms of the Bid Documents, the Owner accepts the Principal's bid and the Principal thereafter either:

- (a) executes and delivers a Construction Contract with the required Performance and Payment Bonds (each in the form contained in the Bid Documents and properly completed in accordance with the bid) and delivers evidence of insurance as prescribed in the Bid Documents, or
  - (b) fails to execute and deliver such Construction Contract with such Bonds and evidence of insurance, but pays the Owner the difference, not to exceed the Penal Sum of this Bond, between the amount of the Principal's Bid and the larger amount for which the Owner may award a Construction Contract for the same Work to another bidder,
- then, this obligation shall be null and void, otherwise it shall remain in full force and effect.**

The Surety, for value received, hereby stipulates and agrees that the obligation of the Surety under this Bond shall not in any manner be impaired or affected by any extension of the time within which the Owner may accept the Principal's bid, and the Surety does hereby waive notice of any such extension.

**SIGNED AND SEALED** this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

ATTEST:

**PRINCIPAL:**

\_\_\_\_\_

By \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title

**SURETY:**

ATTEST:

\_\_\_\_\_

By \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title

Note: Do not staple this form; use clips. Purpose: quickly and efficiently scan thousands of documents into DCM's database.



- (1) **DCM (BC) Project #** \_\_\_\_\_ (required)
- PSCA Project #** \_\_\_\_\_ (required)

*Do not staple this form and/or attachments; use clips. Print single-sided; do not submit double-side printed documents.*

## CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

- (2) This Construction Contract is entered into this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ in the year of \_\_\_\_\_  
 (3) between the **OWNERS, the ALABAMA PUBLIC SCHOOL AND COLLEGE AUTHORITY**  
 and **LOCAL OWNER**,  
 Entity Name:  
 Address:  
 Email & Phone #:
- (4) and the **CONTRACTOR**,  
 Company Name:  
 Address:  
 Email & Phone #:
- (5) State of AL Accounting & Resource System (STAARS) or AL Buys Vendor No.: \_\_\_\_\_  
 for the **WORK** of the Project, identified as:
- (6) The **CONTRACT DOCUMENTS** are dated \_\_\_\_\_ and have been amended by \_\_\_\_\_  
 (7) **ADDENDA**
- (8) The **ARCHITECT** is  
 Firm Name:  
 Address:  
 Email & Phone #:
- (9) The **CONTRACT SUM** is  
 Dollars (\$) \_\_\_\_\_ ) and is the sum of the Contractor's Base Bid for the Work and the following  
 (10) **BID ALTERNATE PRICES:**
- (11) The **CONTRACT TIME** is \_\_\_\_\_ ( ) calendar days.
- (12) **THE OWNER AND THE CONTRACTOR AGREE AS FOLLOWS:** The Contract Documents, as defined in the General Conditions of the Contract (DCM Form C-8), are incorporated herein by reference. The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Owner will pay and the Contractor will accept as full compensation for such performance of the Work, the Contract Sum subject to additions and deductions (including liquidated damages) as provided in the Contract Documents. The Work shall commence on a date to be specified in a Notice to Proceed issued by the Owner or the Director, Alabama Division of Construction Management, and shall then be substantially completed within the Contract Time.
- LIQUIDATED DAMAGES** for which the Contractor and its Surety (if any) shall be liable and may be required to pay the Owner in accordance with the Contract Documents shall be equal to six percent interest per annum on the total Contract Sum unless a dollar amount is stipulated in the following space, in which case liquidated damages shall be determined at \_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$ ) per calendar day.

(13) **SPECIAL PROVISIONS** *(such as acceptance or rejection of unit prices. Indicate continuation on an attachment if needed.)*

**A. SEVERABLE PAYMENTS:** The Alabama Public School and College Authority will first pay the Contractor \_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_) from its available funds and the \_\_\_\_\_ will thereafter pay the Contractor the remaining \_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_) from its available funds.

**B.**

Numbers in margin correspond to "Checklist", ABC Form B-7

(14) **STATE GENERAL CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE:** The Contractor does hereby certify that Contractor is currently licensed by the Alabama State Licensing Board for General Contractors and that the certificate for such license bears the following:

License No.:

Classification(s):

Bid Limit:



The Owner and Contractor have entered into this Construction Contract as of the date first written above and have executed this Construction Contract in sufficient counterparts to enable each contracting party to have an originally executed Construction Contract each of which shall, without proof or accounting for the other counterparts, be deemed an original thereof.

The Owner does hereby certify that this Construction Contract was let in accordance with the provisions of Title 39, Code of Alabama 1975, as amended, and all other applicable provisions of law, and that the terms and commitments of this Construction Contract do not constitute a debt of the State of Alabama in violation of Article 11, Section 213 of the Constitution of Alabama, 1901, as amended by Amendment Number 26.

(15)

### APPROVALS

**ALABAMA DEPARTMENT OF FINANCE,  
REAL PROPERTY MANAGEMENT,  
DIVISION OF CONSTRUCTION MANAGEMENT  
(DCM)**

By \_\_\_\_\_  
Director

**REVIEWED BY AND FUNDS AVAILABLE:**

PSCA funds are available in the amount stated in  
(13) "Special Provisions", Paragraph A.

By \_\_\_\_\_  
Contract Administrator

### CONTRACTING PARTIES

Contractor Company

By \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

Name & Title \_\_\_\_\_

Local Owner Entity

By \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

Name & Title \_\_\_\_\_

**ALABAMA PUBLIC SCHOOL and COLLEGE  
AUTHORITY**

By \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
Governor and President of Authority

Numbers in margin correspond to "Checklist", ABC Form B-7

Review/Signature flow: Architect/Engineer (prepare documents) > Contractor (review and sign) > Architect/Engineer (review) > Local Owner (review and sign) > DCM (review and sign) > Finance-Legal > Governor (review and sign) > DCM (distribute the fully executed Contract to all parties along with a Notice to Proceed).



SURETY'S BOND NUMBER

(1) **PERFORMANCE BOND**

*Do not staple this form; use clips.*

- (2) The **PRINCIPAL** (*Company name and address of Contractor as appears in the Construction Contract*)

Name:

Address:

- (3) The **SURETY** (*Company name and primary place of business*)

Name:

Address:

- (4) The **OWNER: The ALABAMA PUBLIC SCHOOL AND COLLEGE AUTHORITY** and  
(*Local Owner entity's name and address, same as appears in the Construction Contract*)

Name:

Address:

- (5) The **PENAL SUM** of this Bond (the Contract Sum)

Dollars (\$) ).

- (6) **DATE** of the Construction Contract :

- (7) The **PROJECT:** (*Same as appears in the Construction Contract*)

1. **WE, THE PRINCIPAL** (hereinafter "**Contractor**") **AND THE SURETY**, jointly and severally, hereby bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns to the Owner in the Penal Sum stated above for the performance of the Contract, and Contract Change Orders, in accord with the requirements of the Contract Documents, which are incorporated herein by reference. If the Contractor performs the Contract, and Contract Change Orders, in accordance with the Contract Documents, then this obligation shall be null and void; otherwise it shall remain in full force and effect.

2. The Penal Sum shall remain equal to the Contract Sum as the Contract Sum is adjusted by Contract Change Orders. All Contract Change Orders involving an increase in the Contract Sum will require consent of Surety by endorsement of the Contract Change Order form. The Surety waives notification of any Contract Change Orders involving only extension of the Contract Time.

3. Whenever the Architect gives the Contractor and the Surety, at their addresses stated above, a written Notice to Cure a condition for which the Contract may be terminated in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Surety may, within the time stated in the notice, cure or provide the Architect with written verification that satisfactory positive action is in process to cure the condition.
4. The Surety's obligation under this Bond becomes effective after the Contractor fails to satisfy a Notice to Cure and the Owner:
  - (a) gives the Contractor and the Surety, at their addresses stated above, a written Notice of Termination declaring the Contractor to be in default under the Contract and stating that the Contractor's right to complete the Work, or a designated portion of the Work, shall terminate seven days after the Contractor's receipt of the notice; and
  - (b) gives the Surety a written demand that, upon the effective date of the Notice of Termination, the Surety promptly fulfill its obligation under this Bond.
5. In the presence of the conditions described in Paragraph 4, the Surety shall, at its expense:
  - (a) On the effective date of the Notice of Termination, take charge of the Work and be responsible for the safety, security, and protection of the Work, including materials and equipment stored on and off the Project site, and
  - (b) Within twenty-one days after the effective date of the Notice of Termination, proceed, or provide the Owner with written verification that satisfactory positive action is in process to facilitate proceeding promptly, to complete the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, either with the Surety's resources or through a contract between the Surety and a qualified contractor to whom the Owner has no reasonable objection.
6. As conditions precedent to taking charge of and completing the Work pursuant to Paragraph 5, the Surety shall neither require, nor be entitled to, any agreements or conditions other than those of this Bond and the Contract Documents. In taking charge of and completing the Work, the Surety shall assume all rights and obligations of the Contractor under the Contract Documents; however, the Surety shall also have the right to assert "Surety Claims" to the Owner in accordance with the Contract Documents. The presence or possibility of a Surety Claim shall not be just cause for the Surety to fail or refuse to promptly take charge of and complete the Work or for the Owner to fail or refuse to continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.
7. By accepting this Bond as a condition of executing the Construction Contract, and by taking the actions described in Paragraph 4, the Owner agrees that:
  - (a) the Owner shall promptly advise the Surety of the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum and, upon request, shall make available or furnish to the Surety, at the cost of reproduction, any portions of the Project Record, and
  - (b) as the Surety completes the Work, or has it completed by a qualified contractor, the Owner shall pay the Surety, in accordance with terms of payment of the Contract Documents, the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, less any amounts that may be or become due the Owner from the Contractor under the Construction Contract or from the Contractor or the Surety under this Bond.
8. In the presence of the conditions described in Paragraph 4, the Surety's obligation includes responsibility for the correction of Defective Work, liquidated damages, and reimbursement of any reasonable expenses incurred by the Owner as a result of the Contractor's default under the Contract, including architectural, engineering, administrative, and legal services.

Numbers in margin correspond to second page of "Checklist", DCM Form B-7

9. Nothing contained in this Bond shall be construed to mean that the Surety shall be liable to the Owner for an amount exceeding the Penal Sum of this Bond, except in the event that the Surety should be in default under the Bond by failing or refusing to take charge of and complete the Work pursuant to Paragraph 5. If the Surety should fail or refuse to take charge of and complete the Work, the Owner shall have the authority to take charge of and complete the Work, or have it completed, and the following costs to the Owner, less the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, shall be recoverable under this Bond:

- (a) the cost of completing the Contractor's responsibilities under the Contract, including correction of Defective Work;
- (b) additional architectural, engineering, managerial, and administrative services, and reasonable attorneys' fees incident to completing the Work;
- (c) interest on, and the cost of obtaining, funds to supplement the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum as may be necessary to cover the foregoing costs;
- (d) the fair market value of any reductions in the scope of the Work necessitated by insufficiency of the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum and available supplemental funds to cover the foregoing costs; and
- (f) additional architectural, engineering, managerial, and administrative services, and reasonable attorneys' fees incident to ascertaining and collecting the Owner's losses under the Bond.

10. All claims and disputes arising out of or related to this bond, or its breach, shall be resolved in accordance with Article 24, General Conditions of the Contract.

(8) **SIGNED AND SEALED** this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

(9 & 10) **SURETY:**

**CONTRACTOR as PRINCIPAL:**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Surety Company Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Contractor Company Name

By \_\_\_\_\_

By \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signee's Printed Name and Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signee's Printed Name and Title

(11) **NOTE:** Original power of attorney for the Surety's signatory shall be furnished with each of the original six bond forms to be attached to each of the six contract forms per project.

Do not staple this form; use clips. Purpose: quickly and efficiently scan thousands of documents into DCM's database.



# PAYMENT BOND

SURETY'S BOND NUMBER

*Do not staple this form; use clips.*

- (2) The **PRINCIPAL** *(Company name and address of Contractor as appears in the Construction Contract)*

Name:

Address:

- (3) The **SURETY** *(Company name and primary place of business)*

Name:

Address:

- (4) The **OWNER: The ALABAMA PUBLIC SCHOOL AND COLLEGE AUTHORITY** and  
*(Local Owner entity's name and address, same as appears in the Construction Contract)*

Name:

Address:

- (5) The **PENAL SUM** of this Bond (the Contract Sum)

Dollars (\$) \_\_\_\_\_).

- (6) **DATE** of the Construction Contract :

- (7) The **PROJECT:** *(Same as appears in the Construction Contract)*

1. **WE, THE PRINCIPAL (hereinafter "Contractor") AND THE SURETY**, jointly and severally, hereby bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns to the Owner in the Penal Sum stated above to promptly pay all persons supplying labor, materials, or supplies for or in the prosecution of the Contract, which is incorporated herein by reference, and any modifications thereof by Contract Change Orders. If the Contractor and its Subcontractors promptly pay all persons supplying labor, materials, or supplies for or in the prosecution of the Contract and Contract Change Orders, then this obligation shall be null and void; otherwise to remain and be in full force and effect.

2. The Penal Sum shall remain equal to the Contract Sum as the Contract Sum is adjusted by Contract Change Orders. All Contract Change Orders involving an increase in the Contract Sum will require consent of Surety by endorsement of the Contract Change Order form. The Surety waives notification of any Contract Change Orders involving only extension of the Contract Time.

Numbers in margin correspond to second page of "Checklist", DCM Form B-7

Numbers in margin correspond to second page of "Checklist", DCM Form B-7

3. Any person that has furnished labor, materials, or supplies for or in the prosecution of the Contract and Contract Change Orders for which payment has not been timely made may institute a civil action upon this Bond and have their rights and claims adjudicated in a civil action and judgment entered thereon. Notwithstanding the foregoing, a civil action may not be instituted on this bond until 45 days after written notice to the Surety of the amount claimed to be due and the nature of the claim. The civil action must commence not later than one year from the date of final settlement of the Contract. The giving of notice by registered or certified mail, postage prepaid, addressed to the Surety at any of its places of business or offices shall be deemed sufficient. In the event the Surety or Contractor fails to pay the claim in full within 45 days from the mailing of the notice, then the person or persons may recover from the Contractor and Surety, in addition to the amount of the claim, a reasonable attorney's fee based on the result, together with interest on the claim from the date of the notice.
4. Every person having a right of action on this bond shall, upon written application to the Owner indicating that labor, material, or supplies for the Work have been supplied and that payment has not been made, be promptly furnished a certified copy of this bond and the Construction Contract. The claimant may bring a civil action in the claimant's name on this Bond against the Contractor and the Surety, or either of them, in the county in which the Work is to be or has been performed or in any other county where venue is otherwise allowed by law.
5. This bond is furnished to comply with Code of Alabama, §39-1-1, and all provisions thereof shall be applicable to civil actions upon this bond.
6. All claims and disputes between Owner and either the Contractor or Surety arising out of or related to this bond, or its breach, shall be resolved in accordance with Article 24, General Conditions of the Contract.

(8) **SIGNED AND SEALED** this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

(9 & 10) **SURETY:** **CONTRACTOR as PRINCIPAL:**

_____ Surety Company Name	_____ Contractor Company Name
By _____	By _____
_____ Signee's Printed Name and Title	_____ Signee's Printed Name and Title

- (11) **NOTE:** Original power of attorney for the Surety's signatory shall be furnished with each of the original six bond forms to be attached to each of the six contract forms per project.

Do not staple this form; use clips. Purpose: quickly and efficiently scan thousands of documents into DCM's database.





# State of Alabama Disclosure Statement

Required by Article 3B of Title 41, Code of Alabama 1975

ENTITY COMPLETING FORM

ADDRESS

CITY, STATE, ZIP

TELEPHONE NUMBER

STATE AGENCY/DEPARTMENT THAT WILL RECEIVE GOODS, SERVICES, OR IS RESPONSIBLE FOR GRANT AWARD

ADDRESS

CITY, STATE, ZIP

TELEPHONE NUMBER

This form is provided with:

☐

Contract

☐

Proposal

☐

Request for Proposal

☐

Invitation to Bid

☐

Grant Proposal

Have you or any of your partners, divisions, or any related business units previously performed work or provided goods to any State Agency/Department in the current or last fiscal year?

☐

Yes

☐

No

If yes, identify below the State Agency/Department that received the goods or services, the type(s) of goods or services previously provided, and the amount received for the provision of such goods or services.

STATE AGENCY/DEPARTMENT	TYPE OF GOODS/SERVICES	AMOUNT RECEIVED
-------------------------	------------------------	-----------------

Have you or any of your partners, divisions, or any related business units previously applied and received any grants from any State Agency/Department in the current or last fiscal year?

☐

Yes

☐

No

If yes, identify the State Agency/Department that awarded the grant, the date such grant was awarded, and the amount of the grant.

STATE AGENCY/DEPARTMENT	DATE GRANT AWARDED	AMOUNT OF GRANT
-------------------------	--------------------	-----------------

1. List below the name(s) and address(es) of all public officials/public employees with whom you, members of your immediate family, or any of your employees have a family relationship and who may directly personally benefit financially from the proposed transaction. Identify the State Department/Agency for which the public officials/public employees work. (Attach additional sheets if necessary.)

NAME OF PUBLIC OFFICIAL/EMPLOYEE	ADDRESS	STATE DEPARTMENT/AGENCY
----------------------------------	---------	-------------------------

2. List below the name(s) and address(es) of all family members of public officials/public employees with whom you, members of your immediate family, or any of your employees have a family relationship and who may directly personally benefit financially from the proposed transaction. Identify the public officials/public employees and State Department/Agency for which the public officials/public employees work. (Attach additional sheets if necessary.)

NAME OF FAMILY MEMBER	ADDRESS	NAME OF PUBLIC OFFICIAL/ PUBLIC EMPLOYEE	STATE DEPARTMENT/ AGENCY WHERE EMPLOYED
-----------------------	---------	---	--

If you identified individuals in items one and/or two above, describe in detail below the direct financial benefit to be gained by the public officials, public employees, and/or their family members as the result of the contract, proposal, request for proposal, invitation to bid, or grant proposal. (Attach additional sheets if necessary.)

Describe in detail below any indirect financial benefits to be gained by any public official, public employee, and/or family members of the public official or public employee as the result of the contract, proposal, request for proposal, invitation to bid, or grant proposal. (Attach additional sheets if necessary.)

List below the name(s) and address(es) of all paid consultants and/or lobbyists utilized to obtain the contract, proposal, request for proposal, invitation to bid, or grant proposal:

NAME OF PAID CONSULTANT/LOBBYIST	ADDRESS
----------------------------------	---------

***By signing below, I certify under oath and penalty of perjury that all statements on or attached to this form are true and correct to the best of my knowledge. I further understand that a civil penalty of ten percent (10%) of the amount of the transaction, not to exceed \$10,000.00, is applied for knowingly providing incorrect or misleading information.***

Signature

Date

Notary's Signature

Date

Date Notary Expires

*Article 3B of Title 41, Code of Alabama 1975 requires the disclosure statement to be completed and filed with all proposals, bids, contracts, or grant proposals to the State of Alabama in excess of \$5,000.*

DCM (BC) No. \_\_\_\_\_  
PSCA Projects: PSCA No. \_\_\_\_\_  
Application No. \_\_\_\_\_  
Date: \_\_\_\_\_

# APPLICATION and CERTIFICATE for PAYMENT

Attach DCM Form C-10SOV: Schedule of Values

<b>TO OWNER:</b> Entity Name: Address:	<b>PROJECT:</b>
<b>FROM CONTRACTOR:</b> Company Name & Address, which must exactly match co. name & payment address spelling as registered in State of AL Accounting & Resource System (STAARS) to avoid STAARS rejection: STAARS Vendor #:	<b>ARCHITECT / ENGINEER:</b> Firm Name: Address:

A. Total Original Contract	\$	
B. Fully Executed (signed by all parties) Change Order(s) Numbers ___ through ___	+\$	
C. Total Contract To Date	\$	
<hr/>		
1. Work Completed to Date per attached Schedule of Values <small>(Form C-10SOV's Column F Total)</small>	\$	
2. Materials Presently Stored <small>(When this amount is greater than \$0.00, attach Form C-10SM: Inventory of Stored Materials, or similar list)</small>	+\$	
3. Total Work Completed to Date & Materials Presently Stored <small>(_____% of Contract To Date)</small>	\$	
4. Less Retainage <small>(If Total Work Completed to Date &amp; Materials Presently Stored (#3) is less than or equal to 50% of Total Contract to Date (C), Retainage = #3 x 0.05. Once #3 exceeds 50% of C and up until project is complete, Retainage = C x 0.025. \$0 is retained on final payment application, see 9th bullet point below for requirements.)</small>	-\$	
5. Total Due	\$	
6. Less Total Previous Payments Billed <small>(Must exactly match #5 Total Due from previous payment application. # 6 is \$0.00 if there is no previous payment application)</small>	-\$	
7. Balance Due This Estimate	\$	

Final pay app?  
☐ Yes.

<b>CONTRACTOR'S CERTIFICATION</b> The undersigned Contractor certifies that to the best of his knowledge, information, and belief the Work covered by this Application for Payment has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents, that all amounts have been paid by him for Work for which previous Certificates for Payments were issued and payments received from the Owner and that current payment shown herein has not yet been received.  By: _____ Date: _____ Contractor's Signature  Name & Title _____  Sworn and subscribed before me this _____ day of _____ Seal: _____ Day _____ Month, Year _____  _____ Notary Public's Signature	<b>ARCHITECT'S / ENGINEER'S CERTIFICATION</b> In accordance with the Contract Documents, the Architect/ Engineer certifies to the Owner that, to the best of the Architect's/ Engineer's knowledge and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated herein, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and the Contractor is entitled to payment of the amount approved.  By: _____ Architect's / Engineer's Signature  Name & Title _____  Date _____
--	---

<b>INSTRUCTIONS</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Four copies of pay. app., each with original signatures and all attachments required.</li> <li>• Date of first payment application cannot precede the Notice to Proceed's Begin Date.</li> <li>• Pay. app. must exactly match an attached DCM Form C-10SOV: Schedule of Values.</li> <li>• A change order must be fully executed before inclusion on a payment application.</li> <li>• Contractor's signature date cannot precede the payment application date.</li> <li>• Contractor and Notary signee dates must match.</li> <li>• Progress schedules must be included with non-final payment applications.</li> <li>• One payment application per month may be submitted.</li> <li>• On a final payment application, the following is required for release of retainage: all change orders must be fully executed (signed by all parties) and included, the Certificate of Substantial Completion for entire work is fully executed, and all other close-out requirements per General Conditions Article 34 are completed.</li> </ul>	<b>APPROVAL</b>  _____ Owner Entity  By: _____ Signature  Name & Title _____  Date _____
--	--



# SCHEDULE OF VALUES (SOV)

DCM Form C-10SOV  
Revised October 2021

Project: \_\_\_\_\_ DCM (BC) Project Number: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Contractor Company: \_\_\_\_\_ PSCA Project Number, if any: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Application Number: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Application Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Contractor Company:												Application Number:							
Application Date:												Period From:				Period To:			
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J										
Item No.	Description of Work	Scheduled Value (including fully executed [signed by all parties] change order amounts)	Work Completed		Total Work Completed to Date (This application SOV's D + E)	Materials Presently Stored (G total greater than \$0 must match C-10SM's column E total. This SOV's G amounts are not in this SOV's D nor E amounts.)	Total Work Completed to Date & Materials Presently Stored (This SOV's F + G)	Percent of Contract Completed to Date (This SOV's H / C)	Retainage (This column's Total's cell formula calculates the applicable variable rate)										
			Work Previously Completed (Previous pay app SOV's column F. D is \$0 if this SOV is for first pay app.)	Work Completed This Period (Period as noted above)															
1.					\$ -		\$ -		Retainage Variable Rate:										
2.					\$ -		\$ -		If Total Work Completed to Date & Materials Presently Stored (H) is less than or equal to 50% of Total Scheduled Value (C), Retainage = H x 0.05.										
3.					\$ -		\$ -		Once H exceeds 50% of C and up until project is complete, Retainage = C x 0.025.										
4.					\$ -		\$ -		There will be no retainage on final payment application.										
5.					\$ -		\$ -												
6.					\$ -		\$ -												
7.					\$ -		\$ -												
8.					\$ -		\$ -												
9.					\$ -		\$ -												
10.					\$ -		\$ -												
11.					\$ -		\$ -												
12.					\$ -		\$ -												
13.					\$ -		\$ -												
14.					\$ -		\$ -												
15.					\$ -		\$ -												
16.					\$ -		\$ -												
17.					\$ -		\$ -												
18.					\$ -		\$ -												
19.					\$ -		\$ -												
20.					\$ -		\$ -												
21.					\$ -		\$ -												
22.					\$ -		\$ -												
23.					\$ -		\$ -												
24.					\$ -		\$ -												
25.					\$ -		\$ -												
TOTALS:		\$	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$		\$										
This pay app SOV's column totals must match amounts in this pay app Form C-10 per the following indicated Form C-10 line #s:																			
		C.	None	None	1.	2.	3.	3.	4.										

Note: If this SOV's column G: Materials Presently Stored includes any amounts other than \$0, then DCM Form C-10SM: Inventory of Stored Materials with back-up receipts must be submitted as part of the payment application documentation.









SAMPLE PROGRESS SCHEDULE & REPORT				CONTRACTOR (Contractor may use own form in lieu of Form C-11):												DATE OF REPORT:	
DCM (BC) No.:																PROCEED DATE:	
PSCA projects: PSCA No.:																ARCHITECT/ENGINEER:	
PROJECT:																	
WORK DIVISION	%	AMOUNT															
1. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS																	
2. SITEWORK																	
3. CONCRETE																	
4. MASONRY																	
5. METALS																	
6. WOOD AND PLASTIC																100%	
7. THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION																	
8. DOORS AND WINDOWS																90%	
9. FINISHES																80%	
10. SPECIALTIES																70%	
11. EQUIPMENT																60%	
12. FURNISHINGS																50%	
13. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION																40%	
14. CONVEYING SYSTEMS																30%	
15. MECHANICAL																20%	
16. ELECTRICAL																10%	
TOTAL ORIG. CONTRACT	100%															0%	
ANTICIPATED DRAW IN \$1,000																	
ACTUAL DRAW IN \$1,000																	
LEGEND:    ANTICIPATED ACTIVITY    ACTUAL ACTIVITY    ANTICIPATED CASH FLOW    ACTUAL CASH FLOW    USE ADDITIONAL SHEETS IF JOB IS SCHEDULED OVER 12 MONTHS.																	



*Do not staple this form and/or attachments; use clips. Print single-sided; do not submit double-side printed documents.*

DCM Form 9-J, August 2021;  
PSCA version of DCM Form C-12;  
*A Change Order is not valid without an accompanying completed Change Order Justification (DCM Form B-11).*

## CONTRACT CHANGE ORDER

Change Order No. \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_ DCM (BC) # \_\_\_\_\_ (required)  
PSCA # \_\_\_\_\_ (required)

TO: Contractor Company Name & Address:	PROJECT:

TERMS: You are hereby authorized, subject to the provisions of your Contract for this project, to make the following changes thereto in accordance with your proposal(s) dated \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
FURNISH the necessary labor, materials, and equipment to (*Description of work to be done or changes to be made. If the description is continued in an attachment, identify the attachment below.*):

Description continued from Page 1:

ORIGINAL CONTRACT SUM \$ \_\_\_\_\_  
NET TOTAL OF PREVIOUS CHANGE ORDERS \$ \_\_\_\_\_  
PREVIOUS REVISED CONTRACT SUM \$ \_\_\_\_\_  
THIS CHANGE ORDER WILL ☐ INCREASE ☐ DECREASE  
THE CONTRACT SUM BY \$ \_\_\_\_\_  
REVISED CONTRACT SUM, INCLUDING THIS CHANGE ORDER \$ \_\_\_\_\_

EXTENSION OF TIME resulting from this Change Order: ☐ None or \_\_\_\_\_ Calendar days

The amount of this Change Order will be the responsibility of \_\_\_\_\_  
(Owner and/or PSCA)

The Owner does hereby certify that this Change Order was executed per the provisions of Title 39, Code of Alabama, 1975, as amended.

Architectural/Engineering Firm
Recommended By _____
Name & Title _____

#### APPROVALS

ALABAMA DEPARTMENT OF FINANCE,  
REAL PROPERTY MANAGEMENT  
DIVISION OF CONSTRUCTION MANAGEMENT (DCM)

By _____ Director
Reviewed By _____ Contract Administrator

For DCM office use only:

- \_\_\_\_\_ PSCA funds are available to fund this change order.  
\_\_\_\_\_ PSCA funds will not be used to fund this change order.

#### CONTRACTING PARTIES

Contractor Company
By _____
Name & Title _____

Local Owner Entity
By _____
Name & Title _____

ALABAMA PUBLIC SCHOOL & COLLEGE AUTHORITY
By _____ Date: _____
Governor and President of Authority

#### CONSENT OF SURETY

Surety Company
By _____
(Attach current Power of Attorney)
Name & Title _____

Review/Signature flow: Architect/Engineer (prepare documents) > Contractor (review and sign) (> Surety for additive \$ change orders only [sign]) > Architect/Engineer (review and sign) > Local Owner (review and sign) > DCM (review and sign) > Finance-Legal > Governor (review and sign) > DCM (distribute fully executed Change Order to all parties).

TO: Alabama Department of Finance  
Real Property Management  
Division of Construction Management  
770 Washington Avenue, Suite 444  
Montgomery, Alabama 36104  
(334) 242-4082 FAX (334) 242-4182

# CHANGE ORDER JUSTIFICATION

Change Order No. \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

DCM (BC) No. \_\_\_\_\_

*Purpose and instructions on next page.*

*Do not staple this form and/or attachments; use clips.*

(A)	PROJECT NAME & LOCATION:	OWNER ENTITY NAME & ADDRESS:						
	CONTRACTOR COMPANY NAME & ADDRESS:	ARCHITECTURAL / ENGINEERING FIRM NAME & ADDRESS:						
(B)	DESCRIPTION OF PROPOSED CHANGE(S):      ATTACH CONTRACTOR'S DETAILED COST PROPOSAL(s)							
	AMOUNT: <input type="checkbox"/> ADD <input type="checkbox"/> DEDUCT \$ _____      TIME EXTENSION: _____ CALENDAR DAYS							
(C)	<table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 33%;">ORIGINAL CONTRACT AMOUNT</td> <td style="width: 33%;">PREVIOUS C.O.'s _____ THRU _____</td> <td style="width: 34%;">CONTRACT AMOUNT PRIOR TO PROPOSED CHANGE ORDER</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\$ _____</td> <td>+ \$ _____</td> <td>= \$ _____</td> </tr> </table>		ORIGINAL CONTRACT AMOUNT	PREVIOUS C.O.'s _____ THRU _____	CONTRACT AMOUNT PRIOR TO PROPOSED CHANGE ORDER	\$ _____	+ \$ _____	= \$ _____
ORIGINAL CONTRACT AMOUNT	PREVIOUS C.O.'s _____ THRU _____	CONTRACT AMOUNT PRIOR TO PROPOSED CHANGE ORDER						
\$ _____	+ \$ _____	= \$ _____						
(D)	JUSTIFICATION FOR NEED OF CHANGE(S):							
(E)	JUSTIFICATION OF CHANGE ORDER vs. COMPETITIVE BID:							
(F)	ARCHITECT / ENGINEER'S EVALUATION OF PROPOSED COST:							
(G)	<b>CHANGE ORDER RECOMMENDED</b>  _____ ARCHITECTURAL / ENGINEERING FIRM NAME  By: _____ ARCHITECT / ENGINEER'S SIGNATURE  By: _____ OWNER'S PROJECT REPRESENTATIVE'S SIGNATURE	<b>CHANGE ORDER JUSTIFIED AND APPROVED</b>  _____ LOCAL OWNER ENTITY NAME  By: _____ OWNER'S SIGNATURE  By: _____ OWNER'S LEGAL COUNSEL'S SIGNATURE						



*Do not staple this form and/or attachments; use clips.*

## GENERAL CONTRACTOR'S ROOFING GUARANTEE

DCM (BC) Project No. \_\_\_\_\_

Project Name & Address	Project Owner Entity(ies) Name(s) & Address(es)

General Contractor's Company Name, Address, & Telephone Number	<b>EFFECTIVE DATES OF GUARANTEE</b>
	Date of Acceptance:
	Date of Expiration:

1. The General Contractor does hereby certify that the roofing work included in this contract was installed in strict accordance with all requirements of the plans and specifications and in accordance with approved roofing manufacturers recommendations.
2. The General Contractor does hereby guarantee the roofing and associated work including but not limited to all flashing and counter flashing both composition and metal, roof decking and/or sheathing; all materials used as a roof substrate or insulation over which roof is applied; promenade decks or any other work on the surface of the roof; metal work; gravel stops and roof expansion joints to be absolutely watertight and free from all leaks, due to faulty or defective materials and workmanship for a period of five (5) years, starting on the date of substantial completion of the project. This guarantee does not include liability for damage to interior contents of building due to roof leaks, nor does it extend to any deficiency which was caused by the failure of work which the general contractor did not damage or did not accomplish or was not charged to accomplish.
3. Subject to the terms and conditions listed below, the General Contractor also guarantees that during the Guarantee Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to, or replacements of said work, in accordance with the roofing manufacturers standards as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and/or materials which may develop in the work including, but not limited to: blisters, delamination, exposed felts, ridges, wrinkles, splits, warped insulation and/or loose flashings, etc. in a manner pursuant to the total anticipated life of the roofing system and the best standards applicable to the particular roof type in value and in accordance with construction documents as are necessary to maintain said work in satisfactory condition, and further, to respond on or within three (3) calendar days upon proper notification or leaks or defects by the Owner or Architect.

- A. Specifically excluded from this Guarantee are damages to the work, other parts of the building and building contents caused by: (1) lightning, windstorm, hailstorm and other unusual phenomena of the elements; and (2) fire. When the work has been damaged by any of the foregoing causes, the Guarantee shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by the General Contractor, and until the cost and expense thereof has been paid by the Owner or by the responsible party so designated.
- B. During the Guarantee Period, if the Owner allows alteration of the work by anyone other than the General Contractor, including cutting, patching and maintenance in connection with penetrations, and positioning of anything on the roof, this Guarantee shall become null and void upon the date of said alterations. If the owner engages the General Contractor to perform said alterations, the Guarantee shall not become null and void, unless the General Contractor, prior to proceeding with the said work, shall have notified the Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate the work, thereby reasonably justifying a termination of this Guarantee.
- C. Future building additions will not void this guarantee, except for that portion of the future addition that might affect the work under this contract at the point of connection of the roof areas, and any damage caused by such addition. If this contract is for roofing of an addition to an existing building, then this guarantee covers the work involved at the point of connection with the existing roof.
- D. During the Guarantee period, if the original use of the roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use of service more severe than originally specified, this Guarantee shall become null and void upon the date of said change.
- E. The Owner shall promptly notify the General Contractor of observed, known or suspected leaks, defects or deterioration, and shall afford reasonable opportunity for the General Contractor to inspect the work, and to examine the evidence of such leaks, defects or deterioration.

IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this \_\_\_\_\_ day  
of \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
General Contractor's Authorized Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Typed Name and Title



# GENERAL CONTRACTOR'S FIVE YEAR BUILDING ENVELOPE GUARANTEE

<b>Project Name and Address:</b>  	<b>Owner's Name and Address:</b>  
<b>Architect's Name and Address:</b> LATHAN ASSOCIATES ARCHITECTS, P.C. 300 Chase Park South, Suite 200 Hoover, AL 35244  Architect's Job No.: _____	<b>General Contractor's Name, Address, and Phone No.:</b>  
<b>EFFECTIVE DATES OF GUARANTEE:</b> Start: _____ Period: Five (5) Years <div style="text-align: center; font-size: small;">Date of Substantial Completion</div>	

General Contractor warrants to the Owner (named above) for a period of Five Years the entire Building Envelope will be weathertight, moisture and wind impermeable and uncompromised as a result of materials and/or workmanship provided. Should any portion of the Building Envelope develop moisture and/or wind infiltration during the warranty period, the General Contractor shall promptly address, employ clean-up and temporary measures to prevent further resultant damage and provide corrections to the Building Envelope and/or consequently damaged work of such quality consistent with the original scope of work as deemed by the Architect. Corrective work shall be subject to special scheduling as required to prevent disruption of the Owner's ongoing operations and shall be subject to the same General Conditions and work ethics as required for the original work.

Future building additions will not void this guarantee, except for that portion of the future addition that might affect the work under this contract at the point of connection and any damage caused by such addition. If this contract is for an addition to an existing building, then this guarantee covers the work involved at the point of connection.

Upon discovery, the Owner shall promptly notify the General Contractor of observed or suspected compromises and shall afford reasonable opportunity for the General Contractor to inspect the work, and to examine the evidence of such.

The General Contractor shall be afforded reasonable and scheduled opportunity to make periodic preventative observations of the work associated with this warranty.

This Building Envelope Warranty shall be effective concurrently with the required DCM Form C-9 General Contractor's Roofing Guarantee and both shall be submitted fully executed as independent documents to the Architect at the time of the Final Inspection.

This instrument has been duly executed this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
General Contractor's Authorized Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Typed Name and Title



TO: **Alabama Department of Finance**  
**Real Property Management**  
**Division of Construction Management**  
770 Washington Avenue, Suite 444  
Montgomery, AL 36130-1150  
(334) 242-4082 FAX (334) 242-4182

# CERTIFICATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

*Do not staple this form and/or attachments; use clips.  
Print single-sided; do not submit double-side printed documents.*

**ROUTING PROCEDURES ON NEXT PAGE**

**DCM (BC) No.** \_\_\_\_\_

<b>OWNER ENTITY NAME AND ADDRESS:</b>    Email to receive executed copy: _____	<b>ARCHITECTURAL / ENGINEERING FIRM NAME AND ADDRESS:</b>    Email to receive executed copy: _____
<b>CONTRACTOR COMPANY NAME AND ADDRESS:</b>    Email to receive executed copy: _____	<b>BONDING COMPANY NAME AND ADDRESS:</b>    Email to receive executed copy: _____
<b>PROJECT:</b>    	

Substantial Completion has been achieved for ☐ the entire Work ☐ the following portion of the Work:

The **Date of Substantial Completion** of the Work covered by this certificate is established to be \_\_\_\_\_.

"Substantial Completion" means the designated Work is sufficiently complete, in accordance with the Contract Documents, such that the Owner may occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use without disruption or interference by the Contractor in completing or correcting any remaining unfinished Work. The Date of Substantial Completion is the date upon which all warranties for the designated Work commence, unless otherwise agreed and recorded herein.

**Punch List:** A \_\_\_\_\_ page list of items to be completed or corrected prior to the Owner's approval of Final Payment is attached hereto, but does not alter the Contractor's responsibility to complete or correct all Work in full compliance with the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall complete or correct all items on the attached list, ready for re-inspection for Final Acceptance, within 30 days after the above Date of Substantial Completion, unless another date is stated here: \_\_\_\_\_. If completed or corrected within this period, warranties of these items commence on the Date of Substantial Completion, otherwise such warranties commence on the date of Final Acceptance of each item.

**Only one (1) originally executed substantial completion form shall be routed for signature. DCM office will mail the fully-executed original to the Owner and email copies to all parties.**

<b>RECOMMENDED BY (signature and email address required):</b>	
ARCHITECT/ENGINEER: _____	DATE: _____
<b>CONTRACTING PARTIES:</b>	
CONTRACTOR: _____	DATE: _____
OWNER: _____	DATE: _____
_____	DATE: _____
<b>APPROVALS:</b>	
DCM INSPECTOR: _____	DATE: _____
DCM CHIEF INSPECTOR: _____	DATE: _____
DCM DIRECTOR: _____	DATE: _____



DCM (BC) Number: \_\_\_\_\_

PSCA Projects: PSCA Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of the Construction Contract: \_\_\_\_\_

## Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims

<b>To Owner</b> ( <i>Entity name and address</i> ):  	<b>Project</b> ( <i>Same as appears in the Construction Contract</i> ):  
---	---

STATE OF:

COUNTY OF:

The undersigned hereby certifies that, except as listed below, payment has been made in full and all obligations have otherwise been satisfied for all materials and equipment furnished, for all work, labor and services performed, and for all known indebtedness and claims against the Contractor for damages arising in any manner in connection with the performance of the Construction Contract referenced above for which the Owner or Owner's property might in any way be held responsible or encumbered.

EXCEPTIONS:

Supporting Documents Attached Hereto:

1. Consent of Surety to Final Payment. Whenever Surety is involved, Consent of Surety is required. DCM Form C-20, Consent of Surety to Final Payment, may be used for this purpose.

Indicate attachment: ☐ Yes ☐ No

The following supporting document should be attached hereto if required by the Owner:

1. Contractor's Release of Waiver of Liens.
2. Separate Releases or Waivers of Liens from Subcontractors and material and equipment supplies, to the extent required by the Owner, accompanied by the list thereof.
3. Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens, DCM Form C-19.

**Contractor** (*Insert company name and address*):

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of authorized representative

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title

Sworn to and subscribed before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day  
of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public's Signature

My commission expires: \_\_\_\_\_

Seal:



DCM (BC) Number: \_\_\_\_\_

PSCA Projects: PSCA Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of the Construction Contract: \_\_\_\_\_

## Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens

<b>To Owner</b> ( <i>Entity name and address</i> ):  	<b>Project</b> ( <i>Same as appears in the Construction Contract</i> ):  
---	---

STATE OF:

COUNTY OF:

The undersigned hereby certifies that, except as listed below, the Releases or Waivers of Lien attached hereto include the Contractor, all Subcontractors, all suppliers of materials and equipment, and all performers of Work, labor or services who have or may have liens or encumbrances or the right to assert liens or encumbrances against any property of the Owner arising in any manner out of the performance of the Construction Contract referenced above.

EXCEPTIONS:

Supporting Documents Attached Hereto:

1. Contractor's Release of Waiver of Liens.
2. Separate Releases or Waivers of Liens from Subcontractors and material and equipment supplies, to the extent required by the Owner, accompanied by the list thereof.

**Contractor** (*Insert company name and address*):

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of authorized representative

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title

Sworn to and subscribed before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day  
of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public's Signature

My commission expires: \_\_\_\_\_

Seal:





DCM (BC) Number: \_\_\_\_\_

PSCA Projects: PSCA Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of the Construction Contract: \_\_\_\_\_

Surety's Bond Number: \_\_\_\_\_

## CONSENT OF SURETY TO FINAL PAYMENT

<b>To Owner</b> ( <i>Entity name and address</i> ):   	<b>Project</b> ( <i>Same as appears in the Construction Contract</i> ):   
---	---

In accordance with the provisions of the Contract between the Owner and the Contractor as indicated above, the

**Surety** (*Insert name and address of Surety*)

on bond of

**Contractor** (*Insert name and address of Contractor*)

hereby approves of the final payment to the Contractor, and agrees that final payment to the Contractor shall not relieve the Surety of any of its obligations to

**Owner** (*Insert name and address of Entity*):

as set forth in said Surety's bond.

**SIGNED AND SEALED** this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

**SURETY:**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name

Seal:

By \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Authorized Representative

\_\_\_\_\_  
Printed Name and Title

Note: Original Power of Attorney for the Surety's signatory shall be furnished with each of the original forms to be attached to each of the four (4) final payment forms.



## SAMPLE FORM OF ADVERTISEMENT FOR COMPLETION

### LEGAL NOTICE

In accordance with Chapter 1, Title 39, Code of Alabama, 1975, as amended, notice is hereby given

that \_\_\_\_\_  
(Contractor Company Name)

Contractor, has completed the Contract for ☐ (Construction) ☐ (Renovation) ☐ (Alteration)  
☐ (Equipment) ☐ (Improvement) of \_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of Project):

at \_\_\_\_\_

(Insert location data in County or City)

for the State of Alabama and the (County) (City) of \_\_\_\_\_,  
Owner(s), and have made request for final settlement of said Contract. All persons having  
any claim for labor, materials, or otherwise in connection with this project should immediately  
notify

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Architect / Engineer)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Contractor)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Business Address)

NOTE: This notice must be run once a week for four successive weeks for projects exceeding \$50,000.00. For projects of \$50,000.00 or less, run one time only. A copy of the publisher's affidavit of publication (including a copy of the advertisement) shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Design Professional for inclusion with DCM Form B-13: Final Payment Checklist for state agencies, PSCA-funded and other bond-funded projects.



1. Fully locally-funded State Agency, Public University and ACCS projects: DCM Form C-15 must be included in the project manual regardless of expected bid amount. If the awarded contract sum is \$100,000.00 or more, Contractor shall furnish and erect a project sign.  
Fully locally-funded K-12 school projects: Project sign is not required unless requested by Owner, if project sign is requested by Owner, include DCM Form C-15 in the project manual.  
Partially or fully PSCA-funded projects: DCM Form C-15 must be included in the project manual. Contractor shall furnish and erect a project sign for all PSCA-funded projects, regardless of contract sum. "Alabama Public School and College Authority" as well as the local owner entity must be included as awarding authorities on the project sign of all PSCA-funded projects.
2. Sign to be constructed of  $\frac{3}{4}$ " exterior grade plywood.
3. Paint with two coats best grade exterior paint before letters are painted. Option: In lieu of painted lettering on plywood, a corrugated plastic sign (displaying the same lettering, layout and colors as above) may be secured directly to the unpainted exterior grade plywood.
4. Sign shall be placed in a prominent location and easily readable from existing street or roadway.
5. Sign shall be maintained in good condition until project completion.
6. Slogan: Act 2020-167's title "*Investing In Alabama's Future*" should be placed on the project signs of all PSCA-funded projects, otherwise the Awarding Authority/Owner's slogan, if any, should be used. If the Awarding Authority/Owner of a fully locally-funded project does not have a slogan, the project sign does not require a slogan.



## Detail of PSCA Plaque

The diagram shows a rectangular plaque with a border. The text inside is as follows:

PROJECT NAME  
OR TITLE  
CITY NAME, ALABAMA  
ERECTED 20\_\_  
STATE OF ALABAMA  
PUBLIC SCHOOL AND COLLEGE AUTHORITY  
GOVERNOR ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ PRESIDENT  
☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ VICE PRESIDENT  
☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ SECRETARY  
SUPERVISED BY  
Alabama Real Property Management, Division of Construction Management  
☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ARCHITECT  
☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ CONTRACTOR

Dimensions: The plaque is 2'-0" high. The left side has a series of horizontal lines with dimensions: 1", 1", 1 5/8", 5/8", 1 5/8", 3/4", 7/8", 7/8", 1 1/8", 7/8", 1 1/2", 1/2", 1", 2/8", 7/8", 3/8", 3/4", 3/8", 1/2", 5/8", 3/8", 1", 3/4", 1/2", 3/4", 1".

### Notes:

1. PSCA plaques are installed as a permanent part of a building and are required on the following partially or fully PSCA-funded projects: Major renovations, renovations of four (4) or more rooms, and all new construction as follows: buildings, additions, and athletic facilities. DCM Form 9-M must be included in the project manual of such projects.
2. PSCA plaques are not required on the following partially or fully PSCA-funded projects: Sitework, paving, parking lots, utility work, re-roofing, and finishes (such as painting). DCM Form 9-M should not be included in the project manual of such projects.
3. Guidance for determining the names of PSCA officials:  
The PSCA President is the current Governor of Alabama.  
The PSCA Vice President is the current State Superintendent of Education.  
The PSCA Secretary is the current Director of the Alabama Department of Finance.





# GENERAL CONDITIONS of the CONTRACT

## CONTENTS

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Definitions</u>   | 25. <u>Owner's Right to Correct Work</u>               |
| 2. <u>Intent and Interpretation of the Contract Documents</u>             | 26. <u>Owner's Right to Stop or Suspend the Work</u>   |
| 3. <u>Contractor's Representation</u>                                     | 27. <u>Owner's Right to Terminate Contract</u>         |
| 4. <u>Documents Furnished to Contractor</u>                               | 28. <u>Contractor's Right to Suspend or Terminate</u>  |
| 5. <u>Ownership of Drawings</u>   | 29. <u>Progress Payments</u>                           |
| 6. <u>Supervision, Superintendent, &amp; Employees</u>                    | 30. <u>Certification &amp; Approvals for Payments</u>  |
| 7. <u>Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor</u> | 31. <u>Payments Withheld</u>                           |
| 8. <u>Surveys by Contractor</u>   | 32. <u>Substantial Completion</u>                      |
| 9. <u>Submittals</u>  | 33. <u>Occupancy or Use Prior to Completion</u>        |
| 10. <u>Documents and Samples at the Site</u>                              | 34. <u>Final Payment</u>                               |
| 11. <u>"As-built" Documents</u>   | 35. <u>Contractor's Warranty</u>                       |
| 12. <u>Progress Schedule</u>  | 36. <u>Indemnification Agreement</u>                   |
| 13. <u>Materials, Equipment &amp; Substitutions</u>                       | 37. <u>Insurance</u>                                   |
| 14. <u>Safety &amp; Protection of Persons &amp; Property</u>              | 38. <u>Performance and Payment Bonds</u>               |
| 15. <u>Hazardous Materials</u>  | 39. <u>Assignment</u>                                  |
| 16. <u>Inspection of the Work</u>   | 40. <u>Construction by Owner or Separate Contracts</u> |
| 17. <u>Correction of Work</u>   | 41. <u>Subcontracts</u>                                |
| 18. <u>Deductions for Uncorrected Work</u>                                | 42. <u>Architect's Status</u>                          |
| 19. <u>Changes in the Work</u>  | 43. <u>Cash Allowances</u>                             |
| 20. <u>Claims for Extra Cost or Extra Work</u>                            | 44. <u>Permits, Laws and Regulations</u>               |
| 21. <u>Differing Site Conditions</u>                                      | 45. <u>Royalties, Patents and Copyrights</u>           |
| 22. <u>Claims for Damages</u>   | 46. <u>Use of the Site</u>                             |
| 23. <u>Delays</u>   | 47. <u>Cutting and Patching</u>                        |
| 24. <u>Resolution of Claims and Disputes</u>                              | 48. <u>In-progress and Final Cleanup</u>               |
|   | 49. <u>Liquidated Damages</u>                          |
|   | 50. <u>Use of Foreign Material</u>                     |
|   | 51. <u>Sign</u>  |

## ARTICLE 1 DEFINITIONS

Whenever the following terms, or pronouns in place of them, are used in the Contract Documents, the intent and meaning shall be interpreted as follows:

- A. ALABAMA DIVISION OF CONSTRUCTION MANAGEMENT:** The Technical Staff of the Alabama Division of Construction Management.
- B. ARCHITECT:** The Architect is the person or entity lawfully licensed to practice architecture in the State of Alabama, who is under contract with the Owner as the primary design professional for the Project and identified as the Architect in the Construction Contract. The term "Architect" means the Architect or the Architect's authorized representative. If the employment of the Architect is terminated, the Owner shall employ a new Architect whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the former Architect. If the primary design professional for the Project is a Professional Engineer, the term "Engineer" shall be substituted for the term "Architect" wherever it appears in this document.

- C. **COMMISSION:** The former Alabama Building Commission, for which the Alabama Division of Construction Management has been designated by the Legislature as its successor.
- D. **CONTRACT:** The Contract is the embodiment of the Contract Documents. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the Owner and Contractor and supersedes any prior written or oral negotiations, representations or agreements that are not incorporated into the Contract Documents. The Contract may be amended only by a Contract Change Order or a Modification to the Construction Contract. The contractual relationship which the Contract creates between the Owner and the Contractor extends to no other persons or entities. The Contract consists of the following Contract Documents, including all additions, deletions, and modifications incorporated therein before the execution of the Construction Contract:
- (1) Construction Contract
  - (2) Performance and Payment Bonds
  - (3) Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplemental, and other Conditions)
  - (4) Specifications
  - (5) Drawings
  - (6) Contract Change Orders
  - (7) Modifications to the Construction Contract (applicable to PSCA Projects)
- E. **CONTRACT SUM:** The Contract Sum is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents. The term “Contract Sum” means the Contract Sum stated in the Construction Contract as may have been increased or decreased by Change Order(s) in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- F. **CONTRACT TIME:** The Contract Time is the period of time in which the Contractor must achieve Substantial Completion of the Work. The date on which the Contract Time begins is specified in the written Notice To Proceed issued to the Contractor by the Owner or Director. The Date of Substantial Completion is the date established in accordance with Article 32. The term “Contract Time” means the Contract Time stated in the Construction Contract as may have been extended by Change Order(s) in accordance with the Contract Documents. The term “day” as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.
- G. **CONTRACTOR:** The Contractor is the person or persons, firm, partnership, joint venture, association, corporation, cooperative, limited liability company, or other legal entity, identified as such in the Construction Contract. The term “Contractor” means the Contractor or the Contractor’s authorized representative.
- H. **DCM:** The Alabama Division of Construction Management.
- I. **DCM PROJECT INSPECTOR:** The member of the Technical Staff of the Alabama Division of Construction Management to whom the Project is assigned relative to executing the respective inspections and authorities described in Article 16, Inspection of the Work.
- J. **DEFECTIVE WORK:** The term “Defective Work” shall apply to: (1) any product, material, system, equipment, or service, or its installation or performance, which does not conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, (2) in-progress or completed Work the workmanship of which does not conform to the quality specified or, if not specified, to the quality produced by skilled workers performing work of a similar nature on similar projects in the state, (3) substitutions and deviations not properly submitted and approved or otherwise authorized, (4) temporary

supports, structures, or construction which will not produce the results required by the Contract Documents, and (5) materials or equipment rendered unsuitable for incorporation into the Work due to improper storage or protection.

- K. **DIRECTOR:** The Director of the Alabama Division of Construction Management.
- L. **DRAWINGS:** The Drawings are the portions of the Contract Documents showing graphically the design, location, layout, and dimensions of the Work, in the form of plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.
- M. **NOTICE TO PROCEED:** A proceed order issued by the Owner or Director, as applicable, fixing the date on which the Contractor shall begin the prosecution of the Work, which is also the date on which the Contract Time shall begin.
- N. **OWNER:** The Owner is the entity or entities identified as such in the Construction Contract and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative. The term "Owner" as used herein shall be synonymous with the term "Awarding Authority" as defined and used in Title 39 - Public Works, Code of Alabama, 1975, as amended.
- O. **THE PROJECT:** The Project is the total construction of which the Work required by these Contract Documents may be the entirety or only a part with other portions to be constructed by the Owner or separate contractors.
- P. **PROJECT MANUAL:** The Project Manual is the volume usually assembled for the Work which may include the Advertisement for Bids, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, General Conditions of the Contract, Supplementary Conditions, and Specifications of the Work.
- Q. **SPECIFICATIONS:** The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents which set forth in writing the standards of quality and performance of products, equipment, materials, systems, and services and workmanship required for acceptable performance of the Work.
- R. **SUBCONTRACTOR:** A Subcontractor is a person or entity who is undertaking the performance of any part of the Work by virtue of a contract with the Contractor. The term "Subcontractor" means a Subcontractor or its authorized representatives.
- S. **THE WORK:** The Work is the construction and services required by the Contract Documents and includes all labor, materials, supplies, equipment, and other items and services as are necessary to produce the required construction and to fulfill the Contractor's obligations under the Contract. The Work may constitute the entire Project or only a portion of it.

## ARTICLE 2

### INTENT and INTERPRETATION of the CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

#### A. INTENT

It is the intent of the Contract Documents that the Contractor shall properly execute and complete the Work described by the Contract Documents, and unless otherwise provided in the Contract, the

Contractor shall provide all labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work, in full accordance with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

**B. COMPLEMENTARY DOCUMENTS**

The Contract Documents are complementary. If Work is required by one Contract Document, the Contractor shall perform the Work as if it were required by all of the Contract Documents. However, the Contractor shall be required to perform Work only to the extent that is consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

**C. ORDER of PRECEDENCE**

Should any discrepancy arise between the various elements of the Contract Documents, precedence shall be given to them in the following order unless to do so would contravene the apparent Intent of the Contract Documents stated in preceding Paragraph A:

- (1) The Construction Contract.
- (2) Addenda, with those of later date having precedence over those of earlier date.
- (3) Supplementary Conditions (or other Conditions which modify the General Conditions of the Contract).
- (4) General Conditions of the Contract.
- (5) The Specifications.
- (6) Details appearing on the Drawings; large scale details shall take precedence over smaller scale details.
- (7) The Drawings; large scale drawings shall take precedence over smaller scale drawings.

**D. ORGANIZATION**

Except as may be specifically stated within the technical specifications, neither the organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections, or otherwise, nor any arrangement of the Drawings shall control how the Contractor subcontracts portions of the Work or assigns Work to any trade.

**E. INTERPRETATION**

(1) The Contract Documents shall be interpreted collectively, each part complementing the others and consistent with the Intent of the Contract Documents stated in preceding Paragraph A. Unless an item shown or described in the Contract Documents is specifically identified to be furnished or installed by the Owner or others or is identified as "Not In Contract" ("N.I.C."), the Contractor's obligation relative to that item shall be interpreted to include furnishing, assembling, installing, finishing, and/or connecting the item at the Contractor's expense to produce a product or system that is complete, appropriately tested, and in operative condition ready for use or subsequent construction or operation of the Owner or separate contractors. The omission of words or phrases for brevity of the Contract Documents, the inadvertent omission of words or phrases, or obvious typographical or written errors shall not defeat such interpretation as long as it is reasonably inferable from the Contract Documents as a whole.

(2) Words or phrases used in the Contract Documents which have well-known technical or

construction industry meanings are to be interpreted consistent with such recognized meanings unless otherwise indicated.

(3) Except as noted otherwise, references to standard specifications or publications of associations, bureaus, or organizations shall mean the latest edition of the referenced standard specification or publication as of the date of the Advertisement for Bids.

(4) In the case of inconsistency between Drawings and Specifications or within either document not clarified by addendum, the better quality or greater quantity of Work shall be provided in accordance with the Architect's interpretation.

(5) Any portions of the Contract Documents written in longhand must be initialed by all parties..

(6) Any doubt as to the meaning of the Contract Documents or any obscurity as to the wording of them, shall be promptly submitted in writing to the Architect for written interpretation, explanation, or clarification.

**F. SEVERABILITY.**

The partial or complete invalidity of any one or more provision of this Contract shall not affect the validity or continuing force and effect of any other provision.

**ARTICLE 3**  
**CONTRACTOR'S REPRESENTATIONS**

By executing the Construction Contract the Contractor represents to the Owner:

- A. The Contractor has visited the site of the Work to become familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed and to evaluate reasonably observable conditions as compared with requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. The Contractor shall use its best skill and attention to perform the Work in an expeditious manner consistent with the Contract Documents.
- C. The Contractor is an independent contractor and in performance of the Contract remains and shall act as an independent contractor having no authority to represent or obligate the Owner in any manner unless authorized by the Owner in writing.

**ARTICLE 4**  
**DOCUMENTS FURNISHED to CONTRACTOR**

Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, twenty sets of Drawings and Project Manuals will be furnished to the Contractor by the Architect without charge. Other copies requested will be furnished at reproduction cost.

**ARTICLE 5**  
**OWNERSHIP of DRAWINGS**

All original or duplicated Drawings, Specifications, and other documents prepared by the Architect, and furnished to the Contractor are the property of the Architect and are to be used solely for this Project and not to be used in any manner for other work. Upon completion of the Work, all copies of Drawings and Specifications, with the exception of the Contractor's record set, shall be returned or accounted for by the Contractor to the Architect, on request.

**ARTICLE 6**  
**SUPERVISION, SUPERINTENDENT, and EMPLOYEES**

**A. SUPERVISION and CONSTRUCTION METHODS**

(1) The term "Construction Methods" means the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures utilized by the Contractor in performing the Work. The Contractor is solely responsible for supervising and coordinating the performance of the Work, including the selection of Construction Methods, unless the Contract Documents give other specific instructions concerning these matters.

(2) The Contractor is solely and completely responsible for job site safety, including the protection of persons and property in accordance with Article 14.

(3) The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of not only the Contractor and its agents and employees, but all persons and entities, and their agents and employees, who are performing portions of the Work for or on behalf of the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

(4) The Contractor shall be responsible to inspect the in-progress and completed Work to verify its compliance with the Contract Documents and to insure that any element or portion of the Work upon which subsequent Work is to be applied or performed is in proper condition to receive the subsequent Work.

**B. SUPERINTENDENT**

(1) The Contractor shall employ and maintain a competent level of supervision for the performance of the Work at the Project site, including a superintendent who shall:

(a) have full authority to receive instructions from the Architect or Owner and to act on those instructions and (b) be present at the Project site at all times during which Work is being performed.

(2) Before beginning performance of the Work, the Contractor shall notify the Architect in writing of the name and qualifications of its proposed superintendent so that the Owner may review the individual's qualifications. If, for reasonable cause, the Owner refuses to approve the individual, or withdraws its approval after once giving it, the Contractor shall name a different superintendent for the Owner's review and approval. Any disapproved superintendent will not perform in that capacity thereafter at the Project site.

**C. EMPLOYEES**

The Contractor shall permit only fit and skilled persons to perform the Work. The Contractor shall enforce safety procedures, strict discipline, and good order among persons performing the Work. The Contractor will remove from its employment on the Project any person who deliberately or persistently produces non-conforming Work or who fails or refuses to conform to reasonable rules of personal conduct contained in the Contract Documents or implemented by the Owner and delivered to the Contractor in writing during the course of the Work.

**ARTICLE 7**

**REVIEW of CONTRACT DOCUMENTS and FIELD CONDITIONS by CONTRACTOR**

- A. In order to facilitate assembly and installation of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, before starting each portion of the Work, the Contractor shall examine and compare the relevant Contract Documents, and compare them to relevant field measurements made by the Contractor and any conditions at the site affecting that portion of the Work.
- B. If the Contractor discovers any errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly report them to the Architect as a written request for information that includes a detailed statement identifying the specific Drawings or Specifications that are in need of clarification and the error, omission, or inconsistency discovered in them.
- (1) The Contractor shall not be expected to act as a licensed design professional and ascertain whether the Contract Documents comply with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, building codes, and rules and regulations, but the Contractor shall be obligated to promptly notify the Architect of any such noncompliance discovered by or made known to the Contractor. If the Contractor performs Work without fulfilling this notification obligation, the Contractor shall pay the resulting costs and damages that would have been avoided by such notification.
- (2) The Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner for errors, omissions, or inconsistencies that may exist in the Contract Documents, or between the Contract Documents and conditions at the site, unless the Contractor knowingly fails to report a discovered error, omission, or inconsistency to the Architect, in which case the Contractor shall pay the resulting costs and damages that would have been avoided by such notification.
- C. If the Contractor considers the Architect's response to a request for information to constitute a change to the Contract Documents involving additional costs and/or time, the Contractor shall follow the procedures of Article 20, Claims for Extra Cost or Extra Work.
- D. If, with undue frequency, the Contractor requests information that is obtainable through reasonable examination and comparison of the Contract Documents, site conditions, and previous correspondence, interpretations, or clarifications, the Contractor shall be liable to the Owner for reasonable charges from the Architect for the additional services required to review, research, and respond to such requests for information.

**ARTICLE 8**  
**SURVEYS by CONTRACTOR**

- A. The Contractor shall provide competent engineering services to assure accurate execution of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall verify the figures given for the contours, approaches and locations shown on the Drawings before starting any Work and be responsible for the accuracy of the finished Work. Without extra cost to the Owner, the Contractor shall engage a licensed surveyor if necessary to verify boundary lines, keep within property lines, and shall be responsible for encroachments on rights or property of public or surrounding property owners.
- B. The Contractor shall establish all base lines for the location of the principal components of the Work and make all detail surveys necessary for construction, including grade stakes, batter boards and other working points, lines and elevations. If the Work involves alteration of or addition to existing structures or improvements, the Contractor shall locate and measure elements of the existing conditions as is necessary to facilitate accurate fabrication, assembly, and installation of new Work in the relationship, alignment, and/or connection to the existing structure or improvement as is shown in the Contract Documents.

**ARTICLE 9**  
**SUBMITTALS**

- A. Where required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall submit shop drawings, product data, samples and other information (hereinafter referred to as Submittals) to the Architect for the purpose of demonstrating the way by which the Contractor proposes to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents. Submittals which are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.
- B. The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for the accuracy of its Submittals and the conformity of its submitted information to the requirements of the Contract Documents. Each Submittal shall bear the Contractor's approval, evidencing that the Contractor has reviewed and found the information to be in compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. Submittals which are not marked as reviewed and approved by the Contractor may be returned by the Architect without action.
- C. The Contractor shall prepare and deliver its submittals to the Architect sufficiently in advance of construction requirements and in a sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of separate contractors. In coordinating the Submittal process with its construction schedule, the Contractor shall allow sufficient time to permit adequate review by the Architect.
- D. By approving a Submittal the Contractor represents not only that the element of Work presented in the Submittal complies with the requirements of the Contract Documents, but also that the Contractor has:
  - (1) found the layout and/or dimensions in the Submittal to be comparable with those in the Contract Documents and other relevant Submittals and has made field measurements as necessary to verify their accuracy, and
  - (2) determined that products, materials, systems, equipment and/or procedures presented in the Submittal are compatible with those presented, or being presented, in other relevant Submittals and



with the Contractor's intended Construction Methods.

- E. The Contractor shall not fabricate or perform any portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require Submittals until the respective Submittals have been approved by the Architect.
- F. In the case of a resubmission, the Contractor shall direct specific attention to all revisions in a Submittal. The Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to any revisions that were not brought to the Architect's attention.
- G. If the Contract Documents specify that a Submittal is to be prepared and sealed by a registered architect or licensed engineer retained by the Contractor, all drawings, calculations, specifications, and certifications of the Submittal shall bear the Alabama seal of registration and signature of the registered/licensed design professional who prepared them or under whose supervision they were prepared. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy, accuracy and completeness of such a Submittal, provided that all performance and design criteria that such Submittal must satisfy are sufficiently specified in the Contract Documents. The Architect will review, approve or take other appropriate action on such a Submittal only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall not be responsible for the adequacy of the performance or design criteria specified in the Contract Documents.

#### **H. DEVIATIONS**

(1) The Architect is authorized by the Owner to approve "minor" deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents. "Minor" deviations are defined as those which are in the interest of the Owner, do not materially alter the quality or performance of the finished Work, and do not affect the cost or time of performance of the Work. Deviations which are not "minor" may be authorized only by the Owner through the Change Order procedures of Article 19.

(2) Any deviation from the requirements of the Contract Documents contained in a Submittal shall be clearly identified as a "Deviation from Contract Requirements" (or by similar language) within the Submittal and, in a letter transmitting the Submittal to the Architect, the Contractor shall direct the Architect's attention to, and request specific approval of, the deviation. Otherwise, the Architect's approval of a Submittal does not constitute approval of deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents contained in the Submittal.

(3) The Contractor shall bear all costs and expenses of any changes to the Work, changes to work performed by the Owner or separate contractors, or additional services by the Architect required to accommodate an approved deviation unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Architect in writing of the required changes and a Change Order has been issued authorizing the deviation and accounting for such resulting changes and costs.

#### **I. ARCHITECT'S REVIEW and APPROVAL**

(1) The Architect will review the Contractor's Submittals for conformance with requirements of, and the design concept expressed in, the Contract Documents and will approve or take other appropriate action upon them. This review is not intended to verify the accuracy and completeness of details such as dimensions and quantities nor to substantiate installation instructions or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor. However, the Architect shall advise the Contractor of any errors or omissions which the Architect

may detect during this review. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

(2) The Architect will review and respond to all Submittals with reasonable promptness to avoid delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner, Contractor or separate contractors, while allowing sufficient time to permit adequate review.

(3) No corrections or changes to Submittals indicated by the Architect will be considered as authorizations to perform Extra Work. If the Contractor considers such correction or change of a Submittal to require Work which differs from the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Architect in writing in accordance with Article 20, Claims for Extra Cost or Extra Work.

**J. CONFORMANCE with SUBMITTALS**

The Work shall be constructed in accordance with approved Submittals.

**ARTICLE 10**  
**DOCUMENTS and SAMPLES at the SITE**

**A. "AS ISSUED" SET**

The Contractor shall maintain at the Project site, in good order, at least one copy of all Addenda, Change Orders, supplemental drawings, written directives and clarifications, and approved Submittals intact as issued, and an updated construction schedule.

**B. "POSTED" SET**

The Contractor shall maintain at the Project site, in good order, at least one set of the Drawings and Project Manual into which the Contractor has "posted"(incorporated) all Addenda, Change Orders, supplemental drawings, clarifications, and other information pertinent to the proper performance of the Work. The Contractor shall assure that all sets of the Drawings and Project Manuals being used by the Contractor, Subcontractors, and suppliers are "posted" with the current information to insure that updated Contract Documents are used for performance of the Work.

**C. RECORD SET**

One set of the Drawings and Project Manual described in Paragraph B shall be the Contractor's record set in which the Contractor shall record all field changes, corrections, selections, final locations, and other information as will be duplicated on the "As-built" documents required under Article 11. The Contractor shall record such "as-built" information in its record set as it becomes available through progress of the Work. The Contractor's performance of this requirement shall be subject to confirmation by the Architect at any time as a prerequisite to approval of Progress Payments.

**D.** The documents and samples required by this Article to be maintained at the Project site shall be readily available to the Architect, Owner, DCM Project Inspector, and their representatives.

**ARTICLE 11**  
**“AS-BUILT” DOCUMENTS**

- A. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall deliver two (2) sets of “As-built” documents, as described herein, to the Architect for submission to the Owner upon completion of the Work. Each set of “As-built” documents shall consist of a copy of the Drawings and Project Manual, in like-new condition, into which the Contractor has neatly incorporated all Addenda, Change Orders, supplemental drawings, clarifications, field changes, corrections, selections, actual locations of underground utilities, and other information as required herein or specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
- B. The Contractor shall use the following methods for incorporating information into the “As-built” documents:
- (1) **Drawings**
- (a) To the greatest extent practicable, information shall be carefully drawn and lettered, in ink, on the Drawings in the form of sketches, details, plans, notes, and dimensions as required to provide a fully dimensioned record of the Work. When required for clarity, sketches, details, or partial plans shall be drawn on supplemental sheets and bound into the Drawings and referenced on the drawing being revised.
- (b) Where a revised drawing has been furnished by the Architect, the drawing of latest date shall be bound into the Drawings in the place of the superseded drawing.
- (c) Where a supplemental drawing has been furnished by the Architect, the supplemental drawing shall be bound into the Drawings in an appropriate location and referred to by notes added to the drawing being supplemented.
- (d) Where the Architect has furnished details, partial plans, or lengthy notes of which it would be impractical for the Contractor to redraw or letter on a drawing, such information may be affixed to the appropriate drawing with transparent tape if space is available on the drawing.
- (e) Any entry of information made in the Drawings that is the result of an Addendum or Change Order, shall identify the Addendum or Change Order from which it originated.
- (2) **Project Manual**
- (a) A copy of all Addenda and Change Orders, excluding drawings thereof, shall be bound in the front of the Project Manual.
- (b) Where a document, form, or entire specification section is revised, the latest issue shall be bound into the Project Manual in the place of the superseded issue.
- (c) Where information within a specification section is revised, the deleted or revised information shall be drawn through in ink and an adjacent note added identifying the Addendum or Change Order containing the revised information.
- C. Within ten days after the Date of Substantial Completion of the Work, or the last completed portion of the Work, the Contractor shall submit the “As-built” documents to the Architect for approval. If the Architect requires that any corrections be made, the documents will be returned in a reasonable time for correction and resubmission.

**ARTICLE 12**  
**PROGRESS SCHEDULE**

(Not applicable if the Contract Time is 60 days or less.)

- A. The Contractor shall within fifteen days after the date of commencement stated in the Notice to Proceed, or such other time as may be provided in the Contract Documents, prepare and submit to the Architect for review and approval a practicable construction schedule informing the Architect and Owner of the order in which the Contractor plans to carry on the Work within the Contract Time. The Architect's review and approval of the Contractor's construction schedule shall be only for compliance with the specified format, Contract Time, and suitability for monitoring progress of the Work and shall not be construed as a representation that the Architect has analyzed the schedule to form opinions of sequences or durations of time represented in the schedule.
- B. If a schedule format is not specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the construction schedule shall be prepared using DCM Form C-11, "Sample Progress Schedule and Report", (contained in the Project Manual) or similar format of suitable scale and detail to indicate the percentage of Work scheduled to be completed at the end of each month. At the end of each month the Contractor shall enter the actual percentage of completion on the construction schedule submit two copies to the Architect, and attach one copy to each copy of the monthly Application for Payment. The construction schedule shall be revised to reflect any agreed extensions of the Contract Time or as required by conditions of the Work.
- C. If a more comprehensive schedule format is specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents or voluntarily employed by the Contractor, it may be used in lieu of DCM Form C-11.
- D. The Contractor's construction schedule shall be used by the Contractor, Architect, and Owner to determine the adequacy of the Contractor's progress. The Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining progress in accordance with the currently approved construction schedule and shall increase the number of shifts, and/or overtime operations, days of work, and/or the amount of construction plant and equipment as may be necessary to do so. If the Contractor's progress falls materially behind the currently approved construction schedule and, in the opinion of the Architect or Owner, the Contractor is not taking sufficient steps to regain schedule, the Architect may, with the Owner's concurrence, issue the Contractor a Notice to Cure pursuant to Article 27. In such a Notice to Cure the Architect may require the Contractor to submit such supplementary or revised construction schedules as may be deemed necessary to demonstrate the manner in which schedule will be regained.

**ARTICLE 13**  
**EQUIPMENT, MATERIALS, and SUBSTITUTIONS**

- A. Every part of the Work shall be executed in a workmanlike manner in accordance with the Contract Documents and approved Submittals. All materials used in the Work shall be furnished in sufficient quantities to facilitate the proper and expeditious execution of the Work and shall be new except such materials as may be expressly provided or allowed in the Contract Documents to be otherwise.
- B. Whenever a product, material, system, item of equipment, or service is identified in the Contract Documents by reference to a trade name, manufacturer's name, model number, etc.(hereinafter

referred to as “source”), and only one or two sources are listed, or three or more sources are listed and followed by “or approved equal” or similar wording, it is intended to establish a required standard of performance, design, and quality, and the Contractor may submit, for the Architect’s approval, products, materials, systems, equipment, or services of other sources which the Contractor can prove to the Architect’s satisfaction are equal to, or exceed, the standard of performance, design and quality specified, unless the provisions of Paragraph D below apply. Such proposed substitutions are not to be purchased or installed without the Architect’s written approval of the substitution.

- C. If the Contract Documents identify three or more sources for a product, material, system, item of equipment or service to be used and the list of sources is not followed by “or approved equal” or similar wording, the Contractor may make substitution only after evaluation by the Architect and execution of an appropriate Contract Change Order.
- D. If the Contract Documents identify only one source and expressly provide that it is an approved sole source for the product, material, system, item of equipment, or service, the Contractor must furnish the identified sole source.

#### **ARTICLE 14** **SAFETY and PROTECTION of PERSONS and PROPERTY**

- A. The Contractor shall be solely and completely responsible for conditions at the Project site, including safety of all persons (including employees) and property. The Contractor shall create, maintain, and supervise conditions and programs to facilitate and promote safe execution of the Work, and shall supervise the Work with the attention and skill required to assure its safe performance. Safety provisions shall conform to OSHA requirements and all other federal, state, county, and local laws, ordinances, codes, and regulations. Where any of these are in conflict, the more stringent requirement shall be followed. Nothing contained in this Contract shall be construed to mean that the Owner has employed the Architect nor has the Architect employed its consultants to administer, supervise, inspect, or take action regarding safety programs or conditions at the Project site.
- B. The Contractor shall employ Construction Methods, safety precautions, and protective measures that will reasonably prevent damage, injury or loss to:
  - (1) workers and other persons on the Project site and in adjacent and other areas that may be affected by the Contractor’s operations;
  - (2) the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated into the Work and stored by the Contractor on or off the Project site; and
  - (3) other property on, or adjacent to, the Project site, including trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, utilities, and other improvements not designated in the Contract Documents to be removed, relocated, or replaced.
- C. The Contractor shall be responsible for the prompt remedy of damage and loss to property, including the filing of appropriate insurance claims, caused in whole or in part by the fault or negligence of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable.

- D. The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, ordinances, rules, regulations and lawful orders of public authorities bearing on safety and protection of persons or property, including without limitation notices to adjoining property owners of excavation or other construction activities that potentially could cause damage or injury to adjoining property or persons thereon.
- E. The Contractor shall erect and maintain barriers, danger signs, and any other reasonable safeguards and warnings against hazards as may be required for safety and protection during performance of the Contract and shall notify owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of conditions that may exist or arise which may jeopardize their safety.
- F. If use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment or unusual Construction Methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise commensurate care and employ supervisors and workers properly qualified to perform such activity.
- G. The Contractor shall furnish a qualified safety representative at the Project site whose duties shall include the prevention of accidents. The safety representative shall be the Contractor's superintendent, unless the Contractor assigns this duty to another responsible member of its on-site staff and notifies the Owner and Architect in writing of such assignment.
- H. The Contractor shall not permit a load to be applied, or forces introduced, to any part of the construction or site that may cause damage to the construction or site or endanger safety of the construction, site, or persons on or near the site.
- I. The Contractor shall have the right to act as it deems appropriate in emergency situations jeopardizing life or property. The Contractor shall be entitled to equitable adjustment of the Contract Sum or Contract Time for its efforts expended for the sole benefit of the Owner in an emergency. Such adjustment shall be determined as provided in Articles 19 and 20.
- J. The duty of the Architect and the Architect's consultants to visit the Project site to conduct periodic inspections of the Work or for other purposes shall not give rise to a duty to review or approve the adequacy of the Contractor's safety program, safety supervisor, or any safety measure which Contractor takes or fails to take in, on, or near the Project site.

## **ARTICLE 15**

### **HAZARDOUS MATERIALS**

- A. A Hazardous Material is any substance or material identified as hazardous under any federal, state, or local law or regulation, or any other substance or material which may be considered hazardous or otherwise subject to statutory or regulatory requirements governing its handling, disposal, and/or clean-up. Existing Hazardous Materials are Hazardous Materials discovered at the Project site and not introduced to the Project site by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable.
- B. If, during the performance of the Work, the Contractor encounters a suspected Existing Hazardous Material, the Contractor shall immediately stop work in the affected area, take measures appropriate to the condition to keep people away from the suspected Existing Hazardous Material, and

immediately notify the Architect and Owner of the condition in writing.

- C. The Owner shall obtain the services of an independent laboratory or professional consultant, appropriately licensed and qualified, to determine whether the suspected material is a Hazardous Material requiring abatement and, if so, to certify after its abatement that it has been rendered harmless. Any abatement of Existing Hazardous Materials will be the responsibility of the Owner. The Owner will advise the Contractor in writing of the persons or entities who will determine the nature of the suspected material and those who will, if necessary, perform the abatement. The Owner will not employ persons or entities to perform these services to whom the Contractor or Architect has reasonable objection.
- D. After certification by the Owner's independent laboratory or professional consultant that the material is harmless or has been rendered harmless, work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement between the Owner and Contractor. If the material is found to be an Existing Hazardous Material and the Contractor incurs additional cost or delay due to the presence and abatement of the material, the Contract Sum and/or Contract Time shall be appropriately adjusted by a Contract Change Order pursuant to Article 19.
- E. The Owner shall not be responsible for Hazardous Materials introduced to the Project site by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable unless such Hazardous Materials were required by the Contract Documents.

## **ARTICLE 16**

### **INSPECTION of the WORK**

#### **A. GENERAL**

(1) The Contractor is solely responsible for the Work's compliance with the Contract Documents; therefore, the Contractor shall be responsible to inspect in-progress and completed Work, and shall verify its compliance with the Contract Documents and that any element or portion of the Work upon which subsequent Work is to be applied or performed is in proper condition to receive the subsequent Work. Neither the presence nor absence of inspections by the Architect, Owner, Director, DCM Project Inspector, any public authority having jurisdiction, or their representatives shall relieve the Contractor of responsibility to inspect the Work, for responsibility for Construction Methods and safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, or from any other requirement of the Contract Documents.

(2) The Architect, Owner, Director, DCM Project Inspector, any public authority having jurisdiction, and their representatives shall have access at all times to the Work for inspection whenever it is in preparation or progress, and the Contractor shall provide proper facilities for such access and inspection. All materials, workmanship, processes of manufacture, and methods of construction, if not otherwise stipulated in the Contract Documents, shall be subject to inspection, examination, and test at any and all places where such manufacture and/or construction are being carried on. Such inspections will not unreasonably interfere with the Contractor's operations.

(3) The Architect will inspect the Work as a representative of the Owner. The Architect's inspections may be supplemented by inspections by the DCM Project Inspector as a representative of the Alabama Division of Construction Management.

(4) The Contractor may be charged by the Owner for any extra cost of inspection incurred by the Owner or Architect on account of material and workmanship not being ready at the time of inspection set by the Contractor.

**B. TYPES of INSPECTIONS**

(1) **SCHEDULED INSPECTIONS and CONFERENCES.** Scheduled Inspections and Conferences are conducted by the Architect, scheduled by the Architect in coordination with the Contractor and DCM Project Inspector, and are attended by the Contractor and applicable Subcontractors, suppliers and manufacturers, and the DCM Project Inspector. Scheduled Inspections and Conferences of this Contract include:

(a) **Pre-construction Conference.**

(b) **Pre-roofing Conference** (not applicable if the Contract involves no roofing work)

(c) **Above Ceiling Inspection(s):** An above ceiling inspection of all spaces in the building is required before the ceiling material is installed. Above ceiling inspections are to be conducted at a time when all above ceiling systems are complete and tested to the greatest extent reasonable pending installation of the ceiling material. System identifications and markings are to be complete. All fire-rated construction including fire-stopping of penetrations and specified identification above the ceiling shall be complete. Ceiling framing and suspension systems shall be complete with lights, grilles and diffusers, access panels, fire protection drops for sprinkler heads, etc., installed in their final locations to the greatest extent reasonable. Above ceiling framing to support ceiling mounted equipment shall be complete. The above ceiling construction shall be complete to the extent that after the inspection the ceiling material can be installed without disturbance.

(d) **Final Inspection(s):** A Final Inspection shall establish that the Work, or a designated portion of the Work, is Substantially Complete in accordance with Article 32 and is accepted by the Architect, Owner, and DCM Project Inspector as being ready for the Owner's occupancy or use. At the conclusion of this inspection, items requiring correction or completion ("punch list" items) shall be minimal and require only a short period of time for accomplishment to establish Final Acceptance of the Work. If the Work, or designated portion of the Work, includes the installation, or modification, of a fire alarm system or other life safety systems essential to occupancy, such systems shall have been tested and appropriately certified before the Final Inspection.

(e) **Year-end Inspection(s):** An inspection of the Work, or each separately completed portion thereof, is required near the end of the Contractor's one year warranty period(s). The subsequent delivery of the Architect's report of this inspection will serve as confirmation that the Contractor was notified of Defective Work found within the warranty period in accordance with Article 35.

(2) **PERIODIC INSPECTIONS.** Periodic Inspections are conducted throughout the course of the Work by the Architect, the Architect's consultants, their representatives, and the DCM Project Inspector, jointly or independently, with or without advance notice to the Contractor.

(3) **SPECIFIED INSPECTIONS and TESTS.** Specified Inspections and Tests include inspections, tests, demonstrations, and approvals that are either specified in the Contract Documents or required by laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, or orders of public authorities having jurisdiction, to be performed by the Contractor, one of its Subcontractors, or an independent testing laboratory or firm (whether paid for by the Contractor or Owner).

**C. INSPECTIONS by the ARCHITECT**



(1) The Architect is not authorized to revoke, alter, relax, or waive any requirements of the Contract Documents (other than “minor” deviations as defined in Article 9 and “minor” changes as defined in Article 19), to finally approve or accept any portion of the Work or to issue instructions contrary to the Contract Documents without concurrence of the Owner.

(2) The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of the Contractor’s operations and as otherwise necessary to:

- (a) become generally familiar with the in-progress and completed Work and the quality of the Work,
- (b) determine whether the Work is progressing in general accordance with the Contractor’s schedule and is likely to be completed within the Contract Time,
- (c) visually compare readily accessible elements of the Work to the requirements of the Contract Documents to determine, in general, if the Contractor’s performance of the Work indicates that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents when completed,
- (d) endeavor to guard the Owner against Defective Work,
- (e) review and address with the Contractor any problems in implementing the requirements of the Contract Documents that the Contractor may have encountered, and
- (f) keep the Owner fully informed about the Project.

(3) The Architect shall have the authority to reject Defective Work or require its correction, but shall not be required to make exhaustive investigations or examinations of the in-progress or completed portions of the Work to expose the presence of Defective Work. However, it shall be an obligation of the Architect to report in writing, to the Owner, Contractor, and DCM Project Inspector, any Defective Work recognized by the Architect.

(4) The Architect shall have the authority to require the Contractor to stop work only when, in the Architect’s reasonable opinion, such stoppage is necessary to avoid Defective Work. The Architect shall not be liable to the Contractor or Owner for the consequences of any decisions made by the Architect in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise this authority.

(5) “Inspections by the Architect” includes appropriate inspections by the Architect’s consultants as dictated by their respective disciplines of design and the stage of the Contractor’s operations.

**D. INSPECTIONS by the DCM PROJECT INSPECTOR**

(1) The DCM Project Inspector will:

- (a) participate in scheduled inspections and conferences as practicable,
- (b) perform periodic inspections of in-progress and completed Work to ensure code compliance of the Project and general conformance of the Work with the Contract Documents, and
- (c) monitor the Contractor's progress and performance of the Work.

(2) The DCM Project Inspector shall have the authority to:

- (a) reject Work that is not in compliance with the State Building Code adopted by the DCM, unless the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents in which case the DCM Project Inspector will advise the Architect to initiate appropriate corrective action, and
- (b) notify the Architect, Owner, and Contractor of Defective Work recognized by the DCM Project Inspector.

(3) The DCM Project Inspector's periodic inspections will usually be scheduled around key stages of construction based upon information reported by the Architect. As the Architect or Owner deems appropriate, the DCM Project Inspector, as well as other members of the Technical Staff, can be requested to schedule special inspections or meetings to address specific matters. The written findings of DCM Project Inspector will be transmitted to the Owner, Contractor, and Architect.

(4) The DCM Project Inspector is not authorized to revoke, alter, relax, or waive any requirements of the Contract Documents, to finally approve or accept any portion of the Work or to issue instructions contrary to the Contract Documents without concurrence of the Owner. The Contractor shall not proceed with Work as a result of instructions or findings of the DCM Project Inspector which the Contractor considers to be a change to the requirements of the Contract Documents without written authorization of the Owner through the Architect.

**E. UNCOVERING WORK**

(1) If the Contractor covers a portion of the Work before it is examined by the Architect and this is contrary to the Architect's request or specific requirements in the Contract Documents, then, upon written request of the Architect, the Work must be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

(2) Without a prior request or specific requirement that Work be examined by the Architect before it is covered, the Architect may request that Work be uncovered for examination and the Contractor shall uncover it. If the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted under Article 19 to compensate the Contractor for the costs of uncovering and replacement. If the Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, uncovering, correction, and replacement shall be at the Contractor's expense unless the condition was caused by the Owner or a separate contractor in which event the Owner shall be responsible for payment of such costs.

**F. SPECIFIED INSPECTIONS and TESTS**

(1) The Contractor shall schedule and coordinate Specified Inspections and Tests to be made at appropriate times so as not to delay the progress of the Work or the work of the Owner or separate contractors. If the Contract Documents require that a Specified Inspection or Test be witnessed or attended by the Architect or Architect's consultant, the Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of the time and place of the Specified Inspection or Test. If a Specified Inspection or Test reveals that Work is not in compliance with requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall bear the costs of correction, repeating the Specified Inspection or Test, and any related costs incurred by the Owner, including reasonable charges, if any, by the Architect for additional services. Through appropriate Contract Change Order the Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections or approvals which become Contract requirements subsequent to the receipt of bids.

(2) If the Architect, Owner, or public authority having jurisdiction determines that inspections, tests, demonstrations, or approvals in addition to Specified Inspections and Tests are required, the Contractor shall, upon written instruction from the Architect, arrange for their performance by an entity acceptable to the Owner, giving timely notice to the architect of the time and place of their performance. Related costs shall be borne by the Owner unless the procedures reveal that Work is

not in compliance with requirements of the Contract Documents, in which case the Contractor shall bear the costs of correction, repeating the procedures, and any related costs incurred by the Owner, including reasonable charges, if any, by the Architect for additional services.

(3) Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, required certificates of Specified Inspections and Tests shall be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.

(4) Failure of any materials to pass Specified Inspections and Tests will be sufficient cause for refusal to consider any further samples of the same brand or make of that material for use in the Work.

#### **ARTICLE 17** **CORRECTION of DEFECTIVE WORK**

- A. The Contractor shall, at the Contractor's expense, promptly correct Defective Work rejected by the Architect or which otherwise becomes known to the Contractor, removing the rejected or nonconforming materials and construction from the project site.
- B. Correction of Defective Work shall be performed in such a timely manner as will avoid delay of completion, use, or occupancy of the Work and the work of the Owner and separate contractors.
- C. The Contractor shall bear all expenses related to the correction of Defective Work, including but not limited to: (1) additional testing and inspections, including repeating Specified Inspections and Tests, (2) reasonable services and expenses of the Architect, and (3) the expense of making good all work of the Contractor, Owner, or separate contractors destroyed or damaged by the correction of Defective Work.

#### **ARTICLE 18** **DEDUCTIONS for UNCORRECTED WORK**

If the Owner deems it advisable and in the Owner's interest to accept Defective Work, the Owner may allow part or all of such Work to remain in place, provided an equitable deduction from the Contract Sum, acceptable to the Owner, is offered by the Contractor.

#### **ARTICLE 19** **CHANGES in the WORK**

##### **A. GENERAL**

(1) The Owner may at any time direct the Contractor to make changes in the Work which are within the general scope of the Contract, including changes in the Drawings, Specifications, or other portions of the Contract Documents to add, delete, or otherwise revise portions of the Work. The Architect is authorized by the Owner to direct "minor" changes in the Work by written order to the Contractor. "Minor" changes in the Work are defined as those which are in the interest of the Owner, do not materially alter the quality or performance of the finished Work, and do not affect the cost or time of performance of the Work. Changes in the Work which are not "minor" may be

authorized only by the Owner.

(2) If the Owner directs a change in the Work, the change shall be incorporated into the Contract by a Contract Change Order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Contractor, Owner, and other signatories to the Construction Contract, stating their agreement upon the change or changes in the Work and the adjustments, if any, in the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.

(3) Subject to compliance with Alabama's Public Works Law, the Owner may, upon agreement by the Contractor, incorporate previously unawarded bid alternates into the Contract.

(4) In the event of a claim or dispute as to the appropriate adjustment to the Contract Sum or Contract Time due to a directive to make changes in the Work, the Work shall proceed as provided in this article subject to subsequent agreement of the parties or final resolution of the dispute pursuant to Article 24.

(5) Consent of surety will be obtained for all Contract Change Orders involving an increase in the Contract Sum.

(6) Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents and the Contractor shall proceed promptly to perform changes in the Work, unless otherwise directed by the Owner through the Architect.

(7) All change orders require DCM Form C-12: Contract Change Order and DCM Form B-11: Change Order Justification. Only Change Orders 10% or greater of the current contract amount require the Owner's legal advisor's signature on DCM Form B-11: Change Order Justification.

## **B. DETERMINATION of ADJUSTMENT of the CONTRACT SUM**

The adjustment of the Contract Sum resulting from a change in the Work shall be determined by one of the following methods, or a combination thereof, as selected by the Owner:

(1) **Lump Sum.** By mutual agreement to a lump sum based on or negotiated from an itemized cost proposal from the Contractor. Additions to the Contract Sum shall include the Contractor's direct costs plus a maximum 15% markup for overhead and profit. Where subcontract work is involved the total mark-up for the Contractor and a Subcontractor shall not exceed 25%. **Changes which involve a net credit to the Owner shall include fair and reasonable credits for overhead and profit on the deducted work, in no case less than 5%.** For the purposes of this method of determining an adjustment of the Contract Sum, "overhead" shall cover the Contractor's indirect costs of the change, such as the cost of bonds, superintendent and other job office personnel, watchman, job office, job office supplies and expenses, temporary facilities and utilities, and home office expenses.

(2) **Unit Price.** By application of Unit Prices included in the Contract or subsequently agreed to by the parties. However, if the character or quantity originally contemplated is materially changed so that application of such unit price to quantities of Work proposed will cause substantial inequity to either party, the applicable unit price shall be equitably adjusted.

(3) **Force Account.** By directing the Contractor to proceed with the change in the Work on a "force account" basis under which the Contractor shall be reimbursed for reasonable expenditures incurred by the Contractor and its Subcontractors in performing added Work and the Owner shall

receive reasonable credit for any deleted Work. The Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Owner may prescribe, an itemized accounting of the cost of the change together with sufficient supporting data. Unless otherwise stated in the directive, the adjustment of the Contract Sum shall be limited to the following:

- (a) costs of labor and supervision, including employee benefits, social security, retirement, unemployment and workers' compensation insurance required by law, agreement, or under Contractor's or Subcontractor's standard personnel policy;
- (b) cost of materials, supplies and equipment, including cost of delivery, whether incorporated or consumed;
- (c) rental cost of machinery and equipment, not to exceed prevailing local rates if contractor-owned;
- (d) costs of premiums for insurance required by the Contract Documents, permit fees, and sales, use or similar taxes related to the change in the Work;
- (e) reasonable credits to the Owner for the value of deleted Work, without Contractor or Subcontractor mark-ups; and
- (f) for additions to the Contract Sum, mark-up of the Contractor's direct costs for overhead and profit not exceeding 15% on Contractor's work nor exceeding 25% for Contractor and Subcontractor on a Subcontractor's work. **Changes which involve a net credit to the Owner shall include fair and reasonable credits for overhead and profit on the deducted work, in no case less than 5%.** For the purposes of this method of determining an adjustment of the Contract Sum, "overhead" shall cover the Contractor's indirect costs of the change, such as the cost of insurance other than mentioned above, bonds, superintendent and other job office personnel, watchman, use and rental of small tools, job office, job office supplies and expenses, temporary facilities and utilities, and home office expenses.

#### **C. ADJUSTMENT of the CONTRACT TIME due to CHANGES**

(1) Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted for the performance of a change provided that the Contractor notifies the Architect in writing that the change will increase the time required to complete the Work. Such notice shall be provided no later than:

- (a) with the Contractor's cost proposal stating the number of days of extension requested, or
- (b) within ten days after the Contractor receives a directive to proceed with a change in advance of submitting a cost proposal, in which case the notice should provide an estimated number of days of extension to be requested, which may be subject to adjustment in the cost proposal.

(2) The Contract Time shall be extended only to the extent that the change affects the time required to complete the entire Work of the Contract, taking into account the concurrent performance of the changed and unchanged Work.

#### **D. CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES**

(1) If the Owner proposes to make a change in the Work, the Architect will request that the Contractor provide a cost proposal for making the change to the Work. The request shall be in writing and shall adequately describe the proposed change using drawings, specifications, narrative, or a combination thereof. Within 21 days after receiving such a request, or such other time as may be stated in the request, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a written proposal, properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to facilitate evaluation. The stated

time within which the Contractor must submit a proposal may be extended if, within that time, the Contractor makes a written request with reasonable justification thereof.

(2) The Contractor may voluntarily offer a change proposal which, in the Contractor's opinion, will reduce the cost of construction, maintenance, or operation or will improve the cost-effective performance of an element of the Project, in which case the Owner, through the Architect, will accept, reject, or respond otherwise within 21 days after receipt of the proposal, or such other reasonable time as the Contractor may state in the proposal.

(3) If the Contractor's proposal is acceptable to the Owner, or is negotiated to the mutual agreement of the Contractor and Owner, the Architect will prepare an appropriate Contract Change Order for execution. Upon receipt of the fully executed Contract Change Order, the Contractor shall proceed with the change.

(4) In advance of delivery of a fully executed Contract Change Order, the Architect may furnish to the Contractor a written authorization to proceed with an agreed change. However, such an authorization shall be effective only if it:

- (a) identifies the Contractor's accepted or negotiated proposal for the change,
- (b) states the agreed adjustments, if any, in Contract Sum and Contract Time,
- (c) states that funds are available to pay for the change, and
- (d) is signed by the Owner.

(5) If the Contractor and Owner cannot agree on the amount of the adjustment in the Contract Sum for a change, the Owner, through the Architect, may order the Contractor to proceed with the change on a Force Account basis, but the net cost to the Owner shall not exceed the amount quoted in the Contractor's proposal. Such order shall state that funds are available to pay for the change.

(6) If the Contractor does not promptly respond to a request for a proposal, or the Owner determines that the change is essential to the final product of the Work and that the change must be effected immediately to avoid delay of the Project, the Owner may:

- (a) determine with the Contractor a sufficient maximum amount to be authorized for the change and
- (b) direct the Contractor to proceed with the change on a Force Account basis pending delivery of the Contractor's proposal, stating the maximum increase in the Contract Sum that is authorized for the change.

(7) Pending agreement of the parties or final resolution of any dispute of the total amount due the Contractor for a change in the Work, amounts not in dispute for such changes in the Work may be included in Applications for Payment accompanied by an interim Change Order indicating the parties' agreement with part of all of such costs or time extension. Once a dispute is resolved, it shall be implemented by preparation and execution of an appropriate Change Order.

## **ARTICLE 20**

### **CLAIMS for EXTRA COST or EXTRA WORK**

- A. If the Contractor considers any instructions by the Architect, Owner, DCM Project Inspector, or public authority having jurisdiction to be contrary to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will involve extra work and/or cost under the Contract, the Contractor shall give the Architect

written notice thereof within ten days after receipt of such instructions, and in any event before proceeding to execute such work. As used in this Article, "instructions" shall include written or oral clarifications, directions, instructions, interpretations, or determinations.

- B. The Contractor's notification pursuant to Paragraph 20.A shall state: (1) the date, circumstances, and source of the instructions, (2) that the Contractor considers the instructions to constitute a change to the Contract Documents and why, and (3) an estimate of extra cost and time that may be involved to the extent an estimate may be reasonably made at that time.
- C. Except for claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property, no claim for extra cost or extra work shall be considered in the absence of prior notice required under Paragraph 20.A.
- D. Within ten days of receipt of a notice pursuant to Paragraph 20.A, the Architect will respond in writing to the Contractor, stating one of the following:
  - (1) The cited instruction is rescinded.
  - (2) The cited instruction is a change in the Work and in which manner the Contractor is to proceed with procedures of Article 19, Changes in the Work.
  - (3) The cited instruction is reconfirmed, is not considered by the Architect to be a change in the Contract Documents, and the Contractor is to proceed with Work as instructed.
- E. If the Architect's response to the Contractor is as in Paragraph 20.D(3), the Contractor shall proceed with the Work as instructed. If the Contractor continues to consider the instructions to constitute a change in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall, within ten days after receiving the Architect's response, notify the Architect in writing that the Contractor intends to submit a claim pursuant to Article 24, Resolution of Claims and Disputes

## **ARTICLE 21**

### **DIFFERING SITE CONDITIONS**

#### **A. DEFINITION**

**"Differing Site Conditions" are:**

- (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions at the Project site which differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents, or
- (2) unknown physical conditions at the Project site which are of an unusual nature, differing materially from conditions ordinarily encountered and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character required by the Contract Documents.

#### **B. PROCEDURES**

If Differing Site Conditions are encountered, then the party discovering the condition shall promptly notify the other party before the condition is disturbed and in no event later than ten days after discovering the condition. Upon such notice and verification that a Differing Site Condition exists, the Architect will, with reasonable promptness and with the Owner's concurrence, make changes in the Drawings and/or Specifications as are deemed necessary to conform to the Differing

Site Condition. Any increase or decrease in the Contract Sum or Contract Time that is warranted by the changes will be made as provided under Article 19, Changes in the Work. If the Architect determines a Differing Site Condition has not been encountered, the Architect shall notify the Owner and Contractor in writing, stating the reason for that determination.

## **ARTICLE 22** **CLAIMS for DAMAGES**

If either party to the Contract suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, written notice of such injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time after the discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

## **ARTICLE 23** **DELAYS**

- A. A delay beyond the Contractor's control at any time in the commencement or progress of Work by an act or omission of the Owner, Architect, or any separate contractor or by labor disputes, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, fires, abnormal floods, tornadoes, or other cataclysmic events of nature, may entitle the Contractor to an extension of the Contract Time provided, however, that the Contractor shall, within ten days after the delay first occurs, give written notice to the Architect of the cause of the delay and its probable effect on progress of the entire Work.
- B. Adverse weather conditions that are more severe than anticipated for the locality of the Work during any given month may entitle the Contractor to an extension of Contract Time provided, however;
  - (1) the weather conditions had an adverse effect on construction scheduled to be performed during the period in which the adverse weather occurred, which in reasonable sequence would have an effect on completion of the entire Work,
  - (2) the Contractor shall, within twenty-one days after the end of the month in which the delay occurs, give the Architect written notice of the delay that occurred during that month and its probable effect on progress of the Work, and
  - (3) within a reasonable time after giving notice of the delay, the Contractor provides the Architect with sufficient data to document that the weather conditions experienced were unusually severe for the locality of the Work during the month in question. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, data documenting unusually severe weather conditions shall compare actual weather conditions to the average weather conditions for the month in question during the previous five years as recorded by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) or similar record-keeping entities.
- C. Adjustments, if any, of the Contract Time pursuant to this Article shall be incorporated into the Contract by a Contract Change Order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Contractor, Owner, and other signatories to the Construction Contract or, at closeout of the Contract, by mutual



written agreement between the Contractor and Owner. The adjustment of the Contract Time shall not exceed the extent to which the delay extends the time required to complete the entire Work of the Contract.

- D. The Contractor shall not be entitled to any adjustment of the Contract Sum for damage due to delays claimed pursuant to this Article unless the delay was caused by the Owner or Architect and was either:
- (1) the result of bad faith or active interference or
  - (2) beyond the contemplation of the parties and not remedied within a reasonable time after notification by the Contractor of its presence.

## **ARTICLE 24**

### **RESOLUTION of CLAIMS and DISPUTES**

#### **A. APPLICABILITY of ARTICLE**

(1) As used in this Article, "Claims and Disputes" include claims or disputes asserted by the Contractor, its Surety, or Owner arising out of or related to the Contract, or its breach, including without limitation claims seeking, under the provisions of the Contract, equitable adjustment of the Contract Sum or Contract Time and claims and disputes arising between the Contractor (or its Surety) and Owner regarding interpretation of the Contract Documents, performance of the Work, or breach of or compliance with the terms of the Contract.

(2) "Resolution" addressed in this Article applies only to Claims and Disputes arising between the Contractor (or its Surety) and Owner and asserted after execution of the Construction Contract and prior to the date upon which final payment is made. Upon making application for final payment the Contractor may reserve the right to subsequent Resolution of existing Claims by including a list of all Claims, in stated amounts, which remain to be resolved and specifically excluding them from any release of claims executed by the Contractor, and in that event Resolution may occur after final payment is made.

#### **B. CONTINUANCE of PERFORMANCE**

An unresolved Claim or Dispute shall not be just cause for the Contractor to fail or refuse to proceed diligently with performance of the Contract or for the Owner to fail or refuse to continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

#### **C. GOOD FAITH EFFORT to SETTLE**

The Contractor and Owner agree that, upon the assertion of a Claim by the other, they will make a good faith effort, with the Architect's assistance and advice, to achieve mutual resolution of the Claim. If mutually agreed, the Contractor and Owner may endeavor to resolve a Claim through mediation. If efforts to settle are not successful, the Claim shall be resolved in accordance with paragraph D or E below, whichever applies.

#### **D. FINAL RESOLUTION for STATE-FUNDED CONTRACTS**

- (1) If the Contract is funded in whole or in part with state funds, the final Resolution of Claims

and Disputes which cannot be resolved by the Contractor (or its Surety) and Owner shall be by the Director, whose decision shall be final, binding, and conclusive upon the Contractor, its Surety, and the Owner.

(2) When it becomes apparent to the party asserting a Claim (the Claimant) that an impasse to mutual resolution has been reached, the Claimant may request in writing to the Director that the Claim be resolved by decision of the Director. Such request by the Contractor (or its Surety) shall be submitted through the Owner. Should the Owner fail or refuse to submit the Contractor's request within ten days of receipt of same, the Contractor may forward such request directly to the Director. Upon receipt of a request to resolve a Claim, the Director will instruct the parties as to procedures to be initiated and followed.

(3) If the respondent to a Claim fails or refuses to participate or cooperate in the Resolution procedures to the extent that the Claimant is compelled to initiate legal proceedings to induce the Respondent to participate or cooperate, the Claimant will be entitled to recover, and may amend its Claim to include, the expense of reasonable attorney's fees so incurred.

#### **E. FINAL RESOLUTION for LOCALLY-FUNDED CONTRACTS**

If the Contract is funded in whole with funds provided by a city or county board of education or other local governmental authority and the Contract Documents do not stipulate a binding alternative dispute resolution method, the final resolution of Claims and Disputes which cannot be resolved by the Contractor (or its Surety) and Owner may be by any legal remedy available to the parties. Alternatively, upon the written agreement of the Contractor (or its Surety) and the Owner, final Resolution of Claims and Disputes may be by submission to binding arbitration before a neutral arbitrator or panel or by submission to the Director in accordance with preceding Paragraph D.

### **ARTICLE 25** **OWNER'S RIGHT to CORRECT DEFECTIVE WORK**

If the Contractor fails or refuses to correct Defective Work in a timely manner that will avoid delay of completion, use, or occupancy of the Work or work by the Owner or separate contractors, the Architect may give the Contractor written Notice to Cure the Defective Work within a reasonable, stated time. If within ten days after receipt of the Notice to Cure the Contractor has not proceeded and satisfactorily continued to cure the Defective Work or provided the Architect with written verification that satisfactory positive action is in process to cure the Defective Work, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other remedy available to the Owner, correct the Defective Work and deduct the actual cost of the correction from payment then or thereafter due to the Contractor.

### **ARTICLE 26** **OWNER'S RIGHT to STOP or SUSPEND the WORK**

#### **A. STOPPING the WORK for CAUSE**

If the Contractor fails to correct Defective Work or persistently fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may direct the Contractor in writing to stop the Work, or any part of the Work, until the cause for the Owner's directive has been eliminated;

however, the Owner's right to stop the Work shall not be construed as a duty of the Owner to be exercised for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity.

**B. SUSPENSION by the OWNER for CONVENIENCE**

(1) The Owner may, at any time and without cause, direct the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, or any part of the Work, for a period of time as the Owner may determine.

(2) The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted, pursuant to Article 19, for reasonable increases in the cost and time caused by an Owner-directed suspension, delay or interruption of Work for the Owner's convenience. However, no adjustment to the Contract Sum shall be made to the extent that the same or concurrent Work is, was or would have been likewise suspended, delayed or interrupted for other reasons not caused by the Owner.

**ARTICLE 27**  
**OWNER'S RIGHT to TERMINATE CONTRACT**

**A. TERMINATION by the OWNER for CAUSE**

(1) **Causes:** The Owner may terminate the Contractor's right to complete the Work, or any designated portion of the Work, if the Contractor:

- (a) should be adjudged bankrupt, or should make a general assignment for the benefit of the Contractor's creditors, or if a receiver should be appointed on account of the Contractor's insolvency to the extent termination for these reasons is permissible under applicable law;
- (b) refuses or fails to prosecute the Work, or any part of the Work, with the diligence that will insure its completion within the Contract Time, including any extensions, or fails to complete the Work within the Contract Time;
- (c) refuses or fails to perform the Work, including prompt correction of Defective Work, in a manner that will insure that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents;
- (d) fails to pay for labor or materials supplied for the Work or to pay Subcontractors in accordance with the respective Subcontract;
- (e) persistently disregards laws, ordinances, or rules, regulations or orders of a public authority having jurisdiction, or the instructions of the Architect or Owner; or
- (f) is otherwise guilty of a substantial breach of the Contract.

(2) **Procedure for Unbonded Construction Contracts (Generally, contracts less than \$50,000):**

- (a) **Notice to Cure:** In the presence of any of the above conditions the Architect may give the Contractor written notice to cure the condition within a reasonable, stated time, but not less than ten days after the Contractor receives the notice.
- (b) **Notice of Termination:** If, at the expiration of the time stated in the Notice to Cure, the Contractor has not proceeded and satisfactorily continued to cure the condition or provided the Architect with written verification that satisfactory positive action is in process to cure the condition, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner, give the Contractor written notice that the Contractor's right to complete the Work, or a designated portion of the Work, shall terminate seven days after the Contractor's receipt of the

written Notice of Termination.

(c) If the Contractor satisfies a Notice to Cure, but the condition for which the notice was first given reoccurs, the Owner may give the Contractor a seven day Notice of Termination without giving the Contractor another Notice to Cure.

(d) At the expiration of the seven days of the termination notice, the Owner may:

.1 take possession of the site, of all materials and equipment stored on and off site, and of all Contractor-owned tools, construction equipment and machinery, and facilities located at the site, and

.2 finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient.

(e) The Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment under the Contract until the Work is completed.

(f) If the Owner's cost of completing the Work, including correction of Defective Work, compensation for additional architectural, engineering, managerial, and administrative services, and reasonable attorneys' fees due to the default and termination, is less than the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, the excess balance less liquidated damages for delay shall be paid to the Contractor. If such cost to the Owner including attorney's fees, plus liquidated damages, exceeds the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. Final Resolution of any claim or Dispute involving the termination or any amount due any party as a result of the termination shall be pursuant to Article 24.

(g) Upon the Contractor's request, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the Owner's cost of completing the Work.

**(3) Procedure for Bonded Construction Contracts (Generally, contracts over \$50,000):**

(a) **Notice to Cure:** In the presence of any of the above conditions the Architect may give the Contractor and its Surety written Notice to Cure the condition within a reasonable, stated time, but not less than ten days after the Contractor receives the notice.

(b) **Notice of Termination:** If, at the expiration of the time stated in the Notice to Cure, the Contractor has not proceeded and satisfactorily continued to cure the condition or provided the Architect with written verification that satisfactory positive action is in process to cure the condition, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner, give the Contractor and its Surety written notice declaring the Contractor to be in default under the Contract and stating that the Contractor's right to complete the Work, or a designated portion of the Work, shall terminate seven days after the Contractor's receipt of the written Notice of Termination.

(c) If the Contractor satisfies a Notice to Cure, but the condition for which the notice was first given reoccurs, the Owner may give the Contractor a Notice of Termination without giving the Contractor another Notice to Cure.

(d) **Demand on the Performance Bond:** With the Notice of Termination the Owner shall give the Surety a written demand that, upon the effective date of the Notice of Termination, the Surety promptly fulfill its obligation to take charge of and complete the Work in accordance with the terms of the Performance Bond.

(e) **Surety Claims:** Upon receiving the Owner's demand on the Performance Bond, the Surety shall assume all rights and obligations of the Contractor under the Contract. However, the Surety shall also have the right to assert "Surety Claims" to the Owner, which are defined as claims relating to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect prior to termination of the Contractor which may have prejudiced its rights as Surety or its interest in the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum. If the Surety wishes to assert a Surety Claim, it shall give the Owner, through the Architect, written notice within twenty-one days after first recognizing the

condition giving rise to the Surety Claim. The Surety Claim shall then be submitted to the Owner, through the Architect, no later than sixty days after giving notice thereof, but no such Surety Claims shall be considered if submitted after the date upon which final payment becomes due. Final resolution of Surety Claims shall be pursuant to Article 24, Resolution of Claims and Disputes. The presence or possibility of a Surety Claim shall not be just cause for the Surety to fail or refuse to take charge of and complete the Work or for the Owner to fail or refuse to continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**(f) Payments to Surety:** The Surety shall be paid for completing the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents as if the Surety were the Contractor. The Owner shall have the right to deduct from payments to the Surety any reasonable costs incurred by the Owner, including compensation for additional architectural, engineering, managerial, and administrative services, and attorneys' fees as necessitated by termination of the Contractor and completion of the Work by the Surety. No further payments shall be made to the Contractor by the Owner. The Surety shall be solely responsible for any accounting to the Contractor for the portion of the Contract Sum paid to Surety by Owner or for the costs and expenses of completing the Work.

**(4) Wrongful Termination:** If any notice of termination by the Owner for cause, made in good faith, is determined to have been wrongly given, such termination shall be effective and compensation therefore determined as if it had been a termination for convenience pursuant to Paragraph B below.

**B. TERMINATION by the OWNER for CONVENIENCE**

**(1)** The Owner may, without cause and at any time, terminate the performance of Work under the Contract in whole, or in part, upon determination by the Owner that such termination is in the Owner's best interest. Such termination is referred to herein as Termination for Convenience.

**(2)** Upon receipt of a written notice of Termination for Convenience from the Owner, the Contractor shall:

- (a)** stop Work as specified in the notice;
- (b)** enter into no further subcontracts or purchase orders for materials, services, or facilities, except as may be necessary for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of the termination or to complete Work that is not terminated;
- (c)** terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders to the extent they relate to the terminated Work;
- (d)** take such actions as are necessary, or directed by the Architect or Owner, to protect, preserve, and make safe the terminated Work; and
- (e)** complete performance of the Work that is not terminated.

**(3)** In the event of Termination for Convenience, the Contractor shall be entitled to receive payment for the Work performed prior to its termination, including materials and equipment purchased and delivered for incorporation into the terminated Work, and any reasonable costs incurred because of the termination. Such payment shall include reasonable mark-up of costs for overhead and profit, not to exceed the limits stated in Article 19, Changes in the Work. The Contractor shall be entitled to receive payment for reasonable anticipated overhead ("home office") and shall not be entitled to receive payment for any profits anticipated to have been gained from the terminated Work. A proposal for decreasing the Contract Sum shall be submitted to the Architect by the Contractor in such time and detail, and with such supporting documentation, as is reasonably

directed by the Owner. Final modification of the Contract shall be by Contract Change Order pursuant to Article 19. Any Claim or Dispute involving the termination or any amount due a party as a result shall be resolved pursuant to Article 24.

**ARTICLE 28**  
**CONTRACTOR'S RIGHT to SUSPEND or TERMINATE the CONTRACT**

**A. SUSPENSION by the OWNER**

If all of the Work is suspended or delayed for the Owner's convenience or under an order of any court, or other public authority, for a period of sixty days, through no act or fault of the Contractor or a Subcontractor, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, then the Contractor may give the Owner a written Notice of Termination which allows the Owner fourteen days after receiving the Notice in which to give the Contractor appropriate written authorization to resume the Work. Absent the Contractor's receipt of such authorization to resume the Work, the Contract shall terminate upon expiration of this fourteen day period and the Contractor will be compensated by the Owner as if the termination had been for the Owner's convenience pursuant to Article 27.B.

**B. NONPAYMENT**

The Owner's failure to pay the undisputed amount of an Application for Payment within sixty days after receiving it from the Architect (Certified pursuant to Article 30) shall be just cause for the Contractor to give the Owner fourteen days' written notice that the Work will be suspended pending receipt of payment but that the Contract shall terminate if payment is not received within fourteen days (or a longer period stated by the Contractor) of the expiration of the fourteen day notice period.

(1) If the Work is then suspended for nonpayment, but resumed upon receipt of payment, the Contractor will be entitled to compensation as if the suspension had been by the Owner pursuant to Article 26, Paragraph B.

(2) If the Contract is then terminated for nonpayment, the Contractor will be entitled to compensation as if the termination had been by the Owner pursuant to Article 27, Paragraph B.

**ARTICLE 29**  
**PROGRESS PAYMENTS**

**A. FREQUENCY of PROGRESS PAYMENTS**

Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner will make payments to the Contractor as the Work progresses based on monthly estimates prepared and certified by the Contractor, approved and certified by the Architect, and approved by the Owner and other authorities whose approval is required.

**B. SCHEDULE of VALUES**

Within ten days after receiving the Notice to Proceed the Contractor shall submit to the Architect a

DCM Form C-10SOV, Schedule of Values, which is a breakdown of the Contract Sum showing the value of the various parts of the Work for billing purposes. The Schedule of Values shall be printable on 8.5" x 11" for DCM's scanning purposes and shall divide the Contract Sum into as many parts ("line items") as the Architect and Owner determine necessary to permit evaluation and to show amounts attributable to Subcontractors. The Contractor's overhead and profit are to be proportionately distributed throughout the line items of the Schedule of Values. Upon approval, the Schedule of Values shall be used as a basis for monthly Applications for Payment, unless it is later found to be in error. Approved change order amounts shall be added to or incorporated into the Schedule of Values as mutually agreed by the Contractor and Architect.

**C. APPLICATIONS for PAYMENTS**

(1) Based on the approved Schedule of Values, each DCM Form C-10, Application and Certificate for Payment shall show the Contractor's estimate of the value of Work performed in each line item as of the end of the billing period. The Contractor's cost of materials and equipment not yet incorporated into the Work, but delivered and suitably stored on the site, may be considered in monthly Applications for Payment. One payment application per month may be submitted. Each DCM Form C-10, Application and Certificate for Payment shall match to the penny and be accompanied by an attached DCM Form C-10SOV, Schedule of Values.

(2) The Contractor's estimate of the value of Work performed and stored materials must represent such reasonableness as to warrant certification by the Architect to the Owner in accordance with Article 30. Each monthly Application for Payment shall be supported by such data as will substantiate the Contractor's right to payment, including without limitation copies of requisitions from subcontractors and material suppliers.

(3) If no other date is stated in the Contract Documents or agreed upon by the parties, each Application for Payment shall be submitted to the Architect on or about the first day of each month and payment shall be issued to the Contractor within thirty days after an Application for Payment is Certified pursuant to Article 30 and delivered to the Owner.

(4) Four copies of DCM Form C-10, Application and Certificate for Payment containing original signatures, with each copy of DCM Form C-10 to include all attachments, shall be submitted to DCM for review following the Contractor's, Notary's, Architect's and Owner's signatures.

**D. MATERIALS STORED OFF SITE**

Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor's cost of materials and equipment to be incorporated into the Work, which are stored off the site, may also be considered in monthly Applications for Payment under the following conditions:

- (1) the contractor has received written approval from the Architect and Owner to store the materials or equipment off site in advance of delivering the materials to the off site location;
- (2) a Certificate of Insurance is furnished to the Architect evidencing that a special insurance policy, or rider to an existing policy, has been obtained by the Contractor providing all-risk property insurance coverage, specifically naming the materials or equipment stored, and naming the Owner as an additionally insured party;
- (3) the Architect is provided with a detailed inventory of the stored materials or equipment and the materials or equipment are clearly marked in correlation to the inventory to facilitate inspection and verification of the presence of the materials or equipment by the Architect or

- Owner;
- (4) the materials or equipment are properly and safely stored in a bonded warehouse, or a facility otherwise approved in advance by the Architect and Owner; and
  - (5) compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest.

**E. RETAINAGE**

(1) "Retainage" is defined as the money earned and, therefore, belonging to the Contractor (subject to final settlement of the Contract) which has been retained by the Owner conditioned on final completion and acceptance of all Work required by the Contract Documents. Retainage shall not be relied upon by Contractor (or Surety) to cover or off-set unearned monies attributable to uncompleted or uncorrected Work.

(2) In making progress payments the Owner shall retain five percent of the estimated value of Work performed and the value of the materials stored for the Work; but after retainage has been held upon fifty percent of the Contract Sum, no additional retainage will be withheld.

**F. CONTRACTOR'S CERTIFICATION**

(1) Each Application for Payment shall bear the Contractor's notarized certification that, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work covered by the Application for Payment has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents, that all amounts have been paid by the Contractor for Work for which previous Certificates for Payments were issued and payments received from the Owner and that the current payment shown in the Application for Payment has not yet been received.

(2) By making this certification the Contractor represents to the Architect and Owner that, upon receipt of previous progress payments from the Owner, the Contractor has promptly paid each Subcontractor, in accordance with the terms of its agreement with the Subcontractor, the amount due the Subcontractor from the amount included in the progress payment on account of the Subcontractor's Work and stored materials. The Architect and Owner may advise Subcontractors and suppliers regarding percentages of completion or amounts requested and/or approved in an Application for Payment on account of the Subcontractor's Work and stored materials.

**G. PAYMENT ESTABLISHES OWNERSHIP**

All material and Work covered by progress payments shall become the sole property of the Owner, but the Contractor shall not be relieved from the sole responsibility for the care and protection of material and Work upon which payments have been made and for the restoration of any damaged material and Work.

**ARTICLE 30**  
**CERTIFICATION and APPROVALS for PAYMENT**

- A. The Architect's review, approval, and certification of Applications for Payment shall be based on the Architect's general knowledge of the Work obtained through site visits and the information provided by the Contractor with the Application. The Architect shall not be required to perform



exhaustive examinations, evaluations, or estimates of the cost of completed or uncompleted Work or stored materials to verify the accuracy of amounts requested by the Contractor, but the Architect shall have the authority to adjust the Contractor's estimate when, in the Architect's reasonable opinion, such estimates are overstated or understated.

- B. Within seven days after receiving the Contractor's monthly Application for Payment, or such other time as may be stated in the Contract Documents, the Architect will take one of the following actions:
- (1) The Architect will approve and certify the Application as submitted and forward it to the Owner as a Certification for Payment for approval by the Owner (and other approving authorities, if any) and payment.
  - (2) If the Architect takes exception to any amounts claimed by the Contractor and the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on revised amounts, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to certify to the Owner, transmitting a copy of same to the Contractor.
  - (3) To the extent the Architect determines may be necessary to protect the Owner from loss on account of any of the causes stated in Article 31, the Architect may subtract from the Contractor's estimates and will issue a Certificate for Payment to the Owner, with a copy to the Contractor, for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due and notify the Contractor and Owner in writing of the Architect's reasons for withholding payment in whole or in part.
- C. Neither the Architect's issuance of a Certificate for Payment nor the Owner's resulting progress payment shall be a representation to the Contractor that the Work in progress or completed at that time is accepted or deemed to be in conformance with the Contract Documents.
- D. The Architect shall not be required to determine that the Contractor has promptly or fully paid Subcontractors and suppliers or how or for what purpose the Contractor has used monies paid under the Construction Contract. However, the Architect may, upon request and if practical, inform any Subcontractor or supplier of the amount, or percentage of completion, approved or paid to the Contractor on account of the materials supplied or the Work performed by the Subcontractor.

### **ARTICLE 31** **PAYMENTS WITHHELD**

- A. The Architect may nullify or revise a previously issued Certificate for Payment prior to Owner's payment thereunder to the extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss on account of any of the following causes not discovered or fully accounted for at the time of the certification or approval of the Application for Payment:
- (1) Defective Work;
  - (2) filed, or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of, claims arising out of the Contract by other parties against the Contractor;
  - (3) the Contractor's failure to pay for labor, materials or equipment or to pay Subcontractors;
  - (4) reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
  - (5) damage suffered by the Owner or another contractor caused by the Contractor, a

- Subcontractor, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable;
- (6) reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance is insufficient to cover applicable liquidated damages; or
  - (7) the Contractor's persistent failure to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. If the Owner deems it necessary to withhold payment pursuant to preceding Paragraph A, the Owner will notify the Contractor and Architect in writing of the amount to be withheld and the reason for same.
- C. The Architect shall not be required to withhold payment for completed or partially completed Work for which compliance with the Contract Documents remains to be determined by Specified Inspections or Final Inspections to be performed in their proper sequence. However, if Work for which payment has been approved, certified, or made under an Application for Payment is subsequently determined to be Defective Work, the Architect shall determine an appropriate amount that will protect the Owner's interest against the Defective Work.
- (1) If payment has not been made against the Application for Payment first including the Defective Work, the Architect will notify the Owner and Contractor of the amount to be withheld from the payment until the Defective Work is brought into compliance with the Contract Documents.
  - (2) If payment has been made against the Application for Payment first including the Defective Work, the Architect will withhold the appropriate amount from the next Application for Payment submitted after the determination of noncompliance, such amount to then be withheld until the Defective Work is brought into compliance with the Contract Documents.
- D. The amount withheld will be paid with the next Application for Payment certified and approved after the condition for which the Owner has withheld payment is removed or otherwise resolved to the Owner's satisfaction.
- E. The Owner shall have the right to withhold from payments due the Contractor under this Contract an amount equal to any amount which the Contractor owes the Owner under another contract.

## **ARTICLE 32**

### **SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

- A. Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion of the Work is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use without disruption or interference by the Contractor in completing or correcting any remaining unfinished Work ("punch list" items). Substantial Completion of the Work, or a designated portion of the Work, is not achieved until so agreed in a Certificate of Substantial Completion signed by the Contractor, Architect, Owner, and Technical Staff of the Alabama Division of Construction Management.
- B. The Contractor shall notify the Architect in writing when it considers the Work, or a portion of the Work which the Owner has agreed to accept separately, to be substantially complete and ready for a Final Inspection pursuant to Article 16. In this notification the Contractor shall identify any items remaining to be completed or corrected for Final Acceptance prior to final payment.

- C. Substantial Completion is achieved and a Final Inspection is appropriate only when a minimal number of punch list items exists and only a short period of time will be required to correct or complete them. Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice for a Final Inspection, the Architect will advise the Contractor in writing of any conditions of the Work which the Architect or Owner is aware do not constitute Substantial Completion, otherwise, a Final Inspection will proceed within a reasonable time after the Contractor's notice is given. However, the Architect will not be required to prepare lengthy listings of punch list items; therefore, if the Final Inspection discloses that Substantial Completion has not been achieved, the Architect may discontinue or suspend the inspection until the Contractor does achieve Substantial Completion.

**D. CERTIFICATE of SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

- (1) When the Work or a designated portion of the Work is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare and sign a Certificate of Substantial Completion to be signed in order by the Contractor, Owner, and Alabama Division of Construction Management.
- (2) When signed by all parties, the Certificate of Substantial Completion shall establish the Date of Substantial Completion which is the date upon which:
- (a) the Work, or designated portion of the Work, is accepted by the Architect, Owner, and Alabama Division of Construction Management as being ready for occupancy,
  - (b) the Contractor's one-year and special warranties for the Work covered by the Certificate commence, unless stated otherwise in the Certificate (the one-year warranty for punch list items completed or corrected after the period allowed in the Certificate shall commence on the date of their Final Acceptance), and
  - (c) Owner becomes responsible for building security, maintenance, utility services, and insurance, unless stated otherwise in the Certificate.
- (3) The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall set the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the "punch list" accompanying the Certificate. The completion of punch list items shall be a condition precedent to Final Payment.
- (4) If the Work or designated portion covered by a Certificate of Substantial Completion includes roofing work, the General Contractor's (5-year) Roofing Guarantee, DCM Form C-9, must be executed by the Contractor and attached to the Certificate of Substantial Completion. If the Contract Documents specify any other roofing warranties to be provided by the roofing manufacturer, Subcontractor, or Contractor, they must also be attached to the Certificate of Substantial Completion. The Alabama Division of Construction Management will not sign the Certificate of Substantial Completion in the absence of the roofing guarantees.
- E. The Date of Substantial Completion of the Work, as set in the Certificate of Substantial Completion of the Work or of the last completed portion of the Work, establishes the extent to which the Contractor is liable for Liquidated Damages, if any; however, should the Contractor fail to complete all punch list items within thirty days, or such other time as may be stated in the respective Certificate of Substantial Completion, the Contractor shall bear any expenses, including additional Architectural services and expenses, incurred by the Owner as a result of such failure to complete punch list items in a timely manner.

**ARTICLE 33**  
**OCCUPANCY or USE PRIOR to COMPLETION**

**A. UPON SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

Prior to completion of the entire Work, the Owner may occupy or begin utilizing any designated portion of the Work on the agreed Date of Substantial Completion of that portion of the Work.

**B. BEFORE SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

(1) The Owner shall not occupy or utilize any portion of the Work before Substantial Completion of that portion has been achieved.

(2) The Owner may deliver furniture and equipment and store, or install it in place ready for occupancy and use, in any designated portion of the Work before it is substantially completed under the following conditions:

(a) The Owner's storage or installation of furniture and equipment will not unreasonably disrupt or interfere with the Contractor's completion of the designated portion of the Work.

(b) The Contractor consents to the Owner's planned action (such consent shall not be unreasonably withheld).

(c) The Owner shall be responsible for insurance coverage of the Owner's furniture and equipment, and the Contractor's liability shall not be increased.

(d) The Contractor, Architect, and Owner will jointly inspect and record the condition of the Work in the area before the Owner delivers and stores or installs furniture and equipment; the Owner will equitably compensate the Contractor for making any repairs to the Work that may subsequently be required due to the Owner's delivery and storage or installation of furniture and equipment.

(e) The Owner's delivery and storage or installation of furniture and equipment shall not be deemed an acceptance of any Work not completed in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**ARTICLE 34**  
**FINAL PAYMENT**

**A. PREREQUISITES to FINAL PAYMENT**

The following conditions are prerequisites to Final Payment becoming due the Contractor:

(1) Full execution of a Certificate of Substantial Completion for the Work, or each designated portion of the Work.

(2) Final Acceptance of the Work.

(3) The Contractor's completion, to the satisfaction of the Architect and Owner, of all documentary requirements of the Contract Documents; such as delivery of "as-built" documents, operating and maintenance manuals, warranties, etc.

(4) Delivery to the Owner of a final Application for Payment, prepared by the Contractor and approved and certified by the Architect. Architect prepares DCM Form B-13: Final Payment Checklist and forwards it to the Owner along with the final Application for Payment.

(5) Completion of an Advertisement for Completion pursuant to Paragraph C below.

(6) Delivery by the Contractor to the Owner through the Architect of DCM Form C-18: Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims, and a Release of Claims, if any, and

such other documents as may be required by Owner, satisfactory in form to the Owner pursuant to Paragraph D below.

- (7) Consent of Surety to Final Payment, if any, to Contractor. This Consent of Surety is required for projects which have Payment and Performance Bonds.
- (8) Delivery by the Contractor to the Architect and Owner of other documents, if any, required by the Contract Documents as prerequisites to Final Payment.
- (9) See Manual of Procedures Chapter 7, Section L.7 concerning reconciliation of contract time, if any.

**B. FINAL ACCEPTANCE of the WORK**

“Final Acceptance of the Work” shall be achieved when all “punch list” items recorded with the Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion are accounted for by either: (1) their completion or correction by the Contractor and acceptance by the Architect, Owner, and DCM Project Inspector, or (2) their resolution under Article 18, Deductions for Uncorrected Work.

**C. ADVERTISEMENT for COMPLETION**

(1) **If the Contract Sum is \$50,000 or less:** The Owner, immediately after being notified by the Architect that all other requirements of the Contract have been completed, shall give public notice of completion of the Contract by having an Advertisement for Completion published one time in a newspaper of general circulation, published in the county in which the Owner is located for one week, and shall require the Contractor to certify under oath that all bills have been paid in full. Final payment may be made at any time after the notice has been posted for one entire week.

(2) **If the Contract Sum is more than \$50,000:** The Contractor, immediately after being notified by the Architect that all other requirements of the Contract have been completed, shall give public notice of completion of the Contract by having an Advertisement for Completion, similar to the sample contained in the Project Manual, published for a period of four successive weeks in some newspaper of general circulation published within the city or county where the Work was performed. Proof of publication of the Advertisement for Completion shall be made by the Contractor to the Architect by affidavit of the publisher, in duplicate, and a printed copy of the Advertisement for Completion published, in duplicate. If no newspaper is published in the county where the work was done, the notice may be given by posting at the Court House for thirty days and proof of same made by Probate Judge or Sheriff and the Contractor. Final payment shall not be due until thirty days after this public notice is completed.

**D. RELEASE of CLAIMS**

The Release of Claims and other documents referenced in Paragraph A(6) above are as follows:

(1) A release executed by Contractor of all claims and claims of lien against the Owner arising under and by virtue of the Contract, other than such claims of the Contractor, if any, as may have been previously made in writing and as may be specifically excepted by the Contractor from the operation of the release in stated amounts to be set forth therein.

(2) An affidavit under oath, if required, stating that so far as the Contractor has knowledge or information, there are no claims or claims of lien which have been or will be filed by any Subcontractor, Supplier or other party for labor or material for which a claim or claim of lien could be filed.

(3) A release, if required, of all claims and claims of lien made by any Subcontractor, Supplier or other party against the Owner or unpaid Contract funds held by the Owner arising under or related to the Work on the Project; provided, however, that if any Subcontractor, Supplier or others refuse to furnish a release of such claims or claims of lien, the Contractor may furnish a bond executed by Contractor and its Surety to the Owner to provide an unconditional obligation to defend, indemnify and hold harmless the Owner against any loss, cost or expense, including attorney's fees, arising out of or as a result of such claims, or claims of lien, in which event Owner may make Final Payment notwithstanding such claims or claims of lien. If Contractor and Surety fail to fulfill their obligations to Owner under the bond, the Owner shall be entitled to recover damages as a result of such failure, including all costs and reasonable attorney's fees incurred to recover such damages.

**E. EFFECT of FINAL PAYMENT**

(1) The making of Final Payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from:

- (a) liens, claims, security interests or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- (b) failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;
- (c) terms of warranties or indemnities required by the Contract Documents, or
- (d) latent defects.

(2) Acceptance of Final Payment by the Contractor shall constitute a waiver of claims by Contractor except those previously made in writing, identified by Contractor as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment, and specifically excepted from the release provided for in Paragraph D(1), above.

**ARTICLE 35  
CONTRACTOR'S WARRANTY**

**A. GENERAL WARRANTY**

The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that all materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new, except such materials as may be expressly provided or allowed in the Contract Documents to be otherwise, and that none of the Work will be Defective Work as defined in Article 1.

**B. ONE-YEAR WARRANTY**

(1) If, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or each designated portion of the Work (or otherwise as agreed upon in a mutually-executed Certificate of Substantial Completion), any of the Work is found to be Defective Work, the Contractor shall promptly upon receipt of written notice from the Owner or Architect, and without expense to either, replace or correct the Defective Work to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, and repair all damage to the site, the building and its contents which is the result of Defective Work or its replacement or correction.

(2) The one-year warranty for punch list items shall begin on the Date of Substantial Completion if they are completed or corrected within the time period allowed in the Certificate of Substantial Completion in which they are recorded. The one-year warranty for punch list items that are not

completed or corrected within the time period allowed in the Certificate of Substantial Completion, and other Work performed after Substantial Completion, shall begin on the date of Final Acceptance of the Work. The Contractor's correction of Work pursuant to this warranty does not extend the period of the warranty. The Contractor's one-year warranty does not apply to defects or damages due to improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or wear and tear during normal usage.

(3) Upon recognizing a condition of Defective Work, the Owner shall promptly notify the Contractor of the condition. If the condition is causing damage to the building, its contents, equipment, or site, the Owner shall take reasonable actions to mitigate the damage or its continuation, if practical. If the Contractor fails to proceed promptly to comply with the terms of the warranty, or to provide the Owner with satisfactory written verification that positive action is in process, the Owner may have the Defective Work replaced or corrected and the Contractor and the Contractor's Surety shall be liable for all expense incurred.

(4) **Year-end Inspection(s):** An inspection of the Work, or each separately completed portion thereof, is required near the end of the Contractor's one-year warranty period(s). The inspection must be scheduled with the Owner, Architect and DCM Inspector. The subsequent delivery of the Architect's report of a Year-end Inspection will serve as confirmation that the Contractor was notified of Defective Work found within the warranty period.

(5) The Contractor's warranty of one year is in addition to, and not a limitation of, any other remedy stated herein or available to the Owner under applicable law.

#### **C. GENERAL CONTRACTOR'S ROOFING GUARANTEE**

(1) In addition to any other roof related warranties or guarantees that may be specified in the Contract Documents, the roof and associated work shall be guaranteed by the General Contractor against leaks and defects of materials and workmanship for a period of five (5) years, starting on the Date of Substantial Completion of the Project as stated in the Certificate of Substantial Completion. This guarantee for punch list items shall begin on the Date of Substantial Completion if they are completed or corrected within the time period allowed in the Certificate of Substantial Completion in which they are recorded. The guarantee for punch list items that are not completed or corrected within the time period allowed in the Certificate of Substantial Completion shall begin on the date of Final Acceptance of the Work.

(2) The "General Contractor's Roofing Guarantee" (DCM Form C-9), included in the Project Manual, shall be executed in triplicate, signed by the appropriate party and submitted to the Architect for submission with the Certificate of Substantial Completion to the Owner and the Division of Construction Management.

(3) This guarantee does not include costs which might be incurred by the General Contractor in making visits to the site requested by the Owner regarding roof problems that are due to lack of proper maintenance (keeping roof drains and/or gutters clear of debris that cause a stoppage of drainage which results in water ponding, overflowing of flashing, etc.), or damages caused by vandalism or misuse of roof areas. Should the contractor be required to return to the job to correct problems of this nature that are determined not to be related to faulty workmanship and materials in the installation of the roof, payment for actions taken by the Contractor in response to such request will be the responsibility of the Owner. A detailed written report shall be made by the General Contractor on each of these 'Service Calls' with copies to the Architect, Owner and Division of

Construction Management.

**D. SPECIAL WARRANTIES**

(1) The Contractor shall deliver to the Owner through the Architect all special or extended warranties required by the Contract Documents from the Contractor, Subcontractors, and suppliers.

(2) The Contractor and the Contractor's Surety shall be liable to the Owner for such special warranties during the Contractor's one-year warranty; thereafter, the Contractor's obligations relative to such special warranties shall be to provide reasonable assistance to the Owner in their enforcement.

**E. ASSUMPTION of GUARANTEES of OTHERS**

If the Contractor disturbs, alters, or damages any work guaranteed under a separate contract, thereby voiding the guarantee of that work, the Contractor shall restore the work to a condition satisfactory to the Owner and shall also guarantee it to the same extent that it was guaranteed under the separate contract.

**ARTICLE 36  
INDEMNIFICATION AGREEMENT**

To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall defend, indemnify, and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, Alabama Division of Construction Management, State Department of Education (if applicable), and their agents, employees, and consultants (hereinafter collectively referred to as the "Indemnitees") from and against all claims, damages, losses and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of, related to, or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property, including loss of use resulting therefrom, and is caused in whole or in part by negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether such claim, damage, loss or expense is caused in part, or is alleged but not legally established to have been caused in whole or in part by the negligence or other fault of a party indemnified hereunder.

- A. This indemnification shall extend to all claims, damages, losses and expenses for injury or damage to adjacent or neighboring property, or persons injured thereon, that arise out of, relate to, or result from performance of the Work.
- B. This indemnification does not extend to the liability of the Architect, or the Architect's Consultants, agents, or employees, arising out of (1) the preparation or approval of maps, shop drawings, opinions, reports, surveys, field orders, Change Orders, drawings or specifications, or (2) the giving of or the failure to give directions or instructions, provided such giving or failure to give instructions is the primary cause of the injury or damage.
- C. This indemnification does not apply to the extent of the sole negligence of the Indemnitees.



**ARTICLE 37**  
**CONTRACTOR'S and SUBCONTRACTORS' INSURANCE**

*(Provide entire Article 37 to Contractor's insurance representative.)*

**A. GENERAL**

**(1) RESPONSIBILITY.** The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner from the time of the signing of the Construction Contract or from the beginning of the first work, whichever shall be earlier, for all injury or damage of any kind resulting from any negligent act or omission or breach, failure or other default regarding the work by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of who may be the owner of the property.

**(2) INSURANCE PROVIDERS.** Each of the insurance coverages required below shall be issued by an insurer licensed by the Insurance Commissioner to transact the business of insurance in the State of Alabama for the applicable line of insurance, and such insurer (or, for qualified self-insureds or group self-insureds, a specific excess insurer providing statutory limits) must have a Best Policyholders Rating of "A-" or better and a financial size rating of Class V or larger.

**(3) NOTIFICATION ENDORSEMENT.** Each policy shall be endorsed to provide that the insurance company agrees that the policy shall not be canceled, changed, allowed to lapse or allowed to expire for any reason until thirty days after the Owner has received written notice by certified mail as evidenced by return receipt or until such time as other insurance coverage providing protection equal to protection called for in the Contract Documents shall have been received, accepted and acknowledged by the Owner. Such notice shall be valid only as to the Project as shall have been designated by Project Name and Number in said notice.

**(4) INSURANCE CERTIFICATES.** The Contractor shall procure the insurance coverages identified below, or as otherwise required in the Contract Documents, at the Contractor's own expense, and to evidence that such insurance coverages are in effect, the Contractor shall furnish the Owner an insurance certificate(s) acceptable to the Owner and listing the Owner as the certificate holder. The insurance certificate(s) must be delivered to the Owner with the Construction Contract and Bonds for final approval and execution of the Construction Contract. The insurance certificate must provide the following:

- (a) Name and address of authorized agent of the insurance company
- (b) Name and address of insured
- (c) Name of insurance company or companies
- (d) Description of policies
- (e) Policy Number(s)
- (f) Policy Period(s)
- (g) Limits of liability
- (h) Name and address of Owner as certificate holder
- (i) Project Name and Number, if any
- (j) Signature of authorized agent of the insurance company
- (k) Telephone number of authorized agent of the insurance company
- (l) Mandatory thirty day notice of cancellation / non-renewal / change

**(5) MAXIMUM DEDUCTIBLE.** Self-insured retention, except for qualified self-insurers or

group self-insurers, in any policy shall not exceed \$25,000.00.

## **B. INSURANCE COVERAGES**

Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall purchase the types of insurance coverages with liability limits not less than as follows:

### **(1) WORKERS' COMPENSATION and EMPLOYER'S LIABILITY INSURANCE**

(a) Workers' Compensation coverage shall be provided in accordance with the statutory coverage required in Alabama. A group insurer must submit a certificate of authority from the Alabama Department of Industrial Relations approving the group insurance plan. A self-insurer must submit a certificate from the Alabama Department of Industrial Relations stating the Contractor qualifies to pay its own workers' compensation claims.

(b) Employer's Liability Insurance limits shall be at least:

- .1 Bodily Injury by Accident - \$1,000,000 each accident
- .2 Bodily Injury by Disease - \$1,000,000 each employee

### **(2) COMMERCIAL GENERAL LIABILITY INSURANCE**

(a) Commercial General Liability Insurance, written on an ISO Occurrence Form (current edition as of the date of Advertisement for Bids) or equivalent, shall include, but need not be limited to, coverage for bodily injury and property damage arising from premises and operations liability, products and completed operations liability, blasting and explosion, collapse of structures, underground damage, personal injury liability and contractual liability. The Commercial General Liability Insurance shall provide at minimum the following limits:

<u>Coverage</u>	<u>Limit</u>
.1 General Aggregate	\$ 2,000,000.00 per Project
.2 Products, Completed Operations Aggregate	\$ 2,000,000.00 per Project
.3 Personal and Advertising Injury	\$ 1,000,000.00 per Occurrence
.4 Each Occurrence	\$ 1,000,000.00

(b) Additional Requirements for Commercial General Liability Insurance:

- .1 The policy shall name the Owner, Architect, Alabama Division of Construction Management, State Department of Education (if applicable), and their agents, consultants and employees as additional insureds, state that this coverage shall be primary insurance for the additional insureds; and contain no exclusions of the additional insureds relative to job accidents.
- .2 The policy must include separate per project aggregate limits.

### **(3) COMMERCIAL BUSINESS AUTOMOBILE LIABILITY INSURANCE**

(a) Commercial Business Automobile Liability Insurance which shall include coverage for bodily injury and property damage arising from the operation of any owned, non-owned or hired automobile. The Commercial Business Automobile Liability Insurance Policy shall provide not less than \$1,000,000 Combined Single Limits for each occurrence.

(b) The policy shall name the Owner, Architect, Alabama Division of Construction Management, State Department of Education (if applicable), and their agents, consultants, and employees as additional insureds.

### **(4) COMMERCIAL UMBRELLA LIABILITY INSURANCE**

(a) Commercial Umbrella Liability Insurance to provide excess coverage above the

Commercial General Liability, Commercial Business Automobile Liability and the Workers' Compensation and Employer's Liability to satisfy the minimum limits set forth herein.

(b) Minimum Combined Primary Commercial General Liability and Commercial/Excess Umbrella Limits of:

.1 \$ 5,000,000 per Occurrence

.2 \$ 5,000,000 Aggregate

(c) Additional Requirements for Commercial Umbrella Liability Insurance:

.1 The policy shall name the Owner, Architect, Alabama Division of Construction Management, State Department of Education (if applicable), and their agents, consultants, and employees as additional insureds.

.2 The policy must be on an "occurrence" basis.

**(5) BUILDER'S RISK INSURANCE**

(a) The Builder's Risk Policy shall be made payable to the Owner and Contractor, as their interests may appear. The policy amount shall be equal to 100% of the Contract Sum, written on a Causes of Loss - Special Form (current edition as of the date of Advertisement for Bids), or its equivalent. All deductibles shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

(b) The policy shall be endorsed as follows:

"The following may occur without diminishing, changing, altering or otherwise affecting the coverage and protection afforded the insured under this policy:

(i) Furniture and equipment may be delivered to the insured premises and installed in place ready for use; or

(ii) Partial or complete occupancy by Owner; or

(iii) Performance of work in connection with construction operations insured by the Owner, by agents or lessees or other contractors of the Owner, or by contractors of the lessee of the Owner."

**C. SUBCONTRACTORS' INSURANCE**

(1) **WORKERS' COMPENSATION and EMPLOYER'S LIABILITY INSURANCE.** The Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to obtain and maintain Workers' Compensation and Employer's Liability Insurance coverages as described in preceding Paragraph B, or to be covered by the Contractor's Workers' Compensation and Employer's Liability Insurance while performing Work under the Contract.

(2) **LIABILITY INSURANCE.** The Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to obtain and maintain adequate General Liability, Automobile Liability, and Umbrella Liability Insurance coverages similar to those described in preceding Paragraph B. Such coverage shall be in effect at all times that a Subcontractor is performing Work under the Contract.

(3) **ENFORCEMENT RESPONSIBILITY.** The Contractor shall have responsibility to enforce its Subcontractors' compliance with these or similar insurance requirements; however, the Contractor shall, upon request, provide the Architect or Owner acceptable evidence of insurance for any Subcontractor.

**D. TERMINATION of OBLIGATION to INSURE**

Unless otherwise expressly provided in the Contract Documents, the obligation to insure as provided herein shall continue as follows:

(1) **BUILDER'S RISK INSURANCE.** The obligation to insure under Subparagraph B(5) shall remain in effect until the Date of Substantial Completion as shall be established in the Certificate of Substantial Completion. In the event that multiple Certificates of Substantial Completion covering designated portions of the Work are issued, Builder's Risk coverage shall remain in effect until the Date of Substantial Completion as shall be established in the last issued Certificate of Substantial Completion. However, in the case that the Work involves separate buildings, Builder's Risk coverage of each separate building may terminate on the Date of Substantial Completion as established in the Certificate of Substantial Completion issued for each building.

(2) **PRODUCTS and COMPLETED OPERATIONS.** The obligation to carry Products and Completed Operations coverage specified under Subparagraph B(2) shall remain in effect for two years after the Date(s) of Substantial Completion.

(3) **ALL OTHER INSURANCE.** The obligation to carry other insurance coverages specified under Subparagraphs B(1) through B(4) and Paragraph C shall remain in effect after the Date(s) of Substantial Completion until such time as all Work required by the Contract Documents is completed. Equal or similar insurance coverages shall remain in effect if, after completion of the Work, the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, returns to the Project to perform warranty or maintenance work pursuant to the terms of the Contract Documents.

**E. WAIVERS of SUBROGATION**

The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, each of the other, and (2) the Architect, Architect's consultants, separate contractors performing construction or operations related to the Project, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss. But said waiver shall apply only to the extent the loss or damage is covered by builder's risk insurance applicable to the Work or to other property located within or adjacent to the Project, except such rights as they may have to proceeds of such insurance held by the Owner or Contractor as fiduciary. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require of the Architect, Architect's consultants, separate contractors, if any, and the subcontractor, sub-subcontractors, suppliers, agents and employees of any of them, by appropriate agreements, written where legally required for validity, similar waivers each in favor of other parties enumerated herein. The Policies shall provide such waivers of subrogation by endorsement or otherwise. A waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to the person or entity even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, and whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the property damaged. The waivers provided for in this paragraph shall not be applicable to loss or damage that occurs after final acceptance of the Work.

**ARTICLE 38**  
**PERFORMANCE and PAYMENT BONDS**

**A. GENERAL**

Upon signing and returning the Construction Contract to the Owner for final approval and execution, the Contractor shall, at the Contractor's expense, furnish to the Owner a Performance Bond and a Payment Bond (P&P Bonds), DCM Forms C-6 and C-7 as contained in the Project

Manual, each in a penal sum equal to 100% of the Contract Sum. Each bond shall be on the form contained in the Project Manual, shall be executed by a surety company (Surety) acceptable to the Owner and duly authorized and qualified to make such bonds in the State of Alabama in the required amount. There shall be six original P&P Bonds submitted with original signatures for each of the six contracts required. The P&P bonds must be signed either on the same day or after the construction contract date. Each P&P Bond shall have attached thereto an original power of attorney (POA) of the signing official. The POA signature date must be the same day as the P&P Bond's signature date. All signatures must be present.

The provisions of this Article are not applicable to this Contract if the Contract Sum is less than \$50,000, unless bonds are required for this Contract in the Supplemental General Conditions.

**B. PERFORMANCE BOND**

Through the Performance Bond, the Surety's obligation to the Owner shall be to assure the prompt and faithful performance of the Contract and Contract Change Orders. The Penal Sum shall remain equal to the Contract Sum as the Contract Sum is adjusted by Contract Change Orders. In case of default on the part of the Contractor, the Surety shall take charge of and complete the Work in accordance with the terms of the Performance Bond. Any reasonable expenses incurred by the Owner as a result of default on the part of the Contractor, including architectural, engineering, administrative, and legal services, shall be recoverable under the Performance Bond.

**C. PAYMENT BOND**

Through the Payment Bond the Surety's obligation to the Owner shall be to guarantee that the Contractor and its Subcontractors shall promptly make payment to all persons supplying labor, materials, or supplies for, or in, the prosecution of the Work, including the payment of reasonable attorneys fees incurred by successful claimants or plaintiffs in civil actions on the Bond. Any person or entity indicating that they have a claim of nonpayment under the Bond shall, upon written request, be promptly furnished a certified copy of the Bond and Construction Contract by the Contractor, Architect, Owner, or Alabama Division of Construction Management, whomever is recipient of the request.

**D. CHANGE ORDERS**

The Penal Sum shall remain equal to the Contract Sum as the Contract Sum is adjusted by Contract Change Orders. All Contract Change Orders involving an increase in the Contract Sum will require consent of Surety by endorsement of the Contract Change Order form. The Surety waives notification of any Contract Change Orders involving only extension of the Contract Time.

**E. EXPIRATION**

The obligations of the Contractor's performance bond surety shall be coextensive with the contractor's performance obligations under the Contract Documents; provided, however, that the surety's obligation shall expire at the end of the one-year warranty period(s) of Article 35.

**ARTICLE 39**  
**ASSIGNMENT**

The Contractor shall not assign the Contract or sublet it as a whole nor assign any moneys due or to

become due to the Contractor thereunder without the previous written consent of the Owner (and of the Surety, in the case of a bonded Construction Contract). As prescribed by the Public Works Law, the Contract shall in no event be assigned to an unsuccessful bidder for the Contract whose bid was rejected because the bidder was not a responsible or responsive bidder.

**ARTICLE 40**  
**CONSTRUCTION by OWNER or SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

**A. OWNER'S RESERVATION of RIGHT**

(1) The Owner reserves the right to self-perform, or to award separate contracts for, other portions of the Project and other Project related construction and operations on the site. The contractual conditions of such separate contracts shall be substantially similar to those of this Contract, including insurance requirements and the provisions of this Article. If the Contractor considers such actions to involve delay or additional cost under this Contract, notifications and assertion of claims shall be as provided in Article 20 and Article 23.

(2) When separate contracts are awarded, the term "Contractor" in the separate Contract Documents shall mean the Contractor who executes the respective Construction Contract.

**B. COORDINATION**

Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall be responsible for coordinating the activities of the Owner's forces and separate contractors with the Work of the Contractor. The Contractor shall cooperate with the Owner and separate contractors, shall participate in reviewing and comparing their construction schedules relative to that of the Contractor when directed to do so, and shall make and adhere to any revisions to the construction schedule resulting from a joint review and mutual agreement.

**C. CONDITIONS APPLICABLE to WORK PERFORMED by OWNER**

Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner self-performs construction or operations related to the Project, the Owner shall be subject to the same obligations to Contractor as Contractor would have to a separate contractor under the provision of this Article 40.

**D. MUTUAL RESPONSIBILITY**

(1) The Contractor shall reasonably accommodate the required introduction and storage of materials and equipment and performance of activities by the Owner and separate contractors and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's Work with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

(2) By proceeding with an element or portion of the Work that is applied to or performed on construction by the Owner or a separate contractor, or which relies upon their operations, the Contractor accepts the condition of such construction or operations as being suitable for the Contractor's Work, except for conditions that are not reasonably discoverable by the Contractor. If the Contractor discovers any condition in such construction or operations that is not suitable for the proper performance of the Work, the Contractor shall not proceed, but shall instead promptly notify

the Architect in writing of the condition discovered.

(3) The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for any costs incurred by a separate contractor and payable by the Owner because of acts or omissions of the Contractor. Likewise, the Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for any costs incurred by the Contractor because of the acts or omissions of a separate contractor.

(4) The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a separate contractor without the written consent of the Owner and separate contractor; such consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. Likewise, the Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold its consent allowing the Owner or a separate contractor to cut or otherwise alter the Work.

(5) The Contractor shall promptly remedy any damage caused by the Contractor to the construction or property of the Owner or separate contractors.

#### **ARTICLE 41** **SUBCONTRACTS**

##### **A. AWARD of SUBCONTRACTS and OTHER CONTRACTS for PORTIONS of the WORK**

(1) Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when delivering the executed Construction Contract, bonds, and evidence of insurance to the Architect, the Contractor shall also submit a listing of Subcontractors proposed for each principal portion of the Work and fabricators or suppliers proposed for furnishing materials or equipment fabricated to the design of the Contract Documents. This listing shall be in addition to any naming of Subcontractors, fabricators, or suppliers that may have been required in the bid process. The Architect will promptly reply to the Contractor in writing stating whether or not the Owner, after due investigation, has reasonable objection to any Subcontractor, fabricator, or supplier proposed by the Contractor. The issuance of the Notice to Proceed in the absence of such objection by the Owner shall constitute notice that no reasonable objection to them is made.

(2) The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed Subcontractor, fabricator, or supplier to whom the Owner has made reasonable and timely objection. Except in accordance with prequalification procedures as may be contained in the Contract Documents, through specified qualifications, or on the grounds of reasonable objection, the Owner may not restrict the Contractor's selection of Subcontractors, fabricators, or suppliers.

(3) Upon the Owner's reasonable objection to a proposed Subcontractor, fabricator, or supplier, the Contractor shall promptly propose another to whom the Owner has no reasonable objection. If the proposed Subcontractor, fabricator, or supplier to whom the Owner made reasonable objection was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted by Contract Change Order for any resulting difference if the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in this procedure.

(4) The Contractor shall not change previously selected Subcontractors, fabricators, or suppliers without notifying the Architect and Owner in writing of proposed substitute Subcontractors, fabricators, or suppliers. If the Owner does not make a reasonable objection to a proposed substitute within three working days, the substitute shall be deemed approved.

##### **B. SUBCONTRACTUAL RELATIONS**

(1) The Contractor agrees to bind every Subcontractor and material supplier (and require every Subcontractor to so bind its subcontractors and material suppliers) to all the provisions of the Contract Documents as they apply to the Subcontractor's and material supplier's portion of the Work.

(2) Nothing contained in the Contract Documents shall be construed as creating any contractual relationship between any Subcontractor and the Owner, nor to create a duty of the Architect, Owner, or Director to resolve disputes between or among the Contractor or its Subcontractors and suppliers or any other duty to such Subcontractors or suppliers.

## **ARTICLE 42**

### **ARCHITECT'S STATUS**

- A. The Architect is an independent contractor performing, with respect to this Contract, pursuant to an agreement executed between the Owner and the Architect. The Architect has prepared the Drawings and Specifications and assembled the Contract Document and is, therefore, charged with their interpretation and clarification as described in the Contract Documents. As a representative of the Owner, the Architect will endeavor to guard the Owner against variances from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Contractor. On behalf of the Owner, the Architect will administer the Contract as described in the Contract Documents during construction and the Contractor's one-year warranty.
- B. So as to maintain continuity in administration of the Contract and performance of the Work, and to facilitate complete documentation of the project record, all communications between the Contractor and Owner regarding matters of or related to the Contract shall be directed through the Architect, unless direct communication is otherwise required to provide a legal notification. Unless otherwise authorized by the Architect, communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Unless otherwise authorized by the Contractor, communications by and with Subcontractors and material suppliers shall be through the Contractor.

### **C. ARCHITECT'S AUTHORITY**

Subject to other provisions of the Contract Documents, the following summarizes some of the authority vested in the Architect by the Owner with respect to the Construction Contract and as further described or conditioned in other Articles of these General Conditions of the Contract.

**(1) The Architect is authorized to:**

- (a) approve "minor" deviations as defined in Article 9, Submittals,
- (b) make "minor" changes in the Work as defined in Article 19, Changes in the Work,
- (c) reject or require the correction of Defective Work,
- (d) require the Contractor to stop the performance of Defective Work,
- (e) adjust an Application for Payment by the Contractor pursuant to Article 30, Certification and Approval of payments, and
- (f) issue Notices to Cure pursuant to Article 27.

**(2) The Architect is not authorized to:**

- (a) revoke, alter, relax, or waive any requirements of the Contract Documents (other than "minor" deviations and changes) without concurrence of the Owner,



- (b) finally approve or accept any portion of the Work without concurrence of the Owner,
- (c) issue instructions contrary to the Contract Documents,
- (d) issue Notice of Termination or otherwise terminate the Contract, or
- (e) require the Contractor to stop the Work except only to avoid the performance of Defective Work.

**D. LIMITATIONS of RESPONSIBILITIES**

(1) The Architect shall not be responsible to Contractors or to others for supervising or coordinating the performance of the Work or for the Construction Methods or safety of the Work, unless the Contract Documents give other specific instructions concerning these matters.

(2) The Architect will not be responsible to the Contractor (nor the Owner) for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents or for acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable. However, the Architect will report to the Owner and Contractor any Defective Work recognized by the Architect.

(3) The Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by Owner and Contractor, and the Architect will not show partiality to either or be liable to either for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

(4) The Contractor's remedies for additional time or expense arising out of or related to this Contract, or the breach thereof, shall be solely as provided for in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall have no claim or cause of action against the Owner, Architect, or its consultants for any actions or failures to act, whether such claim may be in contract, tort, strict liability, or otherwise, it being the agreement of the parties that the Contractor shall make no claim against the Owner or any agents of the Owner, including the Architect or its consultants, except as may be provided for claims or disputes submitted in accordance with Article 24. The Architect and Architect's consultants shall be considered third party beneficiaries of this provision of the Contract and entitled to enforce same.

**E. ARCHITECT'S DECISIONS**

Decisions by the Architect shall be in writing. The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final and binding if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's decisions regarding disputes arising between the Contractor and Owner shall be advisory.

**ARTICLE 43**  
**CASH ALLOWANCES**

- A. All allowances stated in the Contract Documents shall be included in the Contract Sum. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied by the Contractor as directed by the Architect or Owner and the Contractor shall afford the Owner the economy of obtaining competitive pricing from responsible bidders for allowance items unless other purchasing procedures are specified in the Contract Documents.
- B. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents:
- (1) allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered to the

- Project site and all applicable taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
- (2) the Contractor's costs for unloading, storing, protecting, and handling at the site, labor, installation, overhead, profit and other expenses related to materials or equipment covered by an allowance shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances;
  - (3) if required, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted by Change Order to reflect the actual costs of an allowance.
- C. Any selections of materials or equipment required of the Architect or Owner under an allowance shall be made in sufficient time to avoid delay of the Work.

#### **ARTICLE 44** **PERMITS, LAWS, and REGULATIONS**

##### **A. PERMITS, FEES AND NOTICES**

- (1) Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit and other permits and governmental fees, licenses, and inspections necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work which are customarily secured after award of the Construction Contract and which are in effect on the date of receipt of bids.
- (2) The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by all laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

##### **B. TAXES**

Unless stated otherwise in the Contract Documents, materials incorporated into the Work are exempt from sales and use tax pursuant to Section 40-9-33, Code of Alabama, 1975 as amended. The Owner, Contractor and its subcontractors shall be responsible for complying with rules and regulations of the Sales, Use, & Business Tax Division of the Alabama Department of Revenue regarding certificates and other qualifications necessary to claim such exemption when making qualifying purchases from vendors. The Contractor shall pay all applicable taxes that are not covered by the exemption of Section 40-9-33 and which are imposed as of the date of receipt of bids, including those imposed as of the date of receipt of bids but scheduled to go into effect after that date.

##### **C. COMPENSATION for INCREASES**

The Contractor shall be compensated for additional costs incurred because of increases in tax rates imposed after the date of receipt of bids.

##### **D. ALABAMA IMMIGRATION LAW**

Per ACT 2011-535 as codified in Title 31, Chapter 13 of the Code of Alabama, 1975, as amended:

The contracting parties affirm, for the duration of the agreement, that they will not violate federal immigration law or knowingly employ, hire for employment, or continue to employ an unauthorized alien within the State of Alabama. Furthermore, a contracting party found to be in violation of this provision shall be deemed in breach of the agreement and shall be responsible for

all damages resulting therefrom.

**E. ALABAMA BOYCOTT LAW**

Per Act 2016-312 as codified in Title 41, Chapter 16, Article 1, of the Code of Alabama, 1975, as amended:

The contracting parties affirm, for the duration of the agreement, that they are not currently engaged in, and will not engage in, the boycott of a person or an entity based in or doing business with a jurisdiction with which this state can enjoy open trade.

**F. ACCOUNTING OF SALES TAX EXEMPT PROJECTS**

Per Act 2013-205 as codified in Title 40, Chapter 9, Article 1, of the Code of Alabama, 1975, as amended:

In bidding the work on a tax exempt project, the bid form shall provide an accounting for the tax savings.

**ARTICLE 45**  
**ROYALTIES, PATENTS, and COPYRIGHTS**

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend, indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, Alabama Division of Construction Management, State Department of Education (if applicable), and their agents, employees, and consultants from and against all claims, damages, losses and expenses, including but not limited to attorney's fees, arising out of, related to, or resulting from all suits or claims for infringement of any patent rights or copyrights arising out of the inclusion of any patented or copyrighted materials, methods, or systems selected by the Contractor and used during the execution of or incorporated into the Work. This indemnification does not apply to any suits or claims of infringement of any patent rights or copyrights arising out of any patented or copyrighted materials, methods, or systems specified in the Contract Documents. However, if the Contractor has information that a specified material, method, or system is or may constitute an infringement of a patent or copyright, the Contractor shall be responsible for any resulting loss unless such information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

**ARTICLE 46**  
**USE of the SITE**

- A.** The Contractor shall confine its operations at the Project site to areas permitted by the Owner and by law, ordinances, permits and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials, equipment, employees' vehicles, or debris. The Contractor's operations at the site shall be restricted to the sole purpose of constructing the Work, use of the site as a staging, assembly, or storage area for other business which the Contractor may undertake shall not be permitted.
- B.** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, temporary facilities, such as storage sheds, shops, and offices may be erected on the Project site with the approval of the Architect and Owner.

Such temporary buildings and/or utilities shall remain the property of the Contractor, and be removed at the Contractor's expense upon completion of the Work, unless the Owner authorizes their abandonment without removal.

**ARTICLE 47**  
**CUTTING and PATCHING**

- A. The Contractor shall be responsible for all cutting, fitting, or patching that may be required to execute the Work to the results indicated in the Contract Documents or to make its parts fit together properly.
- B. Any cutting, patching, or excavation by the Contractor shall be supervised and performed in a manner that will not endanger persons nor damage or endanger the Work or any fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or separate contractors.

**ARTICLE 48**  
**IN-PROGRESS and FINAL CLEANUP**

**A. IN-PROGRESS CLEAN-UP**

(1) The Contractor shall at all times during the progress of the Work keep the premises and surrounding area free from rubbish, scrap materials and debris resulting from the Work. Trash and combustible materials shall not be allowed to accumulate inside buildings or elsewhere on the premises. At no time shall any rubbish be thrown from window openings. Burning of trash and debris on site is not permitted.

(2) The Contractor shall make provisions to minimize and confine dust and debris resulting from construction activities.

**B. FINAL CLEAN-UP**

(1) Before Substantial Completion or Final Acceptance is achieved, the Contractor shall have removed from the Owner's property all construction equipment, tools, and machinery; temporary structures and/or utilities including the foundations thereof (except such as the Owner permits in writing to remain); rubbish, debris, and waste materials; and all surplus materials, leaving the site clean and true to line and grade, and the Work in a safe and clean condition, ready for use and operation.

(2) In addition to the above, and unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be responsible for the following special cleaning for all trades as the Work is completed:

- (a) **Cleaning of all painted, enameled, stained, or baked enamel work:** Removal of all marks, stains, finger prints and splatters from such surfaces.
- (b) **Cleaning of all glass:** Cleaning and removing of all stickers, labels, stains, and paint from all glass, and the washing and polishing of same on interior and exterior.
- (c) **Cleaning or polishing of all hardware:** Cleaning and polishing of all hardware.
- (d) **Cleaning all tile, floor finish of all kinds:** Removal of all splatters, stains, paint, dirt,

and dust, the washing and polishing of all floors as recommended by the manufacturer or required by the Architect.

**(e) Cleaning of all manufactured articles, materials, fixtures, appliances, and equipment:** Removal of all stickers, rust stains, labels, and temporary covers, and cleaning and conditioning of all manufactured articles, material, fixtures, appliances, and electrical, heating, and air conditioning equipment as recommended or directed by the manufacturers, unless otherwise required by the Architect; blowing out or flushing out of all foreign matter from all equipment, piping, tanks, pumps, fans, motors, devices, switches, panels, fixtures, boilers, sanitizing potable water systems; and freeing identification plates on all equipment of excess paint and the polishing thereof.

**C. OWNER'S RIGHT to CLEAN-UP**

If the Contractor fails to comply with these clean-up requirements and then fails to comply with a written directive by the Architect to clean-up the premises within a specified time, the Architect or Owner may implement appropriate clean-up measures and the cost thereof shall be deducted from any amounts due or to become due the Contractor.

**ARTICLE 49**  
**LIQUIDATED DAMAGES**

- A.** Time is the essence of the Contract. Any delay in the completion of the Work required by the Contract Documents may cause inconvenience to the public and loss and damage to the Owner including but not limited to interest and additional administrative, architectural, inspection and supervision charges. By executing the Construction Contract, the Contractor agrees that the Contract Time is sufficient for the achievement of Substantial Completion.
- B.** The Contract Documents may provide in the Construction Contract or elsewhere for a certain dollar amount for which the Contractor and its Surety (if any) will be liable to the Owner as liquidated damages for each calendar day after expiration of the Contract Time that the Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion of the Work. If such daily liquidated damages are provided for, Owner and Contractor, and its Surety, agree that such amount is reasonable and agree to be bound thereby.
- C.** If a daily liquidated damage amount is not otherwise provided for in the Contract Documents, a time charge equal to six percent interest per annum on the total Contract Sum may be made against the Contractor for the entire period after expiration of the Contract Time that the Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion of the Work.
- D.** The amount of liquidated damages due under either paragraph B or C, above, may be deducted by the Owner from the moneys otherwise due the Contractor in the Final Payment, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages sustained, or the amount may be recovered from Contractor or its Surety. If part of the Work is substantially completed within the Contract Time and part is not, the stated charge for liquidated damages shall be equitably prorated to that portion of the Work that the Contractor fails to substantially complete within the Contract Time. It is mutually understood and agreed between the parties hereto that such amount is reasonable as liquidated damages.

**ARTICLE 50**  
**USE of FOREIGN MATERIALS**

- A. In the performance of the Work the Contractor agrees to use materials, supplies, and products manufactured, mined, processed or otherwise produced in the United States or its territories, if same are available at reasonable and competitive prices and are not contrary to any sole source specification implemented under the Public Works Law.
- B. In the performance of the Work the Contractor agrees to use steel produced in the United States if the Contract Documents require the use of steel and do not limit its supply to a sole source pursuant to the Public Works Law. If the Owner decides that the procurement of domestic steel products becomes impractical as a result of national emergency, national strike, or other cause, the Owner shall waive this restriction.
- C. If domestic steel or other domestic materials, supplies, and products are not used in accordance with preceding Paragraphs A and B, the Contract Sum shall be reduced by an amount equal to any savings or benefits realized by the Contractor.
- D. This Article applies only to Public Works projects financed entirely by the State of Alabama or any political subdivision of the state.

**ARTICLE 51**  
**PROJECT SIGN**

- A. Fully locally-funded State Agency and Public Higher Education projects: DCM Form C-15: Detail of Project Sign must be included in the project manual regardless of expected bid amount. If the awarded contract sum is \$100,000.00 or more, Contractor shall furnish and erect a project sign. Other conditions besides the contract sum may warrant waiver of this requirement, but only with approval of the Technical Staff.
- B. Fully locally-funded K-12 school projects: Project sign is not required unless requested by Owner; if project sign is requested by Owner, include DCM Form C-15: Detail of Project Sign in the project manual.
- C. Partially or fully PSCA-funded projects: DCM Form C-15: Detail of Project Sign must be included in the project manual. Contractor shall furnish and erect a project sign for all PSCA-funded projects, regardless of the contract sum. "Alabama Public School and College Authority" as well as the local owner entity must be included as awarding authorities on the project sign of all PSCA-funded projects.

When required per the above conditions, the project sign shall be erected in a prominent location selected by the Architect and Owner and shall be maintained in good condition until completion of Work. If the Contract involves Work on multiple sites, only one project sign is required, which shall be erected on one of the sites in a location selected by the Architect and Owner. Slogan: The title of the current PSCA Act should be placed on the project sign of all PSCA-funded projects, otherwise the Awarding Authority/Owner's slogan, if any, should be used. If the Awarding Authority/Owner of a fully locally-funded project does not have a slogan, the project sign does not require a slogan.

1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Summary

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.
  - 1. Before submitting proposals, Bidders shall read entire specifications, including all divisions, and familiarize themselves with requirements respecting all Alternates, and also how each section of the work is affected by acceptance or omission of Alternates.
  - 2. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
  - 3. Bidders shall state on the Bid Form the amount to amend the Base Bid for making the following changes, including all incidental omissions, additions, and adjustments as may be necessary or required by such changes
- B. The Owner will award the Alternates in accordance with and as stated in The DCM Instructions to Bidders, 15. A - D and located at the front of this Project Specification Manual.
- C. Before signing the Contracts, the successful Contractor should be familiar with all Alternates and requirements. After signing the contracts, there will be no allowance or extra compensation paid to the Contractor because of omission or ignorance of said requirements.

1.2 Definitions

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the Bidding Requirements that may be added to or deducted from the Base Bid amount if Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
  - 1. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate the alternate into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

1.3 Procedures

- A. Coordination: Modify or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
  - 1. Include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- B. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other work of the Contract.

1.4 Schedule:

A Schedule of Alternates is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

ALTERNATE PRICES ARE REQUIRED AS FOLLOWS:

Alternate No. 1 (Additive) Additional Construction

The amount to be added to base bid for providing all additional construction as indicated by Architectural sheet drawing number series "A10". This alternate shall also include all additional Civil, Structural, Mechanical, Plumbing and Electrical work indicated or required to serve the same said scope.

Should this alternate be accepted, the rigid steel expansion frame indicated along Column Line "5" shall be located to Column Line "6".

END OF SECTION



1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Documents

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division-1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 Summary

A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements governing handling and processing allowances.

Selected materials, services and equipment, and in some cases, their installation are shown and specified in the Contract Documents by allowances. Allowances have been established in lieu of additional requirements and to defer selection of actual materials, services and equipment to a later date when additional information is available for evaluation. Additional requirements, if necessary, will be issued by Change Order. **Allowances indicated shall be included in the Base Bid.**

B. Types of allowances required include the following:

1. Lump sum allowances.
2. Contingency allowance.

C. Procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders are included in the General Conditions of the Contract, Article 43.

1.3 Selection and Purchase

At the earliest feasible date after Contract award, advise the Architect of the date when the final selection and purchase of each service, product or system described by an allowance must be completed in order to avoid delay in performance of the Work.

A. When requested by the Architect, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections; including recommendations that are relevant to performance of the Work.

B. Purchase products and systems as selected by the Architect from the designated supplier.

C. Specific service providers, i.e., geotechnical and landscaping, shall be selected by the Owner.

1.4 Submittals

A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances. Reduction and addition in allowances shall be in the form specified for Change Orders.

B. Submit invoices or delivery slips to indicate actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.

1.5 Contingency Allowances

- A. Use the contingency allowance only as directed for the Owner's purposes, and only by written approval which designate amounts to be charged to the allowance.
- B. **With the exception of quantity allowances, all allowances indicated are contingency allowances and therefore the Owner may transfer balances for other discretionary uses. Overhead and profit margins SHALL NOT BE ADDED to any amount drawn from original Allowance(s) regardless of the indicated use.**
- C. Invoicing Procedures:
  - 1. Each contingency allowance shall be a "line item" on the Schedule of Values which is an attachment to the Application and Certificate for Payment as referenced in the "General Conditions of the Contract, Article 29.B".
  - 2. A copy of actual invoices paid by the Contractor and used against the respective Allowance(s), shall be included with the General Contractor's Application for Payment. This will allow all parties to know the remaining balance of Allowance(s) at all times.
  - 3. Overages:  
Contractor shall submit to the Architect all costs associated with prior approved overages of Allowance(s). The Architect will prepare change order for these prior approved overages.
  - 4. Unused Balance:  
Prior to final Application of Payment, Contractor shall submit total costs associated with Allowance(s). These costs should correspond with Schedule of Values from previous Applications for Payment plus any new charges. The Architect will prepare a change order to credit unused amounts. All changes which involve a net credit to the Owner shall include fair and reasonable credits for overhead and profit on the deducted work, in no case less than 5%.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

Not applicable.

3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 Inspection

Inspect products covered by an allowance promptly upon delivery for damage or defects.

3.2 Preparation

Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related construction activities.

3.3 Schedule of Allowances

Allowance No. 1: Include a contingency allowance of \$50,000.00 for the Owner's use throughout the project for unforeseen conditions as directed by the Architect.

Allowance No. 2: Include a quantity allowance of 200 cubic yards of replacement of unsuitable soils with compacted structural fill. This Base Bid grading shall include the required cutting and filling of the existing grade to the proposed subgrade elevation. Onsite Geotechnical engineer shall determine if unsuitable soils are present. Unit price is provided for the addition to or deletion from this assumed amount. Refer to Section 02300 - Earthwork.

END OF SECTION



1.0 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1.1 Related Documents

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary (Special) Conditions and Modifications and other Division - 1 Specifications Sections, apply to work of the Section.

1.2 Project / Work Identification

Project name is New JROTC Facility for Pleasant Grove High School

A. Base Bid Requirements:

1. In general, the project shall consist of selective demolition and new construction including, but not limited to:  
Site work, new single-level, pre-engineered metal building with brick veneer, aluminum windows and aluminum storefront system, standing seam roof on pre-engineered structural metal frame, interior concrete block wall and paint finish, acoustical tile ceiling, floor and wall finishes, plus plumbing, mechanical and electrical work as required to perform the work under this Contract for the Pleasant Grove High School and to properly join, connect and finish the new work to bring all to final, finished completion in first class manner ready for use by the Owner, all in strict accordance with Contract Documents including plans and specifications as prepared by Lathan Associates Architects, P. C., Hoover, Alabama; and shall include the furnishing of all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary for the proper completion of the building and other work as called for in the drawings and / or specifications dated February 1, 2022.
2. The Base Bid shall include all work shown or specified.
3. See Section 01010 for Alternates.
4. See Section 01020 for Allowances.
5. It is the intent and requirement under this Contract to accomplish all demolition and preparation necessary to perform the Work under this Contract and to properly join, connect and finish the new work to bring all to final, finished completion in first class manner ready for use by Owner.

B. Contractor's Duties: Except as specifically noted, provide and pay for:

1. Labor, materials and equipment.
2. Tools, construction equipment and machinery.
3. Water, heat, conditioning and utilities required for construction shall be provided by the Contractor.
4. Other facilities and services necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work. Including hoist if same required for access to site. Provide own telephone service and sanitary portable toilet facilities

5. Secure and pay for permits, impact fees, government fees, and licenses. This will include, but not be limited to, all permits required by ADEM , the U.S. Army Corp of Engineers and all fees required by State of Alabama, Division of Construction Management.
6. Give required notices.
7. Comply with codes, ordinances, rules, regulations, orders and other legal requirements of public authorities which bear on performance of the Work.
8. Promptly submit written notice to the Architect of observed variance of Contract Documents from legal requirements. It is not Contractor's responsibility to make certain that drawings and specifications comply with codes and regulations.
9. Enforce strict discipline and good order among employees. Do not employ unfit persons or persons not skilled in assigned tasks. **Smoking is prohibited on site.**
10. **Comply with Owner's Covid-19 safety measures, and requirements.**
11. It is intended that all items and systems shown or specified be furnished and installed complete and fully operational when all work is in place and in use. Where more than one trade is involved, the General Contractor shall be responsible for coordination and resolution of disputes between his subcontractors and material suppliers regarding responsibility for furnishing and installing individual parts, systems, materials, connections, proper separation, hardware, adapters, surface preparation, relationship conflicts, supports, blocking and all similar items required for the complete and fully functional weathertight installation of the work.

C. Related Contract Documents:

Related requirements and conditions that are indicated on the Contract Documents include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following:

1. Existing site conditions and restrictions on use of the site.
2. Alterations and coordination with existing work.
3. Work to be performed concurrently by the Owner.
4. Work to be performed concurrently by separate contractors.
5. Work to be performed subsequent to work under this Contract.
6. Equipment / Material assigned as work of the Contract.
7. Requirements for partial Owner occupancy prior to substantial completion of the Contract Work.
8. Safety for and protection for occupancy, operation of existing facilities and construction to remain.

D. Summary by References:

Work of the Contract can be summarized by references to the Contract, General

Conditions, Supplementary (Special Requirements) Conditions, Specification Sections, Drawings, addenda and modifications to the Contract Documents issued subsequent to the initial printing of the project manual and including, but not necessarily limited to, printed material referenced by any of these.

It is recognized that work of the Contract is also unavoidably affected or influenced by governing regulations, natural phenomenon including weather conditions and other forces outside the Contract Documents.

- E. The Owner may provide certain items of furniture, equipment, etc. Coordinate for utility rough-in and / or installation.

### 1.3 Contractor's Use of Premises:

#### A. General:

During the entire construction period the Contractor shall have the exclusive use of that portion of the phased contract work limits for construction operations, in accord with approved phasing plan schedule.

The Contractor shall limit his use of the premises to the work indicated, so as to allow for Owner occupancy and use by the public.

#### Use of the Site:

Confine operations at the site to the areas and limits permitted under the Contract and by law, ordinances, permits, and special conditions and special project procedures and coordination sections of the documents. Portions of the site beyond areas on which work is indicated are not to be disturbed. Conform to site rules and regulations affecting the work while engaged in project construction.

1. Keep existing driveways and entrances serving the premises clear and available to the Owner and his employees at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials.
  2. Do not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment. Confine stockpiling of materials and location of storage sheds to the areas indicated. If additional storage is necessary, obtain and pay for such storage off site. Storage of material in the phased contract work limits shall be confined to noncombustible / non-hazard material that is scheduled for immediate use (no longer than 24 hour storage).
  3. Lock mechanized or motorized construction equipment, when parked and unattended, so as to prevent unauthorized use. Do not leave such vehicles or equipment unattended with the motor running or the ignition key in place. Release hydraulic pressure when equipment is not in use. All vehicles delivering materials to the site shall be manned at all times, no exception.
- B. Confine operations at site to areas and limits permitted by law, ordinances, permits, Contract Documents and SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS.
  - C. Assume full responsibility for insurance, protection and safekeeping of products stored on premises.
  - D. Coordinate with the Owner and schedule deliveries and unloading to prevent traffic congestion blocking of access or interference with Work. Arrange deliveries to

avoid larger accumulations of materials than can be suitably stored at site.

- E. Contractor to pay for, or satisfactorily repair, all damages incident to their Work, to sidewalks, streets, other public or private property, or to any public utilities occurring during period of work under Contract.
- F. Owner furnished and installed items that may require coordination between this General Contractor and Owner assigned agent. Contractor should also verify requirements for utility rough-ins for Owner furnished equipment.
- G. Contractor shall maintain all existing adjacent building exits passable for emergency pedestrian egress.

**H. Comply with Owner's Covid-19 safety measures, and requirements.**

**1.4 Owner Occupancy / Partial Owner Occupancy:**

The Owner reserves the right to place and install equipment as necessary in completed areas of the building and to occupy such completed areas prior to substantial completion, provided that such occupancy does not substantially interfere with completion of the work. Such placing of equipment and partial occupancy shall not constitute acceptance of the work or any part of the work.

**1.5 Alterations and Coordination:**

**A. General:**

The work of this contract includes coordination of the entire work of the project, including preparation of general coordination drawings, diagrams and schedules, and control of site utilization, from beginning of construction activity through project close-out and warranty periods.

**B. Alterations:**

Where applicable, requirements of the Contract Documents apply to alteration work in the same manner as to new construction.

**C. General:**

To expedite delivery and for other purposes in his own best interests, the Owner, before the date of the Contract, may negotiate purchase orders or make other commitments with supplies of material and equipment to be incorporated into the work by the Contractor. These purchase orders and commitments will be assigned to the Contractor for installation.

**1.6 Miscellaneous Provisions (to include, but not be limited, by the following):**

- A. Provide all rough-in and utility connections for all Owner Furnished Equipment and all new plumbing fixtures, new kitchen equipment and for all new electrical fixtures, switches and outlets, etc.
- B. Complete Plumbing, Heating, Ventilating, Air Conditioning, and Electrical systems.
- C. Preparation of new finishes as called for in Finish Schedule and related specified Sections.
- D. Rework and refinish those areas including ceiling tile and grid disturbed by work of Divisions 15 and 16, cutting and patching as required for these specifications.



Strict coordination with the Architect and Owner's assigned project representative is mandatory.

E. Mechanical / Electrical Requirements of General Work:

1. General:

Except as otherwise indicated, comply with applicable requirements of Division 15 Sections for mechanical provisions within units of general (Division 2 - 14) Work. Except as otherwise indicated, comply with applicable requirements of Division 16 Sections for electrical provisions within units of general (Division 2 - 14) Work.

Service Connections: Refer to Division 15 and Division 16 Sections for the characteristics of the mechanical and electrical services to be connected to units of general work. Provide units manufactured or fabricated for proper connection to and utilization of available services. Except as otherwise indicated, final connection of mechanical services to general work is defined as being mechanical work, and final connection of electrical services to general work is defined as electrical work.

2. Electrical Requirements:

Except as otherwise indicated, comply with applicable provisions of The National Electrical Code (NEC) and standards by National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA), for electrical components of general work. Provide Underwriters Laboratories listed and labeled products where applicable. See Division 16 and electrical drawings.

F. Performance Requirements for Completed Work

The Contract Documents indicate the intended occupancy and utilization of the building and its individual systems and facilities. Compliance with governing regulations is intended and required for the work and for the Owner's occupancy and utilization. In addition to the requirement that every element of the work comply with applicable requirements of the contract documents, it is also required that the work as a whole comply with the general building performance requirements.

1.7 Utilities for Construction:

Make all arrangements necessary to connect to all utilities required to accomplish work under this contract. The Contractor will be solely responsible for connection to utilities required for construction of this Contract.

A. The Owner shall pay for water and electricity usage bills required for normal construction purposes.

B. The contractor shall provide reasonable heat, cooling and ventilation within the building as required until the mechanical system has been completed, connected and in operation in the normal sequence of construction. This is not "in addition" to any normal requirement for heating, cooling and ventilation under this Contract, but is to clarify that a subcontractor or a Separate Contractor may benefit from the existence of these systems.

C. Temporary Electrical Lighting and Power:

Until permanent electrical power is installed and until the building lighting fixtures are installed in the normal sequence of construction, the General Contractor will make available in each general area of the contract work, outlets to which the

Separate Contractors may connect for temporary lighting and single phase electrical power. The General Contractor will pay all costs for this temporary utility extension and remove this temporary source when permanent electrical lighting and power outlets are installed. When, in the normal sequence of construction, the building lights are installed and connected and the building electrical outlets installed, the use of these shall be available for use by the subcontractor and/or Separate Contractors at no cost to them. All temporary electrical lighting and power for Separate Contractors shall be single phase, except the General Contractor will provide sufficient three-phase service as required for the operation and testing of certain items of Equipment, such as food service equipment. Verify all electrical service and phasing prior to construction.

1.8 Requirements of Separate Contractors will be as follows:

- A. Separate Contractors to enter the building site to accomplish his work at the approval of the building General Contractor shall cooperate and coordinate with the General Contractor and shall be subject to the General Contractor as to schedule and locations within the site for him to accomplish his work. The General Contractor is responsible for and is in charge of the building site.
- B. The Separate Contractor is entitled to storage, access and work space inside the building in the same manner and subject to the same conditions and requirements as subcontractors for the building contract. The Separate Contractor will be advised of the availability of storage space (location coordinated by the General Contractor), and of responsibility to vacate and clean in time for final finish work.
- C. Separate Contractors are liable for any damage to the building. The Separate Contractor shall immediately make good any stain, harm or damage to the building caused by his forces. Most particularly, his attention is directed to need for caution in not damaging ceiling tile and wall finishes. Before final payment will be made to a Separate Contractor, he must have settled with the building General Contractor for any damage done.
- D. Separate Contractor must provide own toilet and telephone facilities (or make arrangements with the General Contractor as to pay rent for his share of cost).
- E. Separate Contractor to make provisions for his own safety and to accomplish his work in compliance with all National and Local Safety Regulations.
- F. Remove own trash and debris; each Separate Contractor to completely remove all trash and debris, caused by his work, from the building, and from the site.
- G. Do not allow dust to be exhausted through mechanical system.
- H. This Contractor to clean building exterior and interior as outlined in Section 01700-CLEAN UP.

1.9 Quality Control

- A. Shop Drawings and Product Approval:  
Compliance with Shop Drawing checking by the Contractor then submittal for approval to the Architect as required by GENERAL CONDITIONS and SUBMITTALS - SECTION 01350 .

- B. Material Approval:  
Compliance with SUBMITTALS - SECTION 01350 for submittal of products for approval by Architect before delivery of same to jobsite.
- C. Qualifications of Workmen:  
In acceptance or rejection of the work of the Sections specified herein, and in particularly that work involved with the application of finish materials, the Architect will make no allowance for lack of skill on the part of the workmen.
- D. Special Inspections:  
Compliance with special inspection requirements of the International Building Code is the responsibility of the General Contractor.

- 1.10 Patch and Repair Work:  
Patch and Repair work under this Contract (in addition to work specified and indicated on the drawings) shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Maintain fire integrity of walls, floors, ceilings and structure where piercing or openings are made. Use safing material as specified herein for approved UL poke-through applications.

- 1.11 N.I.C. Items:  
Items noted as Not In Contract (N.I.C.) are to be furnished by Owner.

END OF SECTION



## SPECIAL PROJECT REQUIREMENTS - SECTION 01030

The Instructions to Bidders, General Conditions, Modified General Conditions and Special Project Requirements as set forth herein are applicable to the work under every Division and Section of these Specifications.

### TIME FOR COMPLETION

All work under this Contract shall be complete and ready for Owner occupancy within Three Hundred Sixty Five (365) consecutive calendar days from written Notice To Proceed. The work under this contract shall commence within Ten (10) calendar days from date of Notice To Proceed.

### TIME IS OF THE ESSENCE

The Owner must occupy the work within the completion time indicated herein. Delivery time for equipment and material provided under this contract shall include lead time for storage and ready installation within time limits of the work. Coordination of Owner furnished / Contractor installed equipment and/or materials shall be considered within time limits of the work.

### BID GUARANTY

The base bid proposal shall be guaranteed for a period of Sixty (60) days after date of proposal. Alternate proposals (additive or deductive), if requested, shall be guaranteed for a period of Ninety (90) days after date of signing contract. Unit prices, if requested, shall be guaranteed until the date of final acceptance of the project by the Owner. Upon receipt of the drafted construction contract, the contractor shall have no more than fourteen (14) days to execute and return the construction contract to the architect with all supporting documentation in correct order.

### INSURANCE

All projects require Builder's Risk Insurance

### OWNER

All papers shall be delivered to the Owner, unless otherwise specified in writing to the Contractor. Wherever the term "Owner" is used in the Specification it shall refer to:

JEFFERSON COUNTY BOARD OF EDUCATION  
2100 18<sup>TH</sup> STREET S.  
BIRMINGHAM, AL 35209

### ARCHITECT

Wherever the term "Architect" is used in the Specifications, it shall refer to:

LATHAN ASSOCIATES ARCHITECTS, P. C.  
300 CHASE PARK SOUTH, SUITE 200  
HOOVER, ALABAMA 35244

who by contract with the Owner, is authorized to prepare all drawings, details, and specifications for this work.

After the award of this contract, supervision of the work will be performed by the aforementioned Architect, his duly authorized representatives, or his duly appointed successor as may be designated in writing to the Contractor by the Owner.

### APPLICABLE CODES AND AUTHORITIES

#### A. Codes

1. The work of this project shall be in accordance with the 2015 Edition, International Building Code, 2015 International Mechanical Code, 2015 International Fuel Gas

Code, 2015 International Fire Code, 2014 National Electrical Code, 2013 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code (NFPA 72)n 2014 ACC/NSSA Standard for the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters, (ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1 – 2013 Energy Standard for Buildings, and ADA Standards for Accessible Design - 2010, as well as with other applicable codes, laws and ordinances.

2. Promptly notify the Architect, in writing, if any of the contract documents are in conflict or variance with applicable codes, laws and ordinances. All changes will be made by written addenda or modifications.

B. Authorities, including but not limited to:

1. Alabama Department of Public Health
2. City and/ or County Health Department
3. State of Alabama Department of Finance - Division of Construction Management (formerly named Alabama Building Commission)
4. Alabama Department of Environmental Management (ADEM)
5. US Army Corps of Engineers
6. Secure and pay for permits, impact fees, government fees and licenses. This will include, but not be limited to, all permits and/or fees required by ADEM, State of Alabama and the U.S. Army Corp of Engineers.

- C. If any work is performed knowing it to be contrary to such codes, law, ordinances, rules and regulations and without notice to the Architect, the Contractor assumes full responsibility therefore and shall bear all costs for compliance thereto.

**FIRE ALARM REQUIREMENTS**

The Certified Fire Alarm Act requires that every business who installs fire alarm systems in commercial occupancies must be licensed as a Certified Fire Alarm Contractor. The contractor must have a NICET Level III Technician in a position of responsibility, and the license will be issued in the name of the certificate holder and the contractor. The Certified Fire Alarm Act also requires that technicians working for the Certified Contractor must hold a current NICET Level II or equivalent certification. Contractors wishing to bid on fire alarm work must show evidence at the pre-bid conference that he/she meets the certification requirements of the Act and holds a permit issued by the State Fire Marshal.

Act 2009-657, effective August 1, 2012, requires fire alarm contractors to be permitted through the State of Alabama Fire Marshal's Office. In accordance with §34-33A-9, if a fire alarm contractor is going to do work in State of Alabama, the contractor must deliver to the local building official a copy of their State Fire Marshal's Fire Alarm Permit. In addition, the DCM requires the following:

1. For work involving fire alarm systems, General Contractors must submit a copy of the fire alarm contractor's State Fire Marshal's Fire Alarm Permit at the same time as submission of the subcontractor and supplier list to the lead design professional, which is required within 24 hours after receipt of bids. The architect or engineer shall reject fire alarm contractors who cannot provide a copy of the required permit.
2. For work involving fire alarm systems, General Contractors must provide a copy of the fire alarm contractor's State Fire Marshal's Fire Alarm Permit to the DCM Inspector at the pre-construction conference.

### NONRESIDENT BIDDERS

Nonresident bidders must accompany any written bid documents with a written opinion of an attorney at law licensed to practice law in such nonresident bidders' state of domicile, as to the preferences, if any or none, granted by the law of that state to its own business entities whose principal places of business are in that state in the letting of any or all public contracts.

### PRE-BID CONFERENCE

A conference of intended bidders may be held by the Owner prior to the time for the opening of bids for the purpose of presenting and explaining the policies of the Board. Notification of date and place for conference shall be given by written addenda.

### PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE

A conference shall be held at the job site no later than two weeks following the date of "NOTICE TO PROCEED". The purpose of this conference is to define the duties and responsibilities of the Architect, Owner, Contractor and The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management. All forms, procedures, schedules and other pertinent requirements will be discussed.

### PRE-ROOFING CONFERENCE

A pre-roofing conference is required before any roofing materials are installed. This conference shall be conducted by a representative of the Architect and attended by representatives of the Owner, DCM Inspector, General Contractor, Roofing Contractor, Sheet Metal Contractor, Roof Deck Manufacturer (if applicable), and the Roofing Materials Manufacturer. If equipment of substantial size is to be placed on the roof, the Mechanical Contractor must also attend this meeting.

The pre-roofing conference is intended to clarify demolition (for renovation or re-roofing projects) and application requirements for work to be completed before roofing operations can begin. This would include a detailed review of the shop drawings, submittal data and samples. If conflict exists between the specifications and the Manufacturer's requirements, this shall be resolved. If this pre-roofing conference cannot be satisfactorily concluded without further inspection and investigation by any of the parties present, it shall be reconvened at the earliest possible time to avoid delay of the work. In no case, should the work proceed without inspection of all roof deck areas and substantial agreement on all points.

**The Representative for the Roofing Materials Manufacturer shall bring a copy of the warranty(ies) for the roofing material(s) for comparison to the warranty(ies) specified. This sample warranty is required to be job specific, covering all requirements, per the specifications. If the sample warranty isn't provided as required, the conference will be voided, an inspection fee will be issued, and it will have to be rescheduled.**

The following are to be accomplished during the conference:

1. Review all Factory Mutual and Underwriters Laboratories requirements listed in the specifications and resolve any questions or conflicts that may arise.
2. Establish trade-related job schedules, including the installation of roof-mounted mechanical equipment.
3. Establish roofing schedule and work methods that will prevent roof damage.
4. Require that all roof penetrations and walls be in place prior to installing the roof.
5. Establish those areas on the job site that will be designated as work and storage areas for roofing operations.
6. Establish weather and working temperature conditions to which all parties must agree.
7. Establish acceptable methods of protecting the finished roof if any trades must travel across or work on or above any areas of the finished roof.

The Architect shall prepare a written report indicating actions taken and decisions made at this pre-roofing conference. This report shall be made a part of the project records and copies furnished to the General Contractor, the Owner, The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management and the DCM

Inspector.

**Regardless of whether or not the sample warranty has been submitted to the Architect, a copy of the warranty must be provided to the DCM Inspector by the Manufacturer at this Pre-Roofing Conference.**

#### PRE-FINISHES CONFERENCE

If elected by the Architect, a conference shall be held at the job site within two weeks prior to the installation of finishes. All Contractors involved with finish work are required to attend. The purpose of this conference is to discuss finish work, coordination issues, the Owner's and Architect's expectations of quality and workmanship and the position of the Owner and Architect regarding poor quality and workmanship. This conference must be scheduled two weeks in advance of any finish installation.

#### LIST OF SUBCONTRACTORS AND PRINCIPAL MATERIAL SUPPLIERS

A copy shall be prepared by the successful Contractor and delivered to Architect within **Twenty-Four (24) hours after bid**. List shall show following information on each Subcontractor and/or Supplier:

- A. Name of Subcontractor and/or Supplier
- B. Complete mailing address
- C. Telephone Number
- D. Person to contact and position in organization
- E. Scope of Work to be performed by Subcontractor and percent of total contract.
- F. For work involving fire alarm systems, General Contractor's must submit a copy of the Fire Alarm contractor's State Fire Marshall's Fire Alarm Permit at the same time as submission of the subcontractor and supplier list to Architect. The architect or engineer shall reject fire alarm contractors who cannot provide a copy of the required permit.

This list may also be emailed to [submittals@lathanassociates.com](mailto:submittals@lathanassociates.com).

#### PROGRESS SCHEDULES AND CHARTS

One hard copy prepared by Contractor and delivered to Architect at beginning of job. Five (5) additional copies must be submitted with each monthly request for payment showing actual progress. The schedule shall be in the form of an Analog Bar Chart Schedule of suitable scale to indicate appropriately the percentage of work scheduled for completion at any time. The Contractor shall enter on the Chart his actual progress, preferably at the end of each week, but in any event, at the end of each month, and deliver to the Architect five (5) copies thereof and attach one to his monthly Application for Partial Payment.

#### CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Bar-Chart Schedule: Prepare a fully developed, horizontal bar-chart type Contractor's construction schedule. Submit within 30 days of the date established for "Commencement of the Work".
  - 1. Provide a separate time bar for each significant construction activity. Provide a continuous vertical line to identify the first working day of each week. Use the same breakdown of units of the work as indicated in the "Schedule of Values".
  - 2. Within each time bar indicate estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments. As work progresses, place a contrasting mark in each bar to indicate Actual Completion.
  - 3. Prepare the schedule on a sheet, or series of sheets, of stable transparency, or other reproducible media, of sufficient width to show data for the entire construction period.
  - 4. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the work from parties



involved. Coordinate each element on the schedule with other construction activities; include minor elements involved in the sequence of the work. Show each activity in proper sequence. Indicated graphically sequences necessary for completion of related portions of the work.

5. Coordinate the Contractor's construction schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests and other schedules.
6. Indicate completion in advance of the date established for Substantial Completion. Indicate Substantial Completion on the schedule to allow time for the Architect's procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.

B. Work Stages

Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the work, including testing and installation.

C. Cost Correlation

At the head of the schedule, provide a two-item cost correlation line, indicating "precalculated" and "actual" costs. On the line show dollar-volume of work performed as of the dates used for preparation of payment requests.

D. Distribution

Following response to the initial submittal, print and distribute copies to the Architect, Owner, subcontractors, and other parties required to comply with scheduled dates. Post copies in the Project meeting room and temporary field office.

When revisions are made, distribute to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the work and are no longer involved in construction activities.

E. Schedule Updating and Progress Photographs

Revise the schedule after each bi-weekly meeting or activity, where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue the copies of updated schedule concurrently with progress photographs and report of each meeting to the Owner and Architect.

#### NOTICE OF SALES AND USE TAX EXEMPTION

The Owner is a tax-exempt agency. Materials incorporated into the Work are exempt from sales and use tax, therefore Contractor shall NOT include sales and use taxes in his Bid. Pursuant to Alabama Act No. 2013-205 (effective 5/9/2013), Contractors bidding the Work shall be required to attach "Accounting of Sales Tax" (DCM) Form C-3A-Sales Tax) to their Bid. **FAILURE OF THE CONTRACTOR TO COMPLETE THIS ATTACHMENT TO BID PROPOSAL FORM INDICATING THE SALES TAX AS REQUIRED BY ACT 2013-205, SECTION 1 (g) SHALL RENDER THE BID NON-RESPONSIVE.**

It shall be the responsibility of the successful Contractor and any Subcontractor working under the same contract to apply for a Certificate of Exemption from the Alabama Department of Revenue for this specific project and to comply with all ADOR rules and regulations. The Owner shall not consider claims for additional costs resultant of the Contractor's or its subcontractors' failure to comply with such rules and regulations.

However, the Owner may elect to issue Form ST: PAA1 Purchasing Agent Appointment which appoints the Contractor as Agent to purchase materials Tax-Exempt. In this case, invoices must be transmitted for direct payment by the Owner.

## DAMAGE TO PROPERTY

- A. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for all work of this contract prior to such work achieving official Substantial Completion as per ARTICLE 32 of the General Conditions of the Contract; and for providing adequate insurance, including: project specific Builder's Risk Insurance and Flood Insurance to cover the following:
1. Any damage to or loss of stored materials.
  2. Any damage to or loss of in-place work.
  3. Any damage to or loss of any portion of on-site or off-site property, existing or new, resulting from failure of or omission of protective measures; or caused by the work of this contract, including but not limited to: property, furnishings, contents or loss of revenue.

The Contractor shall be further responsible for promptly correcting or remedying of any such damage or loss; and shall exercise all reasonable measures to minimize any resulting delays to the projects original completion schedule.

- B. Damaged work shall be considered Defective Work.

## USER FEES - CONTRACTOR

The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management has adopted a new rule, Administrative Rule 170X-8 Collection of User Fees. The full text of Administrative Rule 170X-8 is available on The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management's website. It is the responsibility of the General Contractor to visit The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management website to verify these rules.

## PERMIT FEE

A permit fee will be required for projects inspected by The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management. The permit fee is outlined in the Administrative Rule 170X-8.

DCM Form C-8, "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", Article 44, Para. A, states the following:

"Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit and other permits and governmental fees, licenses and all inspections necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work which are customarily secured after award of the Construction Contract and which are in effect on the date of receipt of bids."

For public works projects falling under The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management's jurisdiction and bid after October 1, 2014, the Architect shall include a copy of The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management user fee schedule in the project manual and specify that the permit fee is to be included in the contractor's bid and paid by the Contractor.

The Pre-construction Conference cannot be held until both (1) the permit fee and (2) the signed construction contract has been received by The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management.

PERMIT FEE SCHEDULE WORKSHEET	
Cost Categories	Permit Fee Calculation
Less than \$1000	N/A
\$1001 – \$50,000	Cost of the Work minus \$1,000 = _____/1000 x \$5.00 = _____ + \$15.00 = Permit Fee Due
\$50,001 – \$100,000	Cost of the Work minus \$50,000 = _____/1000 x \$4.00 = _____ + \$260.00 = Permit Fee Due
\$100,001 – \$500,000	Cost of the Work minus \$100,000 = _____/1000 x \$3.00 = _____ + \$460.00 = Permit Fee Due
\$500,001 and up	Cost of the Work minus \$500,000 = _____/1000 x \$2.00 = _____ + \$1,660.00 = Permit Fee Due

## INSPECTIONS

**Scheduling** - The contractor will contact the architect by e-mail at [inspections@lathanassociates.com](mailto:inspections@lathanassociates.com) of the date the project will be ready for an inspection.

- The Architect will contact The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management (DCM) Inspector to schedule the first available date for the inspection. Inspections must be requested minimum 14 days in advance.
- When the DCM Inspector confirms the inspection time, the Architect will send an e-mail confirming the inspection time and date.
- Cancellations of any scheduled inspection must be received in writing by e-mail no less than 48 hours prior to the scheduled inspection. If an inspection is cancelled, it will be rescheduled subject to the DCM Inspector's availability.
- If an inspection is cancelled less than 48 hours prior to the scheduled inspection, the re-inspection fee of \$1,500 will be charged to the General Contractor.
- If an inspection is held and the project is not deemed ready for inspection or it does not pass the inspection, a re-inspection fee of \$1,500 will be charged to the General Contractor.

**Minimum Requirements** - The following minimum requirements listed below are provided to aid the contractors and architect in determining if a project is ready for a required inspection.

- Pre-Construction Conference
  - Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Major Subcontractors, DCM Inspector
  - Inspection Requirements:
    - Signed construction contract
    - Verification of payment of permit fee
    - Fire Alarm Contractor's Certification (from State Fire Marshal)

- ADEM permit, if more than 1 acre of land is disturbed
- Pre-Roofing Conference
  - Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Roofing Subcontractor, Roofing Manufacturer's Representative, DCM Inspector
  - Inspection Requirements:
    - Roofing submittals must be approved by the architect prior to pre-roofing conference
    - Roofing manufacturer must provide documentation that roof design and roofing materials meet code requirements for wind uplift and impact resistance
    - Copy of sample roofing warranty
- Above-Ceiling Inspections
  - Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, MEP Engineers, Major Subcontractors DCM Inspector
  - Inspection Requirements:
    - All work must be completed except for install at ion of ceiling tiles and/or hard ceilings
    - Space must be conditioned
    - Permanent power must be connected unless otherwise arranged with the DCM Inspector
- Life Safety Inspections and Final Inspections
  - Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Engineers, Major Subcontractors, Local Fire Marshal, DCM Inspector
  - Inspection Requirements:
    - Fire alarm certification
    - Provide Smoke Machine for testing of Duct Detectors
    - General Contractor's 5-Year Roofing Warranty (DCM Form C-9)
    - Roofing manufacturer's guaranty
    - Emergency and exit lighting tests
    - Fire alarm must be monitored
    - Flush/pressure test for new and/or existing fire hydrants
    - Must have clear egress/access and emergency (for first responders) access to building
    - Must have ADA access completed
- Year-End Inspections
  - Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Engineers, DCM Inspector and /or Major subcontractors may also be required to attend
  - Inspection Requirements:
    - Owner 's list of documented warranty items

#### MATERIALS

ALL MATERIALS FOR THIS PROJECT SHALL BE ASBESTOS FREE.

#### PROTECTION OF WORK AND PROPERTY

Contractor shall confine his operations to the project work limits of this contract and shall maintain required exit and fire safety requirements as well as Owner's security requirements. Protect adjoining spaces and cause no damage to same; any damage to be immediately repaired.

##### A. Protection of Work and the Public

Provide adequate protection, in full accordance with local, State and Federal regulations, for the work in progress as well as for the public and others using the site, until the completion of all work.

Provide suitable signs, signals and barricades against trespassing by individual and take whatever steps necessary or required by law to protect workers and public from harm. Protect the work and the public from damage of any kind during all operations. Methods described herein are minimum standards acceptable except where exceeded by Federal, State or local requirements.

B. Safety and Traffic Control Devices During Construction

1. Within the limits of area designated for work under this contract, and any staging or traffic areas, this Contractor shall furnish, install and maintain all safety and traffic control devices during the construction period as described herein, and as required by law.
2. All safety and traffic control devices shall be in compliance with Federal, State and local laws and regulations, and to the requirements and approval of applicable local officials, State Highway Department and the Architect.
3. Wherever the work affects the normal flow of vehicular or pedestrian traffic, traffic control devices shall be in accordance with requirements and standards as set forth in the "Manual on the Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways", latest edition, as published by U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration, and Section "G" of the Alabama Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices, Volumes I and II, latest edition.
4. Traffic Control Devices. Traffic control devices shall be installed at the inception of the construction operations and shall be properly maintained during the periods of construction. They shall remain in place only as long as they are needed and shall be removed immediately thereafter.
5. All traffic control devices must be approved by the City, County and by all affected enforcing agencies.
6. Protective Construction Site Barricade
  - a. Requirements: Contractor shall furnish, install and maintain throughout the life of the Contract, all necessary barricades, covers, scaffold guards, warning signs, warning lights, channelization markers and other protective devices, all as required by Owner, local rules, regulations and ordinances, and as necessary to protect the work from trespassing.
  - b. Barricades, enclosing devices and warning lights may be standard rental items of equipment in compliance with these requirements; and shall be of a type that affords security, is quite visible and is easily moved.
  - c. Materials for use in construction of site barricades and other protective devices shall be of new exterior plywood and not less than #2 pine structural lumber, all of good appearance, sound, square, straight, in line, braced and well-constructed. All materials, except those to be walked on, shall be painted.
  - d. Move barricades from one area to the next as the work progresses. Remove all upon completion.
  - e. Lighting on Barricades: Furnish and install traffic warning lights or barricades, in areas of vehicular traffic. Install yellow traffic signal lamps

complete with all wiring, switches, disconnects, fusing, sockets, guards and hanging provisions. These lights shall be turned on during all hours of darkness (dusk to dawn). Maintain in service during the construction period; move forward as site of work moves. Remove all upon completion of work.

- f. See also erosion control requirements of Earthwork Section 02300.
- g. **Unauthorized visitors not permitted within working and storage areas.** OSHA approved suitable personal safety devices are to be provided for authorized visitors within working areas. Suitable fire extinguishing equipment, readily accessible from any part of the work, to be provided and maintained. Erect any and all required additional protective barriers, lights, etc., as necessary for safety and protection. Keep area of work closed off when not in use.

C. Utilities

- 1. The Owner shall pay for electricity and water usage required for normal construction purposes.
- 2. Other utility bills caused by work of the contract are to be paid by Contractor as outlined in the SUMMARY OF THE WORK. Contractor to provide own telephone, temporary heat and pay costs for same. Contractor to pay for any sewer impact fee as related to this project. All project related sanitary conditions are the responsibility of the Contractor.
- 3. Contractor must investigate and verify the existence and location of all site utilities in the field before starting work. Flag on site all underground service lines in the construction area. Notify the Architect of any condition which, in the Contractor's opinion, may interfere with the completion of work as designated. Excavating in the vicinity of existing utilities shall be done carefully and by hand. Maintain and protect existing utilities.
- 4. The Contractor is responsible for all temporary utility connections to utilities.

D. Protection of Materials

Properly and effectively protect all materials and equipment, before, during and after their installation. Contractor will be allowed to store materials, equipment, etc., on the site. Security of the area(s) will be the sole responsibility of the Contractor. **Protect materials such as insulation and insulated duct from rain exposure.**

E. Watchman

The Contractor, at his own expense and option, may employ a watchman at such time as he deems necessary to protect his work and/or materials.

DAMAGE TO PROPERTY

The contractor will be responsible for, and insure against, any damage to property, furnishings, and/or loss of revenue resulting from any damage to any part of the existing property caused by the work of this Contract.

SPECIAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

All exitways shall be maintained free and clear of all stored materials, debris, etc.

No combustible construction materials shall be stored in the Project area after the day's work is complete. Remove any potentially hazardous materials immediately to prevent any fire hazards which may result from the construction of this Project. In addition, precautions shall be made by the General Contractor to prevent

any other activities at the site which may constitute a fire hazard.

In addition to any portable fire extinguishers existing in the building, the General Contractor shall provide additional fire extinguishers during the construction as required.

Refer to the General Conditions for additional safety requirements.

#### USE OF PREMISES, SANITARY PROVISIONS

Refer to SECTION 01035, SPECIAL PROJECT PROCEDURES, for use of premises, sanitary provisions which are specifically related to this project. Note that sanitary conditions are the responsibility of the Contractor.

All personnel required on the job site must at all times be in possession of **state issued** photo identification subject to examination by Owner or their representative. Other security or evacuation requirements may also be in place and is the responsibility of the General Contractor to abide by all school rules.

#### USE OF OCCUPIED PREMISES

During execution of this Contract, clear passages must be maintained as described along corridors. Owner will endeavor to keep personnel and visitors from work areas, but it will be the Contractor's responsibility to enforce all safety precautions.

#### CUTTING AND PATCHING

All excavation and cutting of new work to accomplish the work shall be by the respective trades. It is to be noted that Divisions 15 and 16 each are required to perform the necessary cutting of floors, walls, ceilings as necessary to install the work of their trade, all under the direct supervision of the General Contractor and in accordance with the construction schedule. The General Contractor is responsible for the repair, replacement and finish of pavement, roofs, floors, walls and ceiling (all finish work); and same shall be accomplished by competent workmen and finish up in a neat manner, by craftsmen skilled in their work, all to be equal in quality and appearance of adjacent work. Finished installation shall comply with specified tolerances and finishes. The Contractor shall not cut, excavate, or otherwise alter any work in a manner or by a method or methods that will endanger the work, adjacent property, workmen, the public or the work of any other Contractor.

In acceptance or rejection of the work of the Sections involved in the application of finish materials, the Architect will make no allowance for lack of skill on the part of the workmen.

When necessary to cut, or alter completed work to accommodate subsequent work, the Contractor performing the work previously in place shall do such cutting and repairing.

Cost of cutting and repairs necessitated by fault of negligence, or for other reasons, shall be borne by the Contractor at fault in requiring such work.

If a Contractor or Subcontractor fails to do necessary cutting or fails to have restored any work of others damaged by him, for a period of time causing delay in project construction, the Owner may do so and cost thereof shall be charged to the General Contractor.

Cutting of structural members will not be permitted.

FIRE INTEGRITY OF CONSTRUCTION shall be maintained whenever components of rated assemblies are penetrated, jointed, cracked or compromised in any way either intentionally or unintentionally; including, but not limited to: walls, floors, ceilings and caps. Rated walls shall extend and key to floor, cap assembly or roof deck above using consistent materials.

Openings for "poke-through" pipe, conduit, etc., penetrations shall be of minimum size in accordance with UL published requirements for maintaining integrity of rated construction and fire sealed properly. Mortar or concrete in contact with copper will not be accepted. Expansive spray foam fill which is combustible shall not

be allowed.

Opening shall be sealed full thickness of penetration, (i.e., grout solid up to within one (1) inch of finish surface then seal with rated sealant material). Any and all pipe and conduit penetrations of a finished wall, floor or ceiling materials shall be finished out with an approved escutcheon plate. Any penetration of rated walls or ceilings by mechanical ductwork shall be protected by use of rated fire damper system at point of penetration. Provide for collars as required at point of penetration through rated construction. Contractor shall provide fire integrity sign on rated wall construction (above ceiling) lines in accordance with the building code, and as outlined in PAINTING - SECTION 09910.

If specified under FIRESTOP CAULKING AND SEALING - SECTION 07840, fire caulking and sealing shall be **single source** provided using same approved materials and certified technicians throughout the project. All applicable trades shall coordinate accordingly and make their work ready to properly receive fire sealant. If fire sealing is not specified under a separate section, then all applicable trades shall fire seal their own work using the same mutually agreed upon fire sealing materials consistently throughout the project installed by manufacturer's certified technician(s). Acceptable fire sealing materials include, but are not limited to: Dow-Corning, 3-M Brand, Tremco meeting ASTM 3-119, ASTM 3-814 and mineral wool fiber safing.

#### USE AND OCCUPANCY PRIOR TO ACCEPTANCE BY OWNER

- A. Contractor agrees to permit Owner to use and occupy portions of building or Project before formal acceptance by Owner, provided that Owner:
  - 1. Secures written consent of Contractor (except in event that in the opinion of Architect, Contractor is chargeable with unwarranted delay in final completion of contract requirements).
  - 2. Secures endorsement from insurance carrier and consent of the surety, permitting occupancy and use of portions of project during remaining period of construction.
- B. Use and occupancy prior to formal acceptance shall not relieve Contractor of his responsibility to maintain insurance coverage, as called for in specifications, for benefit of Owner, Owner's Agent, Contractor and all Subcontractors until Project is completed and accepted by Owner. However, use and occupancy of any area by the Owner prior to project completion shall mean partial acceptance of that area and any equipment within that area used by the Owner, thereby requiring a substantial completion agreement between the Owner and the Contractor for said area and equipment.

#### PROJECT SIGN

- A. The General Contractor will erect a sign at the project site identifying the project. Wording for sign to be provided by the Owner through the Architect. Sign to be constructed of 3/4" x 4' x 8' exterior grade plywood with treated wood trim surround, mounted on two (2) 4" x 4" x 8'-0" treated wood posts, bottom of sign to be 3'-0" above finish grade. Sign painted with two coats best exterior grade alkyd paint before letters and graphics are painted on. Option: In lieu of painted lettering on plywood, a corrugated plastic sign (displaying the same lettering, layout and colors as above) may be secured directly to the unpainted exterior grade plywood.
- B. Sign shall be single sided.
- C. Location of sign to be coordinated with Architect and Owner and placed in a prominent location easily readable from existing street or roadway. Sign to be maintained in good condition until completion of Project. No other signs will be allowed on Project Site without the written approval of the Owner, issued through the Architect.



D. Reference DCM Form C-15 included in the project manual.

END OF SECTION



## SPECIAL PROJECT PROCEDURES - SECTION 01035

### 1.0 Requirements

As set forth herein are applicable to the Work under every Section or Division of this Specification, of the General Contractor and all Subcontractors.

### 1.1 Completion Date

Work under this contract shall be sufficiently completed to permit Owner to occupy the building, or a designated portion thereof, on or before date stipulated on the Proposal Form and accepted by Owner. See Paragraph entitled Time For Completion under SPECIAL PROJECT REQUIREMENTS, SECTION 01030.

### 1.2 Acceptance of Preceding Work

Before starting any operation, Contractor and each Subcontractor shall examine existing work performed by others to which his work adjoins. Failure to remedy faults in or notify Architect of deficiencies or faults in preceding work will constitute acceptance thereof and waiver of any claim of its unsuitability.

### 1.3 Layouts and Levels

General Contractor shall establish principal lines, grades, levels and corners, and shall set and maintain adequate reference points therefore. Contractor shall lay out own work to dimension from principal lines and shall be responsible for layout of his subcontractor's work.

### 1.4 Product Approval

A. In addition to items submitted for approval by Shop Drawings, Contractor to submit for approval within ten (10) days after receipt of Notice to Proceed a list of all products proposed for use in the work, listing manufacturer, make, model number, catalog listing subcontractors' and / or vendors' names, and other manufacturers' identification for each particular product for each particular use. Submit in letter form in 3 copies, and approval obtained before material is ordered. Submit list of products requiring color selection. Approved list of products manufacturer and / or vendor will be returned promptly in order to avoid any delay of ordering materials specified. General Contractor shall review with Architect and the Owner the actual status of availability of all materials and schedule of work in the building, (including Alternates).

B. Submit complete Product Data and testing results, if requested.

### 1.5 Weather Protection

Contractor provide, maintain and pay all cost for all weather protection required to properly protect all parts of structure from damage during construction. Note that building heating and cooling system will remain in operation throughout the contract period.

### 1.6 Manufacturer's Directions

A. Apply, install, connect and erect manufactured items or materials according to recommendations of manufacturer when such recommendations are not in conflict with Contract Documents.

B. Furnish to Architect, on request, copies of manufacturer's recommendations. Secure approval of recommendations before proceeding with work.

### 1.7 Coordination Between Trades: Contractor's Pre-Construction Coordination Meeting

A. Plumbing, Heating, Ventilating, Air Conditioning and Electrical Drawings are diagrammatic.

B. BEFORE COMMENCING WORK UNDER THIS CONTRACT, GENERAL CONTRACTOR IS TO ARRANGE FOR A MEETING OF ALL MAJOR SUBCONTRACTORS (AND SEPARATE CONTRACTS AS APPLICABLE) TO DETERMINE THAT ALL ITEMS WILL

FIT INTO SPACES PROVIDED, HEADROOMS MAINTAINED, CONCEALMENT REQUIRED, WALL THICKNESS SUFFICIENT FOR RECESS OF ITEMS, PRIORITIES ESTABLISHED IN INSTALLATION OF DUCTS, PIPING, ETC. EACH SUBCONTRACTOR MUST HAVE THEIR RESPECTIVE ON-SITE JOB FOREMAN PRESENT. Each Subcontractor to have drawings of all trades, and to be completely aware of and fully informed of, requirements and locations of work to be installed by other Subcontractors. In case of disagreements in locations, General Contractor is to settle same, giving preference to ductwork and larger items, except where grading of pipe may require preference. All decisions to be recorded on each Subcontractor's drawings and on jobsite set of drawings and fully inform all Subcontractors. No changes to be made which affect finish locations or alter requirements of contract without approval of the Architect. Do not cover or block previously installed alarm devices, valves, etc., without providing for access to same.

- C. If, in any location, it is impossible to install required items and maintain requirements as to ceiling heights, clearances dimensions, etc., or due to structural interference, General Contractor is to advise Architect for a decision.

#### 1.8 City Ordinances

- A. Comply with all City rules, regulations and ordinances in regard to parking, unloading, blocking of street, sidewalk or alley; and provide all lights, barriers, temporary walkways, protection, etc., as necessary for complete compliance.
- B. Comply with applicable Code and all local and Federal laws and ordinances in regard to safeguards during construction and fire protection, and all governing regulations pertaining to requirements during construction.

#### 1.9 Operating and Maintenance Instructions

- A. Contractor shall instruct Owner's operating personnel in proper operation, lubrication and maintenance of all equipment items installed under this contract.
- B. At completion of job, Contractor shall provide three (3) copies of a brochure containing manufacturer's operating, lubricating and maintenance instructions and parts lists for each item of equipment furnished under this contract. Each copy shall be assembled and bound under a substantial hardboard cover with title and index. Provide a complete set of approved manufacturer's and contractor's shop and equipment "setting" drawings for major systems and equipment furnished under this contract.

One (1) copy of the Operating and Maintenance instructions shall be hand delivered to the Architect at the final inspection and the remaining copies shall be provided to the Owner prior to issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion

#### 1.10 Site Limitation and Use

- A. General Contractor and each Subcontractor shall note the extent of site available for access and storage. Contractor restricted to those limits.
- B. All personnel required on the job site must at all times be in possession of **state issued** photo identification subject to examination by Owner or their representative. Other security requirements may also be in place and is the responsibility of the General Contractor to abide by all school rules.
- C. Contractor and Subcontractors are further cautioned that the traffic on adjacent streets may place strict limitations on the rates and means of delivery of materials, equipment and supplies, the removal of rubbish, and, in some cases, the hours during which deliveries are made.

1.11 Protection of Existing Property Adjacent

A. Protect and cause no damage to adjacent area and site.

During progress of work, Contractor will be responsible for full and complete protection of property which the work is being done, insofar as related to work under this Contract. Any damage to adjacent property, or contents caused by failure in performance with these requirements must be made good by Contractor at his own expense and to the satisfaction of Owner. Any damage to existing adjacent areas outside contract work limits shall be replaced with exact same materials as that damaged.

B. Provide for means to prevent objectionable dust and debris blowing onto adjacent property or streets from work being accomplished under this contract.

1.12 Dimensions

Contractor and each Subcontractor shall verify dimensions at site for built-in work, for work adjoining that of other trades and for dimensions shown to existing structures or installations. Notify Architect of any discrepancies.

1.13 Security of Construction Area

Contractor shall secure on site storage of materials and equipment. Storage of materials shall be within the Contractor's limit of construction at the site. This General Contractor shall adhere to Owner's requirements for security of work area and under all conditions shall be subject to these security regulations and requirements. Off-site storage of materials and equipment that are to be installed in the project shall be in a bonded storage area as outlined in the General Conditions.

1.14 Delivering and Storage

A. Deliver packaged materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened and labeled containers. Do not open containers until approximate time for use.

B. Store materials in a manner that will prevent damage to materials or structure, and that will prevent injury to persons. No materials will be stored outside of contract work area by this Contractor.

C. Store cementitious materials in dry, weathertight, ventilated spaces. Store ferrous materials to prevent contact with ground and to avoid rusting and damage from weather.

1.15 Fire Protection

Contractor to take all necessary steps to ensure prevention of fire. Contractor to have portable extinguishers on hand at site throughout the period of construction. Flammable and combustible materials shall be kept in metal cans with tight covers and removed from building at end of each working day.

Fire protection systems within existing buildings must be maintained in full operation during construction.

1.16 Chases and Openings

Provide all proper chases, openings and recesses as indicated for work under this Contract. Build in all sleeves, anchors, etc., for proper engagement of work to be installed. All post piercing of slabs and masonry shall be core drilling.

END OF SECTION



1.0 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1.1 Related Documents

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions (plus modifications thereto), and other Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

1.2 Description of Work

Minimum administrative and supervisory requirements necessary for coordination of work on the project include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following:

- A. Coordination and meetings.
- B. Administrative and supervisory personnel.
- C. Surveys and records or reports.
- D. Limitations for use of site.
- E. Special reports.
- F. General installation provisions.
- G. Cleaning and protection.
- H. Conservation and salvage.
- I. Special Inspections.

1.3 Coordination and Meetings

A. General

Prepare a written memorandum on required coordination activities. Include such items as required notices, reports and attendance at meetings. Distribute this memorandum to each entity performing work at the project site. Prepare similar memorandum for separate contractors where interfacing of their work is required.

B. Coordination Drawings

Prepare coordination drawings where work by separate entities requires fabrication off-site of products and materials which must accurately interface. Coordination drawings shall indicate how work shown by separate shop drawings will interface, and shall indicate sequence for installation.

C. Bi-Weekly Coordination Meetings

Hold bi-weekly general project coordination meetings at regularly scheduled times convenient for all parties involved. These meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as regular project meetings and special pre-installation meetings. Request representation at each meeting by every party currently involved in coordination or planning for the work of the entire project. Conduct meetings in a manner which will resolve coordination problems. Record results of the meeting and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

- D. At Contractor's option, bi-weekly coordination meetings can be held integrally with progress meetings.

1.4 Administrative / Supervisory Personnel

A. General

In addition to a General Superintendent and other administrative and supervisory personnel required for performance of the work, provide specific coordinating personnel as specified herein.

B. Project Coordinator

Provide a full-time Project Coordinator experienced in administration and supervision of building construction, including mechanical and electrical work. This Project Coordinator is hereby authorized to act as general coordinator of interfaces between units of work. For the purpose of this provision, "interface" is defined to include scheduling and sequencing of work, sharing of access to work spaces, installation, protection of each other's work, cutting and patching, tolerances, cleaning, selections for compatibility, preparation of coordination drawings, inspections, tests, temporary facilities and services, scheduling and sequencing of mechanical / electrical work, integration of work placed into limited spaces available for mechanical / electrical installations, each trades' protection of work by other trades and preparation of mechanical / electrical coordination drawings.

1.5 Surveys and Records / Reports

A. General

Establish markers to set lines and levels for work as needed to properly locate each element of the project. Calculate and measure required dimensions as shown within recognized tolerances. Drawings shall not be scaled to determine dimensions. Advise entities performing work of marked lines and levels provided for their use.

B. Survey Procedures

Before proceeding with the layout of actual work, verify the layout information shown on the drawings, in relation to the existing partitions and conditions. As work proceeds, check every major element for line, level and plumb. Maintain a record of such checks; make this record available for the Architect or Engineer. Record deviations from required lines and levels, and advise the Architect or Engineer promptly upon detection of deviations that exceed indicated or recognized tolerances. Record deviations which are accepted, and not corrected, on record drawings.

1.6 Limitations on Use of the Site

A. General

Limitations on site usage as well as specific requirements that impact site utilization are indicated on the drawings and by other contract documents. In addition to these limitations and requirements administer allocation of available space equitably among entities needing both access and space so as to produce the best overall efficiency in performance of the total work of the project. Schedule deliveries so as to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on site.

B. See also specific requirements of SECTION 01030 - SPECIAL PROJECT REQUIREMENTS and SECTION 01035 SPECIAL PROJECT PROCEDURES.

1.7 Special Reports

A. General

Submit special reports directly to the Owner through the Architect within one day of an occurrence. Submit a copy of the report to the other entities that are affected by the occurrence.

B. Reporting Unusual Events

When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at the site, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by the Contractor's personnel, and evaluation of the results or affects and similar pertinent information. Advise the Owner in advance when such events are known or predictable.



C. Reporting Accidents

Prepare and submit reports of significant accidents at the site and anywhere else work is in progress. Record and document data and actions. For this purpose, a significant accident is defined to include events where personal injury is sustained, or property loss of substance is sustained, or where the event posed a significant threat of loss or personal injury.

2.0 -PRODUCTS

Not applicable.

3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 General Installation Provisions

A. Pre-Installation Conferences

Hold a pre-installation meeting at the project site well before installation of each unit of work which requires coordination with other work. Installer and representatives of the manufacturers and fabricators who are involved in, or affected by, that unit of work, and with its coordination or integration with other work that has preceded or will follow shall attend this meeting. Advise the Architect / Engineer of scheduled meeting dates.

1. At each meeting review progress of other work and preparations for the particular work under consideration including specific requirements for the following:

- Contract documents.
- Options.
- Related change orders.
- Purchases.
- Deliveries.
- Shop drawings, product data and quality control samples.
- Possible conflicts and compatibility problems.
- Time schedules.
- Manufacturer's recommendations.
- Compatibility of materials.
- Acceptability of substrates.
- Temporary facilities.
- Space and access limitations.
- Governing regulations.
- Safety.
- Inspection and testing requirements.
- Required performance results.
- Recording requirements.
- Protection.

2. Record significant discussions of each conference, and record agreements and disagreements, along with the final plan of action. Distribute the record of meeting promptly to everyone concerned, including the Owner and Architect / Engineer.
3. Do not proceed with the work if the pre-installation conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the work and reconvene pre-installation conference at the earliest feasible date.

- B. Installer's Inspection of Conditions  
Require the Installer of each major unit of work to inspect the substrate to receive work and conditions under which the work is to be performed. The Installer shall report all unsatisfactory conditions in writing to the Contractor. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the Installer.
- C. Special Inspections  
Coordinate and schedule for Special Masonry Inspections with Masonry Contractor and Owner's Inspector as required to comply with current Building Codes. All grout placement for CMU walls shall be witnessed by the Special Inspector.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions  
Where installations include manufactured products, comply with the manufacturer's applicable instructions and recommendations for installation, to the extent that these instructions and recommendations are more explicit or more stringent than the requirements indicated in the contract documents.
- E. Inspect each item of materials or equipment immediately prior to installation. Reject damaged and defective items.
- F. Provide attachment and connection devices and methods for securing work. Secure work true to line and level and within recognized industry tolerances. Allow expansion and building movement. Provide uniform joint width in exposed work. Arrange joints in exposed work to obtain the best visual effect. Refer questionable visual-effect choices to the Architect / Engineer for final decision.
- G. Recheck measurements and dimensions of the work as an integral step of starting each installation.
- H. Install each unit-of-work during weather conditions and project status which will ensure the best possible results in coordination with the entire work. Isolate each unit of work from incompatible work as necessary to prevent deterioration.
- I. Coordinate enclosure of the work with required inspections and tests, so as to minimize the necessity of uncovering work for that purpose.
- J. Mounting Heights  
Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount individual units of work at industry recognized standard and A.D.A. acceptable mounting heights for the particular application indicated. Refer questionable mounting height choices to the Architect / Engineer for final decision. For mounting heights on Owner Furnished Equipment, Contractor shall obtain accurate information from data supplied by Owner or from field measurements of actual equipment to be relocated and installed.

### 3.2 Cleaning and Protection

- A. General  
During handling and installation of work at the project site, clean and protect work in progress and adjoining work on the basis of continuous maintenance. Apply protective covering on installed work where it is required to ensure freedom from damage or deterioration at time of substantial completion.
- B. Clean and perform maintenance on installed work as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable

components to ensure proper operation without damaging effects.

C. Limiting Exposures of Work

To the extent possible through reasonable control and protection methods, supervise performance of the work in such a manner and by such means which will ensure that none of the work, whether completed or in progress, will be subjected to harmful, dangerous, damaging or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period. Such exposures include, where applicable, but not by way of limitation, to the following:

Excessively high or low temperatures.

Thermal shock.

Excessively high or low humidity.

Water or ice.

Solvents.

Chemicals.

Electrical current.

Incompatible interface.

Misalignment.

Unprotected storage.

Theft.

Vandalism.

3.3 Conservation and Salvage

It is a requirement for supervision and administration of the work that construction operations be carried out with the maximum possible consideration given to conservation of energy, water and materials.

END OF SECTION



1.0 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1.1 Related Documents

Drawings and General Provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions (plus modifications thereto), and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to work of this Section.

1.2 Description of Requirements

A. Definition

"Cutting and patching" includes cutting into existing construction to provide for the installation or performance of other work and subsequent fitting and patching required to restore surfaces to their original condition.

1. "Cutting and patching" is performed for coordination of the work, to uncover work for access or inspection, to obtain samples for testing, to permit alterations to be performed or for other similar purposes.
2. Cutting and patching performed during the initial fabrication, erection or installation processes is not considered to be "cutting and patching" under this definition. Drilling of holes to install fasteners and similar operations are also not considered to be "cutting and patching".

- B. Refer to other sections of these specifications for specific cutting and patching requirements and limitations applicable to individual units of work.

Unless otherwise specified, requirements of this section apply to mechanical and electrical work. Refer to Division 15 and Division 16 Sections for additional requirements and limitations on cutting and patching of mechanical and electrical work.

1.3 Quality Assurance

A. Requirements for Structural Work

Do not cut and patch structural work in a manner that would result in a reduction of load-carrying capacity or of load-deflection ratio.

- B. Before cutting and patching the following categories of work, obtain the Architect / Engineer's approval to proceed with cutting and patching as described in the procedural proposal for cutting and patching.

1. Structural steel.
2. Miscellaneous structural metals, including lintels, equipment supports, stair systems and similar categories or work.
3. Structural concrete.
4. Bearing walls.
5. Structural decking.
6. Exterior wall construction.
7. Piping, ductwork, vessels and equipment.
8. Structural systems of special construction, as specified by Division 13 Sections.

C. Operational and Safety Limitations

Do not cut and patch operational elements or safety related components in a manner that would result in a reduction of their capacity to perform in the manner intended, including energy performance, or that would result in increased

maintenance, or decreased operational life or decreased safety.

- D. Before cutting and patching the following elements of work, and similar work elements where directed, obtain the Owner's approval through the Architect / Engineer to proceed with cutting and patching as proposed in the proposal for cutting and patching. Note fourteen (14) day prior notice requirement of Owner.

1. Primary operational systems and equipment.
2. Noise and vibration control elements and systems.
3. Control, communication, conveying and electrical wiring systems.

E. Visual Requirements

Do not cut and patch work exposed on the building's exterior or in its occupied spaces in a manner that would, in the Architect's opinion, result in lessening the building's aesthetic qualities. Do not cut and patch work in a manner that would result in substantial visual evidence of cut and patch work. Remove and replace work judged by the Architect to be cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.

1.4 Submittals

A. Procedural Proposal for Cutting and Patching

Where prior approval of cutting and patching is required, submit proposed procedures for this work well in advance of the time work will be performed and request approval to proceed. Include the following information, as applicable, in the submittal:

1. Describe nature of the work and how it is to be performed, indicating why cutting and patching cannot be avoided. Describe anticipated results of the work in terms of changes to existing work, including structural, operational and visual changes as well as other significant elements.
2. List products to be used and firms that will perform work.
3. Give dates when work is expected to be performed.
4. List utilities that will be disturbed or otherwise be affected by work, including those that will be relocated and those that will be out-of-service temporarily. Indicate how long utility service will be disrupted. Request day and time desired for disruption of services.
5. Where cutting and patching structural work involves the addition of reinforcement, submit details and engineering calculations to show how that reinforcement is integrated with original structure to satisfy requirements.
6. Approval by the Architect / Engineer to proceed with cutting and patching work does not waive the Architect / Engineer's right to later require complete removal and replacement of work found to be cut and patched in an unsatisfactory manner.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Materials

Except as otherwise indicated, or as directed by the Architect / Engineer, use materials for

cutting and patching that are identical to existing materials. If identical materials are not available, or cannot be used, use materials that match existing adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible with regard to visual effect. Use materials for cutting and patching that will result in equal-or-better performance characteristics.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 Inspection

- A. Before cutting, examine the surfaces to be cut and patched and the conditions under which the work is to be performed. If unsafe or otherwise unsatisfactory conditions are encountered, take corrective action before proceeding with the work.
- B. Before the start of cutting work, meet at the work site with all parties involved in cutting and patching, including mechanical and electrical trades. Review areas of potential interference and conflict between the various trades. Coordinate layout of the work and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding with the work.

#### 3.2 Preparation

##### A. Temporary Support

To prevent failure, provide temporary support of work to be cut.

##### B. Protection

- 1. Protect other work during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for that part of the project that may be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- 2. Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas.

- C. Take precautions not to cut existing pipe, conduit or duct serving the building but scheduled to be relocated until provisions have been made to bypass them.

#### 3.3 Performance

##### A. General

Employ skilled workmen to perform cutting and patching work. Except as otherwise indicated or as approved by the Architect / Engineer, proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time and complete work without delay.

##### B. Cutting

- 1. Cut the work using methods that are least likely to damage work to be retained or adjoining work. Where possible, review proposed procedures with the original installer; comply with original installer's recommendations.
- 2. In general, where cutting is required, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut through concrete and masonry using a cutting machine such as a Carborundum saw or core drill to insure a neat hole. Cut holes and slots neatly to size required with minimum disturbance of adjacent work. To avoid marring existing finished surfaces, cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
- 3. By-pass utility services such as pipe and conduit, before cutting, where such utility services are shown or required to be removed, relocated or abandoned. Cut-off conduit and pipe in walls or partitions to be removed.

After by-pass and cutting, cap, valve or plug and seal tight remaining portion of pipe and conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter.

C. Patching

1. Patch with seams which are durable and as invisible as possible. Comply with specified tolerances for the work.
2. Where feasible, inspect and test patched areas to demonstrate integrity of work.
3. Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and, where necessary, extend finish restoration into retained adjoining work in a manner which will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
4. Where removal of walls or partitions extends one finished area into another finished area, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space to provide an even surface of uniform color and appearance. If necessary to achieve uniform color and appearance, remove existing floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials.
5. Where patch occurs in a smooth painted surface, extend final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing patch, after patched area has received prime and base coat.
6. Patch and repair existing plaster / gypsum board ceilings as necessary to provide an even plane surface of uniform appearance.

3.4 Cleaning

Thoroughly clean areas and spaces where work is performed or used as access to work. Remove completely paint, mortar, oils, putty and items of similar nature. Thoroughly clean piping, conduit and similar features before painting or other finishing is applied. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.

END OF SECTION



## TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS - SECTION 01200

### 1.0 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Temporary facilities and controls required for this project include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following:

#### 1.1 Temporary Structures

- A. Provide and maintain field office separate from the project of not less than 200 sq. ft. in area equipped with the following:
  - 1. Heater or air conditioner as required by weather.
  - 2. Telephone service.
  - 3. Computer with ability and service to send/receive email.
  - 4. Printer
  - 5. Adequate lighting.
  - 6. Plan table, 36" x 60" minimum (2)
  - 7. Plan rack.
  - 8. Desk and chair with lockable file drawer in desk.
  - 9. Toilet facilities: Provide 1 water closet and 1 lavatory.
  - 10. Computer system capable of sending/receiving emails with printer.
- B. Within the Contractor's facilities, provide enclosed space adequate for holding weekly project meetings. Furnish with all required tables, chairs and utilities.
- C. The entire facility, including furniture, will remain the property of the Contractor and shall be maintained at the site until 100% completion of the Work.
- D. Portable office or trailer meeting above requirements acceptable pending local approval.

#### 1.2 Temporary Facilities

- A. Temporary water and electrical service connections will be provided by General Contractor. This Contractor shall make necessary connections and provide conductors and furnish and install area distribution boxes so located that the individual trades may use 30m (100') maximum length extension cords to obtain adequate power and artificial lighting at all points where required for the Work, and for inspection and safety.
- B. Cost of temporary water and electric connections and conductors shall be borne by Contractor.
- C. Provide temporary toilets in portable units. Toilets must meet standards of the County Public Health Department. Toilets shall be maintained for the duration of the project.
- D. Remove temporary utilities on completion of construction.

#### 1.3 Temporary Scaffolds, Lifts, Staging and Stairs

Provide scaffolds, lifts, staging, stairs, ramps, ladders, runways, platforms, hoists and guard rails necessary for execution of construction. Comply with recognized safety rules and prevailing laws or ordinances. Remove on completion of construction.

#### 1.4 Protective Barricades and Temporary Walkways

- A. Contractor to provide and maintain all necessary temporary barricades, covers, enclosing fences, walkways, scaffolds, guards, street barricades, etc., in accordance with requirements of SPECIAL PROJECT REQUIREMENTS - SECTION 01030.

Height and location to be in compliance with local codes and ordinances. Provide adequate warning signs and warning lights.

- B. Materials for construction shall be substantial, sound, all of good appearance, straight, in line, unyielding, complete, well installed, braced and adequate for use intended. All to comply with requirements of local codes and ordinances including the International Building Code. Provide and install gates and doors in enclosing barricade as required.
- C. Remove upon completion of the work.

1.5 Construction Fence

- A. Provide 6'-0" high chain link fence around area of work, around staging area, and/or material storage area(s) as directed and/or as deemed necessary for safety. Fence shall be supported on steel posts and maintained in good condition throughout contract period. Remove fence when contract is completed and repair any site damage caused by fence and posts.
- B. Fence adjacent to pedestrian and traffic areas as required to safely maintain ongoing school operations subject to the Site Limits and approval of the Owner and the Architect.
- C. Provide lockable gates (truck gates and pedestrian gate as required). Locate at Contractor's option. Keep gates closed except during actual ingress and egress.
- D. Route fence in behind existing fire hydrants to keep available from street side at all times.

1.6 Protection

Conform to requirements of "Safety & Protection of Persons and Property", in GENERAL CONDITIONS.

1.7 Maintaining Traffic

- A. Do not close or obstruct streets, sidewalks, alleys and passageways without permit. Do not place or store material in streets, alleys or passageways.
- B. Conduct operations with minimum interference to roads, streets, driveways, alleys, sidewalks and facilities, except as noted herein.
- C. Provide, erect and maintain lights, barriers and the like required by traffic regulations or local laws.

1.8 Protection of Structure and Property

- A. Execute work to ensure adjacent property against damages which might occur from falling debris or other cause; do not interfere with use of adjacent property. Maintain free, safe passage to and from same.
- B. Take precautions to guard against movement, settlement or collapse of any sidewalks or street passages adjoining property; be liable for any such movement, settlement or collapse; repair promptly such damage when so ordered.

1.9 Project Signs

Allow no signs or advertising of any kind on the job site except as specifically approved in advance by the Architect.

1.10 Maintenance and Removal

Maintain all temporary facilities and controls as long as needed for the safe and proper completion of the Work. Remove all such temporary facilities and controls as rapidly as progress of the Work will permit, or as directed by the Architect.

END OF SECTION



1.0 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1.1 Related Documents

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary (Special) Conditions, and modifications thereto, and other Division 1 Specifications Sections, apply to work of this Section. See Special Project Requirements Section 01030 for pre-installation meetings and pre-finishes meeting.

1.2 Description of Requirements

A. General

Required inspection and testing services are intended to assist in the determination of probable compliance of the work with requirements specified or indicated. These required services do not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for compliance with these requirements or for compliance with requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Definitions

The requirements of this section relate primarily to customized fabrication and installation procedures, not to the production of standard products. Quality control services include inspections and tests and related actions including reports performed by independent agencies and governing authorities, as well as directly by the Contractor. These services do not include Contract enforcement activities performed directly by the Architect or Engineer.

1. Specific quality control requirements for individual units of work are specified in the sections of these specifications that specify the individual element of the work. These requirements, including inspections and tests, cover both production of standard products and fabrication of customized work. These requirements also cover quality control of the installation procedures.
2. Inspection, tests and related actions specified in this section and elsewhere in the Contract Documents are not intended to limit the Contractor's own quality control procedures which facilitate overall compliance with requirements of the Contract Documents.
3. Requirements for the Contractor to provide quality control services as required by the Architect / Engineer, the Owner, governing authorities or other authorized entities are not limited by the provisions of this section.

1.3 Responsibilities

A. Testing

Owner shall employ and pay for testing services except where tests are specifically indicated as being the contractor's responsibility.

B. Re-Test Responsibilities

Where results of required inspections, tests or similar services prove unsatisfactory and do not indicate compliance or related work with the requirements of the Contract Documents, then re-tests are the responsibility of the Contractor, regardless of whether the original test was the Contractor's responsibility. Re-testing of work revised or replaced by the Contractor is the Contractor's responsibility, where required tests were performed on original work.

C. Responsibility for Associated Services

The Contractor is required to cooperate with the independent agencies performing required inspections, tests and similar services. Provide such auxiliary services as are reasonably requested. Notify the testing agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. These auxiliary services include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following:

1. Providing access to the work.
2. Taking samples or assistance with taking samples.
3. Delivery of samples to test laboratories.
4. Security and protection of samples and test equipment at the project site.

D. Coordination

The Contractor and each independent agency engaged to perform inspections, tests and similar services for the project shall coordinate the sequence of their activities so as to accommodate required services with a minimum of delay in the progress of the work. In addition, the Contractor and each independent testing agency shall coordinate their work so as to avoid the necessity of removing and replacing work to accommodate inspections and tests. The Contractor is responsible for scheduling times for inspections, tests, taking of samples and similar activities.

1.4 Quality Assurance

Qualification for Service Agencies: Except as otherwise indicated, engage inspection and test service agencies, including independent testing laboratories, which are pre-qualified as complying with "Recommended Requirements for Independent Laboratory Qualification" by the American Council of Independent Laboratories, and which are recognized in the industry as specialized in the types of inspections and tests to be performed.

1.5 Submittals

A. General

Refer to Division - 1 Section of "Submittals" for the general requirements on submittals. Submit a certified written report of each inspection, test or similar service, directly to the Architect / Engineer, in duplicate, unless the Contractor is responsible for the service. If the Contractor is responsible for the service, submit a certified written report of each inspection, test or similar service through the Contractor, in duplicate. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to the governing authority, when the authority so directs.

B. Report Data

Written reports of each inspection, test or similar service shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Name of testing agency or test laboratory.
2. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
3. Names of individuals making the inspection or test.
4. Designation of the work and test method.
5. Complete inspection or test data.
6. Test results.
7. Interpretations of test results.
8. Notation of significant ambient conditions at the time of sample-taking and testing.
9. Comments or professional opinion as to whether inspected or tested work complies with requirements of the Contract Documents.
10. Recommendations on re-testing, if applicable.

## 2.0 - PRODUCTS

Not applicable.

## 3.0 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 Repair and Protection

Upon completion of inspection, testing, sample-taking and similar services performed on the work, repair damaged work and restore substrates and finishes to eliminate deficiencies, including deficiencies in the visual qualities of exposed finishes. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for "Cutting and Patching". Protect work exposed by or for quality control service activities, and protect repaired work. Repair and protection is the Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for inspection, testing or similar services.

END OF SECTION





1.0 - GENERAL

- A. Summary: Shop drawings may be transmitted for approval by electronic format or by hard copies.

1. Digital Copies

- a. Shop drawing and product data submittals shall be transmitted to Architect's office in electronic (PDF) format via email at **submittals@lathanassociates.com**. Do not email or copy transmittals to Architect or engineer.
- b. The intent of electronic submittals is to expedite the construction process by reducing paperwork and improving information flow.
- c. **The electronic submittal process is not intended for color samples, color charts, or physical material samples.**
- d. After receiving approved digital submittals, **General Contractor is responsible for printing and delivering 2 hard copies of the approved shop drawings to the Architect within 10 days.** Submittals are not considered complete until 2 copies have been received by the Architect. This may have a direct effect on pay requests or final payment.
- e. The Architect will retain the two (2) hard copies of shop drawing submittals: one for project records, and one to be incorporated with Close-Out Documents for the Owner.
- f. Prior to submitting electronic submittals, GC must sign electronic submittal agreement. Project will be either all electronic or all hard copy. We will not accept electronic submittals once we have begun with hard copies. A copy of this agreement is attached to this section.

**DIGITAL file name** shall include Architect Job No, Specification Section number and description. (e.g., 15-01, 06100 - Rough Carpentry). We will not accept files that are randomly named. (e.g. scan 1234 or from Xerox Copier, etc.) Digital submittals must still be stamped approved or approved as noted.

B. Submittal Procedures:

1. Coordinate submittals preparation with construction, fabrication, other submittals and activities that require sequential operations. Transmit in advance of construction operations to avoid delay.
2. Coordinate submittals for related operations to avoid delay because of the need to review submittals concurrently for coordination. The Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination until related submittals are received.
3. Processing: General Contractor must review and approve shop drawings and submittals prior to submitting to Architect. Allow the Architect no less than three (3) weeks for initial review. Allow more time if the Architect must delay processing to permit coordination with the sequence of construction, related specification divisions and finishes to be selected in comparison, engineers, consultants and owner's representatives. Allow no less than two (2) weeks for reprocessing.

NOTE: No extension of Contract Time and/or additional costs will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals sufficiently in advance of the Work to permit processing.

4. Submittal Preparation: The following information must be included with each transmittal.
  - a. Date
  - b. Project name and architect's project number.
  - c. Name of the General Contractor and contact within company.
  - d. Subcontractor name.
  - e. Supplier name.
  - f. Description of item.
  - g. Specification Section and name of that section.
  - h. Name of the Manufacturer - Model / Style of Item.
  - i. Only project specific items should be sent.
5. Transmittal Letter: Transmit samples, etc. with form that contains Architect's Job name and number, Specification Number, Product Name, Manufacturer name and Model number. On the form, record requests for data and deviations from requirements.
6. Contractors Action/Approval

Include General Contractor's certification stamp that information has been checked and complies with requirements before submitting to architect. General Contractor's action stamp must include Approved or Approved as Noted.

Information received without the contractor's stamp will be returned without any action taken by engineer or architect.

C. Submittal Schedule

1. After developing the Contractor's Construction Schedule, prepare a schedule of submittals. Submit at or before date of the Pre-Construction Conference.
2. Coordinate with a list of Subcontracts, Schedule of Values, List of Products and the Contractor's Construction Schedule.
3. Prepare the schedule in order by Section number. Provide the following information:
  - a. Date for first submittal.
  - b. Related Section number.
  - c. Submittal category (Shop Drawings, Product Data or Samples).
  - d. Name of the Subcontractor.
  - e. Description of the Work covered.
  - f. Date for the Architect's final approval.

D. Shop Drawings

Submit newly prepared information drawn to scale. Indicate deviations from the Contract Documents. Do not reproduce Contract Documents or copy standard information. Include the following information:

1. Dimensions.
2. Identification of products and materials included by sheet and detail number.
3. Compliance with standards.
4. Notation of coordination requirements.
5. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
6. Do not use Shop Drawings without an appropriate final stamp indicating action taken.
7. After receiving approved digital Shop Drawings, General Contractor is responsible for printing and delivering 2 hard copies of the approved shop drawings to the Architect within 10 days. Submittals are not considered complete until 2 copies

have been received by the Architect. This may have a direct effect on pay requests or final payment.

E. Product Data

1. Collect Product Data into a single submittal for each element of construction. Mark each copy to show applicable choices and options. Where Product Data includes information on several products, mark copies to indicate applicable information.
2. Include the following information:
  - a. Manufacturer's printed recommendations.
  - b. Compliance with trade association standards.
  - c. Compliance with recognized testing agency standards.
  - d. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
  - e. Notation of dimensions verified by field measurement.
  - f. Notation of coordination requirements.
3. Submittals:
  - a. Submit proper quantity. The Architect will retain **two** copies and return the other(s) marked with action taken.
  - b. Unless noncompliance with Contract Documents is observed, the submittal serves as the final submittal.
4. Distribution:
  - a. Furnish copies to Installers, Subcontractors, Suppliers and others required for performance of construction activities.
  - b. Do not use unmarked Product Data for construction.

F. Samples

1. Submit samples as required/requested and for color/texture finish selections.
2. Include the following:
  - a. Specification Section number and reference.
  - b. Generic description of the Sample.
  - c. Sample source.
  - d. Product name or name of the Manufacturer.
  - e. Compliance with recognized standards.
3. Refer to other Sections for requirements for samples that illustrate workmanship, fabrication techniques, details of assembly, connections, operation and similar characteristics.
  - a. Samples erected at site and not incorporated into the Work, or designated as the Owner's property, are the Contractor's property and shall be removed from the site.

G. Architect's Action:

1. Except for submittals for the record or information, where action and return are required, the Architect will review each submittal, mark to indicate action taken, and return. Compliance with contract documents and specified characteristics is the Contractor's responsibility.
2. Action Stamp
  - a. The Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp. The

Architect will mark the stamp appropriately to indicate the action taken.

b. Architect's Action Stamp will read as follows:

Reviewed by Lathan Associates Architects, P.C.

Date

Approved for Design as Noted Subject to Contractor Verifying  
Quantities and Dimensions

2.0 - PRODUCTS

Not applicable.

3.0 - EXECUTION

Not applicable.

END OF SECTION

ELECTRONIC SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR  
LATHAN ASSOCIATES ARCHITECTS, P.C.

1. Processing: General Contractor must review and approve shop drawings and submittals prior to submitting to Architect. Allow the Architect two (2) weeks for initial review. Allow more time if the Architect must delay processing to permit coordination with other engineers and consultants.

NOTE: No extension of Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals sufficiently in advance of the Work to permit processing.

2. Contractors Action / Approval  
Include General Contractor's electronic certification stamp that information has been checked by the General Contractor and complies with requirements of the Contract Documents before submitting to architect. General Contractor's action stamp must include **Approved** or **Approved as Noted**.

Information received without the contractor's stamp will not be reviewed and no action will be taken by engineer or architect.

**DIGITAL file name** shall include Architect Job No, Specification Section number and description. (e.g., 15-01, 06100 - Rough Carpentry). We will not accept files that are randomly named. (e.g. scan 1234 or from Xerox Copier, etc.)

3. Submittal Preparation:  
**Include the following information on transmittal / email.**
  - a. Date
  - b. Project Name and Architect's Project Number.
  - c. Name of the General Contractor and Contact within company.
  - e. Subcontractor/Supplier.

Clearly state Number and title of appropriate Specification Section and Description of Item and if applicable

- a. Name of the Manufacturer.
- b. Model / Style of Item.

4. **Electronic submittals will only be accepted when emailed to: [submittals@lathanassociates.com](mailto:submittals@lathanassociates.com)**

**DO NOT COPY ARCHITECTS OR ENGINEERS WITH THE SUBMITTAL**

5. After receiving approved submittals, **General Contractor is responsible for printing and delivering 2 hard copies of the approved shop drawings to the Architect within 10 days.** Submittals are not considered complete until these copies are received by the Architect and may have a direct effect on Pay Requests and / or final payment.

I have read the above requirements and agree to the terms set forth in this document.

\_\_\_\_\_  
General Contractor

by: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Architect Job Name and Number



## PRODUCT SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES - SECTION 01360

### 1.0 GENERAL

- 1.1 Section Includes:
  - A. General requirements for product options and substitution procedures.
  - B. Material and product options.
  - C. Substitutions.
  - D. Coordination
  - E. Substitution Request Form.
- 1.2 Related Sections:
  - A. Section 01025 - Summary of Work
  - B. Section 01040 - Project Coordination
  - C. Section 01350 - Shop Drawing Submittals
  - D. Section 01400 - Materials and Equipment
  - E. Section 01900 - Warranties
  - F. Section 01910 - Close Out Procedures
  - G. In addition to "General Conditions of the Contract", comply with product option and substitution requirements specified in this Section.
- 1.3 Material and Product Options:
  - A. Materials and products specified by reference standards, by performance, or by description only:
    - 1. Any product meeting specified requirements.
  - B. Materials and products specified by naming products of one or more manufacturers with a provision for an equivalent product:
    - 1. Submit one of the products listed which complies with specified requirements or submit a Request for Substitution for a product of manufacturer not specifically named which complies with specified requirements.
  - C. Materials and products specified by naming products of several manufacturers meeting specifications:
    - 1. Submit one of the products listed which complies with specified requirements or submit a Request for Substitution for a product of manufacturer not specifically named which complies with specified requirements.
- 1.4 Substitutions:
  - A. After date of Notice to Proceed, Architect / Engineer will consider requests from Contractor for substitutions. Subsequently, substitutions will be considered only when a material or product becomes unavailable due to no fault of Contractor or as follows:
    - 1. Lockouts
    - 2. Strikes
    - 3. Bankruptcy
    - 4. Discontinuation of products
    - 5. Proven shortage
    - 6. Other similar occurrences
  - B. Each proposed substitution of materials or products for that one specified is a representation by Contractor that he has personally investigated the substitution and determined that the proposed substitution is equivalent or superior to that specified in quality, durability and serviceability, design, appearance, function, finish, performance, and of size and weight which will permit installation in spaces provided and allow adequate service access. Additionally, Contractor agrees that it

will provide and/or do the following:

1. Same warranty on substitution as for specified product or materials;
  2. Coordinate installation and make other changes that may be required for Work to be complete in all respects;
  3. Waive claims for additional costs which may subsequently become apparent;
  4. Verify that proposed materials and products comply with applicable building codes and governing regulations and, where applicable, has approval of governing authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. The Architect/Engineer will review requests from Contractor for substitutions with the Owner. Contractor shall not purchase or install substitute materials and products without written approval. The Architect/Engineer will give written notice to Contractor and the Owner of acceptance or rejection within a reasonable time.
- D. Document each request for substitution with complete data substantiating compliance of proposed substitution with Contract Documents. Contractor shall use the *Substitution Request Form* along with appropriate attachments and submit them to the office of the Architect. A copy of the *Substitution Request Form* is included at the end of this Section.
1. Documents, as appropriate, shall include the following:
    - a. Reason for the proposed substitution;
    - b. Change in Contract Sum and Contract Time, if any;
    - c. Effect on work progress schedule and completion date;
    - d. Changes in details and construction of related work required due to substitution
    - e. Drawings and samples
    - f. Product identification and description
    - g. Performance and test data
    - h. Itemized comparison of the qualities of the proposed substitution to the product specified including durability, serviceability, design, appearance, function, finish, performance, size and space limitations, vibration, noise, and weight
    - i. Availability of maintenance service, source and interchangeability of parts or components
    - j. Additional information as requested.
- E. In the event of credit change in the cost, the Owner shall receive all benefit of the reduction in cost of the proposed substitution. Credit shall be established prior to final approval of the proposed substitution and will be adjusted by Change Order.
- F. Substitutions will not be considered when they are indicated or implied on shop drawing or product data submittals without separate written request, without having been reviewed and approved by Contractor, or when acceptance will require substantial revision of Contract Documents without addition compensation to the Architect / Engineer.
- G. In the event that the Contractor or Subcontractor has neglected to place an order for specified materials and products to meet the work progress schedule, specified requirements, color schemes or other similar provisions, such failure or neglect shall not be considered as legitimate grounds for an extension of completion time nor shall arbitrary substitutions be considered to meet completion date.
- H. Only one request for substitutions will be considered for each product. When substitutions are not accepted, the Contractor shall provide specified product.
- I. Should substitution be accepted, and substitution subsequently is defective or



otherwise unsatisfactory, Contractor shall replace defective material or product with specified material or product at no cost to Owner.

1.5 Coordination:

- A. When a specified, optional, specified by reference standard, or proposed substitution item of equipment or material is submitted which requires minor changes or additions to the designed structure, finishes or to mechanical and/or electrical services due to its requirements being different from those shown on the Contract Documents, itemize the changes required and attach to submittal. Do not proceed with changes without written approval from the Architect / Engineer.
- B. Contractor shall make adjustments and changes required to coordinate Work for installation of optional materials and products, approved substitutions and materials and products specified by reference standards without additional costs to Owner or Architect/ Engineer.

2.0     PRODUCTS  
Not applicable.

3.0     EXECUTION  
Not applicable.

END OF SECTION



## PRIOR APPROVAL / SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Company Submitting Request: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Name and Address)

Contact Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone: \_\_\_\_\_ Fax: \_\_\_\_\_

E-Mail: \_\_\_\_\_

PROJECT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

SPECIFIED ITEM: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Section) (Page) (Description)

The undersigned requests consideration of the following product substitution:

PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION: \_\_\_\_\_  
Provide Product Name / Model /Manufacturer

1. Attached data includes: \_\_\_\_\_ Product Description \_\_\_\_\_ Performance and Test Data  
\_\_\_\_\_ Drawings \_\_\_\_\_ Specifications \_\_\_\_\_ Photographs
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Yes / No changes will be required to the Contract Documents for the proper installation of proposed product substitution. If yes, then attach data that includes description of changes.

**The undersigned states that the following paragraphs, unless modified by attachments, are correct:**

1. The proposed substitution does not affect dimensions shown on the drawings.
2. No changes to the building design, engineering design, or detailing are required by the proposed substitution.
3. The proposed substitution will have no adverse effect on other trades, the construction schedule, or **specified warranty requirements**.
4. No maintenance is required by the proposed substitution other than that required for originally specified product.
5. Other Information

**The undersigned further states that they have read the corresponding specification section in the project manual and confirms that the function, appearance and quality of the proposed substitution are equivalent or superior to the originally specified product.** \_\_\_\_\_ initial.

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Printed Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Fax Number: \_\_\_\_\_

---

### For Architect's Use:

_____ Accepted	_____ Accepted As Noted	_____ Incomplete Information
_____ Not Accepted	_____ Received Too Late	_____ No Substitutions Accepted For This Product

Reviewed By / Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Processed by Addendum No. \_\_\_\_\_

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_



1.0 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1.1 Products and Materials

A. Products, materials and manufactured items or articles of like nature shall, as nearly as possible, be of one brand or manufacturer. No changes or substitutions shall be made without written consent of the Architect. In selection of colors and patterns, the Architect reserves the right to select from the manufacturer's running pattern line (within same price range) of the materials called for in the Specifications without the added cost to the Owner.

B. All products and materials used for this project shall be asbestos free.

1.2 Trade Names

The use of manufacturer's names and serial numbers are given to establish a standard of manufacture and not intended to be restrictive or preferential. Similar, equal, and approved materials of other manufacturers will be acceptable, subject to the approval of the Architect, pursuant to requirements set forth in INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS and as required by the Specifications.

1.3 Measurements

Before ordering any material or doing any work, the Contractor shall verify all measurements of the building and shall be responsible for correctness of same. No extra charge or compensation will be allowed because of differences between actual measurements and the dimensions indicated on the Drawings. Any differences which may be found, shall be submitted to the Architect for consideration before proceeding with the work.

1.4 Salvageable Material

Any salvageable material and/or equipment shall remain the property of the Owner and, upon removal from its existing location, shall be stored where directed by the Architect.

In the event that the Owner does not wish to keep the salvaged material, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to remove same promptly from the site.

Salvageable material shall include those items indicated on the drawings as items to be reused or relocated. Remove all finish hardware from doors noted to be removed under demolition. Tag and label finish hardware as to door function (and label), and turn over to Owner.

Coordinate with Architect on questionable salvage items.

1.5 Unused Materials

Unused excess materials purchased for this project and charged against the contract shall be the property of the General Contractor and removed upon final completion.

END OF SECTION



SECTION 01410 – QA/ QC, STRUCTURAL TESTS,  
AND STRUCTURAL SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements required for compliance with the International Building Code, Chapter 17, Structural Tests and Special Inspections as well as specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities as referenced in the Sections that specify those activities.
- B. Structural testing and special inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve contractor of responsibility for compliance with other construction document requirements.
  - 1. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the construction document requirements.
  - 2. Requirements for contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by architect, owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this section.
- C. The owner will engage one or more qualified special inspectors and / or testing agencies to conduct structural tests and special inspections specified in this section and related sections and as maybe specified in other divisions of these specifications.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Approved Agency: An established and recognized agency regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, when such agency has been approved by the building official and the Structural Engineer of Record.
- B. Construction Documents: Written (including specifications), graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of a project necessary for obtaining a building permit. Construction Documents include all supplemental instructions, sketches, addenda, and revisions to the drawings and specifications issued by the registered design professional beyond those issued for a building permit.
- C. Shop Drawings / Submittal Data: Written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared and / or assembled by the contractor based on the Construction Documents.
- D. Structural Observation: Visual observation of the structural system by a

representative of the registered design professional's office for general conformance to the approved construction documents. Structural observations are not considered part of the structural tests and special inspections and do not replace inspections and testing by the testing agency or special inspector.

- E. Special Inspector: A qualified person who demonstrating competence, to the satisfaction of the code enforcement official and registered design professional in responsible charge, for inspection of the particular type of construction or operation requiring special inspection. The special inspector shall be a licensed professional engineer or engineering intern or a qualified representative from the testing agency.
- F. Special Inspection, Continuous: The full-time observation of work requiring special inspection by an approved special inspector who is present in the area where the work is being performed.
- G. Special Inspection, Periodic: The part-time or intermittent observation of work requiring special inspection by an approved special inspector who is present in the area where the work has been or is being performed and at the completion of the work.
- H. Testing Agency: A qualified materials testing laboratory under the responsible charge of a licensed professional engineer, approved by the code enforcement official and the registered design professional in responsible charge, to measure, examine, test, calibrate, or otherwise determine the characteristics or performance of construction materials and verify confirmation with construction documents.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications:
  - 1. Minimum qualifications of inspection and testing agencies and their personnel shall comply with ASTM E329-03 Standard Specification for Agencies in the Testing and / or Inspection of Materials Used in Construction.
    - a. Inspectors and individuals performing tests shall be certified for the work being performed as outlined in the appendix of the ASTM E329. Certification by organizations other than those listed must be submitted to the building official for consideration before proceeding with work.
  - 2. Additional minimum qualifications of inspection and testing agencies and their personnel inspecting and testing concrete and concrete related work shall be as follows:
    - a. An independent agency, acceptable to the Structural Engineer of Record qualified according to ASTM C 1077.
    - b. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.
    - c. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade I. Testing Agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade II.
  - 3. In addition to these requirements, local jurisdiction may have additional requirements. It is the responsibility of the testing and inspection agencies to meet local requirements and comply with local procedures.



## 1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS, REPORTS, AND TEST RESULTS

- A. General: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer uncertainties and requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to the registered design professional in responsible charge for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to the registered design profession in responsible charge for a decision before proceeding.
- C. The special inspector's reports and testing agencies results shall have precedence over reports and test results provided by the contractor.
- D. Where a conflict exists between the construction documents and approved shop drawings / submittal data, the construction documents shall govern unless the shop drawings / submittal data are more restrictive. All conflicts shall be brought to the attention of the registered design professional in responsible charge.

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS BY SPECIAL INSPECTOR AND / OR TESTING AGENCY

- A. Special inspectors shall keep and distribute records of inspections. The special inspector shall furnish inspection reports to the building official, and to the registered design professional in responsible charge, contractor, architect, and owner. Reports shall indicate that work inspected was done in conformance to approved construction documents. Discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the contractor for correction. If the discrepancies are not corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the building official and to the registered design professional in responsible charge prior to the completion of that phase of the work. A final report documenting required special inspections and correction of any discrepancies noted in the inspections shall be submitted at a point in time agreed upon by the permit applicant and the building official prior to the start of work.
  - 1. Special inspection reports and test results shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
    - a. Date of inspection.
    - b. Description of inspections or tests performed including location (reference grid lines, floors, elevations, etc.).
    - c. Statement noting that the work, material, and / or product conforms or does not conform to the construction document requirements.
      - 1) Name and signature of contractor's representative who was notified of work, material, and / or products that do not meet the construction document requirements.
    - d. Name and signature of special inspector and / or testing agency representative performing the work.
    - e. Additional information as required herein.
- B. Schedule of Non-Compliant Work: Each agent shall maintain a log of work that does not meet the requirements of the construction documents. Include reference to original inspection / test report and subsequent dates of re-inspection / retesting.
- C. Reports and tests shall be submitted within 1 week of inspection or test. Schedule

of Non-Compliant Work shall be updated daily and submitted at monthly intervals.

- D. Concrete Test Reports: Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, Engineer, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 24 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain:
1. Project identification name and number.
  2. Date and time of concrete placement.
  3. Mix design number or identification.
  4. Design compressive strength at 28 days.
  5. Design Air Content.
  6. Design Slump.
  7. Location of concrete batch in Work.
  8. Time concrete was batched.
  9. Amount of water withheld at plant.
  10. Amount of water added at site.
  11. Temperature of mix at point of placement.
  12. Slump at point of placement
    - a. When use of a Type I or II plasticizing admixture conforming to ASTM C 1017 or when a Type F or G high range water reducing admixture conforming to ASTM C494 is used, slump shall be measured and report both before addition of the admixture and at the point of placement.
  13. Air content.
  14. Name of concrete testing and inspecting agency.
    - a. Name of Laboratory Technician and ACI Certification Number.
    - b. Name of Field Technician and ACI Certification Number.
  15. Compressive breaking strength.
  16. Type of break.
- E. Final Report of Special Inspections. Submitted by each agent listed in the schedule of Structural Testing and Special Inspections.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (not used)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

- A. The contractor shall coordinate the inspection and testing services with the progress of the work. The contractor shall provide sufficient notice to allow proper scheduling of all personnel. The contractor shall provide safe access for performing inspection and on site testing.
- B. The contractor shall submit schedules to the owner, registered design professionals and testing and inspecting agencies. Schedules will note milestones

and durations of time for materials requiring structural tests and special inspections.

- C. The contractor shall repair and / or replace work that does not meet the requirements of the construction documents.
  - a. Contractor shall engage an engineer / architect to prepare repair and / or replacement procedures.
  - b. Engineer / architect shall be registered in the state in which the project is located. Engineer shall be acceptable to the registered design professional in responsible charge, code enforcement official, and owner.
  - c. Procedures shall be submitted for review and acceptance by the registered design professional in responsible charge, code enforcement official, and owner before proceeding with corrective action.
- D. The contractor shall be responsible for costs of:
  - a. Re-testing and re-inspection of materials, work, and / or products that do not meet the requirements of the construction documents and shop drawings / submittal data.
  - b. Review of proposed repair and / or replacement procedures by the registered design professional in responsible charge and the inspectors and testing agencies.
  - c. Repair or replacement of work that does not meet the requirements of the construction documents.

### 3.2 STRUCTURAL OBSERVATIONS

- A. Structural observations may be made periodically as determined by the registered design professional in responsible charge.

### 3.3 TESTING AND INSPECTION

- A. Testing and inspection shall be in accordance with the attached Schedule of Special Inspections, as listed elsewhere in the project documents, and as listed herein.
- B. Inspection of Fabricator's QC procedures
  - 1. Review the quality control procedures of the following fabricators for completeness and adequacy relative to the fabricator's scope of work: steel fabricator AND metal truss fabricators.
    - a. Exception: AISC Certified Steel Fabricators that submit a "Certificate of Compliance" at completion of their scope of work.
- C. Soils, Periodic Inspection.
  - 1. Verify bearing capacities of soils beneath footings is in accordance with the approved project soils report and earthwork specifications.
  - 2. Verify assumed bearing capacities (As noted on the drawings, recommended by the geotechnical engineer, and specified in earthwork specifications.) and determine settlements of soils beneath footings and building pad.
  - 3. Verify site preparation prior to beginning fill placement. Verify fill material

type, placement method, lift thickness, and compaction of fill material. Verify in-place density of compacted fill.

- a. As recommended in approved soils report and specified in earthwork specifications.

D. Concrete, Continuous Inspection

1. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
  - a. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd, but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
  - b. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
2. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; ASTM C 173, volumetric method, for structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  - a. Unit Weight is only required for lightweight concrete
6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; test one laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days, one set of two specimens at 28 days, and hold one in reserve for later testing as directed by the Structural Engineer of Record.
  - a. Test one set of two field-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
7. Inspect bolts to be installed prior to and during placement of concrete.
8. Inspect concrete placement to verify operations are in accordance with project requirements.
  - a. Verify correct mix is used.

E. Concrete, Periodic Inspection

1. Floor flatness:
  - a. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 within **24** hours of finishing..
2. Inspect concrete formwork prior to concrete placement, except as noted. Verify that construction joints are properly keyed. Verify that slab recesses, if any, have been installed.
3. Inspect reinforcing steel prior to concrete placement, except as noted, for installation including size, spacing and bar clearances. Verify that lap splices and embedment lengths are per the construction documents. Verify that dowels for work above are properly aligned and spaced to match other work.
4. Inspect all concrete curing operations and verify they are in accordance with project requirements.

F. Masonry, Periodic Inspection

1. At beginning of masonry construction:
  - a. Inspect proportions of site prepared mortar and grout.
  - b. Inspect construction of mortar joints.
  - c. Inspect reinforcement for correct size and spacing.
2. At beginning of masonry construction and every 1000 square feet of masonry thereafter
  - a. Inspect work for size and location of structural elements
  - b. Inspect work for correct location and type of embeds and anchor bolts.
  - c. Specified size, grade, and type of reinforcement.
3. Prior to grouting
  - a. Inspect masonry cells and cleanouts prior to placement of grout. Verify spaces are clear.
  - b. Inspect any site prepared grout proportions.
  - c. Inspect placement of reinforcement.
  - d. Inspect construction of mortar joints
4. Inspect protection of masonry during cold weather and hot weather.
  - a. During periods with temperatures below 40 degrees or above 90 degrees.
5. Verify compliance with all required inspection provisions of the construction

documents and approved submittals.

G. Steel Construction, Periodic Inspection

1. Inspect high-strength bolts, nuts and washers:
  - a. Identify markings to conform to ASTM standards specified in the construction document.
  - b. Inspect manufacturer's certificate of compliance.
2. Inspect high-strength bolting: Bearing-type connections.
3. Inspect and verify structural steel material:
  - a. Identification markings to conform to ASTM standards specified in the approved construction documents.
  - b. Manufacturers' certified mill test reports.
4. Inspect and verify weld filler materials:
  - a. Identification markings to conform to AWS specification in the approved construction documents.
  - b. Manufacturer's certificate of compliance required
5. Inspect welding: Structural Steel:
  - a. Single-pass fillet welds  $\leq 5/16$
  - b. Metal roof deck connections.

H. Trusses, Periodic Inspection

1. Inspect metal roof trusses and shop built components.
  - a. Inspect truss production in shop unless fabricator is approved by building official and submits certification of compliance at end of scope of work. Inspect 10% of trusses. Inspect 100% of trusses if discrepancies are observed.
2. Inspect site-built assemblies including site built trusses. Inspect erected trusses including bridging and attachments.
  - a. Inspect all site-built trusses. Inspect erected trusses and installation of bridging.
3. Inspect connection of truss elements including number of screws and attachment of connections of individual truss components.
4. Inspect truss to truss connections and truss to structure connections.
5. Inspect high-load diaphragms.
  - a. Inspect all diaphragms after installation is complete.

6. Inspect restraint/bracing.
  - a. For trusses spanning greater than 60ft, verify that the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package.
- I. Special Inspection for Wind Resistance, Periodic Inspection
  1. Roof Cladding and Roof Framing Connections.
  2. Wall Connections to Roof.
  3. Diaphragms connections to framing.
- J. Reference related specifications for the minimum level of inspections and testing. Provide additional inspections and testing as necessary to determine compliance with the construction drawings.

#### PART 4 - SCHEDULES AND FORMS (ATTACHED)

# Statement of Special Inspections

---

Project:

Location:

Owner:

Design Professional in Responsible Charge:

This *Statement of Special Inspections* is submitted as a condition for permit issuance in accordance with the Special Inspection and Structural Testing requirements of the Building Code. It includes a schedule of Special Inspection services applicable to this project as well as the name of the Special Inspection Coordinator and the identity of other approved agencies to be retained for conducting these inspections and tests. This *Statement of Special Inspections* encompass the following disciplines:

☒ Structural      ☐ Mechanical/Electrical/Plumbing  
☐ Architectural      ☐ Other: \_\_\_\_\_

The Special Inspection Coordinator shall keep records of all inspections and shall furnish inspection reports to the Building Official and the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge. Discovered discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the Contractor for correction. If such discrepancies are not corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the Building Official and the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge. The Special Inspection program does not relieve the Contractor of his or her responsibilities.

Interim reports shall be submitted to the Building Official and the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge.

A *Final Report of Special Inspections* documenting completion of all required Special Inspections, testing and correction of any discrepancies noted in the inspections shall be submitted prior to issuance of a Certificate of Use and Occupancy.

Job site safety and means and methods of construction are solely the responsibility of the Contractor.

Interim Report Frequency: *Weekly* or ☐ per attached schedule.

Prepared by:

\_\_\_\_\_  
(type or print name)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

*Design Professional Seal*

Owner's Authorization:

Building Official's Acceptance:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date



Final Report of Special Inspections

---

Project:

Location:

Owner:

Owner's Address:

Architect of Record:

Structural Engineer of Record:

To the best of my information, knowledge and belief, the Special Inspections required for this project, and itemized in the *Statement of Special Inspections* submitted for permit, have been performed and all discovered discrepancies have been reported and resolved other than the following:

Comments:

*(Attach continuation sheets if required to complete the description of corrections.)*

Interim reports submitted prior to this final report form a basis for and are to be considered an integral part of this final report.

Respectfully submitted,  
Special Inspector

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Type or print name)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

*Licensed Professional Seal*

## Agent's Final Report

Project:

Agent:

Special Inspector:

To the best of my information, knowledge and belief, the Special Inspections or testing required for this project, and designated for this Agent in the *Statement of Special Inspections* submitted for permit, have been performed and all discovered discrepancies have been reported and resolved other than the following:

Comments:

*(Attach continuation sheets if required to complete the description of corrections.)*

Interim reports submitted prior to this final report form a basis for and are to be considered an integral part of this final report.

Respectfully submitted,  
Agent of the Special Inspector

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Type or print name)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
*Licensed Professional Seal or  
Certification*

---

**Contractor's Statement of Responsibility**

---

Each contractor responsible for the construction or fabrication of a system or component designated in the Quality Assurance Plan must submit a Statement of Responsibility.

Project:

Contractor's Name:

Address:

License No.:

Description of designated building systems and components included in the Statement of Responsibility:

**Contractor's Acknowledgment of Special Requirements**

I hereby acknowledge that I have received, read, and understand the Quality Assurance Plan and Special Inspection program.

I hereby acknowledge that control will be exercised to obtain conformance with the construction documents approved by the Building Official.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

**Contractor's Provisions for Quality Control**

Procedures for exercising control within the contractor's organization, the method and frequency of reporting and the distribution of reports is attached to this Statement.

Identification and qualifications of the person(s) exercising such control and their position(s) in the organization are attached to this Statement.

## Fabricator's Certificate of Compliance

---

Each approved fabricator that is exempt from Special Inspection of shop fabrication and implementation procedures per section 1704.2 of the International Building Code must submit a *Fabricator's Certificate of Compliance* at the completion of fabrication.

Project:

Fabricator's Name:

Address:

Certification or Approval Agency:

Certification Number:

Date of Last Audit or Approval:

Description of structural members and assemblies that have been fabricated:

I hereby certify that items described above were fabricated in strict accordance with the approved construction documents.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

Attach copies of fabricator's certification or building code evaluation service report and fabricator's quality control manual

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS SCHEDULE

<b>SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS</b>				
<b>Item</b>	<b>Inspection / Test / Certification</b>	<b>C or P</b>	<b>Extent / Comments</b>	<b>Agent</b>
<b>1.00</b>	<b>Fabricators</b>			
1.01	Review the quality control procedures of the following fabricators for completeness and adequacy relative to the fabricator's scope of work: steel fabricator, lightgage truss fabricator, wood truss fabricator.	Periodic		OTA
1.02	The following fabricators, if registered and approved by the building official, may submit "Certificates of Compliance" at the completion of their scope of work that their fabricated items were constructed in accordance with the approved construction documents: steel fabricator, lightgage truss fabricator, wood truss fabricator.	Periodic		OTA
<b>2.00</b>	<b>Soils and Deep Foundations</b>			
2.01	Verify bearing capacities of soils beneath footings.	Periodic	As recommended in approved soils report and specified in earthwork specifications.	OTA
2.02	Verify site preparation prior to beginning fill placement. Verify fill material type, placement method, lift thickness, and compaction of fill material. Verify in-place density of compacted fill.	Periodic	As recommended in approved soils report and specified in earthwork specifications.	OTA
<b>3.00</b>	<b>Concrete Construction</b>			
3.01	Spread footings are excepted from the inspections listed below.			OTA
3.02	Continuous footings are excepted from the inspections listed below.			OTA
3.03	Slabs on grade are excepted from the inspections listed below.			OTA
3.04	Inspect reinforcing steel except as noted above for installation including size, spacing and bar clearances. Verify that lap splices and embedment lengths are per the construction documents. Verify that dowels for work above are properly aligned and spaced to match other work.	Periodic	Prior to each pour.	OTA; SDG for Shelter

SPECIAL INSPECTIONS SCHEDULE

Item	Inspection / Test / Certification	C or P	Extent / Comments	Agent
3.05	Inspect anchor rods	Periodic		OTA
3.06	Verify each proposed concrete mix for the project.	Periodic	For each proposed mix.	OTA
3.07	Sample all concrete for strength tests and test concrete for slump, air content, temperature, and other tests.	Continuous	During placement operations. Reference concrete specifications for specific tests and frequencies.	OTA
3.08	Inspect concrete placement except as noted above.	Continuous		OTA
3.09	Inspect all concrete curing operations as noted in the extents column.	Periodic	Monitor during hot, cold and windy conditions. Reference concrete specifications.	OTA
3.11	Inspect Post installed anchors, expansion	Periodic		OTA
3.12	Inspect Post installed anchors, epoxy anchors	Continuous		OTA
<b>4.00</b>	<b>Special Inspections for Wind Resistance</b>			
4.01	Roof Cladding and Roof Framing Connections	Periodic		OTA
4.02	Wall Connections to Roof and Floor Diaphragms and Framing	Periodic		OTA
4.03	Roof and Floor Diaphragm Systems, including Collectors, Drag Struts, and Boundary Elements.	Periodic		OTA
4.04	Vertical Windforce-Resisting Systems, including Braced Frames, Moment Frames, and Shearwalls	Periodic		OTA
4.05	Windforce-Resisting System Connections to the Foundation.	Periodic		OTA
4.06	Fabrication and installation of components and assemblies required to meet the impact-resistance requirements of Section 1609.1.4.	Periodic		OTA
<b>5.00</b>	<b>Cold Formed Steel Framing Construction</b>			
5.01	Inspect exterior wall infill including installed studs' sizes and attachments.	Periodic		OTA
5.02	Inspect roof trusses assembly/framing and attachments.	Periodic		OTA

# SPECIAL INSPECTIONS SCHEDULE

Item	Inspection / Test / Certification	C or P	Extent / Comments	Agent
5.03	Verify size and gage of load bearing studs.	Periodic		OTA
5.04	Verify load bearing framing spacing, configuration and attachments.	Periodic		OTA
5.05	Verify load bearing bracing and blocking	Periodic		OTA
5.06	Proper seating of studs in track.	Periodic		OTA
5.07	Stud header size, gauge, and construction per structural drawings for load bearing walls.	Periodic		OTA
5.08	Screw attachments, bolting, anchoring, and other fastening of components per structural drawings.	Periodic		OTA
5.09	Welding of elements per structural drawings.	Periodic		OTA
5.10	Where a cold-formed steel truss clear span is 60 feet or greater, verify that the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package.	Periodic		OTA
<b>INSPECTION AGENTS</b>				
#	Firm, Address, Telephone			
OTA	Owner's Testing Agent			
SDG	SDG -- 300 Chase Park South, Suite 125, Hoover, AL 35244 -- (205) 824 - 5200			
<p><i>Note: The inspection and testing agent(s) shall be engaged by the Owner or the Owner's Agent, and not by the Contractor or Subcontractor whose work is to be inspected or tested. Any conflict of interest must be disclosed to the Building Official prior to commencing work. The qualifications of the Inspection Agent(s) may be subject to the approval of the Building Official.</i></p> <p>Is the Schedule of Special Inspection Services part of a Quality Assurance Plan as defined in Sections 1705 or 1706 of the Building Code? _____</p>				





1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Scope

The work required under this Section consists of providing all labor, materials and equipment necessary to do all clean-up work; including, but not limited to, periodic cleaning, removal of temporary protection, removal of debris and final cleaning.

1.2 Related Sections

Administrative provisions and technical requirements specified under this Section are in addition to provisions for cleaning specified under various Sections of the Specifications and apply to each Section of Specifications.

1.3 Special Instructions

- A. Contractor shall endeavor to keep interior free of dust and mud, take precautionary measures, and provide protective materials, such as insulated dust and noise partitions and gravel at all entries during dried-in stages of construction.
- B. Upon completion of work in each area or part of the building and immediately prior to final inspection and acceptance of that respective area, that area shall be thoroughly cleaned and made ready for immediate occupancy by the Owner.
- C. In case of failure to comply with the requirements of this Section for any part of the work within the time specified by the Architect, the Architect may cause the work to be done and deduct the price thereof from the Contract Price on the next succeeding monthly Application for Payment.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Equipment

- A. For periodic and final cleaning operations, use approved apparatus designed for the specific type of cleaning required and compatible with the particular materials to be cleaned.
- B. Operate equipment in compliance with equipment manufacturer's instructions.

2.2 Materials

All soap, detergents, brushes, scrapers and other materials and accessories utilized in periodic and final cleaning shall be of a type recommended by the material manufacturer as being compatible with and non-injurious to the particular surface, material, equipment or finish to be cleaned.

3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 Periodic Cleaning

- A. The Contractor shall periodically, or as directed during the progress of the work, clean-up and remove from the premises all refuse, rubbish, scrap materials and debris caused by his employees, his Subcontractors or resulting from his work.
- B. Such clean-up shall be sufficient to assure that at all times the premises are sanitary, safe, reasonably clean, orderly and workmanlike.
- C. Remove oily rags and combustible waste, debris, rubbish and excess materials from the premises at the completion of each day's work, or more often, if required to keep the building and premises free from any accumulation of flammable and dangerous materials.

- D. At no time shall any rubbish, debris or any other material be thrown from window or door openings nor into foundation trenches.
- E. Clean areas prior to any painting work. Take care to settle and minimize dust before painting begins. Use commercial type vacuum cleaners.
- F. Close rooms and areas where painting and decorating work is completed to all but authorized personnel.
- G. All debris and waste materials shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be removed by him from the project site.
- H. Remove Debris from roof tops daily.
- I. Trim excess exposed cur-o-wall flush with face of CMU.
- J. Keep adjacent paved driveways and roads clear of mud and debris intruded as a result of this work.

### 3.2 Removal of Temporary Facilities

- A. Upon completion of work in each area or part of the building, remove temporary lighting, power, protection and enclosures and repair defects in materials and workmanship noted after removal of such.
- B. Before final completion and final acceptance, the Contractor shall remove from the Owner's property, and from all public and private property, all tools, scaffolding, falsework, temporary structures and/or utilities including the foundations thereof (except as the Owner permits in writing to remain).

### 3.3 Final Cleaning

- A. Before final completion and acceptance, the Contractor shall remove from the Owner's property, and from all public and private property, all refuse, rubbish, scrap and surplus material and debris caused by his employees, his Subcontractors, or resulting from his work, leaving the site clean and true to line and grade, and the work in a safe and clean condition, ready for use and operation.
- B. Clean all painted, enameled, stained or baked enamel work to remove all marks, stains, smudges, fingerprints and splatters from such surfaces.
- C. Clean and remove all stickers, labels, marks, stains, smudges and paint from all glass. Wash and polish all glass, including, but not limited to, that in mirrors, view windows and doors, on the interior and exterior. Scratched or marred glass shall be replaced.
- D. Clean all hardware and metals to remove all stains, marks, smudges, fingerprints, dirt, dust, paint or other disfigurement and polish. Scratched, marred or otherwise disfigured hardware or metals shall be replaced.
- E. Clean all tile and floor finishes of all kinds to remove all splatters, stains, paint, dirt and dust. Wash and apply a final coat of wax and polish all finished floors except concrete and carpet as recommended by the manufacturer or as required by the Architect.
- F. Clean all manufactured articles, fixtures, materials, appliances and equipment to

remove all stickers, labels, rust stains and temporary covers.

- G. Clean and condition all manufactured articles, fixtures, materials, appliances and equipment and all electrical, heating and air conditioning equipment as recommended or directed by the manufacturer.
- H. Blow out or flush out all foreign matter from all dust pockets, piping, tanks, pumps, fans, motors, devices, switches, panels, fixtures, boilers and similar features of all appliances and equipment and all electrical, heating and air conditioning equipment as recommended or directed by the manufacturer.
- I. Remove all paint from all identification plates on all appliances and equipment and all electrical, heating and air conditioning equipment and polish plates.
- J. Exterior walks, steps, ramps and platforms shall be washed down and broom cleaned to remove all dirt, dust, stains or other disfigurations.
- K. Interior surfaces of all heating, ventilation and air conditioning ducts shall be damp or wet mopped or vacuum cleaned to remove all dirt and dust.
- L. In general, leave all work clean and free of dirt, dust, smudges, stains, paint spots, mastic, caulk, sealant and other excess materials.
- M. After final cleaning of building and prior to final balancing of heating and air conditioning system, all air filters shall be replaced with clean, new filters.
- N. Upon completion of final cleaning, remove all cleaning equipment, materials and debris from the building and the premises.

END OF SECTION



## CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES - SECTION 01800

### 1.0 - GENERAL

- A. This Section shall adhere to *General Conditions of the Contract, Article 19, and DCM Form C-12*, as issued by The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management, a copy of which is included within this Specification Manual.
- B. Should changes in the work constitute an increase or decrease in the Contract amount, the General Contractor shall submit a Change Order Request (COR) which shall include a number for identification, description and cost break down.
- C. Contractor shall attach all supporting documentation, including, but not limited to the following:
  - 1. Breakdown of costs which shall include material, labor, delivery (freight), installation, taxes, and mark-up for overhead and profit.
  - 2. If a Subcontractor is used for the requested change, then supporting documentation listed for Item 1 shall also be provided by the Subcontractor and included with the COR.
- D. In accordance with *General Conditions of the Contract, Article 19*, the General Contractor shall note the following:
  - 1. Mark-Up Procedures for Change Order with net addition to Contract:
    - a. The General Contractor's mark-up for overhead and profit shall not exceed fifteen (15) percent.
    - b. Where Subcontract work is involved, the total mark-up for the Contractor and Subcontractor shall not exceed twenty-five (25) percent.
    - c. The Architect must be able to determine the total amount of mark-up, therefore, supporting documentation **must** state the mark-up of both the Subcontractor and the General Contractor.
  - 2. Mark-Up Procedures for Change Order with net Credit to Contract:  
"General Conditions of the Contract":  
**Changes which involve a net credit to the Owner shall include credits for overhead and profit on the deducted work. Changes involving a net credit that do not include overhead and profit shall be justified by the Architect, approved by the Owner, and must also be approved by the Director.**
  - 3. Overhead "Indirect Costs": For the purposes of determining an adjustment of the Contract Sum, "overhead" shall cover the Contractor's indirect costs of the change including but not limited to the following:
    - a. Bonds
    - b. Insurance
    - c. Superintendent
    - d. Job Office Personnel
    - e. Watchman
    - f. Job Office, office supplies and expenses
    - g. Temporary facilities and utilities
    - h. Home office expenses

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

- A. General Contractor shall submit COR to Architect for review and approval. If approved, the Architect will submit to Owner for final approval. Upon approval by the Owner, the Architect will prepare required number of copies of Change Order DCM Form C-12 (local)

or DCM Form C-12 (PSCA) and forward to General Contractor.

- B. Six (6) copies of Change Order are required for locally funded projects and six (6) copies are required for PSCA funded projects. All copies must be signed by the General Contractor's Bonding Company with Power of Attorney attached.
- C. Sequence of execution shall be as follows:
  - 1. General Contractor signs all copies of Change Order. Note: Change Order must be signed by an Officer within the company.
  - 2. General Contractor forwards Change Order to their Bonding Company.
  - 3. Bonding Company signs each copy and returns same to G. C.
  - 4. G. C. forwards Change Order to Architect.
  - 5. Architect forwards Change Order to local Board of Education.
  - 6. Superintendent of local Board of Education executes and returns Change Order to Architect.
  - 7. Architect forwards Change Order to either the State Department of Education (local funded projects) or to The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management (PSCA funded projects).
  - 8. All parties will receive a copy of fully executed Change Order from the appropriate state agency for their permanent records.
- D. General Contractor may include cost of Change Order on Pay Application only after receipt of fully executed Change Order. This cost shall be included on Pay Application as a separate line item listing change order number and amount. Billing shall be for the percentage of work completed for the change order within the month covered by that Pay Application.
- E. All change(s) in the work shall require approval by the Owner, through the Architect, in advance of the commencement of any work associated with the change(s).
- F. Charges against Allowances shall **not** include General Contractor's mark-up.  
- *Refer to Specification Section 01020 - Allowances* -
- G. Refer to "General Conditions of the Contract" - "DCM Form C-8 for additional information.

END OF SECTION

1.0 - GENERAL

- A. Standard product warranties are preprinted written warranties published by individual manufacturers for particular products and are specifically endorsed by the manufacturer to the Owner.
- B. Special warranties are written warranties required by or incorporated in the Contract Documents, either to extend time limits provided by standard warranties or to provide greater rights for the Owner.
  - 1. Refer to the General Conditions for terms of the Contractor's period for correction of the Work.
- C. Warranties
  - 1. Subcontractors: General Contractor shall provide a one-year warranty from each Subcontractor they have under contract for the project.
  - 2. Vendors/Suppliers: General Contractor shall obtain a one-year warranty from each Vendor/Supplier for manufactured product used for the project. Example: *XYS Building Products, Inc.* shall provide a one-year warranty for each product they provided for the project, such as, *toilet partitions and hollow metal doors and frames*. This warranty may be on a form or letterhead provided by the Vendor/Supplier and must list all products provided for the project.
  - 3. Manufacturers: The Manufacturer's warranty for each product shall be placed directly behind the applicable Subcontractor or Vendor/Supplier's warranty within the warranty binder.
  - 4. Roof Warranties: The executed roofing warranties shall be presented at Final Inspection. Manufacturer's warranties cannot be prorated.
- D. Disclaimers and Limitations: Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve the Contractor of the warranty on the Work that incorporates the products. Manufacturer's and limitations on product warranties do not relieve suppliers, manufacturer's and subcontractors required to countersign special warranties with the Contractor.
- E. Related Damages and Losses: When correcting failed or damaged warranted construction, remove and replace construction that has been damaged as a result of such failure or must be removed and replaced to provide access for correction of warranted construction.
- F. Reinstatement of Warranty: When Work covered by a warranty has failed and been corrected by replacement or rebuilding, reinstate the warranty by written endorsement. The reinstated warranty shall be equal to the original warranty with an equitable adjustment for depreciation.
- G. Replacement Cost: Upon determination that Work covered by a warranty has failed, replace or rebuild the Work to an acceptable condition complying with requirements of the Contract Documents. The Contractor is responsible for the cost of replacing or rebuilding defective Work regardless of whether the Owner has benefitted from use of the Work through a portion of its anticipated useful service life.
- H. Owner's Recourse: Expressed warranties made to the Owner are in addition to implied warranties and shall not limit the duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise

available under the law. Expressed warranty periods shall not be interpreted as limitations on the time in which the Owner can enforce such other duties, obligations, rights, or remedies.

1. Rejection of Warranties: The Owner reserves the right to reject warranties and to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
  2. Where the Contract Documents require a special warranty, or similar commitment, the Owner reserves the right to refuse to accept the Work, until the Contractor presents evidence that entities required to countersign such commitments are willing to do so.
- I. Submit written warranties to the Architect prior to the date certified for Substantial Completion. If the Architect's Certificate of Substantial Completion designates a commencement date for warranties other than the date of Substantial Completion, submit written warranties upon request of the Architect.
1. When a designated portion of the Work is completed and occupied or used by the Owner, by separate agreement with the Contractor during the construction period, submit properly executed warranties to the Architect within 15 days of completion of that designated portion of the Work.
- J. When the Contract Documents require the Contractor, or the Contractor and a subcontractor, supplier or manufacturer to execute a special warranty, prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution by the required parties. Submit a draft to the Owner, through the Architect, for approval prior to final execution.
1. Refer to Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- K. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, commercial-quality, durable 3-ring, vinyl-covered loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch (115-by-280-mm) paper. Three (3) sets of warranties and close out documents are required: one set will be retained by the Architect and two sets will be delivered to the Owner.
1. Provide heavy paper dividers with celluloid covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark the tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product, and the name, address, and telephone number of the Installer.
  2. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project title or name, and name of the Contractor.
  3. When warranted construction requires operation and maintenance manuals, provide additional copies of each required warranty, as necessary, for inclusion in each required manual.

## 2.0 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## 3.0 - EXECUTION

The One-Year Warranty issued by the General Contractor shall list all disciplines they are covering when there is not a warranty from a Subcontractor. For instance, some General Contractors have Masons employed within their company and, therefore, do not contract Masonry work through a Masonry Subcontractor. In that case, the General Contractor's warranty would list Masonry as part of their itemized list of warranted work. Other typical examples are Painting, Rough Carpentry,



Miscellaneous Metals, etc.

Warranties shall bear the same date as the Date of Substantial Completion. All warranties shall be effective for a period of One Year from Date of Substantial Completion with exceptions for special warranties requiring extended periods of warranty coverage.

This list is designed as an aid to comply with close-out procedures; however, it should not be considered a complete and comprehensive list. General Contractor should review warranty requirements specified in Project Manual.

Warranties shall include, but not be limited, to the following:

Warranties from ALL Subcontractors for this project.

**DIVISION 2 – SITEWORK**

Site Protection  
Soil Poisoning  
Earthwork  
Lawns and Planting  
Water Distribution  
Sanitary Sewer  
Storm Drainage  
Chain-Link Fencing  
Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving  
Site Concrete Walks, Curbs & Paving

**DIVISION 3 – CONCRETE**

Cast-in Place Concrete

**DIVISION 4 – MASONRY**

Unit Masonry

**DIVISION 5 – METALS**

Miscellaneous Metals

**DIVISION 7 - MOISTURE PROTECTION**

Building Insulation  
Pre-Engineered Metal Building Insulation  
Wall Flashing  
Caulking and Sealants

**DIVISION 8 – WINDOWS AND DOORS**

Hollow Metal Doors and Frames  
Flush Wood Doors  
Aluminum Framed Storefronts  
Finish Hardware  
Glass and Glazing

**DIVISION 9 - FINISHES**

Gypsum Drywall  
Tile  
Acoustical Panel Ceilings

Epoxy Resinous Flake Flooring  
Tackable Wallcovering  
Paint

**DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES**

Markerboards and Tackboards  
Identifying Devices  
Protective Cover-Walkway  
Toilet Accessories

**DIVISION 12 - FURNITURE & FIXTURES**

Fire Extinguishers  
Miscellaneous Furniture and Fixtures  
Laminate Clad Casework  
Mini Blinds

**DIVISION 13 – SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

Pre-Engineered Steel Building

**NOTE: Provide roofing warranties as stipulated in the specifications, and as required by The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management.  
Roofing warranties shall be presented at the time of Final Inspection.**

**DIVISION 15 – PLUMBING and FIRE PROTECTION**

Plumbing Systems – Fixtures - Labor

**DIVISION 15 - MECHANICAL – HVAC**

Mechanical Systems – Equipment – Labor

**DIVISION 16 - ELECTRICAL**

Electrical Systems – Fixtures -Equipment – Material and Labor

**See attached WARRANTY FORMS immediately following for General Contractors and Subcontractors.**

**GENERAL CONTRACTOR WARRANTY FORM**

G. C.' S PROJECT NO. \_\_\_\_\_ ARCHITECT'S PROJECT NO: \_\_\_\_\_

PROJECT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

GENERAL CONTRACTOR: \_\_\_\_\_

(Name and Address)

PROJECT OWNER: \_\_\_\_\_

ARCHITECT: Lathan Associates Architects, P.C., 300 Chase Park South, Suite 200, Hoover, AL 35244

**PROJECT SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION DATE:**

This is to certify that we, \_\_\_\_\_, the General Contractor for the above referenced project, per contract documents, warrant all labor, material and equipment provided and performed for a period of One (1) Year from the Date of Substantial Completion indicated above.

If applicable, we warrant additional work, materials and equipment for One (1) Year on the following:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Name and Title)

Dated this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_

State of Alabama

County of \_\_\_\_\_

Sworn to and subscribed before me this

\_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

My Commission Expires: \_\_\_\_\_

## SUBCONTRACTOR WARRANTY FORM

G. C.' S PROJECT NO. \_\_\_\_\_ ARCHITECT'S PROJECT NO: \_\_\_\_\_

PROJECT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

GENERAL CONTRACTOR: \_\_\_\_\_

SUBCONTRACTOR: \_\_\_\_\_

(Name and Address) \_\_\_\_\_

PROJECT OWNER: \_\_\_\_\_

ARCHITECT: Lathan Associates Architects, P.C., 300 Chase Park South, Suite 200, Hoover, AL 35244

**PROJECT SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION DATE:**

We, \_\_\_\_\_, Subcontractor for \_\_\_\_\_,  
(name) (work)

as described in Specification Section(s) \_\_\_\_\_, do hereby warrant that all labor and materials provided and performed in conjunction with above referenced project are in accordance with the Contract Documents and will be free from defects due to defective materials and/or workmanship for a period of One (1) year from the Date of Substantial Completion indicated above or as required by the Specification Section relevant to your trade.

Should any defect develop during the warranty period due to improper materials and/or workmanship, the same, including adjacent work displaced, shall be made good by the undersigned at no expense to the Owner.

The Owner will give Subcontractor written notice of defective work. Should Subcontractor fail to correct defective work within Thirty (30) days after receiving notice, the Owner may, at his option, correct defects and charge Subcontractor cost for such correction. Subcontractor agrees to pay such charges upon demand.

---

Warranty applies to the following Work: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Name and Title)

Dated this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_

1.0 - GENERAL

- A. Closeout requirements for specific construction activities are included in the appropriate Sections in Division 2 through 16.
- B. Final Inspection Procedures: See Section 01030 - Special Project Requirements for Inspection Requirements
  - 1. Deliver tools, spare parts, extra stock, and similar items.
  - 2. Changeover locks and transmit keys to the Owner.
  - 3. Complete startup testing of systems and instruction of operation and maintenance personnel. **Obtain signature(s) of all Owner's personnel participating in operation and maintenance instructions.**
  - 4. Remove temporary facilities, mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  - 5. Complete final cleanup requirements, including touchup painting.
  - 6. Touch up and repair and restore marred, exposed finishes.
- C. After Substantial Completion has been achieved, the General Contractor shall:
  - 1. Submit final payment request with releases and supporting documentation. Include insurance certificates where required.
    - a. In the Application for Payment that coincides with, or first follows, the date Substantial Completion is claimed, show 100 percent completion for the Work claimed as substantially complete. Include supporting documentation for completion and an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
    - b. Advise the Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
    - c. Submit specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
    - d. Submit record drawings, maintenance manuals, final project photographs, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
    - e. Deliver tools, spare parts, extra stock, and similar items.
    - f. Changeover locks and transmit keys to the Owner.
    - g. Complete startup testing of systems and instruction of operation and maintenance personnel. Obtain signature(s) of all Owner's personnel participating in operation and maintenance instructions.
  - 2. Submit a copy of the final inspection list stating that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
  - 3. Submit final meter readings for utilities, a record of stored fuel, and similar data as of the date of Substantial Completion.
  - 4. Submit Consent of Surety to final payment.
  - 5. Submit Release of Liens.
  - 6. Submit a final settlement statement.
  - 7. Submit evidence of continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
- D. Record Drawings: Maintain a set of prints of Contract Drawings. Mark the set to show the actual installation where the installation varies substantially from the Work as originally shown. Mark the drawing most capable of showing conditions fully and accurately. Give attention to concealed elements.
  - 1. Mark sets with red pencil.
  - 2. Mark completed record drawings: "As-Built" Set.
  - 3. Upon completion of the Work, submit record drawings to the Architect for the Owner's records in the form of two (2) CD's.

- E. **Record Specifications:** Maintain one copy of the Project Manual, including addenda. Mark to show variations in Work performed in comparison with the text of the Specifications and modifications. Give attention to substitutions and selection of options and information on concealed construction. Note related record drawing information and Product Data. Mark cover of set: "As-Built".

Upon completion of the Work, submit record Specifications to the Architect for the Owner's records in the form of two (2) CD's.

*Note: If space allows, both "As-Built" plans and specs may be scanned and saved onto a single CD and 2 copies of record CD's shall be submitted.*

- F. **Maintenance Manuals:** Organize operation and maintenance data into sets of manageable size. Bind in individual, heavy-duty, 3-ring binders, with pocket folders for folded sheet information. Mark identification on front and spine of each binder. Include the following information:

1. Emergency instructions.
2. Spare parts list.
3. Copies of warranties.
4. Wiring diagrams.

- G. Close-Out Documents

Close-Out Documents consists of the following:

1. General Contractor's Warranty
2. Subcontractors' Warranties
3. Manufacturers' Warranties
4. Affidavit of Advertisement of Completion
5. Consent of Surety to Final Payment
6. Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens
7. Operating and Maintenance Manuals / Instructions to Owner
8. "As-Built" Plans and Specification Manual
9. Owner's Set of Shop Drawing Submittals

General Contractor shall submit three (3) sets of binders for Items 1-7. Documents should be bound in 3-ring binders in size suitable for amount of material included. Divider tabs should be used to separate items.

If Operating Manuals are large, they can be bound in separate binders as indicated under Paragraph I listed above.

"As-Built" Plans and Specification Manual (2 set of each) should be complete and submitted on CD's. All plans should be submitted as one set. Do not submit separate sets of "As-Built" plans for Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, etc.

Architect shall submit one copy of the Shop Drawings to the Owner with close-out documentation.

## 2.0 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## 3.0 - EXECUTION

- A. Operation and Maintenance Instructions:

Arrange for each Installer of equipment that requires maintenance to provide instruction in proper operation and maintenance. Include a detailed review of the following items.

1. Maintenance manuals.
2. Spare parts, tools, and materials.

3. Lubricants and fuels.
  4. Identification systems.
  5. Control sequences.
  6. Hazards.
  7. Warranties and bonds.
  8. Maintenance agreements and similar.
- B. As part of instruction for operating equipment, demonstrate the following:
1. Startup and shutdown.
  2. Emergency operations and safety procedures.
  3. Noise and vibration adjustments.
- C. Final Cleaning: Employ experienced cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to the condition expected in a normal, commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Complete the following operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion.
1. Remove labels that are not permanent labels.
  2. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass. Remove glazing compounds. Replace chipped or broken glass.
  3. Clean exposed finishes to a dust-free condition, free of stains, films, and foreign substances. Leave concrete floors broom clean. Vacuum carpeted surfaces.
  4. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment. Remove excess lubrication. Clean plumbing fixtures. Clean light fixtures and lamps.
  5. Clean the site of rubbish, litter, and foreign deposits. Rake grounds to a smooth, even textured surface.
- D. Pest Control: Engage a licensed exterminator to make a final inspection and rid the Project of rodents, insects, and other pests.
- E. Removal of Protection: Remove temporary protection and facilities.
- F. Compliance: Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction and safety standards for cleaning. Remove waste materials and dispose of lawfully.

END OF SECTION





1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The General Provisions of the contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and General Requirements apply to the work specified in this section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. This Work of this Section includes the protection and preservation from injury or defacement of all vegetation and objects designated to remain and the prevention of silts and increased run off leaving the site during or after site development.
- B. The Contractor is solely responsible for controlling runoff and siltation from the site and onto protected or undisturbed areas of the site or adjacent sites. Means and methods described herein are the minimum acceptable.
- C. The Work of this Section is incidental to the Contract and will not be paid for separately except where unit prices may be in effect.
- D. Related Sections: Divisions 2 Earthwork.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. General:
    - a. Listings: Issues listed by references, including revisions of issuing authority, from part of this specification to extent indicated. Issues listed are identified by number, edition, date, title, or other designation established by issuing authority. Issues subsequently referred to are referred to by an issuing authority abbreviation and a basic designation.
    - b. Modification: Modifications (by Architect) to reference standards, if any, are noted with standard.
  - 2. Alabama Dept. of Transportation (ALDOT), Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, latest Edition: Section 665. Hay bales and Silt Fencing: Section 871, Fencing material.
  - 3. Alabama Handbook for Erosion Control, Sediment Control and Stormwater Management on Construction Sites and Urban Areas, latest Edition.
  - 4. Local Codes, Ordinances, Regulations.
- B. Pre-Construction Meeting: Before proceeding with site operations, review site features to remain and be protected at the site with Owner and Architects.
- C. Tree Damage:
  - 1. If any trees to be saved are severely injured so as to cause a loss of natural character to the crown, or so as to impair the life support system

or to cause death as a result of construction operation, the Contractor agrees to pay fifty dollars (\$50.00) per one inch (1") of caliper, measured four feet (4') above the ground, for trees one inch (1") in caliper and larger, as fixed and liquidated damages, as determined by the Architects..

2. Severely damaged trees requiring liquidated damages will be determined by the Architects.
3. Damaged trees which are repairable as determined by the Architect shall be repaired by a qualified tree surgeon, approved by the Architect, and whose services will be at the Contractor's expense.
4. Clean up and repair damages to Owner's satisfaction.

D. Site Damage:

1. If any protection materials or measures are dismantled, removed or altered, even temporarily, or if areas of the site designated to remain are utilized in any manner without the Architects written authorization, the Contractor agrees to pay the Owner Five Hundred Dollars (\$500.00) per infraction, as determined by the Architect, as fixed and liquidated damages.

## 2.0 - PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

### 2.1 PRODUCT/MATERIAL DESCRIPTION

A. Wattles and Silt Fencing:

1. In accordance with ALDOT Section 665.
2. Install at perimeter of clearing and grading operations where shown on Drawings, (or as directed) as part of temporary erosion control and site protection.

## 3.0 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 JOB CONDITION

- A. It is intended that the part of the property on which new construction does not occur remain undisturbed and as is.
- B. Confine storage of materials, temporary facilities, and staging to areas approved by the Architect.
- C. Do not carry on construction operations or materials storage within five feet (5') of tree protection fencing or flagging for Limit of Clearing.

### 3.2 SEDIMENTATION AND EROSION CONTROL

- A. General: Employ erosion control management practices as required by the General Permit for Storm Water Discharges. The Contractor shall be responsible for obtaining the ADEM NOI (Notice of Intent) Permit for construction activity. LBYD, Inc. will assist the Contractor with the paperwork for the Permit. The Contractor will be responsible for application and maintenance of all conditions required by the Permit. Submit name of the Professional Engineer and/or Engineering firm to the Architect that is to be responsible for oversight of all requirements of the NOI Permit. The Contractor shall be responsible for all

requirements of the NOI Permit until acceptance of all work under this Contract. The Owner will work with a third party firm for the required monitoring.

- B. Control and abate water pollution and erosion at its potential source; employ downstream sediment entrapment measures as a backup to primary control at the source.
- C. Take all reasonable precautions to prevent and suppress fires and other detrimental occurrences which may be caused by construction operations.
- D. Protect streams, lakes and reservoirs and drainage systems from contamination by siltation or other harmful materials.
- E. The Contractor, his employees and subcontractors shall use conservation practices during the work, which shall include but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Comply with all federal, state and local laws, rules and regulations for prevention and suppressive action for forest fires.
  - 2. Protect and preserve soil and vegetation cover on the property and on adjacent lands. Any disturbance of soil and vegetation cover outside the Limit of Clearing line will not be permitted under any condition.
  - 3. Prevent and control soil erosion and gulleying within the property covered by Contract and the lands immediately adjacent thereto as a result of construction.
  - 4. Plan and conduct construction operations in such a manner so as to prevent pollution of streams, lakes and reservoirs with sediment or other harmful material used in the construction of the project. Protect downstream properties.
  - 5. Do not deposit waste, loose soil or other materials in live streams, swales or drainage ways.
  - 6. Do not operate mechanized equipment in live streams or streams channels.
  - 7. Do not allow fuels, oils, bitumen or other greasy or chemical substances originating from construction operations to enter or be placed where they may enter a live stream or drainageway.
  - 8. Coordinate sedimentation and erosion control measures with the clearing and grubbing operation so that both activities occur in the correct relation to one another.
  - 9. Install and maintain sedimentation and erosion control measures as a continuing program until the site work is complete. This includes, but is not limited to, repairs, any damage from storms, regular maintenance, and removal and disposal of accumulated silt.
- F. Wattles shall be anchored by use of stakes.
- G. Once installed, maintain silt fence until its capacity has been reached or erosion activity in the areas has been stabilized. When a silt fence has reached its capacity to function and need for a backup fence becomes evident, provide an additional line of silt fence. Repair of a damaged silt fence shall be accomplished by utilizing same type of materials used in original construction.
- H. Install and maintain sedimentation and erosion control measures as a continuing program until the site work is complete. This includes repairs, damage from storms, regular maintenance and removal and disposal of accumulated silt.

### 3.3 MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintain erosion control features that have been installed. Maintenance of erosion control features will be considered as an incidental part of the work and no specific payment for this will be made.

END OF SECTION 02125

1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Scope

The work included under this section consists of furnishing all labor, material and equipment necessary to chemically treat the soil for termite control.

1.2 Applicator

The chemical shall be applied by an approved Pest Control Operator, bonded and licensed in the state in which the work is performed.

1.3 Guarantee

Upon completion of the soil treatment and as a condition for its final acceptance, the Pest Control Operator shall furnish to the Owner a written guarantee providing:

- A. The Pest Control Operator will furnish the Owner with a Repair and Retreatment policy which has annual inspections included within the cost of policy at no additional cost to the Owner as outlined in Items B-E below.
- B. That the chemical having at least the required concentration and the rate and method of application complies in every respect with the standards contained herein.
- C. That the Pest Control Operator guarantees the effectiveness of the soil treatment against termite infestation for a period of not less than five (5) years from date of treatment.
- D. Pest Control Operator will re-inspect at least once annually during protection period. Cost of Guarantee will include annual inspections for a period of five (5) years at no additional cost to Owner.
- E. Evidence of re-infestation within the five (5) year guarantee period will be retreated without cost to the Owner. Any damage caused by termite infestation during the five (5) year guarantee period will be repaired or replaced by the Pest Control Operator at no additional cost to the Owner.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

Provide chemicals in accordance with current laws and regulations. Notify Architect of any discrepancies.

2.1 Chemicals

BASF - Termidor (Fipronil)  
Taurus SC - Control Solutions (Fipronil)  
Bayer Environmental Science - Premise

2.2 Mixing of Chemicals

Shall be observed on site by the Contractor's Superintendent.

3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 Application

- A. Basement or Crawl Space Construction (Minimum application)

1. Apply to critical areas along foundation walls, around piers and under suspended slabs and entrance platforms.
2. Apply at a rate of 1 gallon per 2-1/2 lineal feet per foot of depth along both sides of foundation walls, piers, etc.
3. Under suspended slabs and entrance platforms, apply overall treatment at rate of 1 gallon per 10 square feet.
4. Voids of unit masonry foundation walls and piers. Apply to voids at rate of 1 gallon per 5 lineal feet.

B. Slab-On Ground Construction (Minimum application)

1. Apply an over-all treatment under entire surface of floor slab including terraces and entrance platforms. Apply at rate of 1 gallon per 10 square feet, except that if fill under slab is gravel or other absorbent material, apply at rate of 1-1/2 gallons per 10 square feet.
2. Apply to critical areas along both sides of foundation wall expansion joints, around plumbing, utility services and other features that penetrate the slab at rate of 1 gallon per 2-1/2 lineal feet per foot of depth.
3. Voids of unit masonry foundation walls. Apply to voids at rate of 1 gallon per 5 lineal feet.

END OF SECTION

1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Geotechnical Report by Bhate Geosciences Corporation, dated February 10, 2022. Project Number: 122117. Copies can be obtained from Bhate at (205) 591-7062.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes grading (excavating and filling) as indicated on drawings to required lines, dimensions, contours, and elevations for proposed improvements, and the following:
  - 1. Removal of existing improvements in conflict with proposed improvements.
  - 2. Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil. Remove any excess topsoil from the site upon final stabilization.
  - 3. Scarifying, moisture conditioning, compaction, and testing of previously graded areas to ensure proper preparation and acceptance.
  - 4. Excavation and embankment placement to required lines, grades, and elevations.
  - 5. Importing of off-site borrow material suitable for structural fill as well as exporting any excess material.
  - 6. Remove materials from grading operations that are determined unsuitable by the Geotechnical Engineer from site and dispose of off-site.
  - 7. Preparation of areas to receive fill and preparation of excavation areas.
  - 8. Undercutting and replacing soft, unsuitable material like "fat" clays, old fill, organic materials, etc. with compacted engineer fill obtained from an off-site source meeting the project specifications.
  - 9. Over-excavation to native soils below footings and backfill with lean concrete or dense graded aggregate.
  - 10. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, lawns, and plantings.
  - 11. Excavating and backfilling trenches for buried utilities and pits for buried utility structures.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 1 Section "Unit Prices" for a schedule of unit prices.
  - 2. Division 1 Section "Construction Facilities and Temporary Controls."

1.3 UNIT PRICES

- A. All excavation to be unclassified.

- B. However, all stabilization and undercut & replacement will be handled with a quantity allowance with unit price being provided on the bid proposal form to be included in the base bid. The bid proposal form will have unit prices for the undercutting of unsuitable soils and replacing with compacted structural fill. The quantity allowance breakdown is as follows:

**Unsuitable soils and replacing with compacted structural fill: 200 CY**

The unit price for "undercutting" shall include all cost associated with removing unsuitable soil from below the established subgrade elevation, off-site disposal and replacing with off-site material conforming to the project specifications and compacted to project requirement. Unsuitable material refers to material that is not suitable for building or pavement support for reasons associated with material properties, such as highly plastic soils, "fat" clays, and old fill. Material, which is otherwise suitable, but above the optimum moisture and requires moisture conditioning prior to use as engineered fill shall not be considered as "unsuitable". Note the unit prices are being provided for the addition to and deletion from the contract base bid as required by changing field conditions during construction.

- C. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Over-excavation (i.e., excavation beyond the depths of typical footing bearing elevations) will be required to reach native soils. The over-excavation shall be backfilled with lean concrete or dense graded aggregate at the direction of the on-site Geotechnical Engineer. The lean concrete or dense graded aggregate will bridge the gap between the bearing elevation and the bottom of foundations.

The addition of lean concrete or dense graded aggregate will be handled with a quantity allowance with unit prices being provided on the bid proposal form to be included in the base bid. The bid proposal form will have a line item for unit prices for the placement of lean concrete or dense graded aggregate within the building footing locations.

The unit price for lean concrete shall include all costs associated with 500 PSI unreinforced concrete, layout, excavation, formwork, and installation. Note the unit prices are being provided for the addition to and deletion from the contract base bid as required by changing field conditions during construction. Measurement for payment for the lean concrete or dense graded aggregate related to footing installation will be by the Geotechnical Engineer based on the following neat line dimensions: 6" beyond each side of the footing plus the footing width plus the distance to the top of existing rock from the bottom of the footing. Add lean concrete or dense graded aggregate required to backfill over-excavation due to instability of the vertical sidewalls of the over-excavation. The footing itself will not be a part of this quantity, it is to be included in the base bid.

- D. The measurement process for unsuitable soil amounts shall be the initial responsibility of the contractor. The basis for measurement will be based on a before and after cross section survey of the area in question performed by a licensed surveyor. No truck counts will be allowed. Measurements will be verified by the Owner's on-site Geotechnical Engineer.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil materials used to fill an excavation.



1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
  2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Base Course: Layer placed between the subbase course and asphalt paving.
- C. Bedding Course: Layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- D. Borrow: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- E. Cut line: Elevations, lines, and final cut subgrades in cut over excavated areas.
- F. Drainage Course: Layer supporting slab-on-grade used to minimize capillary flow of pore water.
- G. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations.
1. Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or "cut line" as directed by Architect. Additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
  2. Bulk Excavation: Excavations more than 10 feet in width and pits more than 30 feet in either length or width.
  3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or "cut line" or beyond indicated dimensions without direction by Geotechnical engineer and Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Geotechnical Engineer and Architect, shall be without additional compensation.
- H. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- I. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- J. Subbase Course: Layer placed between the subgrade and base course for asphalt paving, or layer placed between the subgrade and a concrete pavement or walk.
- K. Subgrade: Surface or elevation remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.
- L. Unsuitable material:
1. Fills: Topsoil; Frozen materials; construction materials; clods of clay and stones larger than 4" (unless otherwise specified); organic material, including silts; and inorganic material including silts which are to wet to be stable, or other materials identified by the Geotechnical Engineer.
  2. Existing subgrade: Same materials as listed in paragraph 1 above that are not capable of direct support of slabs, pavement and similar items with the possible exception of improvement by compaction, proof rolling, or similar methods as directed and approved by the Geotechnical Engineer.

3. Unsuitable materials identified by the geotechnical report and drawings shall be anticipated and included in the base bid. See 1.3B Unit Prices for additional information.

- M. Utilities include on-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit per conditions of contract and Division 1.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated:
  1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487 of each on-site or borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
  2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 698 for each on-site or borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct soil materials and rock-definition testing, as documented according to ASTM D 3740 and ASTM E 548. (To be employed by the owner).
- B. Pre excavation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted in writing by Architect and/or the Engineer and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
  3. Contact utility-locator service for area where Project is located before excavating.
  4. Existing utilities shown on the drawings are from a combination of field locations, and utility company records. It is the Contractor's responsibility to field verify existing utilities prior to excavation.
- B. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed or implied to be removed by new construction and not noted to remain. Coordinate with utility companies to shut off services if lines are active.
- C. Demolish and completely remove from site any buried remnant construction such as slabs, walls and foundations.

- D. Contours and existing topography shown on the drawings are believed to be reasonably correct. It shall be the Contractors responsibility to determine any discrepancies which would affect his work, to make allowance for such discrepancies in the contract sum and notify the Architect in writing of such discrepancies and allowances made.

## 2.0 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Topsoil:
1. Materials considered useful for topsoil by the Architect shall be stockpiled at his direction at locations shown on the Drawings or as directed in the field. Topsoil shall be kept free from sub-soil, clay lumps, brush, objectionable weeds, litter, stones larger than 1/2 inches in diameter, stumps, roots, and other materials that would interfere with planting and maintenance operations.
  2. All topsoil shall be stored on the site by Contractor in a location approved by the Architect. The Contractor shall use such topsoil for the purpose of fulfilling the topsoil requirements specified in this Contract. Protect stockpile by immediately compacting, dressing down and seeding with annual rye for temporary cover. Provide a silt fence around the base of topsoil pile, after completing storage, to control erosion.
  3. Use topsoil stockpiles on site as necessary to complete landscape work indicated on Drawings and in accordance with specifications for landscaping.
- C. Satisfactory Soils: ASTM D 2487 soil classification groups GW, GP, GM, GC, SC, SW, SP, SM, MH, ML, and CL, or a combination of these group symbols; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter. Soils that exhibit a liquid limit less than 50 and a plasticity index of less than 25.
- D. Unsatisfactory Soils: ASTM D 2487 soil classification groups CH, OL, OH, and PT, or a combination of these group symbols.
1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
- E. Backfill and Fill: Satisfactory soil materials.
- F. Subbase: At least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2 inch passing a No. 200 sieve.
- G. Base: ASTM D2940; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2 inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- H. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

- I. Bedding: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- J. Drainage Fill: Washed, narrowly graded mixture of crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2- inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.
- K. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.
- L. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored as follows:
- B. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, minimum 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored as follows:
  - 1. Red: Electric.
  - 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
  - 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
  - 4. Blue: Water systems.
  - 5. Green: Sewer systems.

## 3.0 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.
- B. Protect subgrades and foundation soils against freezing temperatures or frost. Provide protective insulating materials as necessary.
- C. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.
  - 1. Erosion control is the responsibility of the Contractor. Items shown on the Drawings are considered the minimum acceptable; however, as site conditions change, additional measures may be required to control sediment.

2. The Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Engineer, Owner's representatives, and their agents and employees from any claim from their work.

### 3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
  1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
  2. Install a dewatering system to keep subgrades dry and convey ground water away from excavations. Maintain until dewatering is no longer required.

### 3.3 EXPLOSIVES

- A. No explosives will be allowed.

### 3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. All excavation on this project is unclassified regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered, including rock, soil materials, and obstructions.
- B. Material encountered in grading operation that, in the opinion of the Geotechnical Engineer or Owner, is unsuitable or undesirable shall be as follows:
  1. The removal of unsuitable material will be directed by the Geotechnical Engineer or his field representative. All unsuitable material that is removed by the Contractor shall become the property of the Contractor and be disposed of off site or in a manner satisfactory to the Owner at no additional cost. All undercut shall be included in the Base Bid. See section 1.3 B. unit prices for quantity allowances.
  2. Back fill for these areas will be with material approved by the Geotechnical Engineer, with layers of acceptable material compacted to the requirements set forth in these specifications.
- C. Undercutting and replacement of unsuitable soils may be required to the underlying stiff soils. All undercut and replacement shall be handled in accordance with 1.3B Unit Prices above.

### 3.5 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 0.1 feet. Extend excavations a minimum of 10' in distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.

1. Refer to Section 1.3C above for quantity allowance information for the addition of lean concrete or dense graded aggregate within the proposed building foundation locations.
  2. Footing over-excavation exceeding 2 feet below the bottom of the footing shall be backfilled with lean concrete. Dense graded aggregate shall only be used when the over-excavation is less than 2 feet below the bottom of footing.
- B. Where unsuitable soils are encountered, the soils shall be completely removed to underlying stiff material per 1.3B Unit Prices above.

### 3.6 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENT

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated cross sections, elevations, and grades, to a distance of 8' beyond the edge of these walks and pavements.
- B. Where unsuitable soils are encountered, the soils shall be completely removed to underlying stiff material per 1.3B Unit Prices above.

### 3.7 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide a working clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Clearance: 12 inches on each side of pipe or conduit.
- C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.
1. For pipe sizes 30" and below, the "cut line" shall be 4" below the bottom of the pipe and material replaced with 4" No. 57 stone bedding unless otherwise noted.
  2. For pipe sizes larger than 30", the "cut line" shall be 6" below the bottom of the pipe and material replaced with 6" no. 57 stone bedding unless otherwise noted.

### 3.8 APPROVAL OF SUBGRADE

- A. Notify Architect when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. If Architect determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
- C. Proof roll subgrade with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof roll wet or saturated subgrades.

- D. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect.

### 3.9 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill may be used when approved by Architect.
  - 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction or utility pipe as directed by Architect.

### 3.10 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow materials and satisfactory excavated soil materials. Stockpile soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
  - 1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

### 3.11 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
  - 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, damp-proofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
  - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for record documents.
  - 3. Inspecting and testing underground utilities.
  - 4. Removing concrete formwork.
  - 5. Removing trash and debris.
  - 6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
  - 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.

### 3.12 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- B. Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings; fill with lean concrete to elevation of bottom of footings.
- C. Provide 4-inch-thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase.
- D. Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material, free of particles larger than 1 inch, to a height of 12 inches over the utility pipe or conduit.

1. Carefully compact material under pipe haunches and bring backfill evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of utility system.
- E. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- F. Fill voids with approved backfill materials while shoring and bracing, and as sheeting is removed.
- G. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil material to final subgrade.
- H. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.13 FILL

- A. Preparation: Remove vegetation, topsoil, debris, unsatisfactory soil materials, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface before placing fills.
- B. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- C. Off-site borrow materials may be used as fill within the building and pavement areas provided that their plasticity index (PI) less than 25. Material shall have a minimum dry density of 105 pcf.
- D. High plasticity (fat clays) soils should not be used as engineered fill.
- E. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
  1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
  2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
  3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
  4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
  5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.

### 3.14 MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
  1. Do not place backfill or fill material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
  2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air-dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

### 3.15 COMPACTION OF BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.



- B. Place backfill and fill materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure. Fill to extend 5' outside of the proposed building footprint.
- C. Compact soil to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 (standard proctor).
  - 1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and re-compact top 8 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material at 98 percent.
  - 2. Under walkways, scarify and re-compact top 8 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill material at 98 percent.
  - 3. Under lawn or unpaved areas, scarify and re-compact top 8 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill material at 98 percent.

### 3.16 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free from irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
  - 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
  - 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 0.17 ft.
  - 2. Walks: Plus or minus 0.10 ft.
  - 3. Pavements: Plus or minus 0.10 ft.
- C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 0.08 ft. when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

### 3.17 SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE

- A. Drainage Piping: Drainage pipe is specified in Division 2 Section "Foundation Drainage Systems."
- B. Subsurface Drain: Place a layer of drainage fabric around perimeter of drainage trench as indicated. Place a 6-inch course of filter material on drainage fabric to support drainage pipe. Encase drainage pipe in a minimum of 12 inches of filter material and wrap in drainage fabric, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
  - 1. Compact each course of filter material to 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
- C. Drainage Backfill: Place and compact filter material over subsurface drain, in width indicated, to within 12 inches of final subgrade. Overlay drainage backfill with one layer of drainage fabric, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.

1. Compact each course of filter material to 98 percent of maximum dry density according to ASTM D 698.
2. Place and compact impervious fill material over drainage backfill to final subgrade.

### 3.18 DRAINAGE COURSE

- A. Under slabs-on-grade, place drainage course on prepared subgrade and as follows:
1. Compact drainage course to required cross sections and thickness to not less than 98 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
  2. When compacted thickness of drainage course is 6 inches or less, place materials in a single layer.
  3. When compacted thickness of drainage course exceeds 6 inches, place materials in equal layers, with no layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick when compacted.

### 3.19 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.
- B. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earthwork only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- C. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.
- D. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 1000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab, but in no case fewer than three tests.
  2. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for each 100 feet or less of wall length, but no fewer than two tests.
  3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for each 150 feet or less of trench length, but no fewer than two tests.
- E. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

### 3.20 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.

- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
  - 1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
  - 1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to the greatest extent possible.

3.21 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 02300



1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Scope

The work under this section consists of all finish grading, topsoil, lawns, seeding and sodding.

1.2 Extent of Lawn Area

A. The Lawn Area to receive top soil shall include the building site to the extent that will cover all unpaved areas disturbed by this construction. Blend new Lawn Area into areas of the site which are not covered under this Section.

B. Sod as indicated. Seed and straw all remaining areas disturbed by construction.

1.3 Time for Planting

When other portions of the work have progressed sufficiently the contractor may begin work for lawns and planting including the placing of topsoil. Operations shall be conducted under favorable weather conditions during the seasons which are normal for such work. Planting seasons generally shall be October 1 to March 1 for trees and plant materials, and April 1 to July 1 for planting permanent lawns.

1.4 Inspection for Acceptance

A. Inspection of the work of lawns and planting to determine the degree of completion of contract work, will be made by the architect at the conclusion of planting operations. Inspection of the work for final acceptance will be made at the end of the maintenance period.

B. After final inspection the Contractor will be notified of acceptance of all lawn and/or planting work, or if there are any deficiencies, of the requirements for completion of the work.

1.5 Guarantee and Replacement

The lawn shall be guaranteed for the duration of one full growing season after planting. The lawn shall be alive and in satisfactory growth at the end of the guarantee period.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Materials

A. Fertilizer shall be 12-4-8 commercial fertilizer or equal and shall be uniform in composition, dry, and free-flowing. Fertilizer shall be delivered to the site in original unopened containers, each bearing the manufacturer's guaranteed analysis.

B. Lime shall be agricultural lime (Dolomite), or equal, containing not less than 85% of total carbonates, and shall be ground to such fineness that 50% will pass through a 100 mesh sieve and 90% will pass through a 20 mesh sieve.

C. Soil additive shall be 1/4" diameter or less pine bark mulch "Planting Mix".

D. Water used in this work shall be suitable for irrigation and free from ingredients harmful to plant life. Furnish hose and watering equipment as required.

2.2 Topsoil

Topsoil shall be a fertile, friable soil possessing physical and chemical characteristics typical of productive soils in the vicinity. Topsoil shall have an acidity range between pH 6.0 and pH 6.5 or shall be conditioned to fall within this range. Topsoil shall contain not less than 3%

organic matter as determined by loss on ignition of moisture-free samples dried at 100 degrees C. Topsoil shall be without admixture of subsoil and shall be clean and reasonably free from clay lumps, stones, stumps, roots or similar substances 2" or more in diameter, debris or other objects which might be a hindrance to planting operations or plant growth. A laboratory soils test to be provided by the contractor when requested.

2.3 Seed

- A. Seed for disturbed areas not indicated for sod shall be 100% hulled Bermuda or Fescue as per plans.
- B. Seed for temporary seeding shall be 100% Annual Rye Grass.
- C. At the contractor's option, areas to be seeded may be sprigged with approved Bermuda grass stolons at the rate of three (3) cubic yards per 1,000 sq. ft. of lawn. Spacing shall be maximum of 8" o.c. each way in rows.
- D. Seed shall meet the requirements of the Federal Seed Act. Seed mixtures shall be delivered in the original sealed packages bearing the producer's guaranteed analysis for percentages of mixture, purity germination, and weed seed content.

2.4 Sod

Sod shall be Tifton 419 Bermuda grass. Each piece of sod shall have a dense stand of the specified grass and shall be strongly rooted and free of pernicious weeds. It shall be mowed to a height not to exceed 3" before lifting and shall be of uniform thickness with not over 1-1/2" nor less than 1" of soil.

3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 Preparation of Subgrade

The subsoil shall be graded uniformly and lightly compacted so that it will be parallel to proposed finish grade. Stones over 2" in size, sticks and rubbish shall be removed. No heavy objects except lawn rollers shall be moved over the lawn areas after the subgrade has been prepared.

3.2 Finished Grading

After the subgrade soil has been prepared, 4" of topsoil shall be spread evenly and lightly compacted. Topsoil other than that stockpiled shall be provided under this Section. No topsoil shall be spread in a frozen or muddy condition. Commercial fertilizer and lime shall then be scarified with a tiller into the top 3" of topsoil at the rate of 10 lbs. per 1000 sq. ft.

- A. Areas to be seeded shall be brought to finished grade and smoothed.
- B. Areas to be sodded shall be brought to within the thickness of the sod of finish grade.
- C. Areas where the topsoil has not been removed shall be scarified, smoothed, and sticks, stones and rubbish shall be removed.

3.3 Sowing of Seed

Immediately before any seed is to be sown, the ground shall be scarified as necessary and shall be raked until the surface is smooth, friable and of uniformly fine texture. Lawn areas shall be seeded evenly with a mechanical spreader at the rate of 5 lbs. of grass seed per 1000 sq. ft. of area, lightly raked and watered with a fine spray so as not to create runoff until thoroughly soaked. Fifty percent of the seed shall be sown in one direction, and the remainder at right angles to the first sowing. The method of seeding may be varied at the discretion of the contractor on his own responsibility to establish a smooth uniform turf.

3.4 Laying of Sod

Except as noted, the contractor shall lay sod in all lawn areas having a slope of 3 to 1 or steeper; a 6' diameter circle of sod around all lawn drain inlets; and where shown on the Drawings. Before any sod is laid, all soft spots and inequalities in grade shall be corrected. Sod shall be laid so that no voids occur and tamped or rolled. Topsoil shall be brushed or raked over the sodded area, rolled with 200# roller and the sod thoroughly watered.

- A. Sod on slopes 3 to 1 or steeper shall be held in place by wooden pegs driven through the sod into the soil until they are flush with the top of the sod.
- B. Strip or spot sod shall be placed so that the surface of the compacted sod will be slightly below the surrounding surface soil.

3.5 Temporary Seeding

Temporary seeding shall be promptly provided should the project be completed at a time when permanent grass cannot be planted. Seeding shall be seeded at the rate of 5 lbs. to 1000 sq. ft. of area. The contractor shall be responsible for erosional damage during the period of temporary planting. The specified fertilizer shall not be used for the Rye Grass planting. Prior to planting permanent lawn, the lawn bed shall be prepared as specified, and the Rye Grass growth shall be scarified in such a manner as to incorporate it into the soil. Should the temporary lawn be planted, it shall be maintained by occasional mowing and necessary repairs to all eroded areas until the beginning of the specified season for constructing permanent lawns.

3.6 Mulching of Seeded Areas

All seeded or sprigged areas having a slope of 4 to 1 or greater shall be mulched with a spray mulch of an approved latex-type material. Other areas may be mulched with wheat straw at the contractor's option. Spray mulch of a latex-type material shall be applied by hydroject method at the rate of 75 gals. of concentrate mixed in 1000 gals. of water per acre (23 gals. per 1000 sq. ft.).

3.7 Clean-Up

Any soil, mulch or similar material which has been brought onto paved areas by hauling operations or otherwise shall be removed promptly keeping these areas clean at all times. Upon completion of the planting, all excess soil, stones and debris which has not previously been cleaned up shall be removed from the site or disposed of as directed.

3.8 Lawn Maintenance

Lawn shall be protected and maintained by watering, mowing and replanting as necessary for at least 30 days after approximately 60% germination is evident.

END OF SECTION





1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. All water mains shall be in strict accordance with Birmingham Water Works requirements.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes water-distribution piping and specialties outside the building for the following:
  - 1. Water services.
- B. Utility-furnished products include water meters that will be furnished to the site, ready for installation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Water-Distribution Piping: Interior domestic-water piping.
- B. Water Service: Exterior domestic-water piping.
- C. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
  - 1. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Piping specialties.
  - 2. Valves and accessories.
  - 3. Water meters and accessories.
  - 4. Backflow preventers and assemblies.
  - 5. Protective enclosures.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
  - 1. Precast concrete vaults, including frames and covers, ladders and drains.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal and control wiring.
- C. Coordination Drawings: For piping and specialties including relation to other services in same area. Show piping and specialty sizes and valves, meter and specialty locations, and elevations.
- D. Field Quality-Control Test Reports: From Contractor.

- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 1 include the following:
  - 1. Water meters.
  - 2. Valves.
  - 3. Backflow preventers.
  - 4. Protective enclosures.
- F. Record drawings: At project close-out of installed water service piping according to Division 1.
- G. Purging and disinfecting reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of piping and specialties and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Requirements." Other manufacturers' products with equal performance characteristics may be considered. Refer to Division 1 Section "Substitutions".
- B. Regulatory Requirements:
  - 1. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.
  - 2. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for potable water service piping, including materials, installation, testing and disinfection
  - 3. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire suppression water-service piping, including materials, hose threads, installation and testing.
- C. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- E. Comply with ASTM F 645 for selection, design, and installation of thermoplastic water piping.
- F. Comply with FM's "Approval Guide" or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for fire-service-main products.
- G. NSF Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic potable-water-service piping.
  - 2. Comply with NSF 61 for materials for water-service piping and specialties for domestic water.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Preparation for Transport: Prepare valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:

1. Ensure that valves are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
  2. Protect valves against damage to threaded ends and flange faces.
  3. Set valves in best position for handling. Set valves closed to prevent rattling.
- B. During Storage: Use precautions for valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:
1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.
  2. Protect from weather. Store indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew-point temperature. Support off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when outdoor storage is necessary.
- C. Handling: Use sling to handle valves and fire hydrants if size requires handling by crane or lift. Rig valves to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.
- D. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- E. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.
- F. Protect flanges, fittings, and specialties from moisture and dirt.
- G. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support piping to prevent sagging and bending.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
- B. Perform site survey, research public utility records and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for the area where project is located.
- C. Verify that water-service piping may be installed to comply with original design and reference standards.
- D. Site information: Reports on subsurface condition investigations made during design of project are available for informational purposes only; data in reports are not intended as representations or warranties of accuracy or continuity of conditions between soil borings. Owner assumes no responsibility for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this information.

1.8. COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate connection to water main with utility company.
- B. Coordinate piping materials, sizes, entry locations and pressure requirements with building distribution & fire protection piping.
- C. Coordinate with other utility work.
- D. Coordinate electrical wiring for tamper switches, vault heaters, and sump pumps.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.

2.2 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint, bell- and plain-spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
  - 1. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
    - a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

2.3 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC, Schedule 40 Pipe: ASTM D 1785.
  - 1. PVC, Schedule 40 Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2466.
- B. PVC, AWWA Pipe: AWWA C900, Class 200, with bell end with gasket and spigot end.
  - 1. Comply with UL 1285 for fire-service mains if indicated.
  - 2. PVC Fabricated Fittings: AWWA C900, Class 200, with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.
  - 3. PVC Molded Fittings: AWWA C907, Class 150, with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.
  - 4. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
    - a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
  - 5. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
    - a. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

## 2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Division 2 Section "Utility Materials" for commonly used joining materials.
- B. Transition Couplings:
  - 1. Underground Piping, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Manufactured fitting or coupling same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
  - 2. Underground Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: AWWA C219, metal, sleeve-type coupling same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
  - 3. Aboveground or Vault Piping: Pipe fitting same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
- C. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Nonferrous-Metal Piping: Bronze hose covered with bronze wire braid; with copper-tube, pressure-type, solder-joint ends or bronze flanged ends brazed to hose.
  - 2. Ferrous Piping: Stainless-steel hose covered with stainless-steel wire braid; with ASME B1.20.1, threaded steel pipe nipples or ASME B16.5, steel pipe flanges welded to hose.
- B. Dielectric Fittings: Combination of copper alloy and ferrous; threaded, solder, or plain end types; and matching piping system materials.
  - 1. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated union assembly, designed for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C). Include insulating material that isolates dissimilar metals and ends with inside threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
  - 2. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure to suit system pressures.
  - 3. Dielectric-Flange Insulation Kits: Field-assembled companion-flange assembly, full-face or ring type. Components include neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
    - a. Provide separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure to suit system pressures.
  - 4. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel couplings with inert and noncorrosive thermoplastic lining, with threaded ends and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
  - 5. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipples with inert and noncorrosive thermoplastic lining, with combination of plain, threaded, or grooved end types and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).

## 2.6 GATE VALVES

- A. AWWA, Cast-Iron Gate Valves:
  - 1. Nonrising-Stem, Metal-Seated Gate Valves: AWWA C500, gray- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with cast-iron or bronze double-disc gate, bronze gate rings, bronze stem, and stem nut.
    - a. Minimum Working Pressure: 200 psig.
    - b. End Connections: Mechanical joint.
    - c. Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.

## 2.7 GATE VALVE ACCESSORIES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Tapping-Sleeve Assemblies: Comply with MSS SP-60. Include sleeve and valve compatible with drilling machine.
  - 1. Tapping Sleeve: Cast- or ductile-iron or stainless steel, two-piece bolted sleeve with flanged outlet for new branch connection. Include sleeve matching size and type of pipe material being tapped and with recessed flange for branch valve.
  - 2. Valve: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, metal or resilient-seated gate valve with one raised face flange mating tapping-sleeve flange.
- B. Valve Boxes: Comply with AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve boxes. Include top section, adjustable extension of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," bottom section with base of size to fit over valve, and approximately 5-inch- diameter barrel.
  - 1. Operating Wrenches: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and socket matching valve operating nut.
- C. Indicator Posts: UL 789, FM-approved, vertical-type, cast-iron body with operating wrench, extension rod, and adjustable cast-iron barrel of length required for depth of burial of valve.
- D. Indicator Posts: UL 789, FM-approved, horizontal, wall-type, cast-iron body with operating wrench, extension rod, and cast-iron barrel.

## 2.8 CHECK VALVES

- A. AWWA Check Valves:
  - 1. Check Valves: AWWA C508, swing-check type with 175-psig working-pressure rating and resilient seat. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550 and ends to match piping.
- B. UL-Labeled Check Valves:
  - 1. Check Valves: UL 312, swing-check type with 250-psig working-pressure rating, rubber-faced checks unless otherwise indicated, and ends matching piping.

## 2.9 DETECTOR CHECK VALVES

- A. Detector Check Valves: UL 312, galvanized cast-iron body, bolted cover with air-bleed device for access to internal parts, and flanged ends; designed for 175-psig working pressure. Include one-piece bronze disc with bronze bushings, pivot, and replaceable seat. Include threaded bypass taps in inlet and outlet for bypass meter connection. Set valve to allow minimal water flow through bypass meter when major water flow is required.
  - 1. Water Meter: AWWA C700, disc type, at least one-fourth size of detector check valve. Include meter, bypass piping, gate valves, check valve, and connections to detector check valve.
- B. Detector Check Valves: UL 312, FM-approved detector check, iron body, corrosion-resistant clapper ring and seat ring material, 175-psig (1207-kPa) working pressure, flanged ends, with connections for bypass and installation of water meter.

## 2.10 WATER METERS

- A. Water meters will be furnished by the Birmingham Water Works and Sewer Board.

## 2.11 WATER-METER BOXES

- A. Description: Cast-iron body and cover for disc-type water meter with lettering "WATER METER" in cover; and slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping.
  - 1. Option: Base section may be cast-iron, PVC, clay, or other pipe.
- B. Description: Cast-iron body and double cover for disc-type water meter with lettering "WATER METER" in top cover; separate inner cover; air space between covers; and slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping.
- C. Description: Polymer-concrete body and cover for disc-type water meter with lettering "WATER" in cover; and slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping. Include vertical and lateral design loadings of 15,000 lb minimum over 10 by 10 inches square.

## 2.12 HOSE-CONNECTION, BACKFLOW-PREVENTION DEVICES

- A. General: ASSE standard, nonremovable-type, backflow-prevention devices with ASME B1.20.7, garden-hose threads on outlet.
- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011, nickel plated, with manual drain feature. Units attached to rough-bronze-finish hose connections may be rough bronze.
- C. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1052, suitable for at least 3m flow and applications with up to 10-foot head of water back pressure. Include two check valves and intermediate atmospheric vent.

## 2.13 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. General: ASSE standard, backflow preventers.

1. Working Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.
  3. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Bronze, cast-iron, steel, or stainless-steel body with flanged ends.
    - a. Interior Lining: AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, epoxy coating for backflow preventers having cast-iron or steel body.
  4. Interior Components: Corrosion-resistant materials.
  5. Exterior Finish: Polished chrome plate if used in chrome-plated piping system.
  6. Strainer: On inlet, if indicated.
- B. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001, with floating disc and atmospheric vent.
- C. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1013 or AWWA C511, suitable for continuous pressure application. Include outside screw and yoke gate valves on inlet and outlet, and strainer on inlet; test cocks; and pressure-differential relief valve with ASME A112.1.2, air-gap fitting located between two positive-seating check valves.
1. Maximum Pressure Loss: 12 psig through middle 1/3 of flow range.
- D. Double-Check-Valve Backflow Prevention Assemblies: ASSE 1015 or AWWA C510, suitable for continuous pressure application. Include outside screw and yoke gate valves on inlet and outlet, and strainer on inlet; test cocks; and two positive-seating check valves.
1. Maximum Pressure Loss: 5 psig through middle 1/3 of flow range.
- E. Double-Check-Valve Backflow Prevention Assemblies: UL 312, FM approved; with two UL 312, FM-approved, iron-body, 175-psig working-pressure, flanged-end check valves and two UL 262, FM-approved, iron-body, outside screw and yoke, flanged, 175-psig working-pressure gate valves.
1. Maximum Pressure Loss: 5 psig through middle 1/3 of flow range.
- F. Double-Check-Detector Assembly Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1048, FM approved or UL listed, and suitable for continuous pressure application. Include outside screw and yoke gate valves on inlet and outlet, and strainer on inlet. Include test cocks; two positive-seating check valves; and bypass with displacement-type water meter, valves, and double-check backflow preventer.
1. Maximum Pressure Loss: 5 psig through middle 1/3 of flow range.

#### 2.14 CONCRETE VAULTS

- A. Description: Precast, reinforced-concrete vault, designed for A-16 load designation according to ASTM C 857 and made according to ASTM C 858.
- B. Ladder: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel or polyethylene-encased steel steps.



- C. Manhole: ASTM A 48, Class No. 35 (ASTM A 48M, Class No. 250) minimum tensile strength, gray-iron traffic frame and cover.
  - 1. Dimensions: Not smaller than 24-inch diameter, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Drain: ASME A112.21.1M, cast-iron floor drain with outlet of size indicated. Include body anchor flange, light-duty cast-iron grate, bottom outlet, and integral or field-installed bronze ball or clapper-type backwater valve.

## 2.15 PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURES

- A. Protective Enclosures, General: ASSE 1060, outdoor weather-resistant enclosure designed to protect aboveground water piping equipment or specialties from vandalism. Include size and dimensions indicated but not less than those required for access and service of protected unit.
- B. Freeze-Protection Enclosures: Insulated and with heat source to maintain minimum internal temperature of 40 deg F (4 deg C) when external temperatures reach as low as minus 34 deg F (minus 36 deg C).
  - 1. Class I: For equipment or devices other than pressure or atmospheric vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Class I-V: For pressure or atmospheric vacuum breaker equipment or devices. Include drain opening in housing.
    - a. Housing: Reinforced-aluminum or fiberglass construction.
      - 1) Drain opening for units with drain connection.
      - 2) Access doors with locking devices.
      - 3) Insulation inside housing.
      - 4) Anchoring devices for attaching housing to concrete base.
    - b. Electric heating cable or heater with self-limiting temperature control.
- C. Precast concrete base of dimensions required to extend at least 6 inches beyond edges of enclosure housings. Include openings for piping.

## 2.16 FIRE HYDRANTS

- A. All fire hydrants shall be in accordance with the specifications and standards of the Pleasant Grove Fire Department and the Birmingham Water Works and Sewer Board.

## 3.0 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Refer to Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### 3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. General: Use pipe, fittings, and joining methods for piping systems according to the following applications.

- B. Transition couplings and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Do not use flanges, unions, or keyed couplings for underground piping.
- D. Flanges, unions, keyed couplings, and special fittings may be used, instead of joints indicated, on aboveground piping and piping in vaults.
- E. Underground Water-Service Piping: Use any of the following piping materials for each size range:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 to NPS 3-1/2: PVC, Schedule 40 pipe and fittings
  - 2. NPS 4 to NPS 8: Ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed or joints or PVC, C900, Class 200 pipe and fittings.

### 3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. General Application: Use mechanical-joint-end valves for NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger underground installation. Use threaded- or flanged-end valves for installation in vaults. Use UL/FM, nonrising-stem gate valves for installation with indicator posts. Use corporation valves and curb valves with ends compatible with piping, for NPS 2 and smaller installation.
- B. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
  - 1. Underground Valves, NPS 3 and Larger: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, high-pressure, resilient seated gate valves with valve box.
  - 2. Underground Valves, NPS 4 and Larger, for Indicator Posts: UL/FM, cast-iron, nonrising-stem gate valves with indicator post.
  - 3. Use the following for valves in vaults and aboveground:
    - a. Gate Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze, nonrising-stem.
    - b. Gate Valves, NPS 3 and Larger: UL/FM, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem.
    - c. Check Valves: AWWA C508, swing-check valves.
  - 4. Detector Check Valves: Use for water-service piping in vaults and aboveground to detect unauthorized use of water.

### 3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. See Division 2 Section "Utility Materials" for basic piping joint construction.
- B. Make pipe joints according to the following:
  - 1. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Water-Service Piping: AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
  - 2. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Fire-Service-Main Piping: UL 194.
  - 3. Ductile-Iron Piping, Grooved Joints: Cut-groove pipe. Assemble joints with keyed couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling manufacturer's written instructions.

4. Copper Tubing Soldered Joints: ASTM B 828. Use flushable flux and lead-free solder.
5. PVC Piping Gasketed Joints: Use joining materials according to AWWA C900. Construct joints with elastomeric seals and lubricant according to ASTM D 2774 or ASTM D 3139 and pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Dissimilar Materials Piping Joints: Use adapters compatible with both piping materials, with OD, and with system working pressure. Refer to Division 2 Section "Utility Materials" for joining piping of dissimilar metals.

### 3.5 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Water-Main Connection: Arrange with utility company for tap of size and in location indicated in water main.
- B. Make connections larger than NPS 2 with tapping machine according to the following:
  1. Install tapping sleeve and tapping valve according to MSS SP-60.
  2. Install tapping sleeve on pipe to be tapped. Position flanged outlet for gate valve.
  3. Use tapping machine compatible with valve and tapping sleeve; cut hole in main. Remove tapping machine and connect water-service piping.
  4. Install gate valve onto tapping sleeve. Comply with MSS SP-60. Install valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- C. Make connections NPS 2 and smaller with drilling machine according to the following:
  1. Install service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves in size, quantity, and arrangement required by utility company standards.
  2. Install service-saddle assemblies on water-service pipe to be tapped. Position outlets for corporation valves.
  3. Use drilling machine compatible with service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves. Drill hole in main. Remove drilling machine and connect water-service piping.
  4. Install corporation valves into service-saddle assemblies.
  5. Install manifold for multiple taps in water main.
  6. Install curb valve in water-service piping with head pointing up and with service box.
- D. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
  1. Install PE corrosion-protection encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- E. Install PVC, AWWA pipe according to AWWA M23 and ASTM F 645.
- F. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 30 inches, with top at least 12 inches below level of maximum frost penetration, and according to the following:
  1. Under Driveways: With at least 36 inches cover over top.
  2. Under Railroad Tracks: With at least 48 inches cover over top.
  3. In Loose Gravelly Soil and Rock: With at least 12 inches additional cover.

- G. Extend water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building water piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
  - 1. Terminate water-service piping at building wall until building water piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building water piping systems when those systems are installed.
- H. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.
- I. Anchor service-entry piping to building wall.
- J. See Division 15 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for potable-water piping inside the building.

### 3.6 ANCHORAGE INSTALLATION

- A. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches. Include anchorages for the following piping systems:
  - 1. Gasketed-Joint, Ductile-Iron, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA C600.
  - 2. Gasketed-Joint, PVC Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA M23.
  - 3. Fire-Service-Main Piping: According to NFPA 24.
- B. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

### 3.7 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install each underground valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- B. UL/FM Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24. Install each underground valve and valves in vaults with stem pointing up and with vertical cast-iron indicator post.
- C. Detector Check Valves: Install in vault or aboveground.

### 3.8 DETECTOR CHECK VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install detector check valves for proper direction of flow. Install bypass with water meter, gate valves on each side of meter, and check valve downstream from meter.
- B. Support detector check valves, meters, shutoff valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.

### 3.9 WATER-METER INSTALLATION

- A. Install water meters, piping, and specialties according to utility company's written requirements.

3.10 ROUGHING-IN FOR WATER METERS

- A. Rough-in piping and specialties for water-meter installation according to utility company's written instructions and requirements.

3.11 BACKFLOW-PREVENTER INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Do not install backflow preventers with relief drain in vault or other space subject to flooding.
- C. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- D. Support NPS 2-1/2 and larger backflow preventers, valves, and piping near floor and on brick or concrete piers.

3.12 VAULT INSTALLATION

- A. See Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete vaults.
- B. Install precast concrete vaults according to ASTM C 891.
- C. Connect drain outlet to storm drainage piping. Refer to Division 2 Section "Storm Drainage."

3.13 PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURE INSTALLATION

- A. Install concrete base level and with top approximately 2 inches above grade.
- B. Install protective enclosure over valves and equipment.
- C. Anchor protective enclosure to concrete base.

3.14 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 2 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- B. See Division 2 Section "Utility Materials" for piping connections to valves and equipment.
- C. Connect water-distribution piping to existing water main. Use tapping sleeve and tapping valve.
- D. Connect water-distribution piping to post hydrants and drinking fountains.
- E. Connect water-distribution piping to interior domestic-water and fire-suppression piping.
- F. Connect waste piping from drinking fountains to sanitary sewerage system. See Division 2 Section "Sanitary Sewerage" for connection to sanitary-sewer.
- G. Ground equipment according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."

- H. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

### 3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.
- B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than 1-1/2 times working pressure for 2 hours.
  - 1. Increase pressure in 50-psig increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for 1 hour; decrease to 0 psig. Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for 1 more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is 2 quarts per hour per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within allowed limits.
- C. Prepare reports of testing activities.

### 3.16 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install continuous underground detectable warning tape during backfilling of trench for underground water-service piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping. See Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for underground warning tapes.
- B. Permanently attach equipment nameplate or marker, indicating plastic water-service piping, on main electrical meter panel. See Division 2 Section "Utility Materials" for identifying devices.

### 3.17 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect water-distribution piping as follows:
  - 1. Purge new water-distribution piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
  - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in NFPA 24 for flushing of piping. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at points of outlet.
  - 3. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in AWWA C651 or as described below:
    - a. Fill system or part of system with water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 24 hours.
    - b. Drain system or part of system of previous solution and refill with water/chlorine solution containing at least 200 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 3 hours.

- c. After standing time, flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from system.
- d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedure if biological examination shows evidence of contamination.

B. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION 02510





## SECTION 02530 - SANITARY SEWERAGE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. All sanitary sewerage shall be in strict accordance with the Jefferson County Health Department.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes sanitary sewerage outside the building.
- B. Related Sections include the following"
  - 1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete structures.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure-Piping Pressure Ratings: At least equal to system test pressure.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, details, and attachments for the following:
  - 1. Precast concrete manholes, including frames and covers.
- B. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret results for compliance with performance requirements.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- B. Handle precast concrete manholes and other structures according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Site Information: Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations.
- B. Locate existing structures and piping to be closed and abandoned.

- C. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe and fitting, materials.

### 2.2 PIPES AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Pipe: Schedule 40 Pipe: ASTM D 1785.

### 2.3 CONCRETE

- A. Structure Channels and Benches: Factory or field formed from concrete. Portland cement design mix, 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio. Include channels and benches in manholes.
  - 1. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.
    - a. Invert Slope: 2 percent through manhole.

### 2.4 CLEANOUTS

- A. Gray-Iron Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M, round, gray-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover. Include gray-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug. Use units with top-loading classifications according to the following applications:
  - 1. Light Duty: In earth or grass foot-traffic areas.
  - 2. Medium Duty: In paved foot-traffic areas.
  - 3. Heavy Duty: In vehicle-traffic areas.
  - 4. Extra-Heavy Duty: In roads.
  - 5. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
- B. PVC Cleanouts: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork."

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork." Arrange for installing green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground structures.
  - 1. Use warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
  - 2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

### 3.3 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. General: Include watertight joints.
- B. Refer to Part 2 of this Section for detailed specification for pipe and fitting products listed below. Use pipe, fittings, and joining methods according to applications indicated.
- C. Gravity-Flow Piping: Use the following:
  - 1. Ductile-iron sewer pipe; standard- or compact-pattern, ductile-iron fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.

### 3.4 SPECIAL PIPE COUPLING AND FITTING APPLICATIONS

- A. Special Pipe Couplings: Use where required to join piping and no other appropriate method is specified. Do not use instead of specified joining methods.
  - 1. Use the following pipe couplings for nonpressure applications:
    - a. Sleeve type to join piping, of same size, or with small difference in OD.
    - b. Increaser/reducer-pattern, sleeve type to join piping of different sizes.
    - c. Bushing type to join piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewerage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written

instructions for using lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab or drag in line, and pull past each joint as it is completed.

- C. Use proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- D. Install gravity-flow piping and connect to building's sanitary drains, of sizes and in locations indicated. Terminate piping as indicated.
  - 1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum slope of 2 percent, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Install piping with 36-in minimum cover.
- E. Extend sanitary sewerage piping and connect to building's sanitary drains, of sizes and in locations indicated. Terminate piping as indicated.

### 3.6 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION AND INSTALLATION

- A. General: Join and install pipe and fittings according to installations indicated
- B. Refer to Division 2 Section "Utility Materials" for basic piping joint construction and installation.

### 3.7 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extension from sewer pipe to cleanout at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts and cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place-concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep. Set with tops 1 inch Insert other above surrounding grade.
- C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement with tops flush with pavement surface.

### 3.8 TAP CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to existing piping and underground structures so finished Work strictly complies with local requirements.
- B. Protect existing piping and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

### 3.9 CLOSING ABANDONED SANITARY SEWERAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:
  - 1. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch- Insert other thick, brick masonry bulkheads.

2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.
- B. Abandoned Manholes: Excavate around manhole as required and use either procedure below:
1. Remove manhole and close open ends of remaining piping.
  2. Remove top of manhole down to at least 36 inches below final grade. Fill to within 12 inches of top with stone, rubble, gravel, or compacted dirt. Fill to top with concrete.
  3. Backfill to grade according to Division 2 Section "Earthwork."

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Clear interior of piping and structures of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping, and pull past each joint as it is completed.
- B. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches (600 mm) of backfills is in place, and again at completion of project.
- C. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
  2. Test completed piping systems according to authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
  4. Submit separate report for each test.
  5. If authorities having jurisdiction do not have published procedures, perform tests as follows:
    - a. Sanitary Sewerage: Perform hydrostatic test.
      - 1) Allowable leakage is maximum of 50 gal. per inch of nominal pipe size per mile of pipe, during 24-hour period.
      - 2) Close openings in system and fill with water.
      - 3) Purge air and refill with water.
      - 4) Disconnect water supply.
      - 5) Test and inspect joints for leaks.
      - 6) Option: Test ductile-iron piping according to AWWA C600, "Hydrostatic Testing". Use test pressure of at least 10 psig (69 kPa)
    - b. Sanitary Sewerage: Perform air test according to UNI-B-6.
      - 1) Ductile-Iron Piping: Test according to AWWA C600, Section "Hydraulic Testing."
  6. Manholes: Perform hydraulic test according to ASTM C 969.
  7. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

8. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

END OF SECTION 02530

1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes storm drainage outside the building.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. HDPE: High Density Polyethylene plastic.
- B. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- C. RCP: Reinforced concrete pipe.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure-Piping Pressure Ratings: At least equal to system test pressure.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, details, and attachments for the following:
  - 1. Precast concrete manholes and other structures, including frames, covers, and grates.
  - 2. Cast-in-place concrete manholes and other structures, including frames, covers, and grates.
- B. Design Mix Reports and Calculations: For each class of cast-in-place concrete.
- C. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic structures, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle precast concrete manholes and other structures according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Site Information: Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations.
- B. Locate existing structures and piping to be closed and abandoned.

- C. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.

## 2.0 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe and fitting materials.

### 2.2 PIPES AND FITTINGS

- A. Corrugated PE Pipe and Fittings: AASHTO M 294, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.
  - 1. Soil-tight Couplings: AASHTO M 294, corrugated, matching pipe and fittings to form soil-tight joints.
  - 2. Silt-tight Couplings: PE sleeve with ASTM D 1056, Type 2, Class A, Grade 2 gasket material that mates with pipe and fittings to form silt-tight joints.
- B. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings: According to the following:
  - 1. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 15 and Smaller: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, for solvent-cemented or gasketed joints.
    - a. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
- C. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 76, Class III, Wall B, (unless otherwise indicated) for gasketed joints.
  - 1. Gaskets: ASTM C 443, rubber.

### 2.3 SPECIAL PIPE COUPLINGS AND FITTINGS

- A. Sleeve-Type Pipe Couplings: ASTM C 1173, rubber or elastomeric sleeve and band assembly fabricated to mate with OD of pipes to be joined, for non-pressure joints.
  - 1. Sleeve Material for Concrete Pipe: ASTM C 443, rubber.
  - 2. Sleeve Material for Plastic Pipe: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal.
  - 3. Sleeve Material for Dissimilar Pipe: Compatible with pipe materials being joined.
  - 4. Bands: Stainless steel, at least one at each pipe insert.
- B. Bushing-Type Pipe Couplings: ASTM C 1173, rubber or elastomeric bushing fabricated to mate with OD of smaller pipe and ID of adjoining larger pipe, for non-pressure joints.



1. Material for Concrete Pipe: ASTM C 443, rubber.
2. Material for Plastic Pipe: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal.
3. Material for Dissimilar Pipe: Compatible with pipe materials being joined.

## 2.4 MANHOLES

- A. Normal-Traffic Precast Concrete Manholes: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for rubber gasketed joints.
  1. Diameter: 48 inches I.D. 5' depth, 60" I.D. > 5' depth, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section, as required to prevent flotation.
  3. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section and having separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
  4. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
  5. Top Section: Concentric-cone type, unless eccentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
  6. Gaskets: ASTM C 443 rubber.
  7. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch total thickness, that match 24-inch-diameter frame and cover. Final height adjustment can be made with courses of brick totaling no more than 16 inches.
  8. Steps: ASTM C 478, individual steps or ladder. Omit steps for manholes less than 48 inches deep.
  9. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.
- B. Heavy-Traffic Precast Concrete Manholes: ASTM C 913; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16, heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated, with provision for rubber gasketed joints.
  1. Ballast: Increase thickness of one or more precast concrete sections or add concrete to structure, as required to prevent flotation.
  2. Gaskets: Rubber.
  3. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch total thickness, that match 24-inch-diameter frame and cover.
  4. Steps: ASTM C 478, individual steps or ladder. Omit steps for manholes less than 48 inches deep.
  5. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.
- C. Cast-in-Place Concrete Manholes: Construct of reinforced-concrete bottom, walls, and top; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16, heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, dimensions, and appurtenances indicated.
  1. Ballast: Increase thickness of concrete, as required to prevent flotation.
  2. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch total thickness, that match 24-inch-diameter frame and cover.
  3. Steps: ASTM C 478, individual steps or ladder. Omit steps for manholes less than 48 inches deep.

- D. Manhole Frames and Covers: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile-iron castings designed for heavy-duty service. Include 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch minimum width flange, and 26-inch- diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering "STORM SEWER" cast into cover.

## 2.5 CATCH BASINS

- A. Normal-Traffic, Precast Concrete Catch Basins: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for rubber gasketed joints.
1. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section and having separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
  2. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, 48-inch diameter, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
  3. Top Section: Concentric-cone type, unless eccentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
  4. Gaskets: ASTM C 443, rubber.
  5. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch total thickness, that match 24-inch diameter frame and grate.
  6. Steps: ASTM C 478 individual steps or ladder. Omit steps for catch basins less than 48 inches deep.
  7. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.
- B. Heavy-Traffic, Precast Concrete Catch Basins: ASTM C 913, precast, reinforced concrete; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16, heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated, with provision for rubber gasketed joints.
1. Gaskets: Rubber.
  2. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch total thickness, that match 24-inch diameter frame and grate.
  3. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.
  4. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.
- C. Cast-in-Place Concrete, Catch Basins: Construct of reinforced concrete; designed according to ASTM C 890 for structural loading; of depth, shape, dimensions, and appurtenances indicated.
1. Bottom, Walls, and Top: Reinforced concrete.
  2. Channels and Benches: Concrete.
  3. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.
- D. Frames and Grates: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for heavy-duty service. Include flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.
1. Size: 24 by 24 inches minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Frames and Grates: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for heavy-duty service. Include 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch minimum

width flange, and 26-inch diameter flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.

1. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318, ACI 350R, and the following:

1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
4. Water: Potable.

- B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water-cementitious ratio.

1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed steel.

- C. Structure Channels and Benches: Factory or field formed from concrete. Portland cement design mix, 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water-cementitious ratio.

1. Include channels and benches in manholes.

- a. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.

- 1) Invert Slope: 2 percent through manhole.

- b. Benches: Concrete, sloped to drain into channel.

- 1) Slope: 4 percent.

2. Include channels in catch basins.

- a. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.

- 1) Invert Slope: 2 percent through catch basin.

- D. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi minimum, with 0.58 maximum water-cementitious ratio.

1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed steel.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork."

#### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork." Arrange for installing green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground structures.
  - 1. Use or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
  - 2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

#### 3.3 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. General: Include watertight, silt-tight, or soil-tight joints, unless watertight or silt-tight joints are indicated.
- B. Refer to Part 2 of this Section for detailed specifications for pipe and fitting products listed below. Use pipe, fittings, and joining methods according to applications indicated.
- C. Gravity-Flow Piping: As indicated on the drawings.

#### 3.4 SPECIAL PIPE COUPLING AND FITTING APPLICATIONS

- A. Special Pipe Couplings: Use where required to join piping and no other appropriate method is specified. Do not use instead of specified joining methods.
  - 1. Use the following pipe couplings for non-pressure applications:
    - a. Sleeve type to join piping, of same size, or with small difference in OD.
    - b. Increaser/reducer-pattern, sleeve type to join piping of different sizes.
    - c. Bushing type to join piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.

#### 3.5 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab or drag in line and pull past each joint as it is completed.

- C. Use manholes for changes in direction, unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections, unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
- D. Use proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- E. Install gravity-flow piping and connect to building's storm drains, of sizes and in locations indicated. Terminate piping as indicated.
  - 1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum slope of 1 percent, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Install piping with 36-inch minimum cover, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Extend storm drainage piping and connect to building's storm drains, of sizes and in locations indicated. Terminate piping as indicated.

### 3.6 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION AND INSTALLATION

- A. General: Join and install pipe and fittings according to installations indicated.
- B. Install with top surfaces of components, except piping, flush with finished surface.
- C. PE Pipe and Fittings: As follows:
  - 1. Join pipe, tubing, and fittings with couplings for soil-tight joints according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Install according to ASTM D 2321 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Install corrugated piping according to the Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe Association's "Recommended Installation Practices for Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings."
- D. PVC Pressure Pipe and Fittings: Join and install according to AWWA M23.
- E. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings: As follows:
  - 1. Join pipe and gasketed fittings with gaskets according to ASTM D 2321.
  - 2. Install according to ASTM D 2321.
- F. Concrete Pipe and Fittings: Install according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual." Use the following seals:
  - 1. Round Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 443, rubber gaskets.
  - 2. Arch Pipe: ASTM C 877, Type I, sealing bands.
- G. System Piping Joints: Make joints using system manufacturer's couplings, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Join piping made of different materials or dimensions with couplings made for this application. Use couplings that are compatible with and that fit both systems' materials and dimensions.

### 3.7 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install manholes, complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
- B. Form continuous concrete channels and benches between inlets and outlet.
- C. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finished surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install precast concrete manhole sections with gaskets according to ASTM C 891.
- E. Construct cast-in-place manholes as indicated.

### 3.8 CATCH-BASIN INSTALLATION

- A. Construct catch basins to sizes and shapes indicated.
- B. Set frames and grates to elevations indicated.

### 3.9 STORM DRAINAGE INLET AND OUTLET INSTALLATION

- A. Construct inlet head walls, aprons, and sides of reinforced concrete, as indicated.
- B. Construct riprap of broken stone, as indicated.
- C. Install outlets that spill onto grade, anchored with concrete, where indicated.
- D. Install outlets that spill onto grade, with flared end sections that match pipe, where indicated.
- E. Construct energy dissipators at outlets, as indicated.

### 3.10 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318 and ACI 350R.

### 3.11 TAP CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to existing piping and underground structures so finished Work complies as nearly as practical with requirements specified for new Work.
- B. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
- C. Make branch connections from side into existing piping. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
- D. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 18 or larger, or to underground structures by cutting opening into existing unit large enough to allow 3 inches of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of

connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall, unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe or structure wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.

1. Use concrete that will attain minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.
- E. Protect existing piping and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

### 3.12 CLOSING ABANDONED STORM DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:
1. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch- thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
  2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.
- B. Abandoned Structures: Excavate around structure as required and use one procedure below:
1. Remove structure and close open ends of remaining piping.
  2. Remove top of structure down to at least 36 inches below final grade. Fill to within 12 inches of top with stone, rubble, gravel, or compacted dirt. Fill to top with concrete.
  3. Backfill to grade according to Division 2 Section "Earthwork."

### 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Clear interior of piping and structures of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping and pull past each joint as it is completed.
1. In large, accessible piping, brushes and brooms may be used for cleaning.
  2. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and when work stops.
  3. Flush piping between manholes and other structures to remove collected debris, if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
  2. Defects requiring correction include the following:

- a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
    - c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
    - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
    - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
  3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
  4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- C. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
  2. Test completed piping systems according to authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
  4. Submit separate reports for each test.
  5. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  6. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

END OF SECTION 02630



1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The General Provisions of the contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and General Requirements apply to the work specified in this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Provide chain link fencing and chain link gates in accordance with the requirements of this section and as shown on the drawings.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE: Comply with applicable provisions of the following standards:

- A. Specifications and Standards of the Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute (CLFMI).
- B. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM) Specifications for Chain Link Fencing Materials.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's Data: Submit complete manufacturer's and/or supplier's data and instructions for all chain link fencing and gate materials.

2.0 - MATERIALS

2.1 GENERAL:

- A. Posts, Frames, Rails, Stretcher Bars, Truss Rods: Galvanized steel/PVC coated.
- B. Reinforcing Wire: Galvanized high carbon steel/PVC coated.
- C. Gate Hinges, Post Caps, Stretcher Bar Bands, Similar Items: Galvanized steel or malleable iron/PVC coated.
- D. Ties, Clips: Galvanized steel/PVC coated.

2.2 COATINGS:

- A. Galvanizing: All iron and steel parts hot dipped galvanized after fabrication. Zinc coating weight not less than 1.8 ounces per surface square foot.
- B. Supplemental Color Coating: In addition to above metallic coatings, provide posts and rails with manufacturer's standard polymer coating according to ASTM F 1234, 10-mil minimum polyvinyl chloride (PVC) finish applied to exterior surfaces and, except for tubular shapes, to exposed interior surfaces. Color to match chain link fabric.

2.3 TOLERANCES: Standard mill tolerances for all framework members and chain link fabric.

- 2.4 FABRIC: Chain link fabric 9 gauge (0.148 inch) core wire, nominal 2" mesh, knuckle top and bottom selvages, with Class 2a PVC coating. Minimum breaking load of 1290 pounds. Furnish in widths and types shown on drawings.
- 2.5 CORNER, PULL, TERMINAL POSTS, INTERMEDIATE POSTS
- A. Size as shown on the drawings and meeting the following:
- | Trade Size | Actual O.D. | Weight lbs/ft |
|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 2"         | 1.90"       | 2.72#         |
| 2 1/2"     | 2.375"      | 3.65#         |
| 3"         | 2.875"      | 5.79#         |
| 4"         | 4.0"        | 9.10#         |
- 2.6 GATE POSTS: For swing gates under 6 feet in width – 3" (2.875" o.d.) steel pipe, nominal weight 5.79#/ft.; for swing gates over 6 feet in width – 4" (4.0" o.d.) steel pipe, nominal weight 9.10#/ft.; provide diagonal 3/8" truss rods with turnbuckle at all corners, terminals and as detailed.
- 2.7 RAILS: 1 5/8" (1.66" o.d.) steel pipe, nominal weight 2.27#/ft.; not less than 18' lengths and fitted with couplings for connecting into continuous runs 6" long outside sleeves, 0.70 minimum wall thickness, allowing for expansion and contraction of rail. Join rails at intermediate posts with boulevard clamps.
- 2.8 POST CAPS AND RAIL ENDS: Sized to fit over outside of posts and rails to exclude moisture; ball caps for corner, terminal and gate posts, loop through caps to provide rail support for intermediate posts; rail ends brace banded to terminal and corner posts with 7/8" beveled galvanized steel brace band.
- 2.9 SWING GATES: Frames fabricated to steel pipe size as shown on the drawings; welded frame connections ground smooth prior to galvanizing; provide positive, locking latches with 1 3/8" o.d. drop bars and center-stops as detailed; provide gate stops set in concrete at each leaf full open position; provide gate post mounted keepers to automatically hold each leaf in full open position until manually released; locks provided by Owner.
- 2.10 HINGES: Tamper-proof with large bearing surfaces for clamping into position. Hinges will not twist or turn under action of gate.
- 2.11 STRETCHER BARS: 3/16" x 3/4" in lengths one inch less than full height of fabric with which they are used; provide one (1) stretcher bar for each terminal post; two (2) for each corner, pull and gate post.
- 2.12 BANDS OR CLIPS: Flat or beveled steel 7/8" x .1156" of adequate strength for attaching stretcher bars to posts; install at intervals not to exceed 15".
- 2.13 FABRIC TIES: Steel ties for attaching fabric to rails and intermediate posts. Install at intervals not to exceed 14" o.c.
- 2.14 BOTTOM TENSION WIRE: No. 6 gauge galvanized spring coil steel wire; stretch taut from terminal post to terminal post and securely fasten to each intermediate post 2" above finished grade; weave through and attach to fence fabric at intervals not to exceed 24" with 6 gauge galvanized steel wire.
- 2.15 OTHER MATERIALS: All other fittings, hardware, materials not specifically described but required for a complete and proper installation shall be as selected by the Contractor subject to the approval of the Architect.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. Do not begin installation and erection before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. As detailed on the drawings and as directed by the Architect.
- B. Evenly space posts in the line of the fence as shown on the drawings and no further than 10' o.c.
- C. Allow concrete footings to cure 72 hours minimum before applying any strain to posts.
- D. Install posts, rails, gates and other similar items plumb, level and true to required line.

- 3.3 ADJUSTMENT: Adjust gate hardware and lubricate where necessary.

END OF SECTION 02710



1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 2. Hot-mix asphalt patching.
  - 3. Hot-mix asphalt paving overlay.
  - 4. Asphalt surface treatments.
  - 5. Pavement-marking paint.
  - 6. Cold milling of existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for aggregate base courses.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 8 for definitions of terms.
- B. DOT: Department of Transportation.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Provide hot-mix asphalt paving according to materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of standard specifications of state or local DOT. Retain first subparagraph below if standard specifications are indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Standard Specification: Alabama Department of Transportation (ALDOT) "Standard specifications for highway construction" latest edition.
  - 2. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in the standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
- B. Job-Mix Designs: For each job mix proposed for the Work.
- C. Material Test Reports: For each paving material.
- D. Material Certificates: For each paving material, signed by manufacturers.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer.
  - 1. Manufacturer shall be a paving-mix manufacturer registered with and approved by authorities having jurisdiction or the DOT of the state in which Project is located.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM D 3666 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with "Standard Specifications for Highway Construction" latest edition of ALDOT for asphalt paving work.
- D. Asphalt-Paving Publication: Comply with AI MS-22, "Construction of Hot Mix Asphalt Pavements," unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- E. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to hot-mix asphalt paving including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Review proposed sources of paving materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture hot-mix asphalt.
  - 2. Review condition of subgrade and preparatory work.
  - 3. Review requirements for protecting paving work, including restriction of traffic during installation period and for remainder of construction period.
  - 4. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pavement-marking materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels containing brand name and type of material, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.
- B. Store pavement-marking materials in a clean, dry, protected location within temperature range required by manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp or if the following conditions are not met:
  - 1. Prime and Tack Coats: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
  - 2. Slurry Coat: Comply with weather limitations of ASTM D 3910.
  - 3. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F and rising at time of placement.
  - 4. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F at time of placement.
- B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F for oil-

based materials, 50 deg F for water-based materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F.

## 2.0 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 AGGREGATES

- A. General: Use materials and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations.
- B. Coarse Aggregate: Course aggregate shall comply with ALDOT Section 801.
- C. Fine Aggregate: Fine aggregate shall comply with ALDOT Section 802.
  - 1. For hot-mix asphalt, limit natural sand to a maximum of 20 percent by weight of the total aggregate mass.
- D. Mineral Filler: Mineral filler shall comply with ALDOT Section 805.

### 2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Base course: Place to width and depth shown and comply with ALDOT Section 825, Type B.
- B. Asphalt Binder: Bituminous concrete binder layer to width and depth shown on the drawings in accordance with ALDOT Section 424B.
- C. Prime Coat: Shall be in accordance with ALDOT Section 401.
- D. Tack Coat: Shall be in accordance with ALDOT Section 405.
- E. Surface Course: Shall be in accordance with ALDOT Section 424A.
- F. Water: Potable.

### 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Herbicide: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered by the EPA. Provide in granular, liquid, or wet-able powder form.
- B. Sand: ASTM D 1073, Grade Nos. 2 or 3.
- C. Joint Sealant: ASTM D 3405, hot-applied, single-component, polymer-modified bituminous sealant.
- D. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-115, Type I or AASHTO M 248, Type N.
  - 1. Color: As indicated on the drawings.

### 2.4 MIXES

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes meeting the requirements of the applicable sections of the ALDOT "Standard Specifications for Highway Construction" and complying with the following requirements:

1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located.
2. Base Course: ALDOT 825, Type B.
3. Binder Course ALDOT 424B.
4. Surface Course: ALDOT 424A.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to support paving and imposed loads.
- B. Verify that subgrade elevation is as indicated on the drawings.
- C. Proof-roll subbase using heavy, pneumatic-tired rollers to locate areas that are unstable or that require further compaction.
- D. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 COLD MILLING

- A. Clean existing pavement surface of loose and deleterious material immediately before cold milling. Remove existing asphalt pavement by cold milling to grades and cross sections indicated.
  1. Mill to a depth of 1-1/2 inches.
  2. Mill to a uniform finished surface free of gouges, grooves, and ridges.
  3. Control rate of milling to prevent tearing of existing asphalt course.
  4. Repair or replace curbs, manholes, and other construction damaged during cold milling.
  5. Excavate and trim unbound-aggregate base course, if encountered, and keep material separate from milled hot-mix asphalt.
  6. Transport milled hot-mix asphalt to asphalt recycling facility.
  7. Keep milled pavement surface free of loose material and dust.

#### 3.3 PATCHING

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- B. Portland Cement Concrete Pavement: Break cracked slabs and roll as required to reseat concrete pieces firmly.
  1. Pump hot undersealing asphalt under rocking slabs until slab is stabilized or, if necessary, crack slab into pieces and roll to reseat pieces firmly.
  2. Remove disintegrated or badly cracked pavement. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.



- C. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to vertical surfaces abutting or projecting into new, hot-mix asphalt paving at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.
  - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.
- D. Patching: Partially fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix and, while still hot, compact. Cover asphalt base course with compacted, hot-mix surface layer finished flush with adjacent surfaces.

### 3.4 REPAIRS

- A. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch in existing pavements.
  - 1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches thick.
- B. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of.
  - 1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
  - 2. Use emulsified-asphalt slurry to seal cracks and joints less than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
  - 3. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

### 3.5 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.
  - 1. Sweep loose granular particles from surface of unbound-aggregate base course. Do not dislodge or disturb aggregate embedded in compacted surface of base course.
- B. Herbicide Treatment: Apply herbicide according to manufacturer's recommended rates and written application instructions. Apply to dry, prepared subgrade or surface of compacted-aggregate base before applying paving materials.
  - 1. Mix herbicide with prime coat if formulated by manufacturer for that purpose.
- C. Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.3 to 0.50 gal./sq. yd. Apply in accordance with ALDOT Section 401.03 (d) 4. Apply enough material to penetrate and seal but not flood surface. Allow prime coat to cure for 72 hours minimum.
  - 1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
  - 2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.

D. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.

1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

### 3.6 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACING

A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.

1. Place hot-mix asphalt base course in number of lifts and thicknesses indicated.
2. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course in single lift.
3. Spread mix at minimum temperature of 250 deg F.
4. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.

B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.

1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Complete a section of asphalt base course before placing asphalt surface course.

C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

### 3.7 JOINTS

A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.

1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches.
3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches.
4. Construct transverse joints as described in AI MS-22, "Construction of Hot Mix Asphalt Pavements."
5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

### 3.8 COMPACTION

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot hand tampers or vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
  - 1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
  - 1. Average Density: 96 percent of reference laboratory density according to AASHTO T 245, but not less than 94 percent nor greater than 100 percent.
  - 2. Average Density: 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density according to ASTM D 2041, but not less than 90 percent nor greater than 96 percent.
- D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.
- F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.
- G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

### 3.9 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
  - 2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
- B. Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
  - 1. Base Course: 1/4 inch.
  - 2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.

3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.

### 3.10 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow paving to age for 15 days before starting first coat of pavement marking. Second coat shall be placed 30 – 60 days after the first coat.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply 2 coats of paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils per coat.

### 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and to prepare test reports.
  1. Testing agency will conduct and interpret tests and state in each report whether tested Work complies with or deviates from specified requirements.
- B. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- C. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.
- D. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.
- E. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement according to ASTM D 979.
  1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
  2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
    - a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than 3 cores taken.
    - b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
- F. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

3.12 DISPOSAL

A. Except for material indicated to be recycled, remove excavated materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.

1. Do not allow excavated materials to accumulate on-site.

END OF SECTION 02741



1.0 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes exterior cement concrete for the following:
  - 1. Driveways and roadways.
  - 2. Parking lots.
  - 3. Curbs and gutters.
  - 4. Walkways.
  - 5. Site walls and footings.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for subgrade preparation, grading, and subbase course.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, expansive hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of manufactured material and product indicated.
- B. Design Mixes: For each concrete pavement mix. Include alternate mix designs when characteristics of materials, project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
- C. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated, based on comprehensive testing of current materials:
- D. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that each of the following materials complies with requirements:
  - 1. Cementitious materials and aggregates.
  - 2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
  - 3. Fiber reinforcement.
  - 4. Admixtures.
  - 5. Curing compounds.
  - 6. Applied finish materials.
  - 7. Bonding agent or adhesive.
  - 8. Joint fillers.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed pavement work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer of ready-mixed concrete products complying with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - 1. Manufacturer must be certified according to the National Ready Mix Concrete Association's Plant Certification Program.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant and each aggregate from one source.
- E. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," unless modified by the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- F. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixes.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required other construction activities.

## 2.0 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces.
  - 1. Use flexible or curved forms for curves of a radius 100 feet (30.5 m) or less.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

### 2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- B. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 497, flat sheet.
- C. Epoxy-Coated Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A, plain steel.



- D. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
- E. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed bars.
- F. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed bars; assembled with clips.
- G. Plain Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn.
- H. Epoxy-Coated Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, plain steel.
- I. Joint Dowel Bars: Plain steel bars, ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420). Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- J. Epoxy-Coated Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), plain steel bars.
- K. Tie Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
- L. Hook Bolts: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6), internally and externally threaded. Design hook-bolt joint assembly to hold coupling against pavement form and in position during concreting operations, and to permit removal without damage to concrete or hook bolt.
- M. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcement bars, welded wire fabric, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete or fiber-reinforced concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete, and as follows:
  - 1. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
  - 2. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer coated wire bar supports.
- N. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid two-part epoxy repair coating, compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement.

### 2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. General: Use the same brand and type of cementitious material from the same manufacturer throughout the Project.
- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II.
  - 1. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F or C. Use one brand of cement throughout project unless otherwise accepted.
  - 2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
- C. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595M, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag cement.
- D. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595M, Type IP portland pozzolan cement.

- E. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595M, Type I (PM) pozzolan-modified portland cement.
- F. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595M, Type I (SM) slag-modified portland cement.
- G. Aggregate: ASTM C 33, uniformly graded, from a single source, with coarse aggregate as follows:
  - 1. Class: 4S.
  - 2. Class: 4M.
  - 3. Class: 1N.
  - 4. Maximum Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches nominal.
  - 5. Maximum Aggregate Size: 1 inch nominal.
  - 6. Maximum Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch nominal.
  - 7. Do not use fine or coarse aggregates containing substances that cause spalling.
- H. Water: ASTM C 94.

#### 2.4 ADMIXTURES

- A. General: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cement and to be compatible with other admixtures.
- B. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- C. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
- D. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F.
- E. Water-Reducing Non-Chloride Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type E.
- F. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.

#### 2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) dry.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- E. Clear Solvent-Borne Liquid-Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.
- F. Clear Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.

- G. White Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B.

## 2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber, or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- B. Coloring Agent: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type; ready mixed; complying with FS TT-P-115, Type I, or AASHTO M 248, Type N.
  - 1. Color: As indicated.
- D. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive aggregate of fused aluminum-oxide granules or crushed emery with emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 25 percent ferric oxide; unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.
- E. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- F. Rock Salt: Sodium chloride crystals, kiln dried, coarse gradation with 100 percent passing 3/8-inch sieve and 85 percent retained on a No. 8 sieve.
- G. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class and grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
  - 1. Type II, non-load bearing, for bonding freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
  - 2. Types I and II, non-load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
  - 3. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- H. Chemical Surface Retarder: Water-soluble, liquid set retarder with color dye, for horizontal concrete surface application, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of concrete to a depth of 1/8 to 1/4 inch.
- I. Colored Dry-Shake Hardener: Factory-packaged dry combination of portland cement, graded quartz aggregate, coloring pigments, and plasticizing admixture. Use coloring pigments that are finely ground, nonfading mineral oxides interground with cement.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.7 CONCRETE MIXES

- A. Prepare design mixes, proportioned according to ACI 211.1 ACI 301 and ACI 318-89, Section 5.3, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete determined by either laboratory trial mixes or field experience.
- B. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs for the trial batch method.
  - 1. Do not use Owner's field quality-control testing agency as the independent testing agency.
- C. Proportion mixes to provide concrete with the following properties:
  - 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4000 psi for site walls and footings.
  - 2. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 3000 psi unless noted.
  - 3. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 for site walls.
  - 4. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.53 unless noted.
  - 5. Slump Limit: 3-5 inches.
- D. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
  - 1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
  - 2. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 25 percent.
  - 3. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
  - 4. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent portland cement minimum, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
- E. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows within a tolerance of plus or minus 1.5 percent:
  - 1. Air Content: 5.5 percent for 1-1/2-inch maximum aggregate.
  - 2. Air Content: 6.0 percent for 1-inch maximum aggregate.
  - 3. Air Content: 6.0 percent for 3/4-inch maximum aggregate.
- F. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mix at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd.
- G. Coloring Agent: Add coloring agent to mix according to manufacturer's written instructions.

## 2.8 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Comply with requirements and with ASTM C 94 and ASTM C 1116.
  - 1. When air temperature is between 85 deg F (30 deg C) and 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

- B. Project-Site Mixing: Comply with requirements and measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
  - 1. For mixers of 1 cu. yd. or smaller capacity, continue mixing at least one and one-half minutes, but not more than five minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
  - 2. For mixers of capacity larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd.
  - 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mix type, mix time, quantity, and amount of water added.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface to check for unstable areas and verify need for additional compaction. Proceed with pavement only after nonconforming conditions have been corrected and subgrade is ready to receive pavement.
- B. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

#### 3.2 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides for pavement to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

#### 3.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating reinforcement and with recommendations in CRSI's "Placing Reinforcing Bars" for placing and supporting reinforcement.
  - 1. Apply epoxy repair coating to uncoated or damaged surfaces of epoxy-coated reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
- C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
- D. Install welded wire fabric in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
- E. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities,

or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch overlap to adjacent mats.

### 3.4 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edgings true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. When joining existing pavement, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of pavement and at locations where pavement operations are stopped for more than one-half hour, unless pavement terminates at isolation joints.
  - 1. Provide preformed galvanized steel or plastic keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys, unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
  - 2. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of pavement strips, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Provide tie bars at sides of pavement strips where indicated.
  - 4. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
  - 5. Use epoxy bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
  - 1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
  - 3. Terminate joint filler less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
  - 4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
  - 5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
  - 6. Protect top edge of joint filler during concrete placement with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- D. Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt-coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- E. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows:
  - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with groover tool to the following radius.

Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover marks on concrete surfaces.

- a. Radius: 1/4 inch.
  2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
- F. Edging: Tool edges of pavement, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete after initial floating with an edging tool to the following radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surfaces.
1. Radius: 1/4 inch.

### 3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, reinforcement steel, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other trades to permit installation of their work.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at the time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at the required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with requirements and with recommendations in ACI 304R for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement.
- F. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- G. Consolidate concrete by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand-spading, rodding, or tamping. Use equipment and procedures to consolidate concrete according to recommendations in ACI 309R.
  1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand-spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.
- H. Place concrete in two operations; strike off initial pour for entire width of placement and to the required depth below finish surface. Lay welded wire fabric or fabricated bar mats immediately in final position. Place top layer of concrete, strike off, and screed.
  1. Remove and replace portions of bottom layer of concrete that have been placed more than 15 minutes without being covered by top layer, or use bonding agent if approved by Architect.

- I. Screed pavement surfaces with a straightedge and strike off. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form an open textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading dry-shake surface treatments.
- J. Curbs and Gutters: When automatic machine placement is used for curb and gutter placement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as specified for formed concrete. If results are not approved, remove and replace with formed concrete.
- K. Slip-Form Pavers: When automatic machine placement is used for pavement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce pavement to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as required for formed pavement.
  - 1. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of paver machine during operations.
- L. When adjoining pavement lanes are placed in separate pours, do not operate equipment on concrete until pavement has attained 85 percent of its 28-day compressive strength.
- M. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  - 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C), uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) and not more than 80 deg F (27 deg C) at point of placement.
  - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
  - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators, unless otherwise specified and approved in mix designs.
- N. Hot-Weather Placement: Place concrete according to recommendations in ACI 305R and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
  - 1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature at time of placement below 90 deg F (32 deg C). Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - 2. Cover reinforcement steel with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
  - 3. Fog-spray forms, reinforcement steel, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.



### 3.6 CONCRETE FINISHING

- A. General: Wetting of concrete surfaces during screeding, initial floating, or finishing operations is prohibited.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and the concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats, or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
  - 1. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.
  - 2. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.
  - 3. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm) deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.

### 3.7 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and follow recommendations in ACI 305R for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Begin curing after finishing concrete, but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- D. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound, or a combination of these as follows:
  - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
    - a. Water.
    - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
    - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
  - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
  - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat

areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

### 3.8 PAVEMENT TOLERANCES

A. Comply with tolerances of ACI 117 and as follows:

1. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- long, unlevelled straightedge not to exceed 1/4 inch.
4. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1 inch.
5. Vertical Alignment of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1/4 inch.
6. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: 1/2 inch.
7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: Length of dowel 1/4 inch per 12 inches.
8. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
9. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

### 3.9 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow concrete pavement to cure for 30 days and be dry before starting first coat of pavement marking. Second coat shall be placed 30 – 60 days after the first.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply 2 coats of paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings of dimensions indicated with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils per coat.

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspection agency to sample materials, perform tests, and submit test reports during concrete placement. Sampling and testing for quality control may include those specified in this Article.
- B. Testing Services: Testing shall be performed according to the following requirements:
1. Sampling Fresh Concrete: Representative samples of fresh concrete shall be obtained according to ASTM C 172, except modified for slump to comply with ASTM C 94.
  2. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of placement for each compressive-strength test, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each type of concrete. Additional tests will be required when concrete consistency changes.
  3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each compressive-strength test, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each type of air-entrained concrete.

4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each set of compressive-strength specimens.
  5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; one set of four standard cylinders for each compressive-strength test, unless otherwise indicated. Cylinders shall be molded and stored for laboratory-cured test specimens unless field-cured test specimens are required.
  6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; one set for each day's pour of each concrete class exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd.. One specimen shall be tested at 7 days and two specimens at 28 days; one specimen shall be retained in reserve for later testing if required.
  7. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for a given class of concrete, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  8. When total quantity of a given class of concrete is less than 50 cu. yd. Architect may waive compressive-strength testing if adequate evidence of satisfactory strength is provided.
  9. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, current operations shall be evaluated and corrective procedures shall be provided for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
  10. Strength level of concrete will be considered satisfactory if averages of sets of three consecutive compressive-strength test results equal or exceed specified compressive strength and no individual compressive-strength test result falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
- C. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 24 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing agency, concrete type and class, location of concrete batch in pavement, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mix proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- D. Additional Tests: Testing agency shall make additional tests of the concrete when test results indicate slump, air entrainment, concrete strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42, or by other methods as directed.

### 3.11 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete pavement that is broken, damaged, or defective, or does not meet requirements in this Section.
- B. Drill test cores where directed by Architect when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory pavement areas with portland cement concrete bonded to pavement with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete from damage. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement

as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.

- D. Maintain concrete pavement free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete pavement not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 02751

## SECTION 03300 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY:

- A. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcing, mix design, placement procedures, and finishes.
- B. Concrete paving and walks are specified in Division 2.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS:

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
  - 1. Submit all shop drawings on one reproducible print and two copies only. The reproducible print will be returned. All copies required by the Contractor are the responsibility of the Contractor and shall be made after reproducible is returned.
- B. Product data for proprietary materials and items, including reinforcement and forming accessories, admixtures, patching compounds, waterstops, joint systems, curing compounds, dry-shake finish materials, and others as requested by Architect.
- C. Shop drawings for reinforcement, prepared for fabrication, bending, and placement of concrete reinforcement. Comply with ACI S-66 (88), "ACI Detailing Manual," showing bar schedules, stirrup spacing, diagrams of bent bars, and arrangement of concrete reinforcement. Include special reinforcement required for openings through concrete structures.
- D. Samples: Submit samples of materials as requested by Architect, including names, sources, and descriptions.
- E. Laboratory Test Reports: Submit laboratory test reports for concrete materials and mix design test.
- F. Materials Certificates: Provide materials certificates in lieu of materials laboratory test reports when permitted by Architect. Materials certificates shall be signed by the manufacturer and Contractor, certifying that each material item complies with or exceeds specified requirements. Provide certification from admixture manufacturers that chloride content complies with specification requirements.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with provisions of following codes, specifications, and standards, except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified:
  - 1. ACI 301 "Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings".
  - 2. ACI 302 "Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction".

3. ACI 304 "Recommended Practice for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting and Placing Concrete".
  4. ACI 305 "Hot Weather Concreting".
  5. ACI 306 "Cold Weather Concreting".
  6. ACI 309 "Guide for Consolidation of Concrete"
  7. ACI 311 "Recommended Practice for Concrete Inspection".
  8. ACI 318, "Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete."
  9. ACI 347 "Recommended Practice for Concrete Formwork".
  10. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI), "Manual of Standard Practice."
  11. American Welding Society, AWS D1.4 "Structural Welding Code-Reinforcing Steel".
- B. Concrete Testing Service: Employ, at Contractor's expense a testing laboratory acceptable to Architect to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixes.
- C. Materials and installed work may require testing and retesting at any time during progress of work. Tests, including retesting of rejected materials for installed work, shall be done at Contractor's expense.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FORM MATERIALS:

- A. Forms for Exposed Finish Concrete: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood faced, or other acceptable panel-type materials, to provide continuous, straight, smooth, exposed surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints and to conform to joint system shown on drawings.
  1. Use overlaid plywood complying with U.S. Product Standard PS-1 "A-C or B-B High Density Overlaid Concrete Form," Class I.
- B. Forms for Unexposed Finish Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or other acceptable material. Provide lumber dressed on at least 2 edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Forms for Textured Finish Concrete: Units of face design, size, arrangement, and configuration to match Architect's control sample. Provide solid backing and form supports to ensure stability of textured form liners.
- D. Form Coatings: Provide commercial formulation form-coating compounds with a maximum VOC of 350 mg/l that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
- E. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, adjustable-length, removable or snap-off metal form ties, designed to prevent form deflection and to prevent spalling concrete upon removal. Provide units that will leave no metal closer than 1-1/2 inches to exposed

surface.

1. Provide ties that, when removed, will leave holes not larger than 1-inch diameter in concrete surface.

## 2.2 REINFORCING MATERIALS:

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed.
- B. Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, plain, cold-drawn steel.
- C. Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, welded steel wire reinforcement.
- D. Supports for Reinforcement: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire fabric in place. Use wire-bar-type supports complying with CRSI specifications.
  1. For slabs-on-grade, use supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
  2. For exposed-to-view concrete surfaces, where legs of supports are in contact with forms, provide supports with legs that are plastic protected (CRSI, Class 1) or stainless steel protected (CRSI, Class 2).
  3. For sand blasted or intentionally roughened concrete surfaces provide supports of stainless steel (CRSI, Class 2).
- E. Threaded Dowels: Continuous threaded high-strength steel bars equal to "Lasstud" by Richmond Screw Anchor Co., Inc. Provide inserts compatible with dowels, designed for ultimate pull-out force indicated on the drawings.
- F. Steel Shapes, Plates and Rods: Conform to ASTM A 36 "Specification for Structural Steel".
- G. Do not weld reinforcing steel unless specifically noted on drawings. If welding is shown, conform to latest revision of AWS D12.1, "Reinforcing Steel Welding Code of the American Welding Society". Perform all welding with certified welders qualified per AWS.

## 2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS:

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.
  1. Use one brand of cement throughout project unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.
- B. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Type C or Type F.
  1. Limit use of fly ash to not exceed 25 percent of cement content by weight.
- C. Normal Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33 and as herein specified. Provide aggregates from a single source for exposed concrete.
  1. For exterior exposed surfaces, do not use fine or coarse aggregates containing spalling-causing deleterious substances.

2. Local aggregates not complying with ASTM C 33 but that special tests or actual service have shown to produce concrete of adequate strength and durability may be used when acceptable to Architect.
- D. Water: Drinkable.
  - E. Admixtures, General: Provide admixtures for concrete that contain not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions.
  - F. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260, certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other required admixtures.
  - G. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
  - H. High-Range Water-Reducing Admixture (Super Plasticizer): ASTM C 494, Type F or Type G.
  - I. Water-Reducing, Non-Chloride Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type E.
  - J. Water-Reducing, Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.

#### 2.4 RELATED MATERIALS:

- A. Available Products and/or Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products which may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to those listed.
- B. Granular Base: Evenly graded mixture of fine and coarse aggregates to provide, when compacted, a smooth and even surface below slabs on grade.
- C. Vapor Retarder: Provide vapor retarder cover over prepared base material where indicated below slabs on grade. Use only materials that are resistant to deterioration when tested in accordance with ASTM E 154, as follows:
  1. Vapor Retarder beneath slabs on grade, unless notes, shall meet ASTM E 1745, class A, 15 MIL minimum thickness with manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape and pipe boots, such as W.R. Meadows Inc. product perminator 15.
- D. Nonslip Aggregate Finish: Provide fused aluminum oxide granules or crushed emery as abrasive aggregate for nonslip finish, with emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 25 percent ferric oxide. Use material that is factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, and nonglazing and is unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.
- E. Absorptive Cover: Burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz. per sq. yd., complying with AASHTO M 182, Class 2.
- F. Moisture-Retaining Cover: One of the following, complying with ASTM C 171.
  1. Waterproof paper.
  2. Polyethylene film.
  3. Polyethylene-coated burlap.



- G. Liquid Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: Liquid-type membrane- forming curing compound complying with ASTM C 309, Type I, Class A. Moisture loss not more than 0.055 gr./sq. cm. when applied at 200 sq. ft./gal.
  - 1. Contractor to verify that product is compatible with other applied finishes.
- H. Water-Based Acrylic Membrane Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type I, Class B.
- I. Underlayment Compound: Free-flowing, self-leveling, pumpable, cement-based compound for applications from one inch thick to feathered edges.
- J. Bonding Compound: Polyvinyl acetate or acrylic base.
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Polyvinyl Acetate (Interior Only):
      - 1) "Superior Concrete Bonder," Dayton Superior Corp.
      - 2) "Euco Weld," Euclid Chemical Co.
      - 3) "Weld-Crete," Larsen Products Corp.
      - 4) "Everweld," L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.
    - b. Acrylic or Styrene Butadiene:
      - 1) "Acrylic Bondcrete," The Burke Co.
      - 2) "Strongbond," Conspec Marketing and Mfg. Co.
      - 3) "Day-Chem Ad Bond," Dayton Superior Corp.
      - 4) "SBR Latex," Euclid Chemical Co.
      - 5) "Daraweld C," W.R. Grace & Co.
      - 6) "Hornweld," A.C. Horn, Inc.
      - 7) "Everbond," L & M Construction Chemicals, Inc.
      - 8) "Acryl-Set," Master Builders Inc.
      - 9) "Intralok," W.R. Meadows, Inc.
      - 10) "Sonocrete," Sonneborn-Rexnord.
      - 11) "Stonlock LB2," Stonhard, Inc.
- K. Epoxy Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component material suitable for use on dry or damp surfaces. Provide material "Type," "Grade," and "Class" to suit project requirements.
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:

## 2.5 PROPORTIONING AND DESIGN OF MIXES:

- A. Prepare design mixes for each type and strength of concrete by either laboratory trial mixtures or field experience methods as specified in ACI 318-95 Section 5.3. If trial mixtures method used, use an independent testing facility acceptable to Architect for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs. The testing facility shall not be the same as used for field quality control testing, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.
- B. Trial mix designs and strength tests, made by qualified independent material laboratory, in accordance with ACI 318-95 Section 5.3 are required for all concrete designs for which a suitable experience record is not available.

- C. Mix design based on a record of past performance in accordance with ACI 318-95 Section 5.3, may be provided by qualified concrete supplier or precast concrete manufacturer for concrete designs. Mix design shall be certified by an independent testing laboratory.
- D. All concrete mix designs shall include the following information:
  - 1. Proportions of cement, fine and coarse aggregate and water.
  - 2. Water/cement ratio, design strength, slump and air content.
  - 3. Type of cement and aggregates.
  - 4. Type and dosage of all admixtures.
  - 5. Type, color and dosage of integral coloring compounds, where applicable.
  - 6. Special requirements for pumping.
  - 7. Any special characteristics of the mix which require precautions in the mixing, placing or finishing techniques to achieve the finished product specified.
- E. Submit written reports to Architect of each proposed mix for each class of concrete at least 15 days prior to start of work. Do not begin concrete production until proposed mix designs have been reviewed by Architect.
- F. Design mixes to provide normal weight concrete as indicated on drawings and schedules.
- G. Adjustment to Concrete Mixes: Mix design adjustments may be requested by Contractor when characteristics of materials, job conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant, as accepted by Architect. Laboratory test data for revised mix design and strength results must be submitted to and accepted by Architect before using in work.

## 2.6 ADMIXTURES:

- A. Use water-reducing admixture or high-range water-reducing admixture (Superplasticizer) in concrete as required for placement and workability.
  - 1. Use high-range water-reducing admixture (HRWR) in pumped concrete, concrete for industrial slabs, architectural concrete, parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with water/cement ratios below 0.50.
- B. Use nonchloride accelerating admixture in concrete slabs placed at ambient temperatures below 50 deg F (10 deg C).
- C. Use air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having the total air content as shown on the drawings.
- D. Use admixtures for water reduction and set control in strict compliance with manufacturer's directions.
- E. Water-Cement Ratio: Provide concrete with the maximum water-cement (w/c) ratios

as shown on the drawings.

- F. Slump Limits: Proportion and design mixes to result in slump at point of placement as shown on the drawings.

## 2.7 CONCRETE MIXING:

- A. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in work, indicating project identification name and number, date, mix type, mix time, quantity, and amount of water introduced.
- B. Ready-Mix Concrete: Comply with requirements of ASTM C 94, and as specified.
  - 1. Addition of water to batch for material with insufficient slump will be permitted in accordance with ACI 301.
  - 2. When air temperature is between 85 deg F (30 deg C) and 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes, and when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- C. High range water reducing admixture (superplasticizer) redosage may be permitted when prior approval, as to methods and procedures, is obtained from the Architect.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL:

- A. Coordinate the installation of joint materials and vapor retarders with placement of forms and reinforcing steel.

### 3.2 FORMS:

- A. General: Design, erect, support, brace, and maintain formwork to support vertical and lateral, static and dynamic loads that might be applied until concrete structure can support such loads. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of correct size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position. Maintain formwork construction tolerances complying with ACI 301 Table 4.3.1.
- B. Construct forms to sizes, shapes, lines, and dimensions shown and to obtain accurate alignment, location, grades, level, and plumb work in finished structures. Provide for openings, offsets, sinkages, keyways, recesses, moldings, rustications, reglets, chamfers, blocking, screeds, bulkheads, anchorages and inserts, and other features required in work. Use selected materials to obtain required finishes. Solidly butt joints and provide backup at joints to prevent leakage of cement paste.
- C. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush plates or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces where slope is too steep to place concrete with bottom forms only. Kerf wood inserts for forming keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
- D. Provide temporary openings where interior area of formwork is inaccessible for cleanout, for inspection before concrete placement, and for placement of concrete. Securely brace temporary openings and set tightly to forms to prevent loss of concrete

mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.

- E. Chamfer exposed corners and edges as indicated, using wood, metal, PVC, or rubber chamfer strips fabricated to produce uniform smooth lines and tight edge joints.
- F. Provisions for Other Trades: Provide openings in concrete formwork to accommodate work of other trades. Determine size and location of openings, recesses, and chases from trades providing such items. Accurately place and securely support items built into forms.
- G. Cleaning and Tightening: Thoroughly clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, or other debris just before concrete is placed. Retighten forms and bracing before concrete placement as required to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

### 3.3 VAPOR RETARDER INSTALLATION:

- A. General: Following leveling and tamping of granular base for slabs on grade, place vapor retarder sheeting with longest dimension parallel with direction of pour.
- B. Lap joints 6 inches and seal vapor retarder joints with manufacturers' recommended mastic and pressure-sensitive tape.
- C. After placement of vapor retarder, cover with sand cushion and compact to depth as shown on drawings.

### 3.4 PLACING REINFORCEMENT:

- A. General: Comply with Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute's recommended practice for "Placing Reinforcing Bars," for details and methods of reinforcement placement and supports and as herein specified.
  - 1. Avoiding cutting or puncturing vapor retarder during reinforcement placement and concreting operations.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other materials that reduce or destroy bond with concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcing by metal chairs, runners, bolsters, spacers, and hangers, as required.
- D. Place reinforcement to obtain at least minimum coverages for concrete protection. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement operations. Set wire ties so ends are directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded wire reinforcement in as long lengths as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.

### 3.5 JOINTS:

- A. Construction Joints: Locate and install construction joints as indicated or, if not indicated, locate so as not to impair strength and appearance of the structure, as acceptable to Architect.

- B. Provide keyways at least 1-1/2 inches deep in construction joints in walls, slabs, beams and between walls and footings.
- C. Place construction joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints except as otherwise indicated.
- D. Use bonding agent on existing concrete surfaces that will be joined with fresh concrete.
- E. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Construct isolation joints in slabs-on-ground at points of contact between slabs-on-ground and vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Joint filler and sealant materials are specified in Division 7 Sections of these specifications.
- F. Contraction (Control) Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Construct contraction joints in slabs-on-ground to form panels of patterns as shown. Use saw cuts 1/8 inch wide by 1/4 slab depth or approved inserts, unless otherwise indicated. Make saw cuts as soon as possible after slab finishing as may be safely done without dislodging aggregates.
  - 1. With prior approval from Architect contraction joints may be formed by inserting premolded plastic, hardboard, or fiberboard strip into fresh concrete until top surface of strip is flush with slab surface. Tool slab edges round on each side of insert. After concrete has cured, remove inserts and clean groove of loose debris.
  - 2. If joint pattern not shown, provide joints not exceeding 15 feet in either direction and located to conform to bay spacing wherever possible (at column centerlines, half bays, third bays).
  - 3. Joint sealant material is specified in Division 7 Sections of these specifications.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS:

- A. General: Set and build into work anchorage devices and other embedded items required for other work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, diagrams, instructions, and directions provided by suppliers of items to be attached thereto.
- B. Forms for Slabs: Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to obtain required elevations and contours in finished surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips using strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.

### 3.7 PREPARATION OF FORM SURFACES:

- A. Clean re-used forms of concrete matrix residue, repair and patch as required to return forms to acceptable surface condition.
- B. Coat contact surfaces of forms with an approved, nonresidual, low-VOC, form-coating compound before reinforcement is placed. Do not allow excess form-coating material to accumulate in forms or to come into contact with in-place concrete surfaces against

which fresh concrete will be placed. Apply in compliance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.8 CONCRETE PLACEMENT:

- A. Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, reinforcing steel, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other crafts to permit installation of their work; cooperate with other trades in setting such work.
- B. General: Comply with ACI 304, "Recommended Practice for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete," and as herein specified.
- C. Deposit concrete continuously or in layers of such thickness that no concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened sufficiently to cause the formation of seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as herein specified. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation at its final location.
- D. Placing Concrete Slabs: Deposit and consolidate concrete slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until the placing of a panel or section is completed.
  - 1. Consolidate concrete during placing operations so that concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  - 2. Bring slab surfaces to correct level with straightedge and strike off. Use bull floats or darbies to smooth surface, free of humps or hollows. Do not disturb slab surfaces prior to beginning finishing operations.
  - 3. Maintain reinforcing in proper position during concrete placement.
- E. Cold-Weather Placing: Comply with provisions of ACI 306 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
- F. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4 deg C), uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) and not more than 80 deg F (27 deg C) at point of placement.
  - 1. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
  - 2. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, and other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise accepted in mix designs.
- G. Hot-Weather Placing: When hot weather conditions exist that would seriously impair quality and strength of concrete, place concrete in compliance with ACI 305 and as herein specified.
  - 1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature at time of placement below 90 deg F (32 deg C). Mixing water may be chilled, or chopped ice may be used to control temperature provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Use of liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - 2. Cover reinforcing steel with water-soaked burlap if it becomes too hot, so that

steel temperature will not exceed the ambient air temperature immediately before embedment in concrete.

3. Fog spray forms, reinforcing steel, and subgrade just before concrete is placed.
4. Use water-reducing retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placing conditions, when acceptable to Architect.

### 3.9 FINISH OF FORMED SURFACES:

- A. Rough Form Finish: For formed concrete surfaces not exposed to view in the finish work or concealed by other construction. This is the concrete surface having texture imparted by form-facing material used, with tie holes and defective areas repaired and patched and fins and other projections exceeding 1/4 inch in height rubbed down or chipped off.
- B. Smooth Form Finish: For formed concrete surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with a coating material applied directly to concrete, or a covering material applied directly to concrete, such as waterproofing, dampproofing, veneer plaster, painting, or other similar system. This is an as-cast concrete surface obtained with selected form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch defective areas with fins and other projections completely removed and smoothed.

### 3.10 MONOLITHIC SLAB FINISHES:

- A. Scratch Finish: Apply scratch finish to monolithic slab surfaces to receive concrete floor topping or mortar setting beds for tile, portland cement terrazzo, and other bonded applied cementitious finish flooring material, and as otherwise indicated.
  1. After placing slabs, plane surface to tolerances for floor flatness (Ff) of 15 and floor levelness (Fl) of 13. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required. After leveling, roughen surface before final set with stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes.
- B. Float Finish: Apply float finish to monolithic slab surfaces to receive trowel finish and other finishes as hereinafter specified; slab surfaces to be covered with membrane or elastic waterproofing, membrane or elastic roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo; and as otherwise indicated.
  1. After screeding, consolidating, and leveling concrete slabs, do not work surface until ready for floating. Begin floating, using float blades or float shoes only, when surface water has disappeared, when concrete has stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of power-driven floats, or both. Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand-floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Check and level surface plane to tolerances of Ff 18 - Fl 15. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Uniformly slope surfaces to drains. Immediately after leveling, refloat surface to a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
- C. Trowel Finish: Apply trowel finish to monolithic slab surfaces to be exposed to view and slab surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile, paint, or other thin film finish coating system.

1. After floating, begin first trowel finish operation using a power-driven trowel. Begin final troweling when surface produces a ringing sound as trowel is moved over surface. Consolidate concrete surface by final hand-troweling operation, free of trowel marks, uniform in texture and appearance, and with surface leveled to tolerances of Ff 20 - Fl 17. Grind smooth surface defects that would telegraph through applied floor covering system.
- D. Trowel and Fine Broom Finish: Where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed with thin-set mortar, apply trowel finish as specified, then immediately follow with slightly scarifying surface by fine brooming.
- E. Nonslip Broom Finish: Apply nonslip broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen concrete surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
  2. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush, or an abrasive stone, and water to expose nonslip aggregate.
- F. Nonslip Aggregate Finish: Apply nonslip aggregate finish to concrete stair treads, platforms, ramps, sloped walks, and elsewhere as indicated.
1. After completion of float finishing and before starting trowel finish, uniformly spread 25 lbs. of dampened nonslip aggregate per 100 sq. ft. of surface. Tamp aggregate flush with surface using a steel trowel, but do not force below surface. After broadcasting and tamping, apply trowel finishing as herein specified.
  2. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush, or an abrasive stone, and water to expose nonslip aggregate.
- G. Colored Wear-Resistant Finish: Provide colored wear-resistant finish to monolithic slab surface indicated.
1. Apply dry shake materials for colored wear-resistant finish at rate of 100 lbs. per 100 sq. ft., unless greater amount is recommended by material manufacturer.
  2. Cast a trial slab approximately 10 feet square to determine actual application rate, color, and finish, as acceptable to Architect.
  3. Immediately following first floating operation, uniformly distribute with mechanical spreader approximately 2/3 of required weight of dry shake material over concrete surface, and embed by means of power floating. Follow floating operation with second shake application, uniformly distributing remainder of dry shake material with overlapping applications to ensure uniform color, and embed by power floating.
  4. After completion of broadcasting and floating, apply trowel finish as herein specified. Cure slab surface with curing compound recommended by dry shake hardener manufacturer. Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing.



### 3.11 CONCRETE CURING AND PROTECTION:

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. In hot, dry, and windy weather, protect concrete from rapid moisture loss before and during finishing operations with an evaporation-control material. Apply in accordance with manufacturer's instructions after screeding and bull floating, but before power floating and troweling.
- B. Start initial curing as soon as free water has disappeared from concrete surface after placing and finishing. Weather permitting, keep continuously moist for not less than 7 days.
- C. Curing Methods: Perform curing of concrete by curing and sealing compound, by moist curing, by moisture-retaining cover curing, and by combinations thereof, as herein specified.
- D. Provide moisture curing by following methods.
  - 1. Keep concrete surface continuously wet by covering with water.
  - 2. Use continuous water-fog spray.
  - 3. Cover concrete surface with specified absorptive cover, thoroughly saturate cover with water, and keep continuously wet. Place absorptive cover to provide coverage of concrete surfaces and edges, with 4-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
- E. Provide moisture-cover curing as follows:
  - 1. Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width with sides and ends lapped at least 3 inches and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
- F. Provide curing and sealing compound to exposed interior slabs and to exterior slabs, walks, and curbs as follows:
  - 1. Apply specified curing and sealing compound to concrete slabs as soon as final finishing operations are complete (within 2 hours and after surface water sheen has disappeared). Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's directions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within 3 hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
  - 2. Use membrane curing compounds that will not affect surfaces to be covered with finish materials applied directly to concrete. Architect to approve use where application of liquid floor hardener, waterproofing, dampproofing, membrane roofing, flooring (such as ceramic or quarry tile, glue-down carpet), painting, and other coatings and finish materials are to be applied.
- G. Curing Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces, by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period or until forms are removed. If forms are removed, continue curing by methods specified above, as applicable.

- H. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Cure unformed surfaces, such as slabs, floor topping, and other flat surfaces, by application of appropriate curing method.
- I. Final cure concrete surfaces to receive liquid floor hardener or finish flooring by use of moisture-retaining cover, unless otherwise directed.
- J. Sealer and Dustproofer: Apply a second coat of specified curing and sealing compound only to surfaces given a first coat.

### 3.12 REMOVAL OF FORMS:

- A. General: Formwork not supporting weight of concrete, such as sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the work, may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 24 hours after placing concrete, provided concrete is sufficiently hard to not be damaged by form-removal operations, and provided curing and protection operations are maintained.

### 3.13 REUSE OF FORMS:

- A. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-coating compound as specified for new formwork.
- B. When forms are extended for successive concrete placement, thoroughly clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten forms to close joints. Align and secure joint to avoid offsets. Do not use "patched" forms for exposed concrete surfaces except as acceptable to Architect.

### 3.14 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS:

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures for passage of work by other trades, unless otherwise shown or directed, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete as herein specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling shown or required to complete work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations, as shown on drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment to template at correct elevations, complying with certified diagrams or templates of manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.
- D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads and landings and associated items. Cast-in safety inserts and accessories as shown on drawings. Screed, tamp, and finish concrete surfaces as scheduled.

### 3.15 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS:

- A. General: No surface shall be patched or repaired until the Architect has reviewed the defective condition and approved the Contractor's submitted repair and/or patching materials and procedures.
- B. Patching Defective Areas: Repair and patch defective areas with cement mortar immediately after removal of forms, when acceptable to Architect.

1. Cut out honeycomb, rock pockets, voids over 1/4 inch in any dimension, and holes left by tie rods and bolts, down to solid concrete but in no case to a depth of less than 1 inch. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to the concrete surface. Thoroughly clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat the area to be patched with specified bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding compound has dried.
  2. For exposed-to-view surfaces, blend white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match color surrounding. Provide test areas at inconspicuous location to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike-off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
- C. Repair of Formed Surfaces: Remove and replace concrete having defective surfaces if defects cannot be repaired to satisfaction of Architect. Surface defects, as such, include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycomb, rock pockets, fins and other projections on surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning. Flush out form tie holes, fill with dry-pack mortar, or precast cement cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
1. Repair concealed formed surfaces, where possible, that contain defects that affect the durability of concrete. If defects cannot be repaired, remove and replace concrete.
- D. Repair of Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as monolithic slabs, for smoothness and verify surface plane to tolerances specified for each surface and finish. Correct low and high areas as herein specified. Test unformed surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness by using a template having required slope.
1. Repair finished unformed surfaces that contain defects that affect durability of concrete. Surface defects, as such, include crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through nonreinforced sections regardless of width, spalling, popouts, honeycomb, rock pockets, and other objectionable conditions.
  2. Correct high areas in unformed surfaces by grinding after concrete has cured at least 14 days.
  3. Correct low areas in unformed surfaces during or immediately after completion of surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching compound. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete. Proprietary underlayment compounds may be used when acceptable to Architect.
  4. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes not exceeding 1 inch in diameter, when acceptable to Architect by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas to sound concrete with clean, square cuts and expose reinforcing steel with at least 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding compound. Mix patching concrete of same materials to provide concrete of same type or class as original concrete. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.

- E. Repair isolated random cracks and single holes not over 1 inch in diameter by dry-pack method when acceptable to Architect. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean of dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding compound. Mix dry-pack, consisting of one part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 mesh sieve, using only enough water as required for handling and placing. Place dry-pack before bonding compound has dried. Compact dry-pack mixture in place and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for not less than 72 hours.
- F. Perform structural repairs with prior approval of Architect or Structural Engineer for method and procedure, using specified epoxy adhesive and mortar.
- G. Repair methods not specified above may be used, subject to acceptance of Architect.

3.16 END OF SECTION 03300.

1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Documents

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 Summary

- A. This Section includes unit masonry assemblies consisting of , but not limited to the following:
  - 1. Concrete Masonry Units
  - 2. Brick unit masonry
  - 3. Mortar and Grout
  - 4. Insulation in masonry walls
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
  - 1. Division 7 Section "Flashing and Sheet Metal" for exposed sheet-metal flashing installed in masonry
  - 2. Division 7 Section-07910 - "Joint Sealants" for sealing joint in mockup
  - 3. Division 7 - Section 07720 - Wall flashing
  - 4. Division 7 - Section 07180 -Dampproofing
  - 5. Division 8 - Section 08110 -Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
- C. Products installed but not furnished under this Section include the following:
  - 1. Hot dip-galvanized Steel lintels for unit masonry
  - 2. Wood nailers and blocking built into unit masonry
  - 3. Manufactured reglets in masonry joints for metal flashing specified in Division 7 Section "Flashing and Sheet Metal."

1.3 Submittals

- A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data for each different masonry unit, accessory, and other manufactured product specified.
- C. Samples for initial selection of the following:
  - 1. Unit masonry samples in full size form showing the full range of colors and textures available for each different exposed masonry unit required.
- D. Samples for verification of the following:
  - 1. Full-size units for each different exposed masonry unit required showing the full range of exposed colors, textures, and dimensions to be expected in the completed construction.

- a. Include size-variation data for Type FBS brick, verifying that actual range of sizes for brick falls within ASTM C 216 dimension tolerances.
  - b. Weep holes/vents in color to match mortar color.
- 2. Accessories embedded in the masonry.
- E. List of Materials Used in Construction Mockups: List generic names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, source of supply and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.
  - 1. Submittal is for information only. Neither receipt of list nor approval of mockup constitutes approval of deviations from the Contract Documents, unless such deviations are specifically brought to the attention of the Architect and approved in writing.
- F. Material certificates for the following, signed by manufacturer and Contractor, certifying that each material complies with requirements.
  - 1. Each different cement product required for mortar and grout, including name of manufacturer, brand, type, and weight slips at time of delivery.
  - 2. Each material and grade indicated for reinforcing bars.
  - 3. Each type and size of joint reinforcing.
  - 4. Each type and size of anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- G. Material test reports from a qualified independent testing agency, employed and paid by Contractor or manufacturer, indicating and interpreting test results relative to compliance of the following proposed masonry materials with requirements indicated:
  - 1. Mortar complying with property requirements of ASTM C 270.
  - 2. Grout complying with property requirements of ASTM C 476.
  - 3. Masonry units complying with property requirements of ASTM C90.
- H. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

#### 1.4 Quality Assurance

- A. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each clay masonry unit indicated, per ASTM C 67
- B. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each different concrete masonry unit indicated, per ASTM C 140
- C. Mortar Test: Test mortar properties per test methods of ASTM C 270
- D. Evaluate mortar composition and properties per ASTM C 780
- E. Grout Test: Test grout for compressive strength per ASTM C 1019
- F. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies with fire resistance ratings determined per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency, by equivalent concrete masonry thickness, or by another means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- G. Single-Source Responsibility for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from one source and by a single manufacturer for each different product required.
- H. Single-Source Responsibility for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from one manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.
- I. Mockup: Prior to installing unit masonry, construct sample wall panel(s) to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects as well as other qualities of materials and execution. Build mockups to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for final unit of Work.
  - 1. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."
  - 2. Locate mockups on site in the locations indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
    - a. Include exterior face brick wall with field and accent brick and a control joint.
    - b. Seal control joint complying with Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants".
  - 3. Build mockups for the following types of masonry full thickness, including face and back-up wythes as well as accessories. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches long in each mockup.
    - a. Typical exterior face brick wall with through wall flashing installed for a 24 inch length in corner of mockup approximately 16" down from top of mockup with a 12 inch length of flashing left exposed to view (omit masonry above half of flashing).
    - b. Typical interior masonry unit wall.
    - c. Clean exposed faces of mockups with masonry cleaner "Sure Klean 600" or other masonry manufacturer approved cleaner.
    - d. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
  - 4. Notify Architect one week in advance of the dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  - 5. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed work.
    - a. Acceptance of mockup is for color, texture and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; aesthetic qualities of workmanship and other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
    - b. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from Contract Documents contained in mockups, unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect in writing.
    - c. When directed, demolish and remove mockups from Project site.
    - d. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.5 Special Inspections

Cooperate and adhere to the requirements of 2015 International Building Code - Special Inspections. All masonry and masonry reinforcing shall be subject to special inspections and

observations, at stage intervals deemed necessary, by the Owners' third party Inspector, Engineer and/or the Architect prior to grout filling.

1.6 Special Markings

- A. The contractor shall chalk-line mark the floor slab for masonry wall locations.
- B. The contractor shall mark on the floor slab location of reinforcing dowels to serve grouted cells so as to be clear as to locations of vertical cell reinforcement.
- C. The contractor shall mark the concrete sub-floor with temporary marker paint to identify location of structural CMU reinforcing dowels so as to accurately locate reinforced cells during wall erection. Markings should be transferred to CMU surfaces as installation allows.
- D. Prefabricated Corner and "T" Wall Reinforcing - upon arrival to the job site and while material is in bundle state, the ends shall be spray painted in the field with permanent bright red paint for easy recognition during site inspections.

1.7 Special Sequencing

- A. After the special markings have been provided and prior to the start of CMU installation, an inspection of the concrete floor slab and CMU reinforcing dowels shall be required.
- B. CMU wall construction designed to receive structural reinforcement and cell grouting shall be installed in such sequencing as to consolidate the work of placing reinforcement and cell grouting to minimum concentrate intervals encompassing such significant quantities as to warrant truck delivery of ready-mixed grout.
- C. The work event of placing structural reinforcement and grouting shall require continuous special observation by the Owner's third party Inspector(s) as required by the 2015 International Building Code. Grout mix samples shall be required for testing purposes. The General Contractor shall directly schedule special masonry observations at least 24 hours in advance and notify Architect accordingly. Cost associated with special sequencing shall be considered and included in base bid.

1.8 Delivery, Storage, and Handling

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, corrosion, and other causes. If units become wet, do not install until they are in an air-dried condition.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.9 Project Conditions

- A. Protection of Masonry: During erection, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.



1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides and hold cover securely in place.
  2. Where one wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe and hold cover in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least 3 days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter by coverings spread on ground and over wall surface.
  2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt on completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen subgrade or setting beds. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or freezing conditions. Comply with the following requirements:
1. Cold-Weather Construction: When the ambient temperature is within the limits indicated, use the following procedures:
    - a. 40 to 32 deg F: Heat mixing water or sand to produce mortar temperatures between 40 and 120 deg F
  2. Cold-Weather Protection: When the mean daily temperature is within the limits indicated, provide the following protection:
    - a. 40 to 25 deg F : Cover masonry with a weather-resistant membrane for 48 hours after construction.
    - b. 25 to 20 deg F: Cover masonry with insulating blankets or provide enclosure and heat for 48 hours after construction to prevent freezing. Install wind breaks when wind velocity exceeds 15 mi./h.
    - c. 20 deg F and Below: Provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above 32 deg F within the enclosure for 48 hours after construction.
  3. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and above and will remain so until masonry has dried out, but not less than 7 days after completion of cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Protect unit masonry work when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from mortar and grout. Provide artificial shade and wind breaks and use cooled materials as required. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of 100 deg F and above.

## 2.0 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 Manufacturers

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
1. Brick:
    - a. Acme Brick Co.
    - b. Belden Brick Co.
    - c. Cherokee Sanford Group, Inc.
    - d. US Brick
    - e. Boren
    - f. Triangle
    - g. Boral
    - h. Tri-State
  2. Portland Cement, Mortar Cement, Masonry Cement, and Lime:
    - a. Essroc Materials, Inc.
    - b. Glen-Gery Corporation
    - c. Lafarge Corporation
  3. Joint Reinforcement, Ties, and Anchors:
    - a. Dur-O-Wal, Inc.
    - b. Heckman Building Products, Inc.
    - c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - d. Wire-Bond

### 2.2 Concrete Masonry Units

- A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows for each form of concrete masonry unit required:
1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sash, control joints, headers, bonding and other special conditions.
  2. Bullnose units are required for all outside corners of vertical surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 90 and as follows:
1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2,000 psi.
  2. Weight Classification: **NORMAL**
  3. Aggregates: Do not use aggregate made from pumice, scoria or tuff.
  4. Provide Type N-I moisture controlled units
  5. Size: Manufactured to the actual dimensions indicated on Drawings within tolerances specified in the applicable referenced ASTM specification. Typical unit 8" nominal, 6" nominal, 4" nominal, or 12" nominal as indicated on drawings.

### 2.3 Brick (Alternate)

- A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows for each form of brick required.

1. Provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished for ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces.
- B. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing.
1. Provide special shapes for applications where stretcher units cannot accommodate special conditions, including those at corners, movement joints, bond beams, sashes and lintels.
  2. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
- C. Face Brick: ASTM C 216 and as follows:
1. Grade and Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with grade and minimum average net-area compressive strength indicated below:
    - a. Grade: SW. With color through brick to match existing school brick predominant on buildings in the school complex or as otherwise selected by the architect.
  2. Type: FBS. With color through brick as selected by the architect.
  3. Size: Bricks manufactured to the following actual dimensions within tolerances specified in ASTM C 216:
    - a. Standard: 3-5/8 inches thick by 2-1/4 inches high by 7-5/8 inches long.
  4. Application: Use where brick is exposed, unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Color and Texture: As selected by the architect.
- D. Brick Schedule
1. Contractor to provide brick to match existing adjacent brick as approved by the Architect.

#### 2.4 Mortar and Grout Materials

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
- B. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91
- C. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S (for CMU) Type N (for face brick).
- D. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207.
- E. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144; except for joints less than 1/4 inch, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
1. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand and or ground white stone.
- F. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
- G. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.

- H. Cold Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494, Type C; and recommended by the manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
- I. Ready-Mixed Mortar: Cementitious materials, water, and aggregate complying with requirements specified in this Article; combined with set-controlling admixtures to produce a ready-mixed mortar complying with ASTM C 1142.
- J. Water: Potable.
- K. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - 1. Cold Weather Admixture:
    - a. "Accelguard 80"; Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. "Morset"; W. R. Grace & Co.
  - 2. Mortar shall be approved equal to Lafarge as selected by Architect from full range of mortar colors available.

## 2.5 Ties and Anchors, General

- A. General: Provide ties and anchors specified in subsequent articles that comply with requirements for metal and size of this Article, unless otherwise indicated. Provide ties that will extend into the brick veneer a minimum of one half of the veneer width.
- B. Wire: As follows:
  - 1. Galvanized Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 153, Class B-2 coating for wire ties and anchors in exterior walls.
  - 2. Wire Diameter: 0.1875 inch.

## 2.6 Bent Wire Ties and Cornices

- A. Individual units prefabricated from bent wire to comply with requirements indicated below:
  - 1. Type for Masonry where Wythes are of Different Material: Adjustable ties composed of 2 parts; 1 with pintles, the other with eyes; with maximum misalignment of 1-1/4 inches. Ties shall be long enough to extend through rigid wall insulation and into outer wythe a minimum of 2 inches.
- B. Joint Reinforcement: Provide welded-wire units prefabricated with deformed continuous side rods and plain cross rods into straight lengths of not less than 10', with prefabricated corner and tee units, and complying with requirements indicated below:
  - 1. Width: Fabricate joint reinforcement in units with widths of approximately 2" less than nominal width of walls and partitions as required to provide mortar coverage of not less than 5/8" on joint faces exposed to exterior and 1/2" elsewhere.
  - 2. Ladder design with cross rods spaced not more than 16" o.c. One side rod for each face shell of concrete masonry back-up and one rod for brick wythe.
  - 3. Wire Size: 0.1875" diameter for deformed rods; No. 9 cross rods.  
Hot dipped galvanized, Class 3. H. Reinforcing;
  - 4. Brick to block ties: 3/16" diameter adjustable double hook & eye; Hohmann & Barnard Lox-All Adjustable Eye-Wire, Dur-o-wall or equal.

## 2.7 Embedded Flashing Materials

### A. Vinyl Flashing:

1. Thickness: 40 mil thick.
2. Application: Use where flashing is fully concealed in masonry

### B. Adhesive for Flashings: Of type recommended by manufacturer of flashing material for use indicated.

### C. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Vinyl Flashing:
  - a. Gibraltar
  - b. Nervastral
  - c. AFCO

## 2.8 Single-Wythe CMU Flashing

### Single-Wythe Concrete Masonry Unit Drainage System: BlockFlash™

Install CMU cell flashing pans with built in adjoining bridge made from recycled polypropylene with chemical stabilizers that prevent UV degradation. Flashing pans have a sloped design to direct moisture to the integrated weep spout. Designed to be built into mortar bed joints to expel moisture (unimpeded by mortar droppings) to the exterior of CMU walls. Drainage Mats and Insect Guards included. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "BlockFlash™" as manufactured by Mortar Net Solutions.

## 2.9 Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories

### A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Type 2, Class A, Grade 1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from Neoprene.

### B. Preformed Metal Control-Joints: Heckman 16 oz. copper – Type 93U, designed to fit brick size and configuration as indicated.

### C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

### D. Weep Holes: Provide the following:

1. Wicking material; Cotton sash cord in length required to produce 2 inch exposure on exterior and 18 inches in cavity between wythes.

### E. Sealer for Brick: Prosoco-Siloxane-Weather Seal

### F. Rebar Positioners: 3/16" diameter, hot-dipped galvanized and provided at 48" vertical centers in each reinforced cell.

## 2.10 Wall Reinforcement and Anchors

### A. Continuous wall reinforcement at 16" o.c. for all masonry walls shall be hot-dipped galvanized and of either truss or ladder design with tabs for exterior two wyth walls. Reinforcement shall have not less than No. 9 steel wire cross rods and No. 9 deformed side rods. Wires shall conform to ASTM A82. Reinforcement shall have a drip when used in cavity walls, use rectangular pintle sections 16" o.c. in back-up masonry and adjustable double eyelet sections in face brick where rigid insulation is indicated or required in cavity space or where face brick and back-up masonry is not

run up together. Use manufacturer's pre-formed corners and intersecting sections and splice as recommended. Basis of material selection shall be Hohmann & Barnard #270 or approved equals by Heckmann Building Products, Wire Bond and Dur-O-Wall.

#### 2.11 Masonry Cleaners

- A. Job Mixed Detergent Solution: Solution of ½ cup dry measure tetrasodium polyphosphate and 1/2 cup dry measure laundry detergent dissolved in 1 gallon of water.
- B. Proprietary Detergent Solution: Manufacturer's standard strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence and other new construction stains from new masonry surfaces as acceptable to masonry material manufacturer. "Sure Klean" No. 600 Detergent; ProSoCo, Inc., or approved equal. Do not use acid cleaners.

#### 2.12 Mortar and Grout Mixes

- A. General: Do not add admixtures including coloring pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water repellent agents, anti-freeze compounds or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
- B. Mixing: Combine and thoroughly mix cementitious, water and aggregates in a mechanical batch mixer; comply with referenced ASTM standards for mixing time and water content.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, for types of mortar required, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to portland cement-lime.
  - 2. Use Type S or N mortar.
- D. Colored Pigmented Mortar: Select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not exceed pigment-to-cement ratio of 1-to-10, by weight.
- E. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476 for grout for use in construction of reinforced and non-reinforced unit masonry. Use grout of consistency indicated or if not otherwise indicated, of consistency (fine or coarse) at time of placement which will completely fill all spaces intended to receive grout. Grout to have minimum 2,500 psi compressive strength at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C1019.
  - 1. Use fine grout in grout spaces less than 2" in horizontal direction, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Use coarse grout in grout spaces 2" or more in least horizontal dimension, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 Examination

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of unit masonry. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of unit masonry.
  - 2. Examine rough-in and built-in construction to verify actual locations of piping connections prior to installation.

#### 3.2 General

- A. Lay out all masonry work according to the dimensions shown on the drawings. No work shall be laid unless the temperature is 35° F. and rising.
- B. All masonry work shall be laid straight, level, plumb, and true. Exterior walls shall be laid continuously around the entire structure and in no case racked up more than five (5) feet.
- C. Build in all flashing, anchors, reinforcing, inserts, wall plugs, lintels, bearing plates, bond beams and items as required to accommodate the work of others.
- D. All special details such as chases, openings, expansion joints, projections, corbels, etc., shall be built as required and/or indicated on the drawings.
- E. Lay all masonry, brick and block in full bed of mortar completely filling all joints with mortar. Allow for caulking joints at all window and door frames, and at all wall intersections.
- F. Joints of all exposed masonry surfaces shall be finished after the mortar has taken its initial set. Use a straight edge for horizontal joints. Vertical joints shall be in alignment from top to bottom.
- G. At the end of each day or when rain or frost is imminent, the tops of masonry walls and similar surfaces shall be properly protected by covering top of wall with a strong waterproof membrane well secured in place.
- H. Consult all other trades in advance and make provisions for the installation of their work to avoid cutting and patching. Do all cutting and patching of masonry required to accommodate work of others.
- I. Unfinished work shall be stepped back to permit joining of new work. Masonry work may be toothed only when approved. Before connecting new work with work previously built, sweep clean, remove loose mortar and thoroughly wet the old brick.
- J. As the work progresses, mortar daubs and smears shall be cleaned from masonry work.
- K. Door frames shall be set before the masonry walls are built. As the masonry walls are built around these frames, the inside of the frames shall be grouted solid with mortar. NOTE: See HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES - SECTION 08110 for requirements to coat interior of frames prior to grouting.

- L. Extend all rated walls to the underside of structural deck above unless otherwise approved. Fit walls neatly with all joints filled where two levels of ceiling occur, extend walls to high level. Extend all partition walls to 8" above adjacent ceiling.
- M. Weep holes: Provide weep holes in head joints 32" o.c. at thru wall flashing where air space is not open downward. Weep holes shall be below finish floor line and above finish grade.
- N. MORTAR IN CONTACT WITH COPPER PIPING WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED. Coordinate with plumbing or mechanical contractor if copper is encountered without sleeving/insulation. Anticipate additional corrective work.

### 3.3 Installation, General

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to the full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to the actual thickness of the masonry units, using units of thickness indicated.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections of the Specifications.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completion of masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to the opening.
- D. Cut masonry units with motor-driven saws to provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Cut units as required to provide continuous pattern and to fit adjoining construction. Use full-size units without cutting, where possible. Allow units cut with water-cooled saws to dry before placing, unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- E. Mix units for exposed unit masonry from several pallets or cubes as they are placed to produce uniform blend of colors and textures.
- F. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.
- G. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick prior to laying if the initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested per ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb the water so they are damp but not wet at the time of laying.

### 3.4 Construction Tolerances

- A. Variation from Plumb: For vertical lines and surfaces of columns, walls, and arrises, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 10 feet, nor 3/8 inch in 20 feet, nor 1/2 inch in 40 feet or more. For external corners, expansion joints, control joints, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 20 feet, nor 1/2 inch in 40 feet or more. For vertical alignment of head joints, do not exceed plus or minus 1/4 inch in 10 feet, nor 1/2 inch maximum.
- B. Variation from Level: For bed joints and lines of exposed lintels, sills, parapets, horizontal grooves, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 20 feet, nor 1/2 inch in 40 feet or more. For top surface of bearing walls, do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet, nor 1/16 inch within width of a single unit.



- C. Variation of Linear Building Line: For position shown in plan and related portion of columns, walls, and partitions, do not exceed 1/2 inch in 20 feet, nor 3/4 inch in 40 feet ) or more.
- D. Variation in Cross-Sectional Dimensions: For columns and thickness of walls, from dimensions shown, do not exceed minus 1/4 inch nor plus 1/2 inch .
- E. Variation in Mortar-Joint Thickness: Do not vary from bed-joint thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch. Do not vary bed-joint thickness from bed-joint thickness of adjacent course by more than 1/8 inch. Do not vary from head-joint thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary head-joint thickness from adjacent head-joint thickness by more than 1/8 inch. Do not vary from collar-joint thickness indicated by more than minus 1/4 inch or plus 3/8 inch.

### 3.5 Laying Masonry Walls

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint widths and for accurate locating of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid the use of less-than-half-size units at corners, jambs, and where possible at other locations.
- B. Lay walls to comply with specified construction tolerances, with courses accurately spaced and coordinated with other construction.
- C. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry:
  - 1. Lay Brick in running bond pattern
  - 2. Lay CMU in stacked bond pattern
- D. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe as above. Do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- E. Stopping and Resuming Work: In each course, rack back 1/2-unit length for one-half running bond or 1/3-unit length for one-third running bond; do not tooth. Clean exposed surfaces of set masonry, wet clay masonry units lightly if required, and remove loose masonry units and mortar prior to laying fresh masonry.
- F. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build-in items specified under this and other Sections of the Specifications. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- G. Fill space between hollow metal frames and masonry solidly with mortar, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath in the joint below and rod mortar or grout into core.
- I. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Build nonload-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above and as follows:
  - 1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.

2. Wedge nonload-bearing partitions against structure above with small pieces of tile, slate, or metal. Fill joint with mortar after dead-load deflection of structure above approaches final position.

### 3.6 Mortar Bedding and Jointing

- A. Lay hollow concrete masonry units as follows:
  1. With full mortar coverage on horizontal and vertical face shells.
  2. Bed all webs in mortar.
  3. For starting course on footings where cells are not grouted, spread out full mortar bed, including areas under cells.
  4. Maintain joint widths indicated, except for minor variations required to maintain bond alignment. If not indicated, lay walls with 3/8-inch joints.
  5. Fill bottom course of all CMU solid with mortar.
  6. Fill all courses of CMU adjacent to fill in area of ramp and stage solid with mortar.
- B. Lay solid brick-size masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
  1. Lay all brick with full head and bed joints.
  2. At cavity walls, bevel beds away from cavity to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity. As work progresses, trowel mortar fins protruding into cavity flat against cavity face of brick.
  3. Maintain joint widths indicated, except for minor variations required to maintain bond alignment. If not indicated, lay walls with 1/4 to 3/8 inch joints. Three brick courses and three mortar courses in 8 inch vertical to course with CMU.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cut joints flush for masonry walls that are to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint), unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.7 Structural Bonding of Multiwythe Masonry

- A. Use individual metal ties installed in horizontal joints to bond wythes together. Provide ties as shown, but not less than 1 metal tie for 4 sq. ft. of wall area spaced not to exceed 24 inches o.c. horizontally and vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within 12 inches of openings and space not more than 36 inches apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than 24 inches o.c. vertically.
- B. Corners: Provide interlocking masonry unit bond in each course at corners, unless otherwise shown. Provide continuity with horizontal joint reinforcing at corners by using pre-fabricated "L" units as well as masonry bonding.
- C. Intersecting and Abutting Walls: Unless vertical expansion or control joints are shown at juncture, provide same type of bonding specified for structural bonding between wythes and space by providing continuity with horizontal joint reinforcing at corners by using pre-fabricated "T" units.

### 3.8 Cavities

- A. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Strike joints facing cavities flush.
  - 1. Use wood strips temporarily placed in cavity to collect mortar droppings. As work progresses, remove strips, clean off mortar droppings, and replace in cavity.
  - 2. Tie exterior wythe to back-up with individual metal ties. Stagger alternate courses.

### 3.9 Anchoring Masonry to Structural Members

- A. Anchor masonry to structural members where masonry abuts or faces structural members to comply with the following:
  - 1. Space weldable rebar couplers at horizontal bond beams as indicated, but not more than 24 inches o.c. vertically.

### 3.10 Cavity Wall and Masonry Cell Insulation

- A. On units of plastic board insulation, place small dabs of adhesive, spaced approximately 12 inches o.c. both ways on inside face or attach to inside face with plastic fasteners designed for this purpose. Verify compatibility of adhesive and bituminous dampproofing specified in Division 7. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other confining obstructions in cavity, with edges butted tightly both ways. Press units firmly against inside wythe of masonry or other construction as shown.
- B. Fill cracks and open gaps in insulation with crack sealer compatible with insulation and masonry.

### 3.11 Horizontal Joint Reinforcement

- A. General: Provide continuous horizontal joint reinforcement as indicated. Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2" elsewhere. Lap reinforcing a minimum of 6 inches.
  - 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches vertically o.c.
  - 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
  - 3. Provide reinforcement in mortar joints 1 block course above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond opening.
    - a. Reinforcing above is in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Cut or interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at corners and wall intersections by using prefabricated "L" and "T" sections. Cut and bend reinforcement units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures and other special conditions.

### 3.12 Control and Expansion Joints

- A. General: Install control and expansion joints in unit masonry where indicated. Build-in related items as the masonry progresses. Do not form a continuous span through

movement joints unless provisions are made to prevent in-plane restraint of wall or partition movement.

- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry by installing preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
- C. Form expansion joints in brick made from clay or shale by forming an open joint of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch for installation of sealant and backer rod specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants." Maintain joint free and clear of mortar.

### 3.13 Lintels

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide pre-cast masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches for brick size units and 24 inches for block size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- C. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.14 Flashing, Weep Holes, and Vents

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to the downward flow of water in the wall, and where indicated.
- B. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer before covering with mortar.
- C. Install flashing as follows:
  - 1. At composite masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing from exterior face of outer wythe of masonry, through the outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 4 inches and through the inner wythe to within 1/2 inch of the interior face of the wall in exposed masonry. Where interior surface of inner wythe is concealed by furring, carry flashing completely through the inner wythe and turn up approximately 2 inches unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. At lintels and shelf angles extend flashing a minimum of 4 inches into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 4 inches at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches to form a pan.
  - 3. Flashing installation is to be inspected and approved in writing by Architect before proceeding with masonry work.
- D. Install weep holes in the head joints in exterior wythes of the first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing and as follows:
  - 1. Form weep holes with product specified in Part 2 of this Section.
  - 2. Form weep holes by keeping head joints free and clear of mortar.
  - 3. Space weep holes 24 inches o.c.
- E. Trim wicking material used in weep holes flush with outside face of wall after mortar has set.
  - 1. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.

- F. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where shown to be built into masonry.

### 3.15 Grouting of CMU Walls

- A. Contractor to notify Owner's Testing Agent prior to all grouting of steel reinforced CMU.
- B. All cavities with steel reinforcing to be cleaned of all debris and broken CMU prior to filling with grout.
- C. All reinforcing steel in cells to be filled with grout or concrete to be continuous with laps as required by code.
- D. Grout for filled masonry cells is not to be dropped more than five (5) feet.

### 3.16 Repairing, Pointing and Cleaning

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or if units do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar or grout, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point-up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for application of sealants.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears prior to tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
  - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
  - 3. Protect adjacent stone and non-masonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent, polyethylene film or waterproof masking tape.
  - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing the surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
  - 5. Clean brick by bucket and brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Note No. 20 Revised, using approved masonry cleaner.
  - 6. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2 applicable to type of stain present on exposed surfaces.
- E. Protection: Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure unit masonry is without damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

### 3.17 Sealing of Brick

- A. Take precautions to avoid harm to building occupants, pedestrians, nearby property and all non-masonry surfaces from contact with sealer and fumes. Protect and/or divert auto and pedestrian traffic.

- B. Test masonry (minimum 4 ft x 4 ft area) before overall application to assure compatibility and desired water repellent results. (Treated and cured masonry should shed water and not wet out.) Apply tests using the same equipment as for job application and allow to cure 24 to 48 hours. Test panels should remain available for inspection by Architect.
- C. Surface Preparation:
  - 1. Fill all cracks and voids to avoid penetration of fumes into the building. (Such openings may permit moisture, sealer or sealer fumes to penetrate wall.) Make sure that all caulks and sealants are in place and completely cured.
  - 2. Clean dirt, oil and other contaminants from the surface. Use appropriate proprietary cleaners (do not use raw acids) where necessary. Rinse with pressure equipment at 500 to 1,500 psi to thoroughly remove all detergent residues. Do not apply to surfaces that are wet to the touch. Best results are obtained on dry surfaces. Internal moisture should also be dissipated.

3.18 Masonry Waste Disposal

- A. Recycling: Undamaged, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property and shall be removed from the project site.

END OF SECTION

1.0 - GENERAL

- 1.1 Scope  
Furnish and install all miscellaneous metals as indicated on drawings, including that shown only on Architectural Drawings, and/or as specified.
- 1.2 Submittals  
Submit shop drawings for approvals.
- 1.3 Applicable Standards  
Fabrication and erection, except as specified otherwise, shall be in accordance with American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC) Specifications for the Design, Fabrication and Erection of Structural Steel for Building.
- 1.4 Qualification  
Manufacturer's names, models, or catalog numbers, referred to herein are intended to show the type, quality and intent of items required. Products of other manufacturers equal or better in quality, similar in design are acceptable subject to the Architect's approval.
- 1.5 Substitutions  
Substitutions of sections or modifications of details, shall be submitted with the shop drawings for approval. Approved substitutions, modifications, and necessary changes in related portions of the work shall be coordinated by the contractor and shall be accomplished as no additional cost.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 General Materials
  - A. Metals shall be free from defects impairing strength, durability, or appearance and of the best commercial quality for the purposes specified. All materials shall be new materials and shall have structural properties to sustain safely or withstand strains or stressed to which normally subjected. All exposed fastenings shall be of same material, color and finish as the metal to which applied unless otherwise shown.
  - B. Provide all accessories such as anchors, hangers, belts, toggle bolts, expansion bolts, rods, shelf angles, clip angles, shims, connections, stiffeners, reinforcements, screws, etc., required for proper complete fabrication, assembly and installation of all miscellaneous steel, metal work and masonry. Bolts, screws, expansion bolts, toggle bolts, etc, shall be brass, bronze, stainless steel or aluminum when used with these metals.
  - C. Steel lintels and miscellaneous structural shapes where called for shall be of shapes, lengths and weights, as shown and detailed on the drawings, spanning openings where so indicated, shall be complete with bolts, anchors, etc., for building in. Lintels shall not have less than eight (8") inch bearing upon masonry.
  - D. Galvanized steel shall be hot-dipped galvanized in accordance with the Standard Specifications of the American Hot-Dip Galvanizing Association. Galvanizing shall be done after fabrication.
  - E. All materials shall be well formed to shape and size with sharp lines. Conceal fasteners where practical. Thickness of metals and details of assembly and

supports shall give ample strength.

- F. Welding shall conform to American Welding Society's Standard Code for Arc and Gas Welding in Building Construction. Welding shall be continuous along entire area of contact, except where tack welding is specifically shown or specified. Tack welding will not be permitted on exposed surface. Grind all exposed welds smooth.

## 2.2 Painting and Protective Coating

- A. Thoroughly clean off all miscellaneous metal, using power tool cleaning to remove all dirt, grease, rust, and scale and foreign matter.
- B. Treat only concealed galvanized metal with galvanized metal primer as per manufacturer's directions before painting. Exposed galvanized metal to be primed and finished under Painting Section.
- C. Unless otherwise specified, paint all metal items, including concealed galvanized metal, one shop coat of Red or Grey oxide zinc chromate TT-P-636-C. Surfaces inaccessible after assembly shall be painted before assembly. Work paint thoroughly into joints, etc. Do not paint bronze, aluminum or stainless steel.
- D. Insulate faces of all metals in contact with different metals, wood, masonry, and/or concrete; give each contact surface one coat approved alkali-resistant bituminous paint. Let both surfaces dry before installing metals.

## 2.3 Miscellaneous Metal Items

The following items are intended as a guide to such work in this project and do not necessarily limit the scope of this section.

- A. All structural shapes indicated and/or required.
- B. Miscellaneous Steel Lintels. Provide miscellaneous steel lintels indicated on Architectural and/or Structural Drawings or as required. All miscellaneous steel lintels are subject to structural engineer's review and approval.
- C. Downspout Boots shall be equal to Jay R Smith MFG. Co. (Smith Industries) special downspout boots. Cast Iron Body with 3" Bronze Access Plug and Strap with 5/16" Dia. Cast Holes for flat head bolts, Typical. 5 x 4 Size.

## 3.0 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 Fabrication

- A. Verify measurements in field for work fabricated to fit job conditions.
- B. Fabricate form work true to detail with clean, straight, sharply defined profiles. Iron shall have smooth finished surfaces unless indicated otherwise. Shearing and punching shall leave clean, true lines and surfaces.
- C. Fastenings shall be concealed where practical. Thickness of metal and details of assembly and supports shall give ample strength and stiffness. Joints exposed to the weather shall be formed to exclude water. Provide holes and connections for the work of other trades.
- D. Joints shall be rigid at adjoining sections for a strong assembly. Weld or rivet permanent connections. Welds shall be continuous and finished flush and smooth on surfaces that will be exposed after installation. Do not use screws or bolts where it can be avoided; where screws or bolts are used, the heads shall be



countersunk, screwed up tight and threads nicked to prevent loosening. Unexposed welded joints may be continuous or spot welded as required. Remove weld spatter from adjacent surfaces.

3.2 Installation

- A. Erect work in thorough, first class manner with mechanics experienced in the erection of iron work.
- B. Work shall be strong, secure, and adequate for the purpose intended.
- C. Schedule delivery of items to be built into the masonry so as not to delay the progress of the work and to coordinate for proper installation.
- D. Place and properly secure to form work items such as anchors, sleeves, and inserts which are to be cast in concrete.

END OF SECTION



## BUILDING INSULATION - SECTION 07210

### 1.0 - GENERAL

- 1.1 Scope  
The work under this section consists of all building insulation except rigid roof insulation.
- 1.2 Submittals  
Submit samples of all materials hereinafter specified for approval.
- 1.3 Protection  
All thermal insulation shall be maintained dry throughout construction. Wet insulation shall be rejected.

### 2.0 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 Material
  - A. Unfaced Thermal insulation shall be batt, or blanket type to comply with requirements of International Building Code. ASTM - C665 Type III, Class A and ASTM E - 84. The insulating material shall be fire and decay-proof, moisture-resistant mineral or glass wool specifically designed for use in insulating batts.  
  
Thermal Resistance Values (R) as follows:  
  

R-30	9" - 10"
R-22	7"
R-19	6" - 6-1/2"
R-11	3-1/2" - 4"
  - B. Sound Attenuation Batt Insulation shall be 3-1/2" thick fiberglass insulation with a Noise Reduction coefficient of 1.05. Equal to Owens Corning.
  - C. Air/Vapor Barrier - Basis of Design: Spunbonded polyolefin, non-woven, non-perforated barrier equal to Dupont Tyvek Commercial Wrap, Class A and related assembly components. All seams, edges and penetrations shall be taped and sealed per manufacturer's recommendations.
    - 1. Shall be allowed as a substitution and similar to FSK facing material. As such this material would be used in conjunction with unfaced insulation and shall be provided continuous and attached to applicable framing members. All seams, edges and penetrations shall be taped and sealed per manufacturer's recommendations.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 Installation
  - A. Thermal Insulating material shall be laid tight and installed so as to avoid gaps and settlement. All voids, offsets, and bends shall be completely filled. R values shall be provided as indicated in single layer or multiple layers totaling the "R" value indicated. If multiple layers are used to meet total "R" value indicated, layers must be provided perpendicular to one another. The layer closest to the conditioned space must be provided with FSK facing on the interior face where visible for an inspection.

Insulation shall be laid tight and continuous over all areas where indicated.

- B. Sound Attenuation Batt Insulation shall be placed on ceiling or stud system and secured and sealed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and specifications. Place around or over mechanical equipment rooms, toilet rooms, window in-fill spaces, and other areas as indicated.
- C. Mesh, shall be provided for supporting overhead horizontal insulation and attached to applicable framing members as required, not to exceed 16" o.c. Mesh material shall be provided to maximize width as project conditions permit. Mesh fabric shall be steel wire type with nominal 2" grid. Continuous metal straps at 16" o.c. shall be an acceptable substitute.
- D. Air/Vapor Barrier - Shall be allowed as a substitution and similar to FSK facing material. As such this material would be used in conjunction with unfaced insulation and shall be provided continuous and attached to applicable framing members. All seams, edges and penetrations shall be taped and sealed per manufacturer's recommendations. Basis of Design: Spunbonded polyolefin, non-woven, non-perforated barrier equal to Dupont Tyvek Commercial Wrap, Class A and related assembly components.

END OF SECTION

## PRE-ENGINEERED METAL BUILDING INSULATION - SECTION 07213

### 1.0 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 Section Includes

- A. Pre-Engineered Building Insulation for Existing or New Construction.

#### 1.2 Related Sections

- A. Section 13100 - Pre-Engineered Metal Building System.
- B. Section 11490 – Gymnasium Equipment
- C. Division 15 - Fire Protection Systems.
- D. Division 15 - Mechanical; Rough-in utilities.
- E. Division 16 - Electrical; Rough-in utilities.

#### 1.3 References

- A. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- B. ASTM E 96 - Standard Test Method for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials in Sheet Form (Procedure B).
- C. ASTM C 665 - Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing.
- D. NFPA 255 - Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- E. UL 723 - Tests for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- F. ASTM C 1136 - Standard Specification for Flexible, Low Permeance Vapor Retarders for Thermal Insulation.

#### 1.4 Design Requirements

- A. Thermal Resistance of Installed System: R-Value as indicated on drawings.
- B. Insulating system shall have a continuous vapor barrier inside of building purlins, girts, and insulation to provide complete isolation from inside conditioned air.

#### 1.5 Submittals

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01350.
- B. Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.

2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
3. Installation instructions.

- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate locations of connections and attachments, general details, anchorages and method of anchorage and installation.
- D. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, two samples, minimum size 6 inches (150 mm) square or long, representing actual products required for this project.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify products meet or exceed specified requirements.

#### 1.6 Quality Assurance

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing product systems specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of this section.
- C. Insulation system components to include a ten-year limited material warranty.
- D. Wet Insulation shall be rejected and replacement shall be required.

#### 1.7 Delivery, Storage, And Handling

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Store products indoors and protect from moisture, construction traffic, and damage.

#### 1.8 Project Conditions

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

### 2.0 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 Manufacturers

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Thermal Design, Inc., Simple Saver System. Basis of Design.
- B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01360 and must be submitted to Architect at least 10 days prior to Bid. Pre-Approved manufacturers shall be notified in writing via Addendum.

#### 2.2 Materials

- A. Simple Saver System consists of Batt Insulation, Roof Insulation, Wall Insulation, Vapor Barrier Liner Fabric, Thermal Breaks, Straps, and other devices and components in an insulation system as follows:
1. Batt Insulation: ASTM C 991 Type 1; preformed formaldehyde-free glass fiber batt conforming to the following:
    - a. Thermal Resistance: As indicated on drawings.
    - b. Batt Size: Equal to purlin/girt spacing by manufacturer's standard lengths.
    - c. Unfaced.
  2. Roof Insulation: Formaldehyde-free fiberglass batt or fiberglass blanket complying with ASTM C 991 Type 1 and ASTM E 84 with a thermal resistance and thickness as follows:
    - a. As indicated on the drawings.
  3. Wall Insulation: Formaldehyde-free fiberglass blanket or batt complying with ASTM C 991 Type 1, ASTM E 136 and ASTM E 84 with a thermal resistance and thickness as follows:
    - a. As indicated on the drawings.
  4. Vapor Barrier Liner Fabric: Syseal® type woven, reinforced, high-density polyethylene yarns coated on both sides with a continuous white or colored polyethylene coatings, as follows:
    - a. Product complies with ASTM C 1136, Types I through Type VI.
    - b. Perm rating: 0.02 for fabric and for seams in accordance with ASTM E 96.
    - c. Flame/Smoke Properties:
      - 1) 25/50 in accordance with ASTM E 84.
      - 2) Self-extinguishes with field test using matches or butane lighter.
    - d. Ultra violet radiation inhibitor to minimum UVMAX® rating of 8.
    - e. Size and seaming: Manufactured in large custom pieces by extrusion welding from roll goods, and fabricated to substantially fit defined building area with minimum practicable job site sealing.
    - f. Provide with factory triple, extrusion welded seams. Stapled seams or heat-melted seams are not acceptable due to degradation of fabric.
    - g. Factory-folded to allow for rapid installation.
    - h. Color: White
  5. Vapor Barrier Lap Sealant: Solvent-based, Simple Saver polyethylene fabric sealant
  6. Vapor Barrier Tape: Double-sided sealant tape 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide by 1/32 inch (.79 mm) thick.
  7. Vapor Barrier Patch Tape: Single-sided, adhesive backed sealant tape 3 inches (76 mm) wide made from same material as Syseal® type liner fabric.
  8. Thermal Breaks:
    - a. 3/16 inch (4.7 mm) thick by 3 inch (76 mm) wide white, closed-cell polyethylene foam with pre-applied adhesive film and peel-off backing.
    - b. Polystyrene Snap-R snap-on thermal blocks.
  9. Straps:
    - a. 100 KSI minimum yield tempered, high-tensile-strength steel.

- b. Size: Not less than 0.020 inch (0.50 mm) thick by 1 inch (25 mm) by continuous length.
  - c. Galvanized, primed, and painted to match specified finish color on the exposed side.
  - d. Color: White.
10. Fasteners:
- a. For light gage steel: #12 by 3/4 (19 mm) inch plated Tek 2 type screws with sealing washer, painted white to match standard color.
  - b. For heavy gage steel: #12 by 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) plated Tek 4 type screws with sealing washer, painted white to match standard color.
11. Wall Insulation Hangers: Fast-R preformed rigid hangers, 32 inch (813 mm) long galvanized steel strips with barbed arrows every 8 inches (203 mm) along its length.

### 3.0 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 Examination

- A. Verify that building structure including all bracing and any concealed building systems are completed and approved prior to installing liner system and insulation in the structure.
- B. Correct any unsatisfactory conditions before proceeding.
- C. If conditions are the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

#### 3.2 Installation - General

- A. Install pre-engineered building insulation system in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and the approved shop drawings.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- C. Install in exterior spaces without gaps or voids. Do not compress insulation.
- D. Trim insulation neatly to fit spaces. Insulate miscellaneous gaps and voids.
- E. Fit insulation tight in spaces and tight to exterior side of the sealed liner fabric and around mechanical and electrical services within plane of insulation.

#### 3.3 Roof Insulation Installation

- A. Straps:
  - 1. Cut straps to length and install in the pattern and spacings indicated on shop drawings.
  - 2. Tension straps to required value.



- B. Vapor Barrier Fabric:
1. Install vapor barrier fabric in large one-piece custom fabricated pieces to substantially fit defined building areas with minimum practicable job site sealing.
  2. Position pre-folded fabric on the strap platform along one eave purlin.
  3. Clamp the two bottom corners at the eave and also centered on the bay.
  4. Pull the other end of the pleat-folded fabric across the building width on the strap platform, pausing only at the ridge to fasten the straps and fabric in position where plane of roof changes and to release temporary fasteners on the opposite ridge purlins.
  5. Once positioned, install fasteners from the bottom side at each strap/purlins intersection.
  6. Trim edges and seal along the rafters.
  7. All seams must be completely sealed and stapled seams not acceptable.
- C. Insulation:
1. Unpack, and shake to a thickness exceeding the specified thickness.
  2. Ensure that cavities are filled completely with insulation.
  3. Place on the vapor barrier liner fabric without voids or gaps.
  4. Place thermal block on top of purlins or bottom of purlins for retrofit work, if no other thermal break exists.
  5. Place new insulation between purlins at the required thickness for the R-value specified.
- D. Seal vapor barrier fabric to the wall fabric and elsewhere as required to provide a continuous vapor barrier.

### 3.4 Wall Insulation Installation

- A. Insulation:
1. Provide self-sticking foam thermal break to interior surface of girts prior to installation of insulation.
  2. Position and secure Fast-R hangers to girts on the inside face of the wall sheathing.
  3. Cut insulation to required lengths to fit vertically between girts.
  4. Fluff the insulation to the full-specified thickness.
  5. Neatly position in place and secure to Fast-R hangers.
  6. Ensure that cavities are filled completely with insulation.
- B. Vapor Barrier Fabric:
1. Provide vapor barrier fabric in large one-piece custom fabricated pieces to substantially fit defined building areas with minimum practicable job site sealing.
  2. Apply the vapor barrier fabric by clamping it in position over eave strap and installing fasteners through the eave strap into each roof strap, permanently clamping the wall fabric between them.
  3. Once in position, draw the vapor barrier fabric down over the column flanges to the base angle and install vertical straps along each column and 5 feet 0 inches on center, maximum, fastening

- 4. to each girt to retain system permanently in place.  
All seams must be completely sealed and stapled seams not acceptable.

- C. Seal wall fabric to the roof fabric, to the base angle and up the columns to provide a continuous vapor barrier.

### 3.5 Cleaning

- A. Clean dirt or exposed sealant from the exposed vapor barrier fabric.
- B. Remove scraps and debris from the site.

### 3.6 Protection

- A. Protect system products until completion of installation.
- B. Repair or replace damaged products before completion of insulation system installation.

END OF SECTION

1.0 - GENERAL

- 1.1 Scope  
The work under this section consists of thru-wall flashing.
- 1.2 Submittals  
Submit for approval all materials proposed for use under this section.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 Flashing (Masonry)  
Flashing shall be Polyvinyl Chloride, 30 mil (.030") waterproof sheeting equal to Wire-Bond or other pre-approved product.
- Flashing (Non-Masonry)  
Flashing shall be a self-adhering flexible membrane consisting of Elvaloy thermoplastic resin with the following physical properties:
- Tensile Strength: 2000 psi per ASTM D412  
Ultimate Elongation: 25 percent  
Shore A Hardness: 83 per ASTM D 2240  
Corners and End Dams; preformed shapes
- Acceptable Manufacturers:  
Flex Flash – as manufacture by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc. or pre-approved equal.
- Surface Adhered Membrane with Drip – as manufactured by Hyload Flashings
- DuPont Thru-Wall Flashings – as manufactured by DuPont Chemical Co.
- 2.2 Adhesive & Primers  
Adhesive & primers for bonding and splicing shall be as recommended by the manufacturer of the material used.

3.0 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 Extent  
Wall flashing shall generally be installed continuous at each floor level, over exterior wall openings, under sills, and at other locations as indicated and as required.
- 3.2 Installation
- A. All surfaces to receive the flashing shall be reasonably smooth, free from irregularities and primed as recommended by manufacturers installation instructions. On all masonry surfaces, the flashing shall be laid continuously in a fresh bed of mortar above and below. Only at non-masonry vertical surfaces shall flashing be affixed continuously with adhesive and term bar to hold flashing in place.
- B. At grade level floors, thru-wall flashing shall exit finish veneer minimum one course below finish floor and below weep holes.

END OF SECTION



1.0 - GENERAL

- 1.1 Scope  
The work under this section consists of caulking and sealants.
- 1.2 Work Included  
See the drawings for all items and places requiring caulking. Completely seal with specified caulking compound joints around door frame and frame base and window frames (inside and outside); all other openings in masonry, concrete, or precast concrete joints in or between precast concrete panels; beneath all exterior thresholds; around plumbing fixtures; all places indicated on the drawings to be caulked; and all other places where caulking is required, whether specifically shown on the drawings or not.
- 1.3 Submittals  
Submit for approval product literature and samples of all materials proposed for use. Colors to be approved in the field by the Architect to match adjacent construction color.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 Sealant
  - A. Exterior sealant shall be a gun grade one part silicone compound. Materials shall be Tremco Spectrem 1, Dow Corning No. 790 or Pecora No. 890, color as selected.
  - B. Primer, if required, for the silicone sealant shall be a quick drying clean primer as recommended by the manufacturer of the material used.
- 2.2 Caulking
  - A. Interior caulking compound shall be a paintable, one part, gun grade butyl rubber base material equal to Tremco Tremflex 834 Acrylic, Pecora BC-158 or DAP Butyl Flex or acrylic latex base caulking compound equal to Pecora AC-20 or DAP Latex Caulk.
  - B. Floor Caulking compound shall be a tintable, semi-self leveling polyurethane base equal to Tremco THC900/901. Colors shall be selected by Architect from manufacturers entire line of colors.
- 2.3 Fire Caulking  
All locations indicated and/or all penetrations or openings into fire barriers shall be sealed with fire caulk material meeting UL requirements for such application. Submit product literature indicating UL compliance for approval. All trades shall use same fire caulk product. Installer shall be certified by the manufacturer.
- 2.4 Compressible Joint Sealant  
Sealant shall be compressible polyurethane foam impregnated with polybutylene, Polytite as manufactured by Polytite Manufacturing Corporation, or other material as approved.
- 2.5 Filler  
Filler shall be polyethylene foam, polyurethane foam, untreated jute, pointing mortar or other oil-free materials subject to approval of the manufacturer of the caulking or sealant compound.

2.6 Accessories

- A. Bond breaker shall be polyethylene tape.
- B. Solvents, cleaning agents, and other accessory materials shall be as recommended by the sealant manufacturer.

3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 Joint Preparation

- A. Joints deeper than 1/2" shall be built up to a depth of 3/8" below adjacent surfaces with approved filler material prior to applying sealant. All surfaces must be clean and dry. Any protective coating or foreign matter such as oil, dust, grease, dirt, or frost on building materials that will impair bond shall be removed. Masonry and concrete surfaces shall be sound. If required by manufacturer's instructions, apply brush coat of primer to surfaces and allow to dry before applying sealant.
- B. At the option of the applicator, the surfaces next to the joints may be masked to obtain a clean neat line. Remove tape immediately after tooling the sealant.

3.2 Application

- A. Caulking or sealant shall be used from manufacturer's original cartridge in a standard open type, hand operated caulking gun. Nozzle shall be cut to proper size to obtain a neat, smooth and uniform bead. When handling bulk material, manufacturer's instructions shall be followed.
- B. A full bead of caulking or sealant shall be applied into joint under sufficient pressure, drawing nozzle across caulking or sealant to leave a slightly concave surface. Tool with a caulking tool or soft bristled brush moistened with solvent within 10 minutes after exposure. All sealed joints shall be watertight.
- C. Joints shall be caulked before painting adjacent work. Do not paint over silicone sealant compound.
- D. Fire caulk shall be installed to comply with manufacturer's requirements, UL requirements, and requirements of authority having jurisdiction.

3.3 Clean-up

On non-porous surfaces, excess uncured caulking shall be immediately removed with a solvent moistened cloth. On porous surfaces, excess caulking should be allowed to cure overnight, then remove by lightly wire brushing or sanding. All adjacent surfaces shall be clean and free from stains.

END OF SECTION

## HOLLOW METAL DOORS & FRAMES - SECTION 08110

### 1.0 - GENERAL

- 1.1 Scope  
Furnish and install all hollow metal doors and frames including view windows, as indicated on the drawings and herein specified.
- 1.2 Submittals  
A. Submit shop drawings for approval.  
B. Drawings shall show a schedule of openings using architectural opening numbers, all dimensions, jamb and head conditions, construction details, preparations for hardware, gauges, and finish.
- 1.3 Templates  
A. Manufacturer shall obtain templates of all applicable hardware from the Finish Hardware Contractor and make proper provision for the installation of this hardware.  
B. Unless otherwise specified in the hardware section of the specifications, hardware locations shall be in accordance with the recommendations of The National Builder's Hardware Association.
- 1.4 Marking and Storage  
Mark each frame for intended location. Store frames off the ground and in a manner to protect them from damage.
- 1.5 Storage  
A. Doors shall be stored in a dry, secure location to prevent exposure to weather and/or moisture.  
B. Frames shall be stored off the ground and protected from weather until in place.

### 2.0 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 Door Construction  
A. Exterior Doors: Formed up sheets not less than 16 U.S. gauge rigidly connected and reinforced inside with continuous interlocking 20-gauge hat stiffeners, spaced a maximum of 6" apart. Interior Doors: Formed up sheets not less than 18 U.S. gauge rigidly connected and reinforced inside with continuous interlocking 20-gauge hat stiffeners, spaced a maximum of 6" apart. Sound deadening material of rock wool batts, insulites or other standard recognized available sound deadening materials shall be placed between all stiffeners and plates. Honeycomb doors are not acceptable. Suitable provision shall be made to receive glass panels or louvers. Edge seams are to be continuously welded and ground smooth. Bondo seams are not acceptable.  
B. Louvers for interior metal doors shall be of sizes and types as indicated, inverted "V" with metal frame overlapping the door face.  
C. Louvers for exterior doors shall be of sizes and types as indicated, rainproof, 20 ga. galvanized steel. Provide No. 16 wire mesh screen at inside of louvers.  
D. Doors and frames shall be equal to Steelcraft, Curries, Pioneer or approved equal.

- E. Doors shall be coordinated with thresholds specified under FINISH HARDWARE - SECTION 08710 to meet A.D.A. requirements. Doors shall be extended as required to seal against threshold.
- F. Non-full height doors such as Toilet Stall Doors shall be provided with an inverted filler cap channel at head to maintain smooth uniformity at top of door surface.
- G. Hollow metal doors shall be provided with beveled hinge and lock edges. Bevel hinge and lock door edges 1/8 inch (3 mm) in 2 inches (50 mm).
- H. Exterior door face sheets shall be galvanized steel, level A60 (ASTM A653).
- I. Hardware preparation for hollow metal doors: hinge reinforcements shall be minimum 7-gauge x 9" length.
- J. Hardware Reinforcements:
1. Hinge reinforcements for full mortise hinges: minimum 7 gage [0.180" (4.7mm)].
  2. Lock reinforcements : minimum 16 gage [0.053" (1.3mm)].
  3. Closer reinforcements : minimum 14 gage [0.067" (1.7mm)], 20" long.
  4. Galvanized doors: include Galvanized hardware reinforcements. Include Galvanized components and internal reinforcements with Galvanized doors. Close tops of exterior swing-out doors to eliminate moisture penetration. Galvanized steel top caps are permitted.
  5. Projection welded hinge and lock reinforcements to the edge of the door.
  6. Provided adequate reinforcements for other hardware as required.
- K. Glass moldings and stops (both labeled and non-labeled doors):
1. Fabricate glass trim from 24 gage [.6mm] steel conforming to:
    - a. Interior openings ASTM designation A 366 cold rolled steel.
    - b. Exterior openings ASTM designation A 924 Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated Galvanized steel with a zinc coating of 0.06 ounces per square foot (A60) for exterior openings.
      - 1) Install trim into the door as a four-sided welded assembly with mitered, reinforced and welded corners.
      - 2) Trim: identical on both sides of the door.
      - 3) Exposed fasteners are not permitted. Labeled and non-labeled doors: use the same trim.
      - 4) Acceptable mounting methods:



- a) Fit into a formed area of the door face, not extending beyond the door face, and interlocking into the recessed area.
- b) Cap the cutout not extend more than 1/16" [1.6mm] from the door face.

L. Electrical Requirements for Doors:

General: Coordinate electrical requirements for doors and frames. Make provisions for installation of electrical items arranged so that wiring can be readily removed and replaced.

1. Doors with Electric Hinges:

- a. General: Furnish conduit raceway to permit wiring from electric door hardware.
- b. Hinge Locations: Provide electric hinge at intermediate or center location. Top or bottom electric hinge locations are not acceptable.
- c. Refer to 08710 for electrified hardware items.

2.2 Frame Construction

- A. Frames shall be of sizes as indicated, completely assembled, buck and frame formed from 14-gauge exterior, 16-gauge interior, steel with 2" face unless otherwise indicated and 5/8", minimum, integral stop. Exterior frames and interior frames at cafeteria, kitchen, locker room and shower areas shall be Galvannealed A60 (ASTM A653).
- B. Corners of frames to be mitered and continuously welded. Joints shall be pulled up tight, welded, and ground smooth with faces in correct alignment.
- C. Provide adjustable "T" type anchors, three to each jamb; welded angle clips at bottom of frames for anchorage to floor construction; detachable type metal spreaders. Jamb anchors shall be T-shaped and of the same thickness as the metal of the frames. Where "T" anchors are not feasible, provide anchors as required and/or recommended.
- D. Machine frames for attachment of hardware, including special reinforcing for extra heavy duty use, drilling, and tapping. Provide mortar tight metal dust boxes in back of lock location.
- E. Frames for sidelights shall be integral with door frames; borrowed light window frames and other openings shall be as detailed.
- F. Prepare frames for rubber silencers, three for single swing door and two for each pair of doors.
- G. Frames not extending to the floor surface shall have a closed welded jamb bottom.
- H. **While in the shop and prior to shipping, all frames to be installed in masonry shall be thoroughly coated on the inside surface with a bituminous water resistant paint.**
- I. Electrical Requirements for Frames:

1. General: Coordination all electrical requirements for doors and frames. Make provisions for installation of electrical items arranged so that wiring can be readily removed and replaced.
  - a. Provide cutouts and reinforcements required for metal door frame to accept electric components.
  - b. Frame with Electrical Hinges: Weld UL listed grout guard cover box welded over center hinge reinforcing. Top or bottom hinge locations are not permitted. Contractor to reference 3.01.E, for continuous hinges.
  - c. Provide cutouts and reinforcements required to accept security system components.
  - d. Refer to 08710 for electrified hardware items.
2. Provide mortar box, welded in head of door frame at exterior frames for future door contact switch provided by Owner. Size, type, location and conduit requirements to be provided by Owner.

#### 2.3 Labeled Assemblies

- A. All openings shall be protected by assemblies which include doors, frames, hardware, closing devices, anchorage, sills, etc. installed in accordance with NFPA Standard "FIRE DOORS and WINDOWS, NFPA 80," as per Standard Building Code.
- B. To further clarify the basic requirements and/or the correct method of labeling that will be acceptable; the labels will include, but not be limited to, the following:
  1. Location - Each component shall bear an embossed label located so as to be accessible after installation.
  2. Permanence - Each component shall bear an embossed label of a type of material and be so attached that the life of the label and the attachment thereof can reasonably be expected to equal the life of the component to which it is attached.
  3. Legibility - The embossed label design shall be such that it can be visible and legible at all times and must be clean of any paint or other coverage making the label illegible! Rating shall be indicated in minutes.
  4. Other Requirements - As directed by the approved laboratory or organization providing testing and follow-up services and labeling.

#### 2.4 Finish

- A. Metal doors and frames shall be thoroughly cleaned of dirt, grease, and impurities and shall be bonderized and finished with one coat of baked-on primer ready to receive finish paint.
- B. Primer shall be manufacturer's standard in accordance with ASTM B117.  
**Do not prime paint labels.**
- C. Final painting as specified and applied under Painting Section.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 Installation

- A. VERIFY THAT ALL FRAMES TO BE INSTALLED IN MASONRY HAVE BEEN COATED WITH A BITUMINOUS WATER RESISTANT PAINT IMMEDIATELY PRIOR TO INSTALLATION.
- B. Install frames plumb, rigid, and in true alignment; properly brace until built in. Set spreader and attached jambs to floor through floor anchors.
- C. In masonry openings, where required, install a second spreader at the mid-height of the door opening, and do not remove until the masonry jambs are in place. Spreader shall be notched wood of approximate jamb width and 1" minimum thickness. Install a minimum of three anchors per jamb to be imbedded in masonry joint as the wall is laid up.
- D. Frames shall be grouted solid.
- E. Doors shall be rigidly secured in frames, hardware applied, and adjusted to achieve smooth operation without forcing or binding. Doors shall be capable of maintaining any degree of opening.

#### 3.2 Protection

After installation, doors and frames shall be protected from damage during subsequent construction activities. Damaged doors and frames shall be replaced.

END OF SECTION



1.0 – GENERAL

1.1 Summary

A. Section Includes

Work under this section comprises of furnishing solid core doors (wood veneer faces and hardboard/MDF) light frames, factory fitting and machining and factory finishing for fire labeled and non labeled wood doors.

B. Related Documents

Related documents, drawings and general provisions of contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 specification sections apply to this section.

C. Related Sections

1. 08710 – Finish Hardware Schedule
2. 08110 – Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
3. 08420 – Storefront
4. 08810 – Glass Glazing
5. 09910 – Painting

1.2 References

A. Standards

1. NFPA-80 – Fire Doors and Windows
2. NFPA-105 – Recommend Practice for Installation of Smoke Controlled Door Assemblies
3. WDMA I.S. 1A – Wood Door Manufacturer's Association, Flush Wood Door Performance Standards
4. UL10C - Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

B. Codes

1. NFPA-101 – Life Safety Code
2. IBC 2015 – International Building Code
3. ANSI-A117.1 – Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.
4. ADA – Americans with Disabilities Act

1.3 Submittals

A. General Requirements

Submit copies of the wood door shop drawings in accordance with Section 01350.

B. Product Data

Submit shop drawings showing fabrication and installation of wood doors. Include details of door elevations, details of construction, location and installation requirements of door hardware.

C. Shop Drawings

1. Provide a schedule of doors and frames using same reference numbers for details and door openings as those on the contract documents. Shop drawings should include the following information:
  - a. Door core material.
  - b. Mortises and reinforcements.
  - c. Glazed and louvered openings and material.
  - d. Mounting locations of standard hardware.
  - e. Elevation drawings.

D. Samples

1. Upon request submit the following samples:
  - a. Corner sections of doors approximately 8" x 10" with door faces and edgings representing the typical range of color and grain for each species of veneer and solid lumber required.
  - b. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8" x 10" inches, for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in the finished work.
  - c. Frames for light openings, 6" long, for each material, type, and finish required.
  - d. Louver blade and frame sections, 6 inches long, for each material and finish specified.

1.4 Quality Assurance

A. Substitutions

All substitution requests must be submitted for Architectural approval at least 10 days prior to bid in accordance with Section 01360. Approval of products will be in written form via Addendum.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications

1. Manufacturer shall be a member in good standing of the Wood Door Manufacturer's Association (WDMA).
2. Wherever possible obtain wood doors from a single manufacturer to ensure uniformity in quality of appearance and construction. All material supplied for this project to conform to WDMA I.S. 1A-97 for premium grade wood doors.

C. Fire Rated Doors

1. Project requires door assemblies and components that are compliant with positive pressure and S-label requirements. Specifications must be cross-referenced and coordinated with hardware and other door manufacturers to ensure that total opening engineering is compatible with UL10C Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies, and UBC 7-2, Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
  - a. Certification(s) of compliance shall be made available upon request by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
  - b. For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
2. A physical label to be permanently affixed to the fire door at an authorized facility. Furthermore, all 45, 60, and 90 minute label fire doors are to have manufacturer's standard laminated stiles for improved screw holding and split resistance capability.
  - a. At stairwell enclosures and where otherwise indicated, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 250 deg F above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure

1.5 Delivery, Storage, And Handling

- A. Protect doors during transit, storage, and handling to prevent damage, soiling, and deterioration. Doors are to be shipped from manufacturer in individual polybags, and shall be inspected immediately upon arrival at jobsite for any damage or defects.
- B. Identify each door with individual opening numbers that correlate with designation system used on shop drawings and contract drawings for door, frames and hardware. Use only temporary, removable, or concealed markings.
- C. Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed and weather tight, wet-work is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and relative humidity at occupancy level in storage and installation areas.

1.6 Warranty

- A. Warranties shall be in addition to, and not a limitation of other rights the owner may have under the contract documents.
- B. Submit written warranty on manufacturer's standard form signed by the manufacturer agreeing to replace or repair defective doors which have:
  1. Delamination in any degree.
  2. Warp or twist of 1/4" or more in any 3' x 6" x 7' plane of door face.
  3. Telegraphing of stile, rail or core through face to cause surface variation in excess of 1/100" in any 3" spans.

- C. Contractor shall replace or refinish doors where contractor's work contributed to rejection or voiding of manufacturer's warranty.
- D. Solid core interior doors shall be warranted for the life of their installation.

## 2.0 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 Manufacturers

Subject to compliance with requirements, provide wood doors by one of the manufacturers as listed.

### 2.2 Fire Rated Doors

All fire rated doors shall be supplied to meet UL10C positive pressure standards for category "B" doors. All required intumescent seals shall be supplied as specified in section 08710 – Finish Hardware.

### 2.3 Doors

#### A. Faces For Transparent Finish

1. Doors shall have premium grade A faces with manufacturer's standard five (5) ply construction; minimum 1/8" thick with stiles and rails bonded to the core.
2. Faces shall be minimum 1/50" at 12% moisture content thick after finish sanding.
  - a. Veneer Cut: Plain Sliced
  - b. Face Assembly: Book Match, Running Match
  - c. Veneer Species: Select White Birch
3. Exposed vertical edges shall be of the same species as the face material.
4. Doors shall have minimum 1" stiles on the hinge stile and 13/16" minimum on the lock stile; both stiles faces shall match the door veneer. Top and bottom rails shall be a minimum 13/16"; rails shall be mill option hardwood or structural composite lumber (SCL).

#### B. Faces For Opaque Finish

1. Faces shall be custom grade closed-grain hardwood of mill option, Hardboard or MDF; five (5) ply construction with stiles and rails bonded to the core.
  - a. Hardboard Faces: AHA A135.4, Class 1 (tempered) or Class 2 (standard).
  - b. MDF Faces: ANSI A208.2, Grade 150 or 160.
2. Exposed vertical edges shall be any closed-grain hardwood.
3. Doors shall have minimum 1" stiles on the hinge stile and 13/16" minimum on the lock stile; both stiles faces shall match the door veneer.



Top and bottom rails shall be a minimum 13/16"; rails shall be mill option hardwood or structural composite lumber (SCL).

C. Non Rated And 20 Minute Doors

1. Supply particleboard core complying with WDMA I.S. 1A and ANSI-A208.1, Grade 1-LD, bonded to the door faces, stiles and rails using a Type I adhesive. Components are to be assembled to meet or exceed 20 minute fire door specifications for UL10C fire test requirements.
  - a. Algoma: Super Novodor / FD 1/3
  - b. Eggers: PC5 / PC5-20
  - c. Graham: GPD PC5 / GPD PC5-20
  - d. Marshfield: DPC-1 / DFP-20
  - e. VT Industries: 5502
2. Supply engineered core complying with WDMA I.S. 1A, bonded to door faces, stiles and rails using a Type I adhesive. Components are to be assembled to meet or exceed 20 minute fire door specifications for UL10c fire test requirements. Door shall meet or exceed WDMA I.S. 1A Extra Heavy Duty performance standards.
  - a. Algoma: FGFW
  - b. Eggers: SCL5 / SCL5-20
  - c. Graham: GPD EC5 / GPD EC5-20
  - d. Marshfield: DCL-1 / DCL-20
  - e. VT Industries: 5508
3. Provide LSL Timberstrand blocking at particleboard-core doors as follows to preclude the use of thru-bolts:
  - a. Provide 5" top-rail blocking, at doors indicated to have closers.
  - b. Provide 5" mid-rail blocking, at doors indicated to have exit devices.

D. Fire Rated Doors Over 20 Minutes

1. Supply fire resistive composite mineral core construction to provide the fire rating indicated, boned to door faces, stiles and rails using a Type I adhesive. Components are to be assembled to meet or exceed fire door specifications for UL10C fire test requirements.
  - a. Algoma: FD
  - b. Eggers: FGP
  - c. Graham: GPD FD5
  - d. Marshfield: DFM
  - e. VT Industries: 5545/5511
2. For mineral-core doors, provide composite blocking with improved screw holding capability approved for use in doors of fire ratings indicated as necessary to eliminate need for through-bolting hardware and as follows:
  - a. Provide 5" top-rail blocking.
  - b. Provide 4 1/2" x 10" lock blocks.
  - c. Provide 5" mid-rail blocking, at doors indicated to have exit devices.

3. At hinge stiles, provide manufacturer's standard laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance and with outer stile matching face veneer.

#### 2.4 Factory Finishing

- A. Finish all doors to receive a transparent finish at the factory as indicated below; field finish doors indicated to receive an opaque finish in accordance with Division 9, Finishes.
  1. Grade: Premium
  2. Finish: WDMA TR-6 catalyzed polyurethane.
  3. Stain: Clear-coat only.
  4. Effect: Semi-filled finish, produced by applying an additional finish coat to partially fill the wood pores.
- B. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- C. Finish doors using three (3) coats of water-clear 100% solids, modified acrylic urethane, cured immediately with ultra-violet light.
- D. Factory seal transparent finish doors on all six (6) sides using manufacturer's standard meeting these applications.

#### 2.5 Light Frames

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard metal light frame formed of 0.048 inch thick cold-rolled steel sheet with baked-enamel or powder-coated finish approved for use in doors of non fire rated or fire rating indicated.

#### 2.6 Louvers

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard solid wood louvers unless otherwise indicated; species shall be the same as door faces.
- B. Provide metal louvers with vision-proof inverted V or inverted Y blades constructed of galvanized 0.040 inch thick steel factory primed for paint finish with baked-enamel or power-coated finish.
- C. Provide metal louvers for fire-rated doors with fusible link and closing device listed and labeled for use in doors with fire-protection rating of-1 1/2 hours or less. Subject to compliance with rating requirements, louver construction and material shall be the same as non-rated versions.

#### 2.7 Fabrication

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated, with the following uniform clearances and bevels, unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting. Comply with requirements of NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.

- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, DHI A115-W series standards, and hardware templates.
  - 1. Coordinate measurements of hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
  - 2. Pre-machine metal astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.
- C. Cut and trim openings through doors to comply with applicable requirements of referenced standards for kind(s) of door(s) required.
  - 1. Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 Examination

- A. Examine installed door frames before hanging doors.
  - 1. Verify that frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with plumb jambs and level heads.
  - 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 Installation

- A. For hardware installation, see Division 8 Section "Finish Hardware."
- B. Install wood doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, referenced quality standard and as indicated.
- C. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.
- D. Align factory fitted doors in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.

#### 3.3 Adjusting And Protecting

- A. Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Refinish or replace doors damaged during installation.
- C. Protect doors as recommended by door manufacturer to ensure that wood doors are without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION



## ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS - SECTION 08420

### 1.0 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 Related Documents

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 Summary

- A. Section Includes: Kawneer Aluminum Storefronts, glass and glazing, hardware and components.
  - 1. Type of Storefront:  
Thermal Barrier (Trifab® VG 451T):  
Kawneer IsoLock® Thermal Break with a 1/4" (6.4 mm) separation
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 07910 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants installed as part of the aluminum storefront system.
  - 2. Section 08710 - Finish Hardware
  - 3. Section 08810 - Glass and Glazing

#### 1.3 Definitions

- A. Definitions: For fenestration industry standard terminology and definitions refer to American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA) -- AAMA Glossary (AAMA AG).

#### 1.4 Performance Requirements

- A. General Performance: Aluminum-framed storefront system shall withstand the effects of the following performance requirements without exceeding performance criteria or failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction:
  - 1. Design Wind Loads: Determine design wind loads applicable to the Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour, according to ASCE 7, Section 6.5, "Method 2-Analytical Procedure," based on mean roof heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Basic Wind Speed (MPH): (120)
    - b. Importance Factor (I, II, III): (1.15)
    - c. Exposure Category B
- B. System Performance Requirements:
  - 1. Wind loads: Provide system; include anchorage, capable of withstanding wind load design pressures based on the 2015 International Building Code.

2. Air Infiltration: The test specimen shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 283. Air infiltration rate shall not exceed 0.06 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> (0.3 l/s · m<sup>2</sup>) at a static air pressure differential of 6.24 psf (300 Pa).
3. Water Resistance: The test specimen shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 331. There shall be no leakage at a minimum static air pressure differential of 8 psf (383 Pa) as defined in AAMA 501.
4. Uniform Load: A static air design load of 20 psf (958 Pa) shall be applied in the positive and negative direction in accordance with ASTM E 330. There shall be no deflection in excess of L/175 of the span of any framing member. At a structural test load equal to 1.5 times the specified design load, no glass breakage or permanent set in the framing members in excess of 0.2% of their clear spans shall occur.
5. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): When tested to AAMA Specification 1503, the thermal transmittance (U-factor) shall not be more than: .60 with SHGC not to exceed .25.
6. Condensation Resistance (CRF): When tested to AAMA Specification 1503, the condensation resistance factor shall not be less than:
  - a. Glass to Exterior – 70 frame and 69 glass (low-e)
  - b. Glass to Center – 62 frame and 68 glass (low-e)
  - c. Glass to Interior – 56 frame and 67 glass (low-e)
7. Sound Transmission Class (STC) and Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class (OITC): When tested to AAMA Specification 1801 and in accordance with ASTM E1425 and ASTM E90, the STC and OITC Rating shall not be less than:
  - a. Glass to Exterior – 38 (STC) and 31 (OITC)
  - b. Glass to Center – 37 (STC) and 30 (OITC)
  - c. Glass to Interior – 38 (STC) and 30 (OITC)

#### 1.5 Submittals

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, hardware, finishes, and installation instructions for each type of aluminum frame storefront system indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, hardware, and attachments to other work, operational clearances and installation details.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes including samples of hardware and accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For aluminum framed system and components required.
- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency for each type of aluminum-framed storefront.
- F. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed systems, made from 12" (300 mm) lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:

1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
2. Anchorage.
3. Expansion provisions.
4. Glazing.
5. Flashing and drainage.

G. Other Action Submittals:

1. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: See Section 08710. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.

1.6 Quality Assurance

- A. Installer Qualifications: An installer which has had successful experience with installation of the same or similar units required for the project and other projects of similar size and scope.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of providing aluminum framed storefront system that meet or exceed performance requirements indicated and of documenting this performance by inclusion of test reports, and calculations.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain aluminum framed storefront system through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of aluminum framed storefront system and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements." Do not modify size and dimensional requirements.
  1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  1. Build mockup for type(s) of storefront elevation(s) indicated, in location(s) shown on Drawings.
- F. Structural-Sealant Glazing: Comply with ASTM C 1401, "Guide for Structural Sealant Glazing" for design and installation of structural-sealant-glazed systems.
- G. Structural-Sealant Joints: Design reviewed and approved by structural-sealant manufacturer.

1.7 Project Conditions

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of aluminum framed storefront openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate field measurements on Shop Drawings.

## 1.8 Warranty

- A. Manufactures Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from Date of Substantial Completion of the project provided however that the Limited Warranty shall begin in no event later than six months from date of shipment by manufacturer.

## 2.0 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 Manufacturers

- A. Basis-of-Design Product:
  - 1. Kawneer Company Inc.
  - 2. Trifab® 451T (thermal) Storefront System
  - 3. 2" x 4-1/2" (50.8 mm x 114.3 mm) System Dimensions
  - 4. Glass: Center, Exterior or Interior
- B. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by the following:
  - 1. Manufacturer: YKK to meet or exceed the criteria specified.
- C. Substitutions: Refer to Substitutions Section 01360 for procedures and submission requirements
  - 1. For pre-approval: Submit written requests ten (10) days prior to bid date.
  - 2. Certificates: Submit certificate(s) certifying substitute manufacturer (1) attesting to adherence to specification requirements for storefront system performance criteria, and (2) has been engaged in the design, manufacturer and fabrication of aluminum storefronts for a period of not less than ten (10) years.
- D. Substitution Acceptance: Acceptance will be in written form as an addendum or post bid documented by a formal change order signed by the Owner and Contractor and approved by Architect. No exceptions. No other substitutions will be considered post bid.

### 2.2 Materials

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum storefront manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish and not less than 0.090" wall thickness at any location for the main frame and complying with ASTM B 221: 6063-T6 alloy and temper.
- B. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel or other materials to be non-corrosive and compatible with aluminum window members, trim hardware, anchors, and other components.
- C. Anchors, Clips, and Accessories: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or zinc-coated steel or iron complying with ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions or other suitable zinc coating; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
- D. Reinforcing Members: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or nickel/chrome-plated steel complying with ASTM B 456 for Type SC 3 severe service conditions, or zinc-coated steel or iron complying with ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions or other suitable zinc coating; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.



1. Weather Seals: Provide weather stripping with integral barrier fin or fins of semi-rigid, polypropylene sheet or polypropylene-coated material. Comply with AAMA 701/702.
- E. Sealant: For sealants required within fabricated storefront system, provide permanently elastic, non-shrinking, and non-migrating type recommended by sealant manufacturer for joint size and movement.  
Tolerances: Reference to tolerances for wall thickness and other cross-sectional dimensions of storefront members are nominal and in compliance with AA Aluminum Standards and Data.

### 2.3 Storefront Framing System

- A. Thermal Barrier (Trifab® VG 451T):
  1. Kawneer IsoLock® Thermal Break with a 1/4" (6.4 mm) separation consisting of a two-part chemically curing, high-density polyurethane, which is mechanically and adhesively joined to aluminum storefront sections.
    - a. Thermal Break shall be designed in accordance with AAMA TIR-A8 and tested in accordance with AAMA 505.
- B. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- C. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials. Where exposed shall be stainless steel.
- D. Perimeter Anchors: When steel anchors are used, provide insulation between steel material and aluminum material to prevent galvanic action.
- E. Packing, Shipping, Handling and Unloading: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- F. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions. Handle storefront material and components to avoid damage. Protect storefront material against damage from elements, construction activities, and other hazards before, during and after storefront installation.

### 2.4 Glazing Systems

- A. Glazing: As specified in Division 08810 Section "Glass and Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard compression types; replaceable, extruded EPDM rubber.
- C. Spacers and Setting Blocks: Manufacturer's standard elastomeric type.
- D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Manufacturer's standard TFE-fluorocarbon or polyethylene material to which sealants will not develop adhesion.
- E. Glazing Sealants: For structural-sealant-glazed systems, as recommended by manufacturer for joint type, and as follows:

1. Structural Sealant: ASTM C 1184, single-component neutral-curing silicone formulation that is compatible with system components with which it comes in contact, specifically formulated and tested for use as structural sealant and approved by a structural-sealant manufacturer for use in aluminum-framed systems indicated.
  - a. Color: To be selected by Architect.
2. Weatherseal Sealant: ASTM C 920 for Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses NT, G, A, and O; single-component neutral-curing formulation that is compatible with structural sealant and other system components with which it comes in contact; recommended by structural-sealant, weatherseal-sealant, and aluminum-framed-system manufacturers for this use.
  - a. Color: Matching structural sealant as selected by Architect.

## 2.5 Accessory Materials

- A. Joint Sealants: For installation at perimeter of aluminum-framed systems, as specified in Division 07 Section "Caulking and Sealants."
- B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied, asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos; formulated for 30 mil (0.762 mm) thickness per coat.

## 2.6 Fabrication

- A. Framing Members, General: Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
  1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
  2. Accurately fit joints; make joints flush, hairline and weatherproof.
  3. Means to drain water passing joints, condensation within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
  4. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
  5. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
  6. Provisions for field replacement of glazing.
  7. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- B. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- C. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Framing Members: Include accommodations for using temporary support device to retain glazing in place while structural sealant cures.
- D. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using manufactures standard installation instructions.
- E. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

## 2.7 Aluminum Finishes

- A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.

- B. Factory Finishing:
  - 1. Kawneer Permafluor™ (70% PVDF), AAMA 2605, Fluoropolymer Coating (Color to be selected by Architect.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 Examination

- A. Examine openings, substrates, structural support, anchorage, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work. Verify rough opening dimensions, levelness of sill plate and operational clearances. Examine wall flashings, vapor retarders, water and weather barriers, and other built-in components to ensure a coordinated, weather tight framed aluminum storefront system installation.
  - 1. Masonry Surfaces: Visibly dry and free of excess mortar, sand, and other construction debris.
  - 2. Wood Frame Walls: Dry, clean, sound, well nailed, free of voids, and without offsets at joints. Ensure that nail heads are driven flush with surfaces in opening and within 3 inches (76 mm) of opening.
  - 3. Metal Surfaces: Dry; clean; free of grease, oil, dirt, rust, corrosion, and welding slag; without sharp edges or offsets at joints.
  - 4. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 Installation

- A. Comply with Drawings, Shop Drawings, and manufacturer's written instructions for installing aluminum framed storefront system, accessories, and other components.
- B. Install aluminum framed storefront system level, plumb, square, true to line, without distortion or impeding thermal movement, anchored securely in place to structural support, and in proper relation to wall flashing and other adjacent construction.
- C. Set sill members in bed of sealant or with gaskets, as indicated, for weather tight construction.
- D. Install aluminum framed storefront system and components to drain condensation, water penetrating joints, and moisture migrating within sliding door to the exterior.
- E. Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials.

#### 3.3 Field Quality Control

- A. Manufacturer's Field Services: Upon Owner's written request, provide periodic site visit by manufacturer's field service representative.

3.4 Adjusting, Cleaning, And Protection

- A. Clean aluminum surfaces immediately after installing aluminum framed storefronts. Avoid damaging protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt, and other substances.
- B. Clean glass immediately after installation. Comply with glass manufacturer's written recommendations for final cleaning and maintenance. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces.
- C. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.

END OF SECTION

1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Scope

The work under this section consists of all glass and glazing.

1.2 Quality

- A. Glazing shall be provided to comply with Table 5.3.1 Building Envelope Requirements - Climate Zone 1 of the Alabama Building Energy Conservation Code, and the 2015 International Building Code.
- B. Glazing for Fire-Rated Door and Window Assemblies: Glazing tested per NFPA 252 and NFPA 257, as applicable, for assemblies complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled per requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Safety Glazing Products: Comply with size, glazing type, location, and testing requirements of 16 CFR 1201 for Category I and II glazing products, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Glazing Industry Publications: Comply with glass product manufacturers' recommendations and the following:
  - 1. GANA Publications: GANA Laminated Division's 'Laminated Glass Design Guide' and GANA's 'Glazing Manual.'
  - 2. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: IGMA TM-3000, 'Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units.'
- E. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Indicate compliance with requirements of Insulating Glass Certification Council on applicable glazing products.

1.3 Samples

Submit for approval samples of each kind of glass required. Each sample shall bear a label indicating the kind and quality of the glass and the manufacturer.

1.4 Warranty

- A. Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by coated-glass product primary manufacturer or manufacturer/fabricator, as applicable, agreeing to replace coated-glass units that display peeling, cracking, and other deterioration in metallic coating under normal use, within 10 years of date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Warranty for Laminated Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by laminated-glass product manufacturer/fabricator, agreeing to replace laminated-glass units that display edge separation, delamination, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by ASTM C 1172, within five years of date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by insulating-glass product manufacturer/fabricator, agreeing to replace insulating-glass units that exhibit failure of hermetic seal under normal use evidenced by the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass, within 10 years of date of Substantial Completion.

- D. Installer's Warranty: Form acceptable to Owner, signed by glass product Installer, agreeing to replace glass products that deteriorate, or that exhibit damage or deterioration of glass or glazing products due to faulty installation, within 2 years of date of Substantial Completion.

## 2.0 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 Manufacturer

Glass products shall be as manufactured by Vitro Architectural Glass., Guardian Industries, Inc., or Pre-approved equal. Laminated pattern glass shall be as manufactured by North American Glass Fabrication. Fire-rated, safety-rated wired glass shall be manufactured by Technical Glass Products.

### 2.2 Materials

Glass shall be as defined in, and in accordance with Code of Federal Regulations 16 CFR 1201 - Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials.

- A. Compound for face glazing, or where shown or indicated as compound shall be an oleo-resinous knife grade elastic glazing compound such as Tremco's Trem-glaze, Pecora's M-242, or Dap-1012.
- B. Sealant where shown or indicated shall be Tremco "Mono," Dow Corning 780, or GE's construction sealant.
- C. Tape where shown or indicated shall be Tremco's 440 Tape, Curtis 606 Tape, or Warflex's "Sealing Tape."
- D. Neoprene setting blocks as approved by glass manufacturer Shore "A" Hardness approximately 70 to 90.
- E. Neoprene spacer shims as approved by glass manufacturer Shore "A" Hardness approximately 40 to 60.
- F. Neoprene glazing beads as approved for aluminum store front and doors.
- G. Color of compound, sealant, tape, etc. shall be as selected.
- H. Glare reducing glass shall be 1/4" thick Solargray or Solarbronze as selected.
- I. Glare reducing Tempered Safety glass shall be 1/4" thick Solargray or Solarbronze as selected. When multiple small glass panes are used in the same door or sidelight, provide one (1) only Decal and furnish certificate verifying the use of Safety Glass in other panels.
- J. Interior Tempered Safety Glass shall be clear and shall meet 16CFR1201 Test Requirements, Cat. 1 and/or Cat. 2 as applicable. Etch label and furnish certificate verifying the use of Tempered Safety Glass.
- K. 1" insulating Glass - Pre-assembly Low-E unit consisting of 1/4" float glass exterior lite, 1/2" dehydrated air space and clear 1/4" float glass with Low-E interior lite meeting performance requirement for Class A or Class B Accelerated Test as specified in ASTM E744 with no visible fog. Match color on metal spacer to glazing frame. As selected by Architect. Provide minimum SHGC of .25.

1. Solarban70 Solar Gray + Clear
  2. Solarban60 Solar Gray + Clear
  3. Solarban70 Solar Bronze + Clear
- (See corresponding SHGC and U-Value below when used with metal frame)

**"CENTER OF GLASS"**

	<u>SHGC</u>	<u>U-VALUE</u>
1.	0.20	0.28
2.	0.25	0.29
3.	0.21	0.28

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 Preparation

- A. Immediately prior to glazing, all surfaces shall be wiped clean and free of protective coatings, moisture, and dust. All glazing shall be done when the temperature is 35° F or above.
- B. All sash shall be checked prior to glazing to make certain that the opening is square, plumb, and secured in order that uniform face and edge clearances are maintained. Inspect all butt and miter joints. If these joints are open, they shall be sealed with sealant prior to glazing. All ventilators shall be properly adjusted. Maintain 1/8" minimum bed clearance between glass and sash on both sides.
- C. All glass indicated in non-rated doors shall be tempered with etched label.
- D. All glass indicated in rated doors shall be fire safety glass with etched label.

#### 3.2 Setting

- A. Glazing preparation and procedures shall be as outlined in the Glazing Manual of the Flat Glass Jobbers Association.
- B. Glass shall be set without springing, and with an equal bearing the entire width and length of each piece.
- C. The actual sizes required shall be determined by measuring the frames to receive the glass. All glass shall be factory labeled.
- D. Glass shall be properly cut and set in accordance with the best practice of the trade.
- E. Center glass in glazing rabbet to maintain recommended clearances at perimeter for expansion and contraction, each face of glass.

#### 3.3 Protection

Immediately after installation, a marker letter shall be placed upon each pane of glass for protection against careless breakage. All broken, cracked, scratched, or otherwise damaged glass shall be replaced.

#### 3.4 Cleaning

- A. Upon completion of the project, all glass shall have paint, dirt, and other stains removed; glass shall then be washed clean and polished.

- B. Labels on glass shall not be removed until final approval is obtained, and glass is ready for cleaning.

END OF SECTION



## GYPSUM DRYWALL & LIGHT GAUGE METAL STUD SYSTEM - SECTION 09260

### 1.0 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 Scope

The work of this section consists of the furnishing and erection of all metal studs and gypsum wall board, finished ready for field decoration.

#### 1.2 Submittals

A. Submit manufacturer data, samples and shop drawings.

#### 1.3 Applicable Standards

Current editions or revisions of Federal and ASTM standards shall apply unless specifically noted otherwise.

#### 1.4 Delivery and Storage

All materials shall be delivered to the job in original unopened containers or bundles and stored in a place protected from the elements and damage.

### 2.0 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 Materials

- A. Interior wall metal studs shall be cold rolled "Cee" design 25-gauge steel, prepared to receive self-drill, self-tapping screw fasteners. Metal studs web shall be punched to facilitate work of other crafts. At interior wall with plumbing, provide metal stud framing wide enough to fully conceal plumbing work.
- B. Exterior wall metal studs shall be 3-5/8" 20-gauge metal studs and runners, welded system, unless noted otherwise. At all areas to receive masonry veneer, use 18-gauge metal studs and runners.
- C. Track shall be of proper dimension to receive metal studs and provide a close friction fit.
- D. Metal studs and track shall be hot-dipped galvanized.
- E. Wall board shall be a mill fabricated gypsum board consisting of a core of processed gypsum rock encased in a heavy mineral finished paper on the face side and a strong liner paper on the back side. The face paper shall be folded around the long edges to reinforce and protect the core and the ends shall be square cut and smooth finish. Thickness shall be as indicated on the Drawings but not less than 5/8".
- F. Fire resistant wall board shall be a board having a specifically formulated core which shall meet Underwriter's Laboratory tests for a one-hour fire resistant rating. Material shall be equal to USG Sheetrock® Brand Ultralight Panels Fire code® X as manufactured by U.S. Gypsum, Fire-Shield® LITE® as manufactured by National Gypsum, Fireguard® by Georgia-Pacific.
- G. Moisture- and Mold-resistant, Fire-resistant Gypsum Core shall be 5/8" thick Fire code equal to SHEETROCK® brand MOLD TOUGH™ FIRECODE® .

Provide at all walls subject to moisture and/or at walls behind drinking fountains, sinks, lavatories, urinals, water closets, and all other plumbing fixtures where drywall is indicated.

- H. For High Impact Areas as indicated provide USG Sheetrock® Brand Mold Tough® VHI Firecode® X Panels or pre-approved equal that meets testing requirements for High Impact. The main ASTM standard for abuse classification is **ASTM C1629** which specifies the levels of performance. Annex A1 describes test methods for testing products for Hard Body Impact Resistance.

**ASTM C1629** makes reference to three other test methods for abuse resistance: **ASTM E695** for Soft Body Impact, **ASTM D4977** for Abrasion resistance, **ASTM D 5420** for Indentation Resistance.

- I. Runner channels shall be hot-rolled or cold-rolled steel and shall be galvanized or given a coat of rust-inhibitive paint. Runner channels shall be one and one-half inches (1-1/2") with flange approximately one-half inch (1/2") deep, spaced not over forty-eight inches (48") on centers. Hot Rolled Channel shall weigh not less than 850 pounds per 1,000 lineal feet; cold rolled channel shall weigh not less than 475 pounds per 1,000 feet.
- J. Fasteners shall be flat, countersunk head drywall screws, USG Type S or as approved, or annular nails for use with nailer bars or for wood.
- K. Trim shall be hot dip galvanized steel, corner bead, casing, and expansion strips.
- L. Joint tape shall be a heavy perforated cross fibered reinforced paper.
- M. Joint cement shall be a bedding and finishing cement especially prepared for use with reinforcing joint tape.
- N. Metal accessories shall be provided at all exterior corners, where a horizontal surface abuts a vertical surface or where an exposed edge of the wallboard abuts metal. Material shall be as manufactured by or as recommended by the manufacturer of the wall board used.
- O. Control joints shall be provided at all corners, intersections, ceilings, etc., subject to movement. Install control joints in areas as recommended by manufacturer and/or as indicated on drawings.

## 2.2 Auxiliary Materials

- A. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.

## 3.0 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 A. Floor and ceiling tracks aligned accurately according to partitions layout and anchored securely into structural floor and overhead structure at maximum of 16" o.c. All walls shall extend to underside of deck above.
- B. Studs spaced not greater than 16" o.c. for gypsum board, anchored securely to floor and ceiling tracks. Set studs approximately 2" from abutting partitions or walls at corners, openings and ends of partitions. Anchor door bucks to adjacent studs.
- C. Partitions shall be rigid, sound and plumb with all necessary metal trim, clips and accessories for a complete installation.
- D. Gypsum board shall be applied in single layer or multiple layers as indicated on the Drawings by screw application to metal studs with joints taped and filled with manufacturer's recommended joint compound.

- E. Application of gypsum board and joint finishing shall not begin under cold or damp conditions. The temperature shall be a minimum of 35° before work is begun and shall be maintained at this level or above until the joint cement is set dry and hard. Adequate ventilation shall be provided at all times.
- F. Installation shall be in full accord with the recommendations of the manufacturer. Workmanship shall be by competent workmen experienced in the installation of wall board and all work shall be done in accordance with the best practices of the trade to give a smooth, straight, aligned surface which is ready for the finish.
- G. Apply metal trim at exposed edges.
- H. Neatly cut all openings so that they may be covered by plates and escutcheons.
- I. Vertical Furring - All vertical furring in ceiling shall be of 5/8" fire rated gypsum board on metal framing. DO NOT furr with acoustical panels.

### 3.2 Drywall Finish

- A. Temperature and Humidity Conditions  
Do not install joint treatment compounds unless installation areas comply with the minimum temperature and ventilation requirements recommended by the manufacturer and conditions are acceptable to the installer.
- B. Finish exposed drywall surfaces with joints, corners, and exposed edges reinforced or trimmed as specified, and with all joints, fastener heads, trim accessory flanges and surface defects filled with joint compound in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation for a smooth, flush surface. Drywall finishing work will not be considered acceptable if corners or edges do not form true, level or plumb lines, or if joints, fastener heads, flanges of trim accessories or defects are visible after application of field-applied decoration.
  - 1. Refer to ASTM 6840 for guidelines for acceptable levels of finish.
    - a. Finish Level shall be no less than Level 3 for all exposed Gypsum Board.
- C. Joint and Corner Reinforcing
  - 1. Use joint tape to reinforce joints formed by tapered edges or butt ends of drywall units and at interior corners and angles. Set tape in joint compound then apply skim coat over tape in one application.
  - 2. Where open spaces of more than 1/16" width occur between abutting drywall units (except at control joints), prefill joints with joint compound and allow prefill to dry before application of joint tape.
  - 3. Provide control joints as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Reinforce external corners of drywall work with specified type of corner bead.  
  
Securely fasten metal corner beads as recommended by the manufacturer. Do not use fasteners which cannot be fully concealed by joint compound fill applied over flanges.
- E. Edge Trimming  
Provide specified type of metal casing bead trim. Install in single unjointed lengths unless run exceeds longest available stock length. Miter corners of semi-finished type trim. Coordinate installation of trim continuously with drywall installation.

F. Application of Joint Compounds

Use only compatible compounds from one manufacturer. After mixing, do not use joint compounds if recommended pot-life time has expired. Allow drying time between applications of joint compound in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for the relative humidity and temperature levels at the time of application. In no case, allow less than 24 hours drying time between application to joint compound. Apply not less than 3 separate coats of joint compound over joints, fastener heads, and metal flanges. Joint compound treatment is not required at non-fire rated walls above suspended ceiling where partitions/walls are shown or specified to extend to structural deck or ceiling above suspended ceiling.

G. LEVELS OF FINISH. The following levels of finish are established as a guide for specific final decoration. The minimum requirements for each level shall be as described herein

1. Level 4:

All joints and interior angles shall have tape embedded in joint compound and shall be immediately wiped with a joint knife leaving a thin coating of joint compound over all joints and interior angles. Two separate coats of joint compound shall be applied over all flat joints and one separate coat of joint compound shall be applied over interior angles. Fastener heads and accessories shall be covered with three separate coats of joint compound. All joint compound shall be smooth and free of tool marks and ridges. Note: It is recommended that the prepared surface be coated with a drywall primer prior to the application of final finishes. See painting/wallcovering specification in this regard.

END OF SECTION

1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Summary

- A. Related Documents: General and Supplementary Conditions of the Contract, Division 1 General Requirements, and Drawings are applicable to this Section.
- B. Section Includes:
  - 1. Porcelain Tile
  - 2. Ceramic Tile
  - 3. Installation Products; adhesives, mortars, grouts and sealants
  - 4. Waterproof membranes
  - 5. Crack Isolation membranes
  - 6. Thresholds, trim, cementitious backer units and other accessories specified herein.
  - 7. Tile and grout care and maintenance recommendations.

1.2 References

- A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  - 1. A108.1 - Installation of Ceramic Tile in a Mortar Bed
  - 2. A108.5 - Installation of Ceramic tile with Dry-Set Portland Cement or Latex-Portland Cement
  - 3. A108.10 - Installation of Grout in Tile work
  - 4. A108.13 - Installation of Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile
  - 5. A118.3 - Chemical Resistant, Water-Cleanable, Tile-Setting and-Grouting Epoxy and Water-Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive
  - 6. A118.4 - Latex-Portland Cement Mortar
  - 7. A 118.5 - Chemical-Resistant Furan Mortar and Grout.
  - 8. A118.6 - Ceramic Tile Grouts
  - 9. A118.7 - Polymer Mortified Cement Grouts
  - 10. A118.10 – Load-Bearing, Bonded Waterproofing Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installations
  - 11. A136.1 - Organic Adhesives for Installation of Ceramic Tile
  - 12. A137.1 - Ceramic Tile
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. C 136 - Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
  - 2. C 144 - Aggregate for Masonry Mortar
  - 3. C 150 - Portland Cement
  - 4. C 207 - Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes
  - 5. C 373 - Water Absorption, Bulk Density, Apparent Porosity, and Apparent Specific Gravity of Fired Whiteware Products
  - 6. C 503 - Marble Dimensional Stone (Exterior)
  - 7. C 623 – Young's Modulus, Shear Modulus, and Poisson's Ratio for Glass and Glass-Ceramics by Resonance
  - 8. C 627 – Robinson Floor Test for Tile Service Level
  - 9. C 847-95 Metal Lath
  - 10. C 933-96a Welded Wire Lath
  - 11. C 1028 - Static Coefficient of Friction of Ceramic Tile and Other like Surfaces by the Horizontal Dynamometer Pull-Meter Method
  - 12. D 87 - Melting Point of Petroleum Wax (Cooling Curve)
  - 13. D 226 - Asphalt Saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing

- 14. D 4397 - Polyethylene Sheeting for Construction, Industrial, and Agricultural Applications
  - 15. E-90 and E-413 for STC (Sound Transmission Class), E-492 and E-989 for IIC (Impact Insulation Class) – Sound Deadening Underlayments
- C. TCA Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation by Tile Council of America, latest edition

### 1.3 Submittals

- A. Submit shop drawings, product data, and samples under provisions of Section 01350.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Indicate tile layout, patterns, color arrangement, perimeter conditions, junctions with dissimilar materials, thresholds, and setting details.
  - 2. Locate and detail expansion and control joints.
- C. Submit product data, specifications, and instructions for using mortars, adhesives and grouts.
- D. Samples:
  - 1. Submit color samples illustrating full color range of each type tile.
  - 2. Grout: Submit manufacturer's full range of standard and designated color samples for each type for Architect's selection.
- E. Submit following Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Certifications specified in Quality Assurance article.
  - 2. Qualification Data: Manufacturer's and installer's qualification data.
  - 3. Manufacturer's instructions.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include recommended cleaning methods, cleaning materials, stain removal methods, and polishes and waxes.

### 1.4 Quality Assurance

- A. Single Source Responsibility:
  - 1. Obtain each type and color tile material required from single source.
  - 2. Obtain setting and grouting materials from one manufacturer to ensure compatibility.
  - 3. Furnish a 10 year guarantee from installation material manufacturer. The guarantee is inclusive of installation materials, finish product, and labor.
  - 4. Obtain prefabricated edge protection and transition and movement profiles from one manufacturer to ensure compatibility.
  - 5. Obtain membrane from same manufacturer as setting material or from manufacturer approved by setting material manufacturer to ensure compatibility.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications:
  - 1. Tile: Minimum 5 years experience in manufacture of tile products.
  - 2. Setting Materials: Minimum 10 years experience in manufacture of setting and grout materials specified.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Specializing in tile work having minimum of 5 years successful documented experience with work comparable to that required for this Project.

- D.     Certifications:
  - 1.       Maintain one copy each of all Referenced standards and specifications on site. Include the TCA Handbook, ANSI A108 Series, ANSI A118 Series ANCI A136.1 and ANSI A137.1 and others as specified under paragraph References.
  - 2.       Submit manufacturer's certifications that mortars, adhesives, and grouts are suitable for intended use.
- E.     Conform to ANSI- Recommended Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile - A137.1.
- F.     Conform to TCA Ceramic Tile: The Installation Handbook.

1.5     Delivery, Storage, and Handling

- A.     Deliver materials in manufacturer's unopened containers, fully identified with name, brand, type, and grade.
- B.     Protect materials from contamination, dampness, freezing, or overheating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C.     Broken, cracked, chipped, stained, or damaged tile will be rejected, whether built-in or not.
- D.     Protect mortar and grout materials against moisture, soiling, or staining.

1.6     Environmental Requirements

- A.     Comply with requirements of referenced standards and recommendations of material manufacturers for environmental conditions before, during, and after installation.
- B.     Do not begin installation until building is completely enclosed and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and humidity conditions consistent with "after occupancy" conditions for a minimum of 2 weeks.
- C.     Maintain continuous and uniform building temperatures of not less than 50 degrees F during installation nor more than 100 degrees F.
- D.     Ventilate spaces receiving tile in accordance with material manufacturers' instructions.

1.7     Warranty

- A.     Special Project Warranty: Submit a written warranty, executed by the Contractor, Installer, and Manufacturer, agreeing to repair or replace tile that fails in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period.
  - 1.       Warranty Period: 1 year after date of Substantial Completion.

1.8     Extra Materials

- A.     At completion of project, deliver to Owner extra stock of materials used on project as follows:
  - 1.       Provide 10% of each size, color, and surface finish of tile.
  - 2.       Six lineal feet of each color and type of base.

- B. Store in location as directed by Owner.
- C. Ensure materials are boxed and identified by manufacturer, type, and color.

#### 1.9 Maintenance Data

- A. Submit maintenance data under provisions of Section 01910.
- B. Include cleaning methods, cleaning solutions recommended, stain removal methods, and polishes and waxes recommended.

### 2.0 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 Manufacturers

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Dal-Tile Corporation or pre-approved equal.
- B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01360 received 10 days prior to bid.

#### 2.2 Products

- A. Ceramic Wall Tile
  - 1. Manufacturer: Daltile
  - 2. Product: Natural Hues
  - 3. Color: See Finish Schedule
  - 4. Size: See Finish Schedule
  - 5. Edge: See Finish Schedule
  - 6. Finish: See Finish Schedule
  - 7. Pattern: As indicated on drawings.
  - 8. Trim Units: Matching bead, bullnose, cove and base shapes in sizes coordinated with field tile.
- B. Porcelain Floor Tile
  - 1. Manufacturer: Daltile
  - 2. Product: Keystone Mosaics
  - 3. Color: See Finish Schedule
  - 4. Size: See Finish Schedule
  - 5. Edge: See Finish Schedule
  - 6. Finish: See Finish Schedule
  - 7. Pattern: As indicated on drawings.
  - 8. Trim Units: Matching bead, bullnose, cove and base shapes in sized coordinated with field tile.

#### 2.3 Setting Materials

- A. Organic Adhesive: ANSI A136.1, thinset bond type; use Type I in areas subject to prolonged moisture exposure.
- B. Epoxy Adhesive: ANSI A118.3, thinset bond type.
- C. Mortar Bed Materials:
  - 1. Portland cement: ASTM C150, type 1, gray or white.
  - 2. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
  - 3. Sand: ASTM C144, fine.
  - 4. Latex additive: As approved.
  - 5. Water: Clean and potable.



- D. Mortar Bond Coat Materials:
  - 1. Dry-Set Portland Cement type: ANSI A118.1.
  - 2. Latex-Portland Cement type: ANSI A118.4.
  - 3. Epoxy: ANSI A118.3, 100 percent solids.
- E. Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.8, 100 percent solids epoxy grout; color to be selected.
- F. Waterproofing Membrane at Floors: Membrane in accordance with ANSI A118.10.
- G. Membrane at Walls: No. 15 (6.9 kg) asphalt saturated felt, ASTM D226, Type
- H. Membrane at Walls: 4 mil (0.1 mm) thick polyethylene film, ASTM D4397.
- I. Membrane at Walls: Reinforced asphalt paper.
- J. Cementitious Backer Board: ANSI A118.9; High density, cementitious, glass fiber reinforced with 2 inch (50 mm) wide coated glass fiber tape for joints and corners:
  - 1. Thickness: 1/2 inch (13 mm).

#### 2.4 Miscellaneous Materials

- A. Temporary Protective Coating: Provide product indicated below that is formulated to protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout, is compatible with tile and mortar/grout products, and is easily removable after grouting is completed without damaging grout or tile.
  - 1. Petroleum paraffin wax, fully refined, tasteless, odorless, containing at least 0.5 percent oil with a melting point of 120-degree F to 140-degree F per ASTM D 87.
  - 2. Grout release in form of manufacturer's standard proprietary liquid coating that is specially formulated and recommended for use as a temporary protective coating for tile.

#### 2.5 Finishing Edge Protection Profiles

- A. Manufacturer - Schluter Systems or pre-approved equal. Comply with Section 01360 - Product Substitution and submit at least 10 days prior to Bid. All other approved products shall be notified in writing via addendum.
- B. Products:
  - 1. Schluter: Deco Radius
  - 2. Corners provide matching outside corners as required.
  - 3. Material and Finish: Satin anodized aluminum.
  - 4. Height as required
  - 5. Location as noted on drawings

#### 2.6 Mixing Mortar and Grout

Mix mortars and grouts in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 Examination

- A. Verify that all wall surfaces are free of substances which would impair bonding of setting materials, smooth and flat within tolerances specified in ANSI A137.1, and are ready to receive.
- B. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are dust-free, and free of substances which would impair bonding of setting materials to sub-floor surfaces, and are smooth and float within tolerances specified in ANSI A137.1.
- C. Verify that concrete sub-floor surfaces are ready for tile installation by testing for moisture emission rate and alkalinity; obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by tile manufacturer and setting materials manufacturer.
- D. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.

### 3.2 Preparation

- A. Clean substrates.
- B. Wet down or wash dry, dusty surfaces and remove excess water immediately prior to application of tiles.
- C. Prepare surfaces in strict accordance with instructions of manufacturer whose setting materials or additives are being used.
- D. Acid Based Cleaners: Use not permitted.
- E. Scarify concrete substrates with blast track equipment if necessary to completely remove curing compounds or other substances that would interfere with proper bond of setting materials. Clean and maintain substrate in condition required by setting material manufacturer.
- F. Do not seal substrate unless required by manufacturer.
- G. Prime substrate when required by manufacturer.
- H. Membrane
  - 1. Flash membrane up adjacent walls and restraining surfaces.
  - 2. Use preformed cove, corners, and expansion joint flashing.
  - 3. Allow membrane to cure as prior to setting tile.
  - 4. Do not allow construction traffic on membrane.
- I. Apply primer-sealer to wood and plywood subfloors when recommended by setting materials manufacturer.
- J. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within the ranges selected during sample submittals, verify that tile has been blended in factory and packaged accordingly so that tile units taken from one package show the same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.
- K. Field-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: Where indicated under tile type or needed to prevent adhesion or staining of exposed tile surfaces by grout, protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout by precoating

them with a continuous film of temporary protective coating indicated below, taking care not to coat unexposed tile surfaces:

1. Petroleum paraffin wax or grout release.

### 3.3 Installation

#### A. Cement Board Substrate

1. Place rough side out and fasten with galvanized or resin coated gypsum board screws at 8 inches on center in field of panel and at 6 inches on center at edges.
2. Provide 1/4 inch gap above floor or fixture lip for flexible caulking.
3. Maintain manufacturer's required space between board edges.
4. Fill joints by applying tile setting material and joint reinforcement.

#### B. Vapor Retarder:

1. Extend vapor retarder to extremities of areas indicated to be protected from vapor transmission.
2. Secure in place with mechanical fasteners or adhesives.
3. Extend vapor retarder to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose mineral-fiber insulation.
4. Seal vertical joints in vapor retarders over framing by lapping not less than two wall studs.
5. Fasten vapor retarders to framing at top, end, and bottom edges, at perimeter of wall openings, and at lap joints; space fasteners no greater than 16 inches apart.
6. Seal joints in vapor retarders caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor retarder tape.
7. Repair tears and punctures in vapor retarder immediately before concealing it with the installation of cementitious backer units.

#### C. Membrane:

1. Install membrane with products or methods approved in writing by membrane manufacturer when joining, sealing, fastening, or adhering sheet membranes.
2. Flash membrane to cure prior to setting tile.
3. Do not allow construction traffic on membrane.

#### D. Crack Isolation Membrane

1. Install crack isolation membrane over cracks of up to 1/8 inch or greater in substrates. Apply a 12 inch wide strip centered on crack. Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
2. Install membrane with products or methods approved in writing by membrane manufacturer when joining, sealing, fastening, or adhering sheet membranes.

#### E. Waterproofing

1. Install waterproofing in strict compliance with manufacturer's instructions.
2. Flash waterproofing up adjacent walls in accordance with manufacturer's details, to a height of 4 inches.
3. Flood test waterproof membranes after fully cured.
4. Field Quality Control water test when required.

#### F. Tile Installation, General

1. Install tile materials in accordance with ANSI A137.1, other referenced ANSI and TCA specifications, and TCA "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation", except for more stringent requirements of manufacturer or these Specifications.
2. Cut and fit tile tight to protrusions and vertical interruptions and treat with a compatible sealant as specified in Section 07900
3. Form corners and bases neatly.
4. Work tile joints uniform in width, subject to variance in tolerance allowed in tile size. Make joint watertight, without voids, cracks, excess mortar, or grout.
5. Prepare surface, fit, set, bond, grout and clean in accordance with applicable requirements of ANSI standards and Tile Council of America.

G. Layout

1. Lay out work to pattern indicated so that full tile or joint is centered on each wall and no tile of less than half width need be used. Do not interrupt pattern through openings. Lay out tile to minimize cutting and to avoid tile less than half size.
2. For heights stated in feet and inches, use courses of full tile to produce nearest attainable heights without cutting tile.
3. No staggered joints will be permitted.
4. Align joints in tile in both directions.
5. Align joints between floor and base tile.
6. Make joints between sheets of tile exactly same width as joints within sheet.
7. File edges of cut tile smooth and even.
8. Cut and fit tile at penetrations through tile. Do not damage visible surfaces. Carefully grind edges of tile abutting built-in items. Fit tile at outlets, piping and other penetrations so that plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
9. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures, to form complete covering without interruptions, except as otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
10. Accurately form intersections and returns.
11. Form internal angles coved and external angles bullnosed.

H. Thin Set Method, Floors and Walls

1. Apply mortar or adhesive with notched trowel using scraping motion to work material into good contact with surface to be covered. Maintain 90 percent coverage on back of tile and fully bed all corners.
2. Apply only as much mortar or adhesive as can be covered within allowable windows as recommended by mortar or adhesive manufacturer or while surface is still tacky.
3. When installing large tiles, ceramics or mosaics, trowel small quantity of mortar or adhesive onto back of each tile or sheet of tiles.
4. Set tiles in place and rub or beat with small beating block.
5. Beat or rap tile to ensure proper bond and also to level surface of tile.
6. Align tile to show uniform joints and allow to set until firm.
7. Clean excess mortar or adhesive from surface of tile with wet cheese cloth (not a sponge) while mortar is fresh.
8. Allow face mounted tile to set until firm before removing paper and before grouting.
9. Sound tile after setting. Replace hollow sounding tiles.

I. Thick Bed Method, Horizontal Surfaces

1. Apply slurry bond coat approximately 1/16 inch thick to substrate surface using flat trowel.
2. Place thick bed mortar, 1-1/4 inch thick nominally onto slurry bond coat while coat is still wet and tacky.
3. Spread prepared mortar approximately one-half desired bed thickness and then lay reinforcing mesh.
4. Lap wire 3 inches and place additional mortar on top of wire to bring bed to required thickness.
5. Rod and compact mortar with steel trowel.
6. Before placing tiles on green or wet screed bed, apply slurry bond coat approximately 1/16 inch thick to mortar using flat trowel.
7. Apply mortar skim coat to back of each tile or sheet of tile immediately prior to placing on bed.
8. Place tiles in wet slurry coat before surface dries maintaining uniform joints.
9. After each tile or sheet of tiles is laid, beat tile with wooden block or rubber mallet to level surface and embed tiles.
10. Perform beating before mortar takes initial set.
11. Pitch surface to drain where required.
12. On hardened screed or mortar bed, install tiles by thin bed method.
13. Sound tiles after setting. Replace hollow sounding tiles.
14. Clean excess mortar or adhesive from surface of tile with wet cheese cloth (not a sponge) while mortar is fresh.

J. Grouting

1. Allow tiles to set a minimum of 48 hours before grouting.
2. If bonding materials are rapid setting, follow manufacturer's recommendations.
3. Install in accordance with grout manufacturer's recommendations and ANSI A108.10.
4. Pack joints full and free before mortar takes initial set.
5. Clean excess grout from surface with wet cheesecloth as work progresses. Do not use hydrosponges.
6. Cure after grouting by covering with Kraft or construction paper for 72 hours. Install sealant in vertical wall joints at interior corners.

K. Marble Threshold

1. Provide thresholds at wall or framed openings to other building areas not receiving tile.
2. Set one piece threshold in adhesive without voids, full width of door opening.
3. Point threshold base flush with adjoining tile floors.
4. Cope ends to fit door frame profile.

L. Control Joints and Other Sealant Usage

1. Install control joints where tile abuts retaining surfaces such as perimeter walls, curbs, columns, wall corners and directly over cold joints and control joints in structural surfaces conforming to architectural details.
2. Install control joint in floors at spacings as indicated in TCA Installation Handbook, unless noted otherwise.
3. Rake or cut control joints through setting bed to supporting slab or structure. Keep joints free of mortar.
4. Install in accordance with TCA Installation Handbook.
5. Fill joints with self-leveling polyurethane sealant and backing material specified in Section 07910.

6. Fill joints around toilet fixtures with white silicone sanitary sealant. Refer to Section 07910.

M. Expansion Joints:

1. Keep expansion joints free of mortar and grout.
2. Use manufacturer's expansion joint flashing when covering expansion joints with waterproof or crack isolation membranes.
3. Provide expansion joints directly over changes in material, over control and expansion joints in substrate, at juncture of floors and walls, at other restraining surfaces such as curbs, columns, bases, and wall corners, and where recommended by TCA EJ171 Expansion Joint requirements.
4. Install sealant in expansion joints.
5. Provide sealant material at items penetrating tile work, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Provide sealants and related materials in accordance with cited ANSI and TCA requirements.

3.4 Adjusting

Sound tile after setting. Replace hollow sounding units.

3.5 Cleaning

- A. Clean excess mortar from surface with water as work progresses. Perform cleaning while mortar is fresh and before it hardens on surfaces.
- B. Sponge and wash tile diagonally across joints. Polish with clean dry cloth.
- C. Remove grout haze following recommendation of mortar additive manufacturer. Do not use acids for cleaning.
- D. Remove temporary protective coating by method recommended by coating manufacturer that is acceptable to brick and grout manufacturer. Trap and remove coating to prevent it from clogging drains.

3.6 Protection

- A. Prohibit traffic from floor finish for 72 hours after installation.
- B. Where temporary use of new floors is unavoidable, supply large flat boards or plywood panels for walkways over Kraft paper.
- C. Protect work so that it will be without any evidence of damage or use at time of acceptance.

END OF SECTION

## ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS - SECTION 09510

### 1.0 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 Related Documents

Drawings and general conditions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 Summary

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Acoustical ceiling panels.
2. Exposed grid suspension system.
3. Wire hangers, fasteners, main runners, cross tees, and wall angle moldings.

##### B. Related Sections:

1. Section 09260 - Gypsum Board
2. Section 09910 - Painting
3. Division 15 Sections - Mechanical Work
4. Division 16 Sections - Electrical Work

##### C. Substitutions

1. Prior Approval: Unless otherwise provided for in the Contract documents, proposed product substitutions may be submitted no later than TEN (10) working days prior to the date established for receipt of bids. Acceptability of a proposed substitution is contingent upon the Architect's review of the proposal for acceptability and approved products will be set forth by the Addenda. If included in a Bid are substitute products which have not been approved by Addenda, the specified products shall be provided without additional compensation.
2. Submittals which do not provide adequate data for the product evaluation will not be considered. The proposed substitution must meet all requirements of this section, including but not necessarily limited to, the following: Single source materials suppliers (if specified in Section 1.5); Underwriters' Laboratories Classified Acoustical performance; Panel design, size, composition, color, and finish; Suspension system component profiles and sizes; Compliance with the referenced standards.  
*See Section 01360 – Product Substitution for submittal process information and Product Substitution Form.*

#### 1.3 References

##### A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

1. ASTM A 1008 Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy and High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability.
2. ASTM A 641 Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire.
3. ASTM A 653 Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process.
4. ASTM C 423 Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method.
5. ASTM C 635 Standard Specification for Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings.

6. ASTM C 636 Recommended Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels.
  7. ASTM E 84 Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  8. ASTM E 1414 Standard Test Method for Airborne Sound Attenuation Between Rooms Sharing a Common Ceiling Plenum.
  9. ASTM E 1111 Standard Test Method for Measuring the Interzone Attenuation of Ceilings Systems.
  10. ASTM E 1264 Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products.
  11. ASTM E 1477 Standard Test Method for Luminous Reflectance Factor of Acoustical Materials by Use of Integrating-Sphere Reflectometers.
  12. ASTM D 3273 Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber.
  13. ASTM E 119 Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Material.
- B. ASHRAE Standard 62.1-2004, "Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality"

#### 1.4 Submittals

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data for each type of acoustical ceiling unit and suspension system required.
- B. Samples: Minimum 6 inch x 6 inch samples of specified acoustical panel; 8 inch long samples of exposed wall molding and suspension system, including main runner and 4 foot cross tees.
- C. Shop Drawings: Layout and details of acoustical ceilings. Show locations of items which are to be coordinated with, or supported by the ceilings.
- D. Certifications: Manufacturer's certifications that products comply with specified requirements, including laboratory reports showing compliance with specified tests and standards. For acoustical performance, each carton of material must carry an approved independent laboratory classification of NRC, CAC, and AC.
- E. If the material supplied by the acoustical subcontractor does not have an Underwriter's Laboratory classification of acoustical performance on every carton, subcontractor shall be required to send material from every production run appearing on the job to an independent or NVLAP approved laboratory for testing, at the architect's or owner's discretion. All products not conforming to manufacturer's current published values must be removed, disposed of and replaced with complying product at the expense of the Contractor performing the work.

#### 1.5 Quality Assurance

- A. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide acoustical panel units and grid components by a single manufacturer.
- B. Fire Performance Characteristics: Identify acoustical ceiling components with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting organization.
  1. Surface Burning Characteristics: As follows, tested per ASTM E 84 and complying with ASTM E 1264 for Class A products.
    - a. Flame Spread: 25 or less
    - b. Smoke Developed: 50 or less



2. Fire Resistance Ratings: As indicated by reference to design designations in UL Fire Resistance Directory, for types of assemblies in which acoustical ceilings function as a fire protective membrane and tested per ASTM E 119.

- a. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts to comply with requirements indicated for rated assembly.

- C. Handle acoustical ceiling units carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaged units in any way.

#### 1.6 Delivery, Storage, and Handling

- A. Deliver acoustical ceiling units to project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
  - B. Before installing acoustical ceiling units, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.
  - C. Handle acoustical ceiling units carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaged units in any way.

#### 1.7 Project Conditions

- A. Space Enclosure:

All ceiling products and suspension systems must be installed and maintained in accordance with Armstrong written installation instructions for that product in effect at the time of installation and best industry practice. Prior to and after installation, the ceiling product must be kept clean and dry, in an environment that is between 32°F (0°C) and 120°F (49°C) and not subject to Abnormal Conditions within the space or with interfacing construction such as walls or soffits. Abnormal conditions include exposure to chemical fumes, vibrations, moisture, excessive humidity, or excessive dirt or dust buildup.

HumiGuard Plus Ceilings: Installation of the products shall be carried out where the temperature is between 32°F (0° C) and 120°F (49° C). It is not necessary for the area to be enclosed or for HVAC systems to be functioning. All wet work (plastering, concrete, etc) must be complete and dry. The ceilings must be maintained to avoid excessive dirt or dust buildup that would provide a medium for microbial growth on ceiling panels. Microbial protection does not extend beyond the treated surface as received from the factory, and does not protect other materials that contact the treated surface such as supported insulation materials.

#### 1.8 Warranty

- A. Acoustical Panel: Submit a written warranty executed by the manufacturer, agreeing to repair or replace acoustical panels that fail within the warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to:
    1. Acoustical Panels: Sagging and warping as a result of defects in materials or factory workmanship.
    2. Grid System: Rusting and manufacturer's defects
    3. Acoustical Panels with BioBlock Plus or designated as inherently resistive to the growth of micro-organisms installed with Armstrong suspension systems: Visible sag and will resist the growth of mold/mildew and gram positive and gram negative odor and stain causing bacteria.

- B. Warranty Period Humiguard:
  - 1. Acoustical panels and grid systems with HumiGuard Plus or HumiGuard Max performance supplied by one source manufacturer is thirty (30) years from date of substantial completion.
- C. The Warranty shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and will be in addition to and run concurrent with other warranties made by the Contractor under the requirements of the Contract Documents.

#### 1.9 Maintenance

- A. Extra Materials: Deliver extra materials to Owner. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed. Packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with appropriate labels.
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Furnish quality of full-size units equal to 5.0 percent of amount installed.
  - 2. Exposed Suspension System Components: Furnish quantity of each exposed suspension component equal to 2.0 percent of amount installed.

### 2.0 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 Manufacturers

- A. Ceiling Panels:  
Armstrong World Industries, Inc. USG or pre-approved equal.

#### 2.2 Acoustical Ceiling Units

- A. Acoustical Panels Type L1 (without fire guard): Product:  
Fine Fissured, 1728
  - 1. Surface Texture: Medium
  - 2. Composition: Mineral Fiber
  - 3. Color: White
  - 4. Size: 24in X 24in X 5/8in
  - 5. Edge Profile: Square Lay-In for interface with Prelude XL 15/16" Exposed Tee.
  - 6. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): ASTM C 423; Classified with UL label on product carton, 0.55.
  - 7. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): ASTM C 1414; Classified with UL label on product carton, 35
  - 8. Emissions Testing: < 13.5 ppb of formaldehyde when used under typical conditions required by ASHRAE Standard 62.1- 2007, "Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality"
  - 9. Flame Spread: ASTM E 1264;
  - 10. Light Reflectance (LR): ASTM E 1477; White Panel: Light Reflectance: 0.85.
  - 11. Dimensional Stability: HumiGuard Plus - Temperature is between 32°F (0° C) and 120°F (49° C). It is not necessary for the area to be enclosed or for HVAC systems to be functioning. All wet work (plastering, concrete, etc) must be complete and dry.
  - 12. Antimicrobial Protection: BioBlock Plus - Resistance against the growth of mold/mildew and gram positive and gram negative odor and stain causing bacteria.

B. Acoustical Panels Type ML: Product: Clean Room VL, 868

1. Surface Texture: Smooth
2. Composition: Mineral Fiber
3. Color: White
4. Size: 24in X 24in X 5/8in
5. Edge Profile: Square Lay-In for interface with Prelude Plus XL Fire Guard 15/16" Exposed Tee.
6. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): ASTM C 423; Classified with UL label on product carton, N/A.
7. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): ASTM C 1414; Classified with UL label on product carton, 40
8. Emissions Testing: < 13.5 ppb of formaldehyde when used under typical conditions required by ASHRAE Standard 62.1- 2007, "Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality"
9. Flame Spread: ASTM E 1264; Fire Resistive
10. Light Reflectance (LR): ASTM E 1477; White Panel: Light Reflectance: 0.80.
11. Dimensional Stability: HumiGuard Plus - Temperature is between 32°F (0° C) and 120°F (49° C). It is not necessary for the area to be enclosed or for HVAC systems to be functioning. All wet work (plastering, concrete, etc) must be complete and dry.
12. Antimicrobial Protection: BioBlock Plus - Resistance against the growth of mold/mildew and gram positive and gram negative odor and stain causing bacteria.

2.3 Suspension Systems (WITHOUT FIRE GUARD CEILING TILES)

- A. Components: All main beams and cross tees shall be commercial quality hot-dipped galvanized aluminum as per ASTM A 653. Main beams and cross tees are double-web steel construction with type exposed flange design. Exposed surfaces chemically cleansed, capping pre-finished galvanized aluminum in baked polyester paint. Main beams and cross tees shall have rotary stitching (exception: extruded aluminum or stainless steel).
1. Structural Classification: ASTM C 635 HD.
  2. Color: White and match the actual color of the selected ceiling tile, unless noted otherwise.
  3. Acceptable Product: Prelude XL 15/16" Exposed Tee as manufactured by Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
- B. Attachment Devices: Size for five times design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, Direct Hung unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Wire for Hangers and Ties: ASTM A 641, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, pre-stretched, with a yield stress load of at least three times design load, but not less than 12 gauge.
- D. Edge Moldings and Trim: Metal or extruded aluminum of types and profiles indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations, including light fixtures, that fit type of edge detail and suspension system indicated. Provide moldings with exposed flange of the same width as exposed runner.

2.4 Suspension System for Use with Clean Room VL 868

- A. Components: All main beams and cross tees shall be commercial quality hot-dipped galvanized aluminum as per ASTM A 653. Main beams and cross tees are double-web steel construction with type exposed flange design. Exposed surfaces chemically cleansed, capping pre-finished galvanized aluminum in baked polyester paint. Main beams and cross tees shall have rotary stitching (exception: extruded aluminum or stainless steel).
  - 1. Structural Classification: ASTM C 635 HD.
  - 2. Color: White and match the actual color of the selected ceiling tile, unless noted otherwise.
  - 3. Acceptable Product: Prelude Plus XL Fire Guard 15/16" Exposed Tee as manufactured by Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
- B. Attachment Devices: Size for five times design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, Direct Hung unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Wire for Hangers and Ties: ASTM A 641, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, pre-stretched, with a yield stress load of at least three times design load, but not less than 12 gauge.
- D. Edge Moldings and Trim: Metal or extruded aluminum of types and profiles indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations, including light fixtures, that fit type of edge detail and suspension system indicated. Provide moldings with exposed flange of the same width as exposed runner.

3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 Examination of Adjoining Work

Do not proceed with installation until all wet work or work that has become wet such as concrete, CMU, terrazzo, plastering and painting has been completed and thoroughly dried out.

3.2 Preparation

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical units to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid use of less than half width units at borders, and comply with reflected ceiling plans. Coordinate panel layout with mechanical and electrical fixtures.
- B. Coordination: Furnish layouts for preset inserts, clips, and other ceiling anchors whose installation is specified in other sections.
  - 1. Furnish concrete inserts and similar devices to other trades for installation well in advance of time needed for coordination of other work.

3.3 Installation

- A. Install suspension system and panels in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, and in compliance with ASTM C 636 and with the authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Suspend main beam from overhead construction with hanger wires spaced 4'-0" on center along the length of the main runner. Install hanger wires plumb and straight. Main beams are to be supported with hanger wires within 8" of vertical surface terminations.
- C. Install wall moldings at intersection of suspended ceiling and vertical surfaces. Miter corners where wall moldings intersect or install corner caps.

- D. Vertical Wall or soffit surfaces intended to be paint finished shall receive the first coat of primer or block fill prior to installation of wall moulding.
- E. For reveal edge panels: Cut and reveal or rabbet edges of ceiling panels at border areas and vertical surfaces.
- F. Install acoustical panels in coordination with suspended system, with edges resting on flanges of main runner and cross tees. Cut and fit panels neatly against abutting surfaces. Support edges by wall moldings.

3.4 Adjusting and Cleaning

- A. Replace damaged and broken panels.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension members. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for cleaning and touch up of minor finish damage.
- C. Ceiling Touch-Up Paint, (Item #5760, 8oz. bottles) (Item #5761, quart size cans), "global white" latex paint should be used to hide minor scratches and nicks in the surface and to cover field tegularized edges that are exposed to view.
- D. Remove and replace work that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION



1.0 – GENERAL

1.1 Related Documents

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 Summary

- A. This section includes the following:
  - 1. Resinous flooring system as shown on the drawings and in schedules.
- B. Related sections include the following:
  - 1. Cast-in-Place Concrete, Section 03300

1.3 System Description

- A. The work shall consist of preparation of the substrate, the furnishing and application of a seamless flooring system with decorative flake broadcast and chemical resistant topcoat.
- B. The system shall have the color and texture as specified by the Owner with a nominal thickness of 60 Mils. It shall be applied to the prepared area(s) as defined in the plans strictly in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. 4 inch Cove base to be applied where noted on plans and per manufacturers standard details unless otherwise noted

1.4 Submittals

- A. Product Data: Latest edition of Manufacturer's literature including performance data and installation procedures.
- B. Samples: A 6 x 6 inch square sample of the proposed system. Color, texture, and thickness shall be representative of overall appearance of finished system subject to normal tolerances.

1.5 Quality Assurance

- A. The Manufacturer shall have a minimum of 10 years' experience in the production, sales, and technical support of epoxy and urethane industrial flooring and related materials.
- B. The Applicator shall have experience in installation of the flooring system as confirmed by the manufacturer in writing in all phases of surface preparation and application of the product specified. Qualifications of applicator must be submitted to Architect by the General Contractor for approval within 24 hours after acceptance of bid. Architect reserves the right to reject applicator if they do not meet the specified qualifications and/or cannot provide documentation from manufacturer.

- C. No requests for substitutions shall be considered that would change the generic type of the specified System.
- D. System shall be in compliance with requirements of United States Department of Agriculture (USDA), Food, Drug Administration (FDA), and local Health Department.
- E. A pre-installation conference shall be held between Applicator, General Contractor, manufacturer and the Owner for review and clarification of this specification, application procedure, quality control, inspection and acceptance criteria and production schedule.

1.6 Product Delivery, Storage, And Handling

- A. Packing and Shipping  
All components of the system shall be delivered to the site in the Manufacturer's packaging, clearly identified with the product type and batch number.
- B. Storage and Protection
  - 1. The Applicator shall be provided with a dry storage area for all components. The area shall be between 60 F and 85 F, dry, out of direct sunlight and in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations and relevant health and safety regulations.
  - 2. Copies of Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for all components shall be kept on site for review by the Architect or other personnel.
- C. Waste Disposal
  - 1. The Applicator shall be provided with adequate disposal facilities for non-hazardous waste generated during installation of the system.

1.7 Project Conditions

- A. Site Requirements
  - 1. Application may proceed while air, material and substrate temperatures are between 60 F and 85 F providing the substrate temperature is above the dew point. Outside of this range, the Manufacturer shall be consulted.
  - 2. The relative humidity in the specific location of the application shall be less than 85 % and the surface temperature shall be at least 5 F above the dew point.
  - 3. The Applicator shall be supplied with adequate lighting equal to the final lighting level during the preparation and installation of the system.
- B. Conditions of new concrete to be coated with specified flooring material.
  - 1. Concrete shall be moisture cured for a minimum of 7 days and have fully cured for 28 days in accordance with ACI-308 prior to the application of the coating system pending moisture tests. Outside of these parameters manufacturer shall be consulted.
  - 2. Concrete shall have a light steel trowel finish (a hard steel trowel finish is neither necessary or desirable).
  - 3. Sealers and curing agents should not to be used.



4. Concrete surfaces on grade shall have been constructed with a vapor barrier to protect against the effects of vapor transmission and possible delamination of the system.

C. **Safety Requirements**

1. Other trades shall be removed during the application of the product and 72 hours after completion

## **2.0 – PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 Manufacturers**

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following.

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **Spartacote Chip Pure Seamless Floor System**. Not all manufacturers produce all categories and types of resinous flooring systems.
  - a. Also pre-approved are:  
Sherwin Williams – Aqua Armor Decorative Mosaic Flooring  
Stonhard – Stontec ERF
2. Other Products must be approved prior to Bid and must be submitted in compliance with Section 01360 - Product Substitution.

### **2.2 Flooring**

- A. **Spartacote Chip Pure Seamless Floor System (60 mil floor system),**
1. **System Materials:**
    - a. Primer: Primer/Scratch Coat 160 sq. ft/gal
    - b. Base resin: Pigmented Body Coat 65 sq. ft/gal
    - c. Broadcast Aggregate: Broadcast Chips  
(size and quantity determined by selection of architect)
    - d. Grout Coat: MVT Tolerant UV Stable Glaze 160 sq. ft/gal
    - e. Top Coat: Surface Build Top Coat UV- Finish to be selected by Architect
    - f. Color: See Finish Legend
  2. Cove base (4 inch high with 2 inch diameter radius, smooth texture)
    - a. Cove resin; Cove Gel, Spartacote Broadcast quartz mixed with resin and troweled in place
    - b. Overlay Spartacote Chip Pure Floor System to match floor
    - c. Cove termination strip: clear plastic with 1/8" lip

### **2.3 Product Requirements**

Material: Spartacote Resin	2-component epoxy
Density	12.70 lbs./gallon
VOC Content, Mixed	
Volume Solids	59%
Flash Point: Part A	>212°F
Part B	170 °F

Mixing Ratio	1:4 by Vol.
Pot Life, Approximate	60 minutes @ 75°F
Open to Foot Traffic	After 16 hrs. at 73°F
Curing Temperature	Minimum 50°F
Full Cure & Max. Resistance	7 days
Hardness, Shore D ASTM-D-2240	70-75
Compressive Strength ASTM-C- 579	6500 psi
Flexural Strength ASTM-C-580	2100 psi
Adhesion To:	110 psi
-New concrete (5 days)	550 psi
-Moist concrete (28 days)	580 psi
-Dry concrete (28 days)	

### **3.0 – EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 Examination**

- A. Examine substrates, areas and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, installation tolerances and other conditions affecting flooring performance.
- B. Verify that substrates and conditions are satisfactory for flooring installation and comply with requirements specified.

#### **3.2 Preparation**

##### **A. General**

1. Existing concrete surfaces shall be free of oil, grease, curing compounds, loose particles, moss, algae growth, laitance, friable matter, dirt, and bituminous products
2. Mechanical surface preparation
  - a. Shot blast all surfaces to receive flooring system with a mobile steel shot, dust recycling machine (Blastrac or equal). All surface and embedded accumulations of paint, toppings hardened concrete layers, laitance, power trowel finishes and other similar surface characteristics shall be completely removed leaving a bare concrete surface having a minimum profile of CSP 3-5 as described by the International Concrete Repair Institute.
  - b. Floor areas inaccessible to the mobile blast machines shall be mechanically abraded to the same degree of cleanliness, soundness and profile using diamond grinders, needle guns, bush hammers, or other suitable equipment.
  - c. Wherever a free edge will occur, including doorways, wall perimeters, expansion joints, columns, doorways, drains and equipment pads, a ¼ inch deep by 3/16 inch wide keyways shall be cut in.
  - d. Cracks and joints (non-moving) greater than 1/4 inch wide are to be chiseled or chipped-out and repaired per manufacturer's recommendations.

3. At spalled or worn areas, mechanically remove loose or delaminated concrete to a sound concrete and patch per manufactures recommendations.

### 3.3 Application

#### A. General

1. The system shall be applied in six distinct steps as listed below:
  - a. Substrate preparation
  - b. Cove application
  - c. Primer Application
  - d. Topping/overlay application with flake aggregate broadcast.
  - e. Grout coat application
  - f. Topcoat application to thickness to reach even texture matching accepted sample
2. Immediately prior to the application of any component of the system, the surface shall be dry and any remaining dust or loose particles shall be removed using a vacuum or clean, dry, oil-free compressed air.
3. The handling, mixing and addition of components shall be performed in a safe manner to achieve the desired results in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations.
4. The system shall follow the contour of the substrate unless pitching or other leveling work has been specified by the Architect.
5. A neat finish with well-defined boundaries and straight edges shall be provided by the Applicator.

#### B. Cove

1. Cove will be placed with the broadcast flake to match selected color and size at 4 inches in height unless otherwise noted on drawing with a 1 inch radius
2. The cove will be smooth with no texture above mid-radius

#### C. Topping

1. The topping shall be applied as a self-leveling system as specified. The primer must be applied and will not be a lift coat. The topping shall be applied in one to two lifts with a minimum thickness of 60 mils.
2. The topping shall be comprised of three components, a resin, hardener and filler as supplied by the Manufacturer.
3. The hardener shall be added to the resin and thoroughly dispersed by suitably approved mechanical means.
4. The topping shall be applied over horizontal surfaces using a pin rake, trowels or other systems approved by the Manufacturer.
5. Flake shall be broadcast into the wet material to excess.
6. Allow material to fully cure. Vacuum, sweep and/or blow to remove all loose aggregate.

#### D. Grout coat and Topcoat

1. The grout coat shall be mixed and applied per manufacturer recommended procedure.
2. The grout coat shall be comprised of two components, a resin, hardener.
3. The grout coat will be applied at the rate of 160 sf per gallon.
4. The top coat shall be mixed and applied per manufacturer recommended procedure.
5. The top coat shall be comprised of two components, a resin, hardener.
6. The top coat will be applied at a rate to achieve selected texture.
7. The finish floor will have a uniform texture free of dry or smooth areas that do not match the selected texture. The finished thickness shall be 60 mils.

### 3.4 Field Quality Control

#### A. Tests, Inspection

The following tests shall be conducted by the Applicator:

1. Temperature  
Air, substrate temperatures, relative humidity, and, if applicable, dew point.
2. Perform moisture tests on concrete as follows:
  - a. Perform calcium chloride moisture tests in accordance with ASTM D1869 a minimum of twice for the first 1000 sq. ft and once for each additional 1000 sq. ft of area to be coated. Provide a written report of these test results including a letter of acceptance from the manufacturer.
  - b. Perform PH tests alongside each calcium chloride moisture tests. Provide a written report of these test results including a letter of acceptance from the manufacturer.

#### B. Coverage Rates

Rates for all layers shall be monitored by checking quantity of material used against the area covered.

#### C. Provide daily reports including detailed days activities, materials used with batch numbers and environmental conditions

### 3.5 Cleaning And Protection

- A. Cure flooring material in compliance with manufacturer's directions, taking care to prevent their contamination during stages of application and prior to completion of the curing process.
- B. Remove masking. Perform detail cleaning at floor termination, to leave cleanable surface for subsequent work of other sections.

END OF SECTION

1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Summary

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Resilient cork/linoleum tackable wallcovering.
  - 2. Accessories.
- B. Related Sections/Items:
  - 1. Primer/sealer application on gypsum board substrate, refer to Section 09910.

1.2 Submittals

- A. Comply with Section 01350.
- B. Product data indicating compliance with specified requirements.
- C. Installation Instructions.
- D. Samples: 6 X 9 inch (150 x 225 mm) samples of each type of tackable wallcovering material required.

1.3 Quality Assurance

- A. Fire Performance Characteristics: Comply with fire performance characteristics indicated below.  
Identify components with markings from testing and inspection organization.
  - 1. ASTM E 84 (Fuel contribution) - Class B
  - 2. NFPA253 (Critical Radiant Flux) - Class II
- B. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain tackable wallcovering system components from a single source.
- C. Deliver materials in original factory wrappings and containers, clearly labeled with manufacturer, brand name, and fire hazard classification.
- D. Store materials in original, undamaged packages and containers inside a well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, and extreme temperatures. Maintain room temperature within the storage area at not less than 68° F (20° C) during the period materials are stored.
- E. Mock-ups: Prepare mock-ups for Architect's review and to establish requirements for seaming and finish trim.
  - 1. Correct areas, modify method of application/installation, or adjust finish texture as directed by Architect to comply with specified requirements.
  - 2. Maintain mock-ups accessible to serve as a standard of quality for this Section.
  - 3. Install sample panel of each type of wallcovering specified.
  - 4. Install panels in areas designated by Architect.

1.4 Project Conditions

Maintain ambient temperature within the building at not less than 68° F (20° C) for a minimum of 72 hours prior to beginning of installation.

- A. Do not install tackable wallcovering until the space is enclosed and weatherproof.
- B. Do not install tackable wallcovering until temperature is stabilized and permanent lighting is in place.

1.5 Maintenance

A. Maintenance Instructions: Include precautions against cleaning materials and methods that may be detrimental to finishes and performance.

B. Extra Materials: Deliver to Owner extra materials from same production run as installed products. Package with protective materials.

1.6 Warranty

Submit manufacturer's five-year written warranty against manufacturing defects.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Products

- A. Walltalkers® tac•wall as a basis of design: Uni-color, resilient, homogeneous, tackable linoleum surface consisting of linseed oil, granulated cork, rosin binders, and dry pigments calendared onto natural burlap backing. Color shall extend through thickness of material. Color to be selected by Architect from Manufacturer's full range of colors.
- B. Other products will be considered for pre-approval if they meet or exceed the specifications provided herein. Submit at least 10 days prior to bid and comply with Section 01360.

2.2 Accessories

- A. Adhesive: Solvent-free, SBR type linoleum adhesive (L-910) or polyvinyl acetate dispersion type (contact adhesive) when used in press.
- B. Color matched caulk:
  - 1. Acrylic Caulk - color to be selected by Architect from Manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. J-Trim for tac•wall  
JTRM-00: Clear satin, anodized aluminum, 1/4 inch profile trim
- D. H-Trim for Tac-Wall  
H212: Clear satin, anodized aluminum 1/2".
- E. WTQP-01: 24 push pins; translucent.

3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 Examination

- A. Examine areas and conditions in which tackable wallcoverings will be installed.
  - 1. Complete finishing operations, including painting, before beginning installation of tackable wallcovering materials.
  - 2. Wall surfaces to receive wallcovering materials shall be dry and free from dirt, grease, loose paint, and scale.

3. Do not proceed with installations until satisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 Preparation

- A. Surface Preparation: Remove hardware, accessories, plates, and similar items to allow tackable wallcovering to be installed.
  1. Plaster surface: Remove surface chalk. In new work, use moisture meter to determine moisture content. Do not begin installation when moisture content is greater than five percent.
  2. Gypsum board surface: Recess nails and screws. Repair irregular tape joints, sand and remove dust.
  3. Painted surface: Remove loose paint or scale. Sand surface of enamel or gloss paint and wipe clean with damp cloth.
  4. Ensure gypsum wallboard surfaces scheduled to receive wallcovering are properly primed with a quality acrylic wallcovering primer under Section 09910.
- B. Prime substrate as recommended by manufacturer.

### 3.3 Application

- A. Comply with manufacturer's printed installation instructions.
- B. Cut sheets to size including 2 to 3 inches of overage. Allow sheets to lay flat for at least 24 hours prior to the application. Mark roll direct on the backside of each sheet. Hang sheets in sequence as cut from the roll, do not reverse every other sheet.
- C. Permanent HVAC system should be set to 68° F (20° C) for at least 72 hours prior to, during, and after the installation.
- D. Back roll each sheet prior to the installation to release curl memory.
- E. For seamed applications, using a seam and strip cutter remove the factory edge of one sheet. Using the same tool, overlap and trace cut the mating edge of the second sheet. Repeat this step for as many sheets as required for the job.
- F. Scribe, cut, and fit material to butt tightly to adjacent surfaces, built-in casework, and permanent fixtures and pipes.
- G. Apply adhesive (only enough to hang one sheet at a time) with a 1/16 inch trowel to the area to receiving the sheet.
- H. Work from top to bottom then side to side. Roll sheet firmly into adhesive for positive contact and to remove air bubbles.
- I. Remove adhesive residue immediately.

### 3.4 Cleaning

- A. Clean wallcovering using a sponge with a neutral pH cleaning solution. Do not use abrasive cleaners. Rinse thoroughly with water and let dry before using.
- B. Remove excess adhesive using methods and materials recommended by manufacturer.

3.5    Protection

Protect installed product and finish surfaces from damage during construction.

END OF SECTION



1.0 – GENERAL

1.1 Scope

- A. The work under this section consists of all painting, finishing work and related items.
- B. Paint or Painting shall include sealers, primers, stains, and oil, alkyd, latex and enamel paints and the application of these materials on surfaces prepared to produce a complete job whether or not every item is specifically mentioned. Where items are not mentioned they shall be furnished as specified for similar work. **Only work specifically noted as being excluded shall be left unfinished.**
- C. This specification includes field painting of all exposed piping, metal, ductwork, conduit, hangers, mechanical and electrical equipment in finished spaces. A finished space is one listed in the Finish Schedule as having finish materials on walls and/or ceiling.

1.2 List of Proposed Materials

The contractor shall either verify in writing that he intends to apply the products listed in the Paint Schedule, or shall submit for approval a list of comparable materials of another listed approved manufacturer. This submittal shall include full identifying product names and catalog numbers.

1.3 Submittals

- A. As soon as practicable after contract is let, submit for approval a detailed schedule of the paint proposed, listing the name of each product, and the surface to which it will be applied. Omission of any item from the approved schedule shall not relieve Contractor of his obligation.
- B. Product Data: For each paint system indicated. Include block fillers and primers.
  - 1. Material List: An inclusive list of required coating materials. Indicate each material and cross-reference specific coating, finish system, and application. Identify each material by manufacturer's catalog number and general classification.
  - 2. Manufacturer's Information: Manufacturer's technical information, including label analysis and instructions for handling, storing, and applying each coating material.
  - 3. Coating Maintenance Manual: Upon conclusion of the project, the Contractor or paint manufacturer / supplier shall furnish a coating maintenance manual, such as Sherwin-Williams "Custodian Project Color and Product Information" report or equal. Manual shall include an Area Summary with finish schedule, Area Detail designating where each product / color / finish was used, product data pages, Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS), care and cleaning instructions, Touch-up procedures.

1.4 Storage of Materials

- A. Deliver all painting materials to job site at least three (3) days before beginning painting in original unbroken containers showing manufacturers name and type of paint, subject to Architect's inspection and approval.

- B. All materials used on the job shall be stored in a single place. Such storage place shall be kept neat and clean, and all damage thereto or its surroundings shall be made good. Any soiled or used rags, waste, and trash must be removed from the building every night, and every precaution taken to avoid the danger of fire.

1.5 Protection of Other Work

The painting contractor shall furnish and lay drop cloths in all areas where painting is being done to protect floors and other work from damage. He shall be responsible for any damage to other work and shall replace any materials which have been damaged to such an extent that they cannot be restored to their original condition. All damage must be repaired to the satisfaction of the Architect.

1.6 Job, Weather, and Temperature Conditions

- A. Maintain temperature in building at constant 65° F. or above and provide adequate ventilation for escape of moisture from the building in order to prevent condensation mildew, damage to other work, and improper drying.
- B. Exterior painting shall not be done when the temperature is below 50° F., while the surface is damp, or during cold, rainy, or frosty weather, or when the temperature is likely to drop to freezing within 24 hours. Avoid painting surfaces while they are exposed to hot sun.
- C. Before painting is started in any area, the area shall be broom cleaned and excessive dust shall be removed from all areas to be painted. After painting operations begin in a given area, clean only with commercial vacuum cleaning equipment.
- D. Adequate illumination shall be provided in all areas where painting operations are in progress.

1.7 Inspection of Surfaces

- A. Before starting any work, surfaces to receive paint finishes shall be examined carefully for defects which cannot be corrected by the procedures specified under paint manufacturers recommended "Preparation of Surfaces" and which might prevent satisfactory painting results. Work shall not proceed until such damages are correct.
- B. At areas of existing previously painted surface, the painting contractor shall field verify to assure compatibility between existing paint / coating material and the proposed new paint / coating material prior to procuring such new materials or products. Should a material or product compatibility conflict be discovered, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Architect for direction prior to proceeding with procuring such materials or products.
- C. The beginning of work in a specific area shall be construed as acceptance of the surfaces and the Contractor shall be fully responsible for satisfactory work.

1.8 Quality Assurance

- A. Applicator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in applying paints and coatings similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance.

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain block fillers and primers for each coating system from the same manufacturer as the finish coats. An inspection is required by manufacture in between prime coat and finish. Per the request of the Architect.
- C. Coordination of Work: Review other Sections of these specifications in which prime paints are to be provided to ensure compatibility of total coatings systems for various substrates. Upon request from other trades, furnish information or characteristics of finish materials provided for use, to ensure compatible prime coats are used.
- D. Benchmark Samples (Mockups): Provide a full-coat benchmark finish sample for each type of coating and substrate required. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA P5. Duplicate finish of approved sample Submittals.

1.9 Cooperation With Other Trades

- A. This work shall be scheduled and coordinated with other trades and shall not proceed until other work and/or job conditions are as required to produce satisfactory results.
- B. The contractor shall examine the specifications for the various trades and shall thoroughly familiarize himself with all provisions regarding painting. **All surfaces that are left unfinished by the requirements of other sections shall be painted or finished as part of the work covered by this section.**

1.10 Maintenance Material

The contractor shall turn over to the Owner at the final inspection one gallon of each type and final color of the paint used on the project.

## 2.0 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 Materials

- A. Except where otherwise specifically stated hereinafter, painting materials shall be products of one of the following manufacturers without substitution of "Equal", and shall be in that manufacturer's top grade of the respective type: Benjamin Moore, PPG, or Sherwin-Williams (Basis of Design). The term "top grade" refers to the manufacturers advertised line of best quality and not to "Professional" or "maintenance" lines. Any deviations from the requirements of this article shall only be by written change order with contract price adjusted accordingly.
- B. If job-mixed paints are used, submit proposed formulas for approval before proceeding with work. Thinning and tinting materials shall be as recommended by the manufacturer of the material used.
- C. Paints and finishing materials shall be free from skins, lumps, or any foreign matter when used, and pigments, fillers, etc., shall be kept well stirred while being applied.
- D. Interior finish materials shall comply with flame spread limitations and smoke production limitations as follows:

Walls and Ceilings - Flame Spread - 25 or less ASTM E-84.  
Smoke Production - 350 or less ASTM E-84.

## 2.2 Colors

- A. Not limited to "stock" ready-mixed colors. Bring to directed shades or tones by mixing.
- B. In two-coat or three-coat work use slightly different colors for different coats to avoid skipping.
- C. Accent or feature areas when indicated shall be colors as selected. Color spacing and pattern shall be as indicated and/or directed. Maximum three (3) colors per area.
- D. Complete color scheme shall be as indicated on Finish Legend and Schedule.

## 2.3 Accessory Materials

Provide all required ladders, scaffolding, drop cloths, maskings, scrapers, tools, sandpaper, dusters, cleaning solvents, and waste as required to perform the work and achieve the results specified herein.

# 3.0 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 Workmanship

- A. Surfaces shall be clean, dry, and free of oil, grease, dirt, mildew, loose or peeling paint, loose wood particles, and in proper condition for painting. All work shall be carefully done by skilled mechanics. Finished surfaces shall be uniform in coverage, gloss, finish and color, and free from brush marks. All coats shall be thoroughly dry before applying succeeding coats.
- B. Do all work in strict accordance with manufacturer's label directions.
- C. Hand sand woodwork until smooth and free from raised grain and other surface imperfections. First coat shall be applied before erection, to all surfaces, front and back. After woodwork is primed, fill nail holes, cracks, etc., full and smooth with putty. Lightly sand between coats where necessary in accord with good practice. Fully finish the top and bottom edges of doors and other woodwork edges not normally visible. Shellac knots and pitch streaks before painting.
- D. On concrete or masonry, do no painting until the surface has dried to the equivalent of eight days drying time under well ventilated conditions in good drying weather.
- E. Vertical surfaces to Interface with suspended acoustical panel ceiling shall be primed/filled to a minimum of 8" about finish ceiling elevation prior to the installation of the acoustical panel ceiling perimeter wall edge molding/trim.
- F. Wash metal surfaces with mineral spirits to remove any dirt, grease, before applying materials. Where rust or scale is present, use wire brush, or sandpaper clean before painting. Clean shop coats of paint that become marred and touch up with specified primer.
- G. Treat galvanized metal surfaces chemically with compound designed for this purpose, apply as per manufacturer's directions before applying first paint coat.
- H. Remove and protect hardware panels, accessories, device plates, lighting fixtures, factory finished work, and similar items; or provide ample in-place protection. Upon completion of each space, carefully replace all removed items.

- I. Exterior doors shall have tops, bottoms, and side edges finished the same as the exterior faces of these doors. Interior door shall have vision windows, louvers, grilles, etc. Finished to match door frame.
- J. All closets and the interior of all cabinets shall be finished the same as adjoining room paint or stain unless otherwise scheduled. All other surfaces shall be finished the same as nearest or adjoining surfaces unless otherwise scheduled or directed.

### 3.2 Schedule

#### A. Exterior Metals

- 1. Galvanized metal shall be solvent clean with VM&P Naphtha.  
Primer: S-W: Procryl B66 - 1310  
Finish: Apply two coats  
B66-600 Series
- 2. Non-primed metal shall be cleaned and etched with approved acid and washed with water.  
Primer: S-W: Procryl B66 - 1310  
Finish: Apply two coats  
S-W: Pro Industrial DTM Acrylic Coating
- 3. Primed metals shall be inspected, scuffs, and abrasions sanded free of rust and receive full coat of primer. Concealed metal surfaces shall be spot primed.  
  
Primer: S-W: Procryl B66 - 1310  
Finish: Apply two coats  
S-W: Pro Industrial DTM Acrylic Coating

#### B. Interior Metals

- 1. Non-primed metal shall be primed under this section.  
Primer: S-W: Procryl B66 - 1310  
  
Finish: Apply two coats  
S-W: Pro Industrial DTM Acrylic Coating, Gloss
- 2. Primed metal shall have scratches and abrasions sanded free of rust and receive one full coat of primer.  
Primer: S-W: Procryl B66 - 1310  
  
Finish: Apply two coats  
S-W: Pro Industrial DTM Acrylic Coating

#### C. Interior Woodwork and Trim

- Apply two finish coats  
Primer: S-W: Prep-rite Problock B51-620  
Finish: Apply Two Coats:  
S-W: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss, B31-2600

#### D. Interior Gypsum Board and Plaster

- 1. Latex Finish system:  
Primer: S-W: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer, B28-2600

Finish Apply Two Coats:  
S-W: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex

2. Ceiling Application:  
\*\*Note: Provide flat finish for gypsum board in ceiling applications.  
S-W: Pro-Mar Ceiling Paint, P200 Flat - B30W2651
3. High Performance System: (All areas not ceiling) \*\*\*  
Primer: S-W: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer, B28-2600  
Finish Apply Two Coats:  
S-W: Pro Industrial Pre-Catalyzed Waterbased Epoxy  
**Provide at all wet areas**  
S-W: Pro Industrial Waterbased Catalyzed Epoxy

E. Interior Concrete and Concrete Masonry

1. Concrete Masonry Surfaces shall be filled unless noted otherwise.  
Prime: Pro Industrial Heavy Duty Acrylic Block Filler, B42W151  
Finish Apply Two Coats:  
S-W: Pro Industrial Pre-Catalyzed Waterbased Epoxy

**Provide at all wet areas**

S-W: Pro Industrial Waterbased Catalyzed Epoxy

- a. Note: Block Filler should achieve a smooth pinhole free appearance.
- b. This is necessary for proper protection before top coat is applied.
- c. Apply at recommended film thickness and spread rate as indicated by manufacturer.
- d. Architect requires manufacturer' inspection between block filler and top coat.

2. **Concrete Sealer:** Concrete MUST be etched, with H&C® Concrete Etcher or muriatic acid, following label directions.

Reducer/Cleaner --- Aromatic 100, R2K5, or R7K65

Brush – Use natural bristle brushes

Roller – Use a ¼" – 3/8" nap woven or other solvent-resistant cover

Freshly stained or painted surfaces will require cure time before any application of this H&C® High Performance Industrial Clear. Follow manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.

F. Interior Wood Doors and Natural Finish Wood

One (1) coat - Stain, of selected color, S-W: Wood Classics "250" Interior Wood Stain, A49-800

Or One (1) coat – S-W: Wood Classics Waterborne Polyurethane

- G. Exterior Ground Mount and Roof Top Mechanical Units, Equipment and Accessories. Painting contractor shall examine the site and all drawings and provide one (1) heavy coat of paint for each unit. Provide also one (1) coat primer for galvanized and/or rust areas.

3.3 Material Application

- A. All materials shall be applied in complete accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. All coats shall be thoroughly dry before the succeeding coat is applied.

END OF SECTION

## MARKERBOARDS AND TACKBOARDS - SECTION 10110

### 1.0 - GENERAL

- 1.1 Scope  
The work under this section consists of all markerboards and tack boards.
- 1.2 Submittals  
Submit for approval completely detailed shop drawings including dimensions, construction details, materials, finish, and details of adjacent construction.
- 1.3 Manufacturer  
The specifications and drawings are based on products of Claridge Products and Equipment Company to illustrate the standard of quality. Equivalent products by American Visual Display Products, LLC and PolyVision will be acceptable.
- 1.4 Guarantee  
The Markerboards and Tack boards Contractor shall guarantee all materials and workmanship covered by this section for a period of one (1) year from date of final acceptance of the Contract, or from occupancy of the building, whichever is earlier.

### 2.0 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 Markerboards  
Markerboards shall be Claridge LCS 24-gauge Porcelain Enamel steel skin with 3/8" particle board core and .015" thick aluminum sheet backing, typical 4'-0" high x 12'-0" long. (other sizes as indicated). Color to be #32 LCS White. ("MB" as designated on plans.) Nontypical sizes shall be indicated.
- 2.2 Tack board
  - A. Tack board shall be Claridge Fabricork Vinyl, 1/2" two-ply with 1/4" cork and 1/4" backing, 4'-0" high x 4'0" wide. Colors as selected. ("TB") as designated on drawings)
- 2.3 Trim
  - A. Provide concealed mounting for Factory Built Units with Series #3, 1-1/4" trim as indicated, using a hollow marker tray at markerboard only. Provide premoulded end covers at all markertrays.
  - B. Provide full length map rail No. 74 with cork insert at top of markerboard with end stops. Provide 76M display hooks, 76-R.B. roller brackets, and 76-F.H. flag holders for each section.
  - C. Standard end and mullion trim between marker and tack boards.
  - D. All trim to be extruded aluminum with satin anodized finish.
- 2.4 Map and Display Rail
  - A. Rail shall be No. 74 extruded aluminum with 1/4" thick cork insert, 1" wide, length required by drawings.
  - B. Provide 74ES end caps for each section, No. 76M metal display hooks (24" o.c.).

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 Installation

- A. Installation shall be mechanically anchored in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. All joints flush and neatly joined. No Glue shall be used.
- B. Wash markerboards with water and detergent cleaner.
- C. Contractor shall affix manufacturer's instructions to each Marker/Tack board unit which includes complete instructions on proper BREAKING IN of the markerboard.
- D. Mounting heights shall be verified by the Owner prior to installation.

END OF SECTION



1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Scope

The work required under this section consists of room/wall signs.

1.2 Submittals

- A. Submit a sample of signs including size, style of lettering, materials, and finish.
- B. Provide mounting templates.
- C. Signs shall conform to requirements as set forth by the AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT Accessibility Guidelines.
- D. Submit schedule indicating each room name and number indicated on Architectural Drawings with a corresponding space for Owner's mark-up for actual room name and number per school system of each room name and number along with sign type to the Architect for review.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Manufacturers

Subject to compliance requirements. Provide products by the following

- 1. Amerson Engraving and Signage (Basis Of Design)
- 2. Devaney Sign Service, LLC
- 3. Leeds Architectural Letters, Inc.

2.2 Room and Wall Signs

- A. Provide photopolymer signs with Grade II Braille 3/4" numerals and 5/8" Letters to comply with ADA (American Disability Act). Signs shall be color selected from manufacturer's full line of colors.
- B. Room signs with message insert to have 1/16" front plate, minimum 1/32" solid spacer (no tape spacer) and 1/8" back plate.
- C. Room Signs (no message slot)- minimum 1/8" thick with 1/32" raised letters.
- D. Exterior Signs - Exterior Aluminum .040 thick, factory painted and text to be silkscreened or inkjet print.
- E. Edge Condition - Square Cut.
- F. Corners - Round.
- G. Mounting:
  - 1. Sheet Rock - double sided tape
  - 2. Block or Brick - double sided tape and silicone
  - 3. Signs to be mounted with screws and anchors if specified.
  - 4. Signs mounted on wall adjacent to latch side of door 60" from floor to centerline of signs and 2" from edge of door frame to edge of sign.
- H. Provide signs as follows:
  - 1. All Offices, Classrooms, and Instructional Areas shall be 6" x 8" with 2-1/2" x 8" changeable clear message insert.
  - 2. All other interior door signs except corridor and vestibule doors shall be 6" x 6" with no message strip.

3. All restrooms to have minimum 6" x 8" sign with pictogram area with an additional area for raised copy and Braille.
4. 6" x 6" tactile exit sign at all interior exit doors leading directly to the exterior with raised copy and Braille.
5. Provide Framed Signage with Clear View Window. Frame to Match Interior Signage cover) to accommodate 8.5 x 11 Landscape Floor Plan. Provide two (2) per Classroom and Assembly Area.

2.3 Project Sign - Specification requirements are listed in Section 01030.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 Installation of Signs  
Install signs on surfaces and at heights as directed.

**END OF SECTION**

PROTECTIVE COVER-WALKWAY - SECTION 10530  
Aluminum Canopy System

1.0 - GENERAL

- 1.1 Scope  
The work of this section shall include all labor, material, and equipment necessary to furnish and install Walkway Cover and accessories hereafter specified and/or indicated on the Drawings.
- 1.2 Manufacturer  
Walkway Cover shall be Tennessee Valley Metals, Peachtree Protective Covers, Inc., Mitchell Metals or pre-approved equal.
- 1.3 Shop Drawings  
Shop drawings shall be submitted to the architect for approval before fabrication. These shop drawings shall be prepared with the professional involvement of a structural engineer licensed in the State of Alabama to show: size, arrangement and type of material, connections, relationship to adjacent work and Engineer's Seal and signature.
- 1.4 Guarantee  
The Walkway Cover Contractor shall guarantee all materials and workmanship covered by this section for a period of one (1) year from date of final acceptance of the Contract, or from occupancy of the building, whichever is earlier.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 General Structure
  - A. Structural roof system for walkway shall be complete with all required components and accessories as shown on the approved shop drawings and as required.
  - B. The system shall be designed to structurally withstand severe icing, heavy hail, and 110 mph wind loads. Minimal structural capacity for all components shall meet the latest edition of the IBC as adopted by the Authority having jurisdiction.
- 2.2 Concealed Drainage  
Water shall drain internally from deck to beams and/or to columns, spouting out at ground level through columns as indicated.
- 2.3 Materials
  - A. Roof Panel: The self-supporting aluminum Roof Panel shall be an alloy accurately roll formed to the deep channel design shown on the Drawing. It shall have a depth required for span and be furnished with an interlocking design to provide a weathertight load-bearing deck. The gauge of the panels shall be as required to support the load in accordance with engineering prints and calculations provided by the manufacturer. Material to be baked enamel acrylic. Color as selected by Architect.
  - B. Roll-formed Fascia: The fascia shall be accurately roll formed from an aluminum alloy to the sculptured design shown on the drawing so that it will serve as a built-in gutter for roof drainage and as a structural frame member with a height of not less than 6-1/4" and a gutter width of not less than 2-3/8".

Gutter cross sectional area shall be minimum 4 square inches. Fascia gauge shall be as required for the load to be supported in accordance with engineering prints and calculations provided by the manufacturer. Materials to be baked enamel acrylic. Color as selected by Architect.

- C. Finish: The enameled finish on roof panels, roll-formed fascia and related enameled components shall be designed for optimum performance in exterior installations under all environmental conditions. The finish shall be applied in accordance with and conform to, or exceed the Painted Sheet "Quality Standards" and recommended ASTM, Military and/or Federal Test Methods specified by the Aluminum Association in their publication "Aluminum Standards & Data".

All exposed materials shall be pre-finished. The roof system shall be finished equally, both sides (top and bottom surfaces matching color). Color choices shall include bronze, dark bronze, medium bronze.

Galvanized metal shall be solvent clean with VM&P Naphtha.  
Primer: S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer, B66-310

Finish: Apply two coats  
S-W Pro Industrial HP Acrylic Coating, S/G, B66-650  
OR S-W Pro Industrial HP Acrylic Coating, Gloss, B66-600

Non-primed metal shall be cleaned and etched with approved acid and washed with water.

Primer: S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer, B66-310

Finish: Apply two coats  
S-W Pro Industrial HP Acrylic Coating, S/G, B66-650  
OR S-W Pro Industrial HP Acrylic Coating, Gloss, B66-600

Primed metals shall be inspected, scuffs, and abrasions sanded free of rust and receive full coat of primer. Concealed metal surfaces shall be spot primed.

Spot Primer Coat – S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer,  
B66-310

Finish: Apply two coats  
S-W Pro Industrial HP Acrylic Coating, S/G, B66-650  
OR S-W Pro Industrial HP Acrylic Coating, Gloss, B66-600

- D. Component Accessories: Roof Brackets, Post Brackets, Flashing, etc., shall be of same materials and finishes as specified for prime components. Each part and its use is described in the engineering prints and calculations provided by the manufacturer. Each part shall be used as specified in the aforementioned prints. Posts shall be used as specified. All components must match finish color as selected by Architect.

- E. Hardware: All bolts, nuts, washers, and screws used in joining the members of the canopy together shall be stainless steel up to 1/4" diameter nominal size. Any hardware 1/4" diameter and larger shall be hot dip galvanized to withstand 200 hours' salt spray test of maximum resistance to rust and corrosion. Provide concealed fasteners where possible. All hardware must match finish color as selected by Architect.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 Installation

- A. Installed units shall have the following minimum pitch for water drainage of the roof.  
Minimum pitch for all panels and fascia:  
Up to 10'-1/8" ft.  
Over 10'-1/4" ft.
- B. Installed unit shall be properly caulked with a suitable, high quality material where needed and where specified.
- C. Installed unit shall meet local building code requirements and conform to the approved submittal drawings.

#### 3.2 Erection

- A. Columns and beams shall be aligned with care before columns are grouted. Downspout columns shall be filled to the discharge level to prevent standing water, and downspout deflectors installed after grouting.
- B. Grout shall be #2000 compressive strength. Mix by volume, 1 part Portland cement and 3 parts masonry sand. Add water to make pouring consistency and vibrate with a small rod to fill voids.
- C. Extreme care shall be taken to prevent damage or scratching. All workmanship must be of the very best, with neat miters and fitted joints.

#### 3.3 Flashing

At adjoining construction, as indicated or required.

#### 3.4 Clean Up

Remove all debris from the site as it accumulates. Clean Protective Walkway Cover at completion of installation and leave in as new condition.

END OF SECTION



## TOILET ACCESSORIES - SECTION 10800

### 1.0 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 Scope

The work under this section consists of all toilet accessories.

#### 1.2 Samples

Returnable samples to be furnished upon request.

#### 1.3 Manufacturer

Catalog numbers indicated in the schedule are from Bobrick Company catalog unless indicated otherwise. Equivalent products as manufactured by American Specialties, Inc., or Bradley, will be acceptable.

### 2.0 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 List of Fixtures

- A. The following list of accessories is essentially complete; however, the contractor shall examine the drawings carefully and shall supply such items not specifically called for to provide a complete installation.
- B. Fixtures shall be supplied as follows:
  - 1. Feminine Napkin Disposal - Model B-270, surface mounted, stainless steel finish. One per toilet compartment. (Female Only. Mount on opposite wall of toilet paper dispenser.) Provide at all Unisex Toilet locations.
  - 2. Toilet Tissue Dispenser - Model B-4288. Surface Mounted, Stainless Steel dispensing. Holds two rolls up to 5-1/4" diameter. One per stall as indicated on drawings.
  - 3. Framed Mirror - Model B-165-1830, surface mounted, stainless steel finish. One per lavatory where noted. Custom mirrors are specified under Section 08810 - Glass and Glazing.
  - 4. Soap Dispenser (Surface Mount) - Model B-4112, liquid valve, surface mounted, stainless steel finish, vandal resistant. One per regular lavatory and as indicated on drawings.
  - 5. Grab Bars - Model B6806 (or 6861 at Shower Stall as indicated), 1-1/2" diameter, surface mounted with B-2571 anchors at masonry walls, stainless steel finish. Provide per ADA requirements at Handicapped Toilet Compartment and Shower Stall.
  - 6. Semi-Recessed Waste Receptacle - Model B-3644, stainless steel, key lock assembly with standard vinyl liner no. 3944-12. One per Toilet Room.
  - 7. Mop and Broom Holder - Model B-223 x 36" surface mount, stainless steel, Type 302 (18-8) satin finish. Holders spring loaded, rubber cam with plated steel retainer. Mounting height 6'-0" floor to top. One per service and/or mop sinks.
  - 8. Coat hook with bumper - Model B-212, surface mount aluminum casting with satin finish to match stainless steel. Bumper is hard rubber secured with drive screw. Note: provide one (1) in toilet rooms without stalls.

9. Shower Curtain and Rod - Model B-6047 x width required. Extra heavy-duty stainless steel, Type 304, 18 gauge, 1-1/4" diameter. Vinyl shower curtain: Model # 204-2, white, with Hooks: Model 204-1. One each per shower compartment.
10. Folding Shower Seat – Model B-5181, Stainless Steel with 1/2" phenolic seat as indicated on drawings.
11. Electric Hand Dryers - Model XL-SB Excel Xclerator Automatic Stainless Steel, 120V. Installation as per manufacturer's recommended mounting height and per ADA requirements.

2.2 Finishes

- A. All fixtures specified or cataloged to be stainless steel shall be type 302 (18-8) with satin finish.
- B. All fixtures specified or cataloged to be chrome finish shall be triple plated with heavy chrome over nickel and copper.
- C. Mirrors shall be 1/4" electro-copper backed plate glass.

3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 Attachment

- A. All fixtures shall be secured to walls or partitions in the most secure method possible. Fixtures mounted singly against concrete block shall be secured with toggle bolts.
- B. The proper mounting accessories shall be furnished with each item.
- C. Contractor shall verify with Architect, the mounting locations and heights before installing accessories.

END OF SECTION



1.0 - GENERAL

- 1.1 Scope  
The work of this section consists of furnishing and installing complete, all miscellaneous furnishings and fixture items as indicated.
- 1.2 Submittals  
Shop drawings shall be submitted.
- 1.3 Warranty  
Provide Manufacturer's Standard Warranty where manufacturer warrants that the Goods delivered hereunder shall be of the kind described within this agreement and free from defects in material and workmanship under conditions of normal use for a period of six (6) years. Halotron, CO2 and Water/Water based extinguisher will be warranted for a period of five (5) years.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 Fire Extinguisher Cabinets (FEC)  
Recessed or semi-recess U.L. approved baked enamel 18 gauge steel cabinet, 24" h. x 10-1/2" w. x 6" d. with 2-1/2" trim. Cabinet door to be baked enamel or epoxy coated with stencil lettering "Fire Extinguisher" equal to J. L. Industries-Panorama #1017 Identity Q horizontal, white w/red letters - type break glass w/cly. lock; Larsen's Mfg. Co.; Amerex Corporation; or approved equal.  
  
Provide comparable fire rated fire extinguisher cabinets in fire rated walls as per rating indicated.
- 2.2 Fire Extinguisher (FE)
  - A. Cabinet Mounted - U.L. approved, 10 pound, tri-class dry chemical for Class A, B, & C fires. Equal to J. L. Industries - Cosmic 10E with hose; Larsen's Mfg. Co.; Amerex Corporation. Provide one with each cabinet.
  - B. Wall Mounted - 10 pound, Tri-Class Dry Chemical for Class A, B, C fires, U.L. approved, Model 10 ABCS-1. Manufacturers: J.L. Industries, Larsens, Amerex Corporation.

3.0 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 Installation  
Installation of all items shall be in full conformity with manufacturer's specifications, recommendations, ADA and approved details.
- 3.2 Fire Extinguishers shall be cabinet mounted in areas as indicated. Height shall be 4' from floor to extinguisher handles.
- 3.3 Fire Extinguishers shall be wall mounted in areas as indicated or required so that distance of travel between units does not exceed 75 feet. Each separate area shall have a minimum of one unit. Mounting height shall be 4' from floor to handle.

END OF SECTION



## MISCELLANEOUS FURNISHINGS AND FIXTURES - SECTION 12150

### 1.0 - GENERAL

- 1.1 Scope  
The work of this section consists of furnishing and installing complete, all miscellaneous furnishings, fixtures and signage items as indicated.
- 1.2 Submittals  
Shop drawings shall be submitted.

### 2.0 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 Building Plaque
  - A. Dedication plaque shall be of cast aluminum. Furnish and install a 24" x 42" plaque with approximately 500 raised letters and raised border. Field shall have stipple finish. Face of letters and borders shall have ground satin finish surface.
  - B. Plaque layout and designation shall be furnished by the Architect.
- 2.3 KnoxBox  
Provide one Standard Capacity Model 3274 KnoxBox 3200 - Location as directed by the Architect  
Color: Dark Bronze  
Mount Type: Standard Mount  
Tamper Switch Type: None
- 2.4 Project Sign - Specification requirements are listed in Section 01030.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 Installation  
Installation of all items shall be in full conformity with manufacturer's specifications, recommendations and approved details.
- 3.2 Installation of Plaque(s)  
Install plaque(s) where directed.

END OF SECTION



1.0 – GENERAL

1.1 Section Includes

- A. Fixed modular laminate clad casework and components.
- B. Countertops.
- C. Mobile storage units, tables and components.

1.2 Related Sections

- A. Blocking within walls where indicated: Division 6.
- B. Millwork, trim, and custom cabinetry: Division 6 and 12.
- C. Glass: Division 8.
- D. Base molding: Division 9.
- E. Sinks and service fixtures, service waste lines, connections, and vents: Division 15.
- F. Electrical service fixtures: Division 16.

1.3 Quality Assurance

- A. Manufacturer: Minimum of 5 years' experience in providing manufactured casework systems for similar types of projects, produce evidence of financial stability, bonding capacity, and adequate facilities and personnel required to perform on this project.
- B. Manufacturer: Provide products certified as meeting or exceeding ANSI-A 161.1-2000 testing standards.
- C. All manufactured casework systems, countertops and related items herein specified shall be furnished by one contractor to insure single source responsibility, and integration with other building trades.

1.4 Submittals

- A. Comply with Section 01350, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's catalog with specifications and construction details.
- C. Shop Drawings: 6 sets indicating dimensions, description of materials and finishes, general construction, specific modifications, component connections, anchorage methods, hardware, and installation procedures, plus the following specific requirements.
  - 1. Include production drawings for all casework systems and section drawings of all casework, work surfaces and accessories.
  - 2. Indicate locations of plumbing and electrical service field connection by others.

3. Include layout with units in relation to surrounding walls, doors, windows, and other building components.
4. Coordinate production drawings with other work involved.

D. Casework Samples:

1. Component samples: Two sets of samples for each of the following:  
Decorative laminate color charts / PVC and ABS edgings.

1.5 Product Handling

- A. Deliver completed laminate clad casework, countertops, and related products only after wet operations in building are completed, store in ventilated place, protected from the weather, with relative humidity range of 25 percent to 55 percent.
- B. Protect finished surfaces from soiling and damage during handling and installation with a protective covering.
- C. General Contractor shall be responsible for protection of all casework and tops after installation is complete.

1.6 Job Conditions

- A. Environmental Requirements: Do not install casework until permanent HVAC systems are operating and temperature and humidity have been stabilized for at least 1 week.
  1. Manufacturer/Supplier shall advise Contractor of temperature and humidity requirements for architectural casework installation areas.
  2. After installation, control temperature and humidity to maintain relative humidity between 25 percent and 55 percent.
- B. Conditions: Do not install casework until interior concrete work, masonry, plastering and other wet operations are complete.
  1. Flooring required to be placed under casework and equipment must be installed prior to installation.
  2. Wood or metal blocking (wall grounds) shall be installed within partitions prior to delivery of casework and furnishings to allow for immediate installation on delivery.
  3. Walls and openings shall be plumb, straight and square. Concrete floors shall be level within acceptable trade tolerances. Specifically the floor must be within 1/8" of level per 10 foot run, non-accumulative, when tested with a straight edge in any one direction.
  4. All overhead mechanical, electrical or plumbing rough-in work shall be complete
  5. Ceiling grids (with or without ceiling tiles), overhead soffits, duct work and lighting shall be installed.
  6. Painting shall be complete.
  7. General Contractor shall provide a secure storage area within the building that is clean, dry, well ventilated, protected from direct sunlight and broom clean.

1.7 Warranty

All materials and workmanship covered by this section will carry a five (5) year warranty from date of acceptance.

2.0 – PRODUCTS

2.1 Manufacturers:

A. Manufacturer:

Casework shall be Stevens, Advanced Cabinet Systems or pre-approved equal. Each manufacturer must be able to provide casework (including selected plastic laminate colors) as specified and detailed in drawings and specifications.

B. Substitutions:

1. Casework of other manufacturers will be considered for pre-approval, providing written request is received and approved at least ten (10) days prior to announced bid date and approved by Addendum. Bidder shall state in writing any deviations from requirements and specifications. The casework shall conform to the configuration, arrangement, design, material quality, joinery, panel thickness, and surfacing of that specified and shown on drawings.
2. Manufacturer must be Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI) Premium Certified.
3. Requests for product substitutions must comply with Section 01360 – Product Substitution Procedures.

2.2 Materials

A. Core Materials:

1. Particleboard up to 7/8 inch thick: Industrial Grade average 47-pound density particleboard, ANSI A 208.1-1999, M-3.
2. Particleboard 1 inch thick and thicker: Industrial Grade average 45-pound density particle-board, ANSI A 208.1-1999, M-2.
3. Medium Density Fiberboard 1/4 inch thick: Average 54-pound density grade, ANSI A208.2.
4. MR Moisture Resistant Particleboard: Average 47-pound density particleboard, ANSI A208.1 1-1999, M-3.

B. Decorative Laminates: GREENGAURD Indoor Air Quality Certified

1. High-pressure decorative laminate VGS (.028), NEMA Test LD 3-2005.
2. High-pressure decorative laminate HGS (.048), NEMA Test LD 3-2005.
3. High-pressure decorative laminate HGP (.039), NEMA Test LD 3-2005.
4. High-pressure cabinet liner CLS (.020), NEMA Test LD 3-2005.
5. High-pressure backer BKH (.048), (.039), (.028), NEMA Test LD3-2005.
6. Thermally fused melamine laminate, NEMA Test LD 3-2005, color to be selected by architect.

- C. Laminate Color Selection: Nevamar, Wilson Art, Formica, Laminart, Arbonite, and Pionite are approved manufacturers. Manufacturer, colors, and pattern shall be selected from premium grade laminate and indicated on finish legend and schedule.
- D. Edging Materials:
  - 1. 1mm PVC banding, machine applied; match laminate as schedule
  - 2. 3mm PVC banding, machine applied and machine profiled to 1/8 inch radius; match laminate as scheduled
- E. Glass:
  - 1. Wall unit full sliding glass doors: 1/4 inch thick laminated safety glass.
  - 2. Glass insert doors, hinged or sliding wall cabinets: 1/4 inch thick laminated safety glass.
  - 3. Glass insert doors, hinged or sliding tall or base cabinets. 1/4 inch thick laminate safety glass.
  - 4. Sliding doors mounted in aluminum track.
  - 5. Trim glass inserts: Extruded rigid PVC channel and self-locking insert retainer strip.

### 2.3 Specialty Items

- A. Support Members:
  - 1. Countertop support brackets: Epoxy powder coated, 11 gauge steel with integral cleat mount opening and wire management opening.
  - 2. Undercounter support frames: Epoxy powder coated.
  - 3. Legs: Epoxy powder coated.
  - 4. Brackets must support minimum of 600 lbs. without use of cross brace.
- B. Tote Trays:
  - 1. Heavy-duty vacuum-formed polypropylene plastic with full top rim and pull. Trays are ivory color, equipped with label holder.
  - 2. Tote tray/supply cabinets equipped with injection molded polycarbonate; continuous side rail support glide. Each side rail support glide is adjustable with integral support pins to interface 32mm pre-drilled holes.

### 2.4 Cabinet Hardware

- A. Hinges:
  - 1. 270 degree five knuckle - epoxy powder coated, institutional grade, 2-3/4 inch overlay type with hospital tip. 0.095 inch thick. ANSI-BHMA standard A156.9, Grade 1..
    - a. Doors 48 inches and over in height have 3 hinges per door.
    - b. Magnetic door catch with maximum 5 pound pull provided, attached with screws and slotted for adjustment.
    - c. Finish to be selected by Architect.
    - d. location for installation shall be noted on schedules on the drawings.



- B. Pulls:  
One pull shall be: located at the centerline of the drawer, regardless of width, to ensure ease of operation and maximize drawer slide life. Pull design shall comply with the Americans with Disability Act (ADA). Finish to be selected by Architect.
  - a. Anodized aluminum wire pull, 8mm diameter with 96mm O.C. mounting holes
- C. Drawer Slides:
  - 1. Regular, knee space and pencil: 100-pound load rated epoxy coated steel, bottom corner mounted with smooth and quiet nylon rollers. Positive stop both directions with self-closing feature. Paper storage, 150-pound load rated epoxy coated steel slides.
  - 2. File: Full extension, 150-pound load rated epoxy coated steel, bottom corner mounted with smooth and quiet nylon rollers. Positive stop both directions with self-closing feature.
- D. Adjustable Shelf Supports:
  - 1. Injection molded transparent polycarbonate friction fit into cabinet end panels and vertical dividers, adjustable on 32mm centers. Each shelf support has 2 integral support pins, 5mm diameter, to interface pre-drilled holes, and to prevent accidental rotation of support. The support automatically adapts to 3/4 inch or 1 inch thick shelving and provides non-tip feature for shelving. Supports may be field fixed if desired. Structural load to 1200 pounds (300 pounds per support) without failure.
- E. Locks:
  - 1. Removable core, disc tumbler, cam style lock with strike. Lock for sliding 3/4 inch thick doors is a disc type plunger lock, sliding door type with strike. Lock for sliding glass/acrylic doors is a ratchet type sliding showcase lock.
  - 2. Keying as indicated on drawings shall be:
    - a. Alike Per Room & Master
    - b. Provide 2 Master keys to owner.
  - 3. Elbow catch or chain bolt used to secure inactive door on all locked cabinets.
- F. Sliding Door Track: Anodized aluminum double channel.
- G. Coat Rods: 1 inch diameter, 14-gauge chrome plated steel installed in captive mounting hardware.
- H. File Suspension System: Extruded molding integral with top of drawer box sides to accept standard hanging file folders.
- I. Mirrors: 1/4 inch thick polished mirror plate.

2.5 Fabrication:

- A. Fabricate casework, countertops and related products to dimensions, profiles, and details shown. Tall Cabinets: All wardrobe cabinets are to be to be 29" deep unless noted otherwise on architectural drawings
- B. All casework panel components must go through a supplemental sizing process after cutting, producing a panel precisely finished in size and squared to

within 0.010 inches, ensuring strict dimensional quality and structural integrity in the final fabricated product.

C. Cabinet Body Construction:

1. All cabinet body construction shall be secured utilizing concealed interlocking mechanical fasteners. Construction must meet requirements in the AWS Manual, Edition 2, including errata through 2016 and appendix section.
  - a. Tops, bottoms and sides of all cabinets are particleboard core.
  - b. Tops, bottoms and sides of sink base units are moisture resistant particleboard core.
  - c. Sink Base Countertop substrate shall be 3/4" MR particleboard. Which shall run entire length of sink base unit. Joints or breaks at sink opening shall not be accepted. If necessary breaks shall only be allowed 4' to the right or left of the centerline of the drain.
2. Cabinet backs: Minimum 1/4 inch thick particle board core (maximum of 1/2 inch thick particle board)
  - a. Exposed back on fixed: 3/4 inch thick particleboard with the exterior surface finished in VGS laminate as selected.
  - b. Exposed back on fixed: 3/4 inch thick moisture resistant particleboard with the exterior surface finished in VGS laminate as selected.
3. Cabinet base and tall units shall have a site-built toe base, constructed of 3/4-inch (minimum) lumber unless otherwise shown on the drawings. Base is 96mm (nominal 4 inch) high unless otherwise indicated on the drawings.
4. Base units, except sink base units: Full sub-top. Sink base units are constructed of 3/4 inch moisture resistant particleboard and the base shelf shall be laminated both sides with cabinet liner.
5. Side panels and vertical dividers shall receive adjustable shelf hardware at 32mm line boring centers. Mount door hinges, drawer slides and pull-out shelves in the line boring for consistent alignment.
6. Exposed and semi exposed edges.  
Edging: 1mm PVC.
7. Adjustable shelf core: 3/4 inch thick particleboard up to 36 inches wide, 1 inch thick particleboard over 36 inches wide.  
Front edge: 1mm PVC.
8. Interior finish, units with open Interiors: (exposed areas)
  - a. Top, bottom, back, sides, horizontal and vertical members, and adjustable shelving faces that are exposed to receive thermally fused melamine to match exterior laminate.
  - b. Laminate color to be selected by architect.
9. Interior finish, units with closed Interiors:

- a. Top, bottom, back, sides, horizontal and vertical members, and adjustable shelving faces with thermally fused melamine to match other laminate.
  - b. Laminate color to be selected by architect.
- 10. Exposed ends:  
Faced with VGS high-pressure decorative laminate.
- 11. Wall unit bottom:  
Faced with thermally fused melamine laminate. (non-exposed areas only)
- 12. Balanced construction of all laminated panels is mandatory. Unfinished core stock surfaces, even on concealed surfaces (excluding edges), are not permitted.
- 13. All wardrobe cabinets are to be 29" deep unless noted otherwise on architectural drawings
- D. Drawers:
  - 1. Sides, back and sub front: Minimum 1/2 inch thick particleboard, laminated with thermally fused melamine doweled and glued into sides. Top edge banded with 3mm PVC.
  - 2. Drawer bottom: Minimum 1/2 inch thick particleboard laminated with thermally fused melamine, screwed directly to the bottom edges of drawer box.
  - 3. Paper storage drawers: Minimum 3/4 inch thick particleboard sides, back, and sub front laminated with thermally fused melamine. Minimum 1/2 inch thick particleboard drawer bottoms screwed directly to the bottom edges of the drawer box. Provide PVC angle retaining bar at the rear of the drawer.
- E. Door/Drawer Fronts:
  - 1. Core: 3/4 inch thick moisture resistant particleboard at sink units.
  - 2. Provide double doors in opening in excess of 24 inches wide.
  - 3. Faces:
    - a. Exterior: VGS High-pressure decorative laminate.
    - b. Interior: High-pressure cabinet liner CLS.
    - c. All exposed areas to receive matching laminate color as face.
  - 4. Door/drawer edges: 3mm PVC, external edges and outside corners machine profiled to 1/8 inch radius.
- F. Miscellaneous Shelving:
  - 1. Core material: 3/4 inch or 1 inch thick particleboard.
  - 2. Exterior: VGS High-pressure decorative laminate.
  - 3. Edges: 3mm PVC (at open storage shelving on metal standards), external edges and outside corners machine profiled to 1/8 inch radius.

2.6 Decorative Laminate Countertops:

- A. All laminate clad countertops shown on drawings for fixed casework shall be constructed with minimum 1-1/8" solid particleboard, except at sink and wet areas.
- Furnish plywood core tops and splashes, two and a half feet each side of center line of all sinks. All tops shall be laminated on the top face with GP50 (.050) high pressure decorative laminate and shall also have BK20 backer sheet creating balanced construction. The plastic laminate tops required for the rail mounted casework shall be constructed the same as the fixed laminate tops in the lengths indicated on the drawings. The rail mounted tops mounted over brackets shall be 1-1/4 inches from the wall to create a continuous grommet behind the back of the top. The rail mounted tops shall be supplied with 3mm PVC on all four edges. Provide tight joint fasteners where needed. All exposed edges, including edges of backsplash where used, shall have 3mm PVC banding, machine applied with waterproof hot melt adhesive. Exposed edges and corners shall be machine profiled to 1/8" radius for safety. Edging shall be available in colors as listed in Specification. Furnish 4" high backsplashes behind all sinks and as indicated on architectural drawings.

3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 Inspection

The casework contractor must examine the job site and the conditions under which the work under this section is to be performed, and notify the building owner in writing of unsatisfactory conditions. Do not proceed with work under this Section until satisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the installer.

3.2 Preparation

Condition casework to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas prior to installing.

3.3 Installation

- A. Erect casework, plumb, level, true and straight with no distortions. Shim as required. Where laminate clad casework abuts other finished work, scribe and cut to accurate fit.
- B. Adjust casework and hardware so that doors and drawers operate smoothly without warp or bind.
- C. Repair minor damage per plastic laminate manufacturer's recommendations.

3.4 Cleaning

- A. Remove and dispose of all packing materials and related construction debris.
- B. Clean cabinets inside and out. Wipe off fingerprints, pencil marks, and surface soil etc., in preparation for final cleaning by the building owner.

3.5 Color Selection:

Laminate Color Selection: See Finish Legend and Schedule for color selections.

END OF SECTION

1.0 – General

1.1 Scope

- A. Furnish and install 1" Mini Horizontal Aluminum Blinds (Premium Quality)

1.2 References

- A. Flame-Resistant Materials Shall Pass Or Exceed One Or More Of The Following Tests:
  - 1. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 701 (small scale for horizontal applications)
  - 2. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 302 Flammability of Interior Materials
  - 3. California Administrative Code Title 19
  - 4. Federal Standard 191 Method 5903

1.3 Submittals

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's descriptive literature shall be submitted indicating materials, finishes, construction and installation instructions and verifying that product meets requirements specified. Manufacturers' recommendations for maintenance and cleaning shall be included.
- B. Drawings And Diagrams: Wiring diagrams of any motorized components or units, working and assembly drawings shall be supplied as requested.
- C. Sample: Submit one sample shade of each type specified for approval. Supplied units shall be furnished complete with all required components, mounting and associated hardware, instructions and warranty.

1.4 Quality Assurance:

- A. Supplier: Manufacturer, subsidiary or licensed agent shall be approved to supply the products specified, and to honor any claims against product presented in accordance with warranty.
- B. Installer: Installer or agent shall be qualified to install specified products by prior experience, demonstrated performance and acceptance of requirements of manufacturer, subsidiary, or licensed agent. Installer shall be responsible for an acceptable installation.
- C. Provide 1" Mini Horizontal Aluminum Blinds of only one manufacturer for entire project.

1.5 Delivery, Storage And Handling:

- A. Product shall be delivered to site in manufacturer's original packaging.
- B. Product shall be handled and stored to prevent damage to materials, finishes and operating mechanisms.

1.6 Job Conditions:

- A. Prior to shade installation, building shall be enclosed.
- B. Interior temperature shall be maintained between 60° F. and 90° F. during and after installation; relative humidity shall not exceed 80%. Wet work shall be complete and dry.

- 1.7 Warranty:  
Lifetime Limited Warranty. Specific product warranties available from manufacturer or its authorized agent.

## 2.0 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 Acceptable Manufacturer

A. Product: Hunter Douglas "CD60 1" Mini Aluminum Blind", or pre-approved equal.

### B. Materials:

1. SLATS: 1" wide x .006" thick prior to painting, heat-treated and spring tempered (except 5000 series alloy on metallized finishes) aluminum alloy 6011 with eased corners and manufacturing burrs removed. Furnish not less than nominal 15.2 slats per foot to ensure tight closure and light control. Finish with manufacturer's standard baked-on finish in colors selected by architect from manufacturer's available contract colors utilizing Dust Shield™ finish to inhibit dust build-up for easier maintenance.
2. SLAT SUPPORT: Braided ladders of 100% polyester yarn color compatible with slats and spacing of ladder no more than 20mm.
3. HEADRAIL: U-shaped profile with rolled edges, measuring 1 3/8" x 1 3/8" x .024" constructed of corrosion resistant steel and providing a sleek beveled edge valance-free design. Internally fit with components required for specified performance and designed for smooth, quiet, trouble-free operation. Headrail finish to be standard baked-on polyester and to match slats. Ends fitted with .024" steel end lock with adjustable tab for centering blinds.
4. BOTTOM RAIL: Steel, with corrosion-resistant finish formed with double-lock seam into closed oval shape for optimum beam and torsional strength. Ends fitted with color-coordinated engineered polymer caps. Color-coordinated engineered polymer tape buttons secure the ladder and cord. Bottom Rail finish to be standard baked-on polyester color coordinated to slats.
5. LIFTING MECHANISM: Crash proof steel cordlocks with corrosion-resistant finish, two-ply polyester cord filler in braided polyester jacket lift cords, cord equalizers, cordlock adapter, and Break-Thru® safety tassel. Located on either side of individual blind unit as per architect's request.
6. TILTING MECHANISM: Permanently lubricated die-cast worm and gear type tilter gear mechanism in fully enclosed housing with clutch action to protect ladder tapes from over rotation of the solid steel, corrosion resistant tilt rod.
7. TILT CONTROL WAND: Tubular shaped 7/16" diameter extruded clear plastic, ribbed for positive grip and detachable without tools. Located on either side of individual blind unit as per architect's request.
8. MOUNTING HARDWARE: Manufacturer's standard .042" steel box brackets with baked-on polyester finish to match headrail with additional support brackets for blinds over 60" wide.

### 2.2 Fabrication

- A. Blind measurements shall be accurate to within + 1/8" or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.

2.3 Finishes

- A. Slat finish color to be selected by the Architect.
- B. Slat Support braided ladders shall be color coordinated with slat.

3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 Inspection:

- A. Contractor shall be responsible for inspection on site, approval of mounting surfaces, installation conditions and field measurement for this work.
- B. Other Interacting Trades shall receive drawings of shade systems, dimensions, assembly and installation methods from contractor upon request.

3.2 Installation:

- A. Installation shall comply with manufacturer's specifications, standards and procedures as detailed on contract drawings.
- B. Adequate Clearance shall be provided to permit unencumbered operation of shade and hardware.
- C. Clean finish installation of dirt and finger marks. Leave work area clean and free of debris.

3.3 Demonstration:

- A. Demonstrate operation method and instruct owner's personnel in the proper operation and maintenance of the blinds.

END OF SECTION





1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Scope

The pre-engineered steel building package shall consist of primary and secondary structure, metal roof panel system, exterior wall panel system, fascia panel, trim and flashing, closures, caulking, fasteners and other miscellaneous metal building components or accessory items as shown or called for in the drawings or specifications and as required.

1.2 Qualifications

- A. A complete structural analysis of the design is to be made to demonstrate that requirement of design and load criteria are met.
- B. A copy of manufacturer's calculations and analysis shall be furnished to the Architect.
- C. Metal building manufacturer shall be accredited by the International Accreditation Services' IAS Accreditation for Inspection Programs for Manufacturers of Metal Building Systems (AC472).
  - 1. Metal Building Manufacturer shall be currently enrolled in an IAS accreditation program and shall maintain such throughout the course of the project.
  - 2. Manufacturer Qualifications: Not less than 5 years experience in the actual production of specified products.
  - 3. Member of the Metal Building Manufacturer's Association (MBMA).
  - 4. Primary manufacturer of frames, secondary steel, roof and wall sheeting, and trim.
- D. Installer Qualifications - Firm experienced in application or installation of systems similar in complexity to those required for this project, plus the following:
  - 1. Acceptable to or licensed by manufacturer. (Provide documentation prior to start of work)
  - 2. 3 years experience with systems. (Minimum)
  - 3. Successfully completed not less than 5 comparable scale projects using this system
- E. Metal building shall be designed in accordance with "The Metal Building Manufacturers Association's Design Practice Manual."
- F. The metal building design engineer is responsible for the complete design of the metal building system.
- G. The erector shall have attended quality control training that is provided by or approved by the metal building supplier for erection of the metal building that is being supplied for the project
- H. Mock-Up: Provide a mock-up for evaluation of surface preparation techniques and application workmanship.
  - 1. Finish areas designated by Architect.
  - 2. Do not proceed with remaining work until workmanship, color, and sheen are approved by Architect.

3. Refinish mock-up area as required to produce acceptable work.

1.3 Submittals

- A. Shop Drawings for approval. Drawings and design analysis shall bear the seal of a registered professional engineer registered in the State of Alabama. Submittal shall include layout of all members, connections, and accessories and associated details for erection.
- B. Documentation of manufacturer's current (up-to-date) IAS certification shall be submitted to the Architect. If accreditation expires during the course of the project renewed certificate shall be submitted as well.
- C. Record or certificate of erector training for metal building system being erected.
- D. Building exterior components samples.
- E. Color samples for approval.
- F. Minutes of pre-installation meeting.

1.4 Warranties

All materials and workmanship covered by this section shall be guaranteed from date of final acceptance of the Contract, or from occupancy of the building whichever is earlier.

A. Panels

All wall panels shall be guaranteed by the manufacturer against chalk, fade, crack, check, blister or peel. 35 year (PVDF)

B. Roof Warranty

All roof panels shall be guaranteed by the manufacturer against chalk, fade, crack, check, blister, or peel. 35 year (PVDF)  
Provide 20 year weathertightness warranty.

**Standard manufacturer's roofing guarantees which contain language regarding the governing of the guarantee by any state other than the State of Alabama, must be amended to exclude such language, and substituting the requirement that the Laws of the State of Alabama shall govern all such guarantees.**

1.5 General

- A. All components including, but not limited to the following will be furnished and installed for the complete steel structural framework: anchor bolts, wall and roof panels, downspouts, gutters, fascias, insulation, all necessary closures, trims, flashing and fasteners to provide a weather proof building, and miscellaneous accessories as specified.
- B. All steel shall be new, clean and straight. Welding shall be done by qualified operators and the specifications of the American Welding Society adhered to. Workmanship on all parts will be equal to that of best modern shop practices.
- C. Walk-thru doors and hardware furnished and installed under Hollow Metal Doors

and Frames - Section 08110 And Finish Hardware - Section 08710.

- D. Pre-Installation Conference: Hold conference at Project site. Conference shall be attended by a representative from the metal building supplier, Contractor's Project superintendent, testing and inspection agency, and the metal building erector. Discuss sequencing and process of erection and coordination with other trades. Discuss testing and inspection procedures and coordination of construction activities to facilitate required testing and inspection.

## 2.0 - PRODUCT

### 2.1 General - Building Systems

- A. All structural mill sections or welded up plate sections shall be designed in accordance with the AISC "Specification for the Design, Fabrication and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings", latest edition.
- B. All Cold-formed steel structural members shall be designed in accordance with the AISI "Specification for the Design of Cold-formed Steel Structural Members", latest edition.

### 2.2 Design Loads

- A. The design loads for the building shall be, in addition to their own dead load, the live, wind, snow and seismic loads required of the following as specified:
1. 2015 International Building Code.
  2. Low Rise Building Systems Manual, by the Metal Building Manufacturers Association.
- B. The building components shall be designed to meet the most severe conditions of load combinations set by the specified building code, but in no case be less than that produced by the following load combinations:
1. Building dead load plus roof live load (or snow).
  2. Building dead load plus wind load.
  3. Building dead load plus wind load plus one-half roof snow load.
  4. Building dead load plus roof snow load plus one-half wind load.
- C. Roof live and snow loads shall be applied on the horizontal roof projection. Wind loads shall be assumed to act horizontally and shall be applied as pressure and suction perpendicular to the building surface.
- D. Design load requirements shall be determined by local conditions, applicable codes, building end use, etc. Application of design loads shall be in accordance with the Design Practices sections of the Metal Building Manufacturers Association (MBMA) Building Systems Manual, unless specified otherwise. **NOTE:** See all drawings for additional point loading on the roof structure (including but not limited to roof top mechanical units, hanging equipment loads, continuous heavy piping loads, etc.).
- E. Minimum design collateral loads supported on or hung from the roof structure shall be as follows:

Minimum Design Collateral Load (MDCL) as indicated on Structural Drawings.

These collateral loads shall be applied in addition to self-weight of building frame, roof decking and roof covering weights.

- F. Deflection Limits:
- Roof Purlins and Rafters: DL Span/360, LL Span/360, TL Span/240.
  - Girts Supporting Metal Panels: Horizontal deflection Span/120.
  - Overall Building Drift: H/200 where "H" is the building eave height.
  - Note specific deflection requirements and expansion joints noted on drawings.

### 2.3 Primary Framing Steel

- A. Steel for hot-rolled structural sections shall conform to the requirements of ASTM specification A 36.
- B. Steel for all built-up sections shall meet as applicable the physical and chemical properties of ASTM A 572 modified to 55,000 psi minimum yield and 70,000 psi minimum tensile strength, or ASTM A 607-85, Grade 55, or ASTM A 570-88, Grade 55.
- C. Steel for all endwall "C" sections shall meet the physical and chemical properties of ASTM A 570-88, Grade 55.
- D. Rigid Frame: All rigid frames shall be welded, built-up "I" sections. The columns shall be straight or sloped with a minimum depth of 12" for primary frame members. Bases of frames are to be pinned.
- E. Endwall Frames: All endwall roof beams and endwall columns shall be cold-formed "C" sections, mill-rolled sections, or built-up "I" sections as required for future bay addition.
- F. Plates, Stiffeners, etc.: All base plates, splice plates, cap plates, and stiffeners shall be factory welded into place on the structural members.
- G. Bolt Holes, etc: All base plates, splice plates and flanges shall be shop fabricated to include bolt connection holes. Webs shall be shop fabricated to include cable brace or rod brace holes and flange brace holes.

### 2.4 Secondary Framing Steel

- A. Steel used to form purlins, girts, eave struts and "C" sections shall meet the physical and chemical properties of ASTM A 570-88, Grade 55.
- B. Steel used to form zinc-coated (galvanized) rolling service door frames shall meet the physical and chemical properties of ASTM A 446-87, Grade D and G 90 Coating designation as described in ASTM A 525-87.
- C. Purlins and Girts: Purlins and girts shall be cold-formed "Z" or "C" sections with stiffened flanges. They shall be prepunched at the factory to provide for field bolting to the primary framing. They shall be simple or continuous span as required by design.
- D. Bracing Struts: Provide bracing struts of round HSS or pipe sections sized as required to transfer lateral forces into primary structural frame system.
- E. Eave Struts: Eave Struts shall be unequal flange, cold-formed "C" sections.
- F. Base Angle: A base member will be supplied by which the base of the wall covering may be attached to the perimeter of the slab. This member shall be secured to the concrete slab with concrete anchors.

- G. Provide attachment and support framing for wall mounted gymnasium equipment.

2.5 Bracing

- A. Diagonal Bracing: Diagonal bracing in the roof shall be used to resolve horizontal loads (wind, seismic, crane, etc.) from the roof structure into the longitudinal bracing frames or transverse rigid frames. This bracing will be furnished to length and equipped with bevel washers and nuts at each end. It may consist of rods threaded each end or galvanized cable with suitable threaded end anchors.
- B. Flange Braces: The compression flange of all primary framing shall be braced laterally with angles connecting to the webs of purlins or girts so that the flange compressive stress is within allowable limits for any combination of loadings.
- C. Longitudinal and Special Bracing: **Diagonal bracing is permitted in the sidewall where indicated.** Coordinate load path of sidewall bracing frames with load path of wind/seismic bracing in the roof. Provide additional bracing as required to transfer all horizontal loads into the primary structural system.
- D. Coordinate trades with locations of bracing. Bracing shall not be removed or cut to facilitate installation of other trades unless approved in writing by the metal building design engineer.

2.6 Connections

- A. All field connections shall be bolted (unless otherwise noted).
- B. All shop connections shall be welded using either submerged or shielded arc process, and welding shall be in accordance with the applicable sections, relating to design requirements and allowable stresses, of the latest editions of the American Welding Society "Structural Welding Code."
- C. Metal building designer shall size anchor rods and provide details for required anchorage to the foundations.

2.7 Roof Covering – Standing Seam Metal Roofing System

- A. The roof system shall carry a UL wind uplift Class 90 rating. Comply with FM I-90 and the 2015 International Building Code. **Roofing Systems must comply with wind classifications according to 2015 IBC Section 1504, Risk Category 3. – No exceptions.**
- B. Purlins shall be insulated so as to eliminate "thermal short circuits" between purlins and roof panels, with continuous thermal spacer blocks.
- C. Roof to be Standard CFR standing seam roof in pre-finished 24 gauge material.
- D. Standing Seam Material – Roof Panels shall be 2" x 16" continuous length attached with concealed fasteners. No end laps.

2.8 Wall Covering

The Exterior wall covering shall be first quality 24 gauge galvanized steel architectural type R-panels (A.S.T.M. Galvanized Specifications). Panels will be precision roll-formed 36" continuous length panels with ribs at 12" o.c. Pre-finished color to be selected by Architect.

2.9 Panel Fasteners

Panel fasteners will be galvanized self-tapping hex head screws. A self sealing washer will be used under the head of all panel fasteners. Galvanized screws will be used on the sidewalls of all colored buildings. Fasteners shall be pre-finished to match wall panel color.

2.10 Weather Sealing

A. Sealant

Sealant to be used in all end panel laps on roofs and all other locations recommended by the manufacturer or required for weathertightness.

B. Weather Seal Strips

Sealer strips to be moulded from first grade high quality polyurethane to ensure long life.

2.11 Paint

A. Exterior Paint and Interior Paint (For Exterior Wall Panels and , Interior Liner Panels)

A 70% minimum Kynar 500 finish shall be applied over galvanized steel and shall be given a chemical conversion treatment prior to painting.

B. Structural Paint

1. All fabricated structural steel to be shot blast cleaned to remove loose rust, mill scale, etc. After inspection for accuracy of fabrication, it shall receive one shop coat of manufacturer's standard gray finish.

2. Any field touch-up necessary shall be the responsibility of the erector.

2.12 Gutters, Downspouts, and Flashings

A. Gutters and Downspouts: Gutters and downspouts to be furnished by Metal Building Manufacturer. Members to be fabricated from galvanized steel with supporting brackets properly spaced. Gutters shall be 24 gauge and downspouts 28 gauge. Finish shall match roof/wall panels.

B. Flashings: Roof, gables and eaves shall be flashed with 26 gauge pre-finished galvanized fascia trim. Corners of the building will be provided with 26 gauge galvanized steel corner trim. Door, window and sill trim will be provided in 26 gauge galvanized steel. Painted galvanized steel flashings will be fabricated from prefinished steel using the same paint specifications as wall and roof sheets.

2.13 Insulation

Provide Insulation under Section 07213. All insulation shall be protected and maintained dry. Wet Insulation shall be rejected.

2.14 Framed Openings This contractor to provide framed openings with pre-finished flashing to accommodate mechanical equipment such as louvers, grilles, piping, conduit furnished by other trades.

2.15 Roof and Wall Penetrations

All roof penetrations shall be flashed by building manufacturer/installer. All circular roof penetrations shall be made of a one piece construction from an EPDM membrane with aluminum base. Roof curbs shall be provided by building manufacturer/installer.

2.16 Floating and Trim Accessories

Provide all flashing and trim materials as required for a completely finished and weathertight installation.

3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 Erection

All components herein specified and indicated shall be furnished and erected in accordance with details and manufacturer's instructions. Erection shall be performed by a qualified erector who has attended training by the building manufacturer of the system being installed using proper tools and equipment. It shall be the responsibility of the erector to comply with all applicable legal and safety requirements. It shall further be the responsibility of the erector to determine and provide any and all temporary bracing, bridging, blocking, shoring, and/or securing of components, etc. as required for stability during the entire erection process.

3.2 Coordination

All components herein specified and indicated shall be coordinated with other trades that effect components including but not limited to the following:

- Concrete – Section 03300
- Hollow Metal Frames - Section 08110
- Storefront – Section 08420
- Finish Hardware - Section 08710
- Mechanical - Division 15
- Electrical - Division 16

END OF SECTION





## CERTIFICATION OF ROOFING SYSTEM

**Project:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Architect's Job No:** \_\_\_\_\_ **DCM Project No.** \_\_\_\_\_

**Owner:** \_\_\_\_\_

**General Contractor:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Roofing Subcontractor:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Roofing Material Manufacturer:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Roofing Material Manufacturer's Inspector:** \_\_\_\_\_

The undersigned Contractors, Manufacturer Representative and Inspector do hereby state that the Roofing System for the Project identified above has been provided in compliance with all Codes specified and as required by Local and State of Alabama laws and regulations and has been provided in compliance with the specified Performance Requirements.

### SIGNATURES

**General Contractor:** \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Printed Name

**Roofing Subcontractor:** \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Printed Name

The Roofing Material Manufacturer further states that the Roofing System Provided by Manufacturer to the Roofing Contractor complies with International Building Code 2015 for the County that Roofing System has been installed.

**Roofing Material Manufacturer:** \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Printed Name

The Roofing Material Manufacturer's Field Inspector certifies that he/she has made field inspections in the proper number and sequence to assure Roofing Material Manufacturer that the Roofing System supplied has been installed to comply with Manufacturer's installation requirements as well as the 2015 IBC.

**Roofing Material Manufacturer's Inspector:** \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Printed Name



PLUMBING AND FIRE PROTECTION - TABLE OF CONTENTS - SECTION 15400

<u>SECTION NUMBER</u>	<u>TITLE OF SECTION</u>	<u>PAGE(S)</u>
15405	PLUMBING IDENTIFICATION.....	1-4
15410	GENERAL PROVISIONS - PLUMBING.....	1-8
15420	TESTING, CLEANING AND ADJUSTING (TCA).....	1-2
15450	MATERIALS AND METHODS - PLUMBING.....	1-3
15480	INSULATION - PLUMBING.....	1-4
15490	FIXTURES AND EQUIPMENT – PLUMBING.....	1-3



## PLUMBING IDENTIFICATION – SECTION 15405

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following plumbing identification materials and their installation:
  - 1. Pipe markers.
  - 2. Valve tags.
  - 3. Valve schedules.
  - 4. Equipment labels.
  - 5. Warning signs and labels.

#### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Valve numbering scheme.
- C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system. Furnish extra copies (in addition to mounted copies) to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME A13.1, "Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems," for letter size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices for piping.

#### 1.04 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 PIPING IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. Manufactured Pipe Markers, General: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing direction of flow.
  - 1. Colors: Comply with ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Lettering: Use piping system terms indicated and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length.

3. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Full-band pipe markers extending 360 degrees around pipe at each location.
  4. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Either full-band or strip-type pipe markers at least three times letter height and of length required for label.
  5. Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions; or as separate unit on each pipe marker to indicate direction of flow.
- B. Pre-tensioned Pipe Markers: Pre-coiled semi-rigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Markers: Are not allowed

## 2.02 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers, with numbering scheme approved by Architect. Provide 5/32-inch hole for fastener.
1. Material: 3/32-inch thick laminated plastic with 2 black surfaces and white inner layer.
  2. Valve-Tag Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain, beaded chain or S-hook.

## 2.03 VALVE SCHEDULES

- A. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on standard-size bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
1. Valve-Schedule Frames: Glazed display frame for removable mounting on masonry walls for each page of valve schedule. Include mounting screws.
  2. Frame: Extruded aluminum.
  3. Glazing: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1, Glazing Quality B, 2.5-mm, single-thickness glass.

## 2.04 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  2. Color Coding:

<u>System</u>	<u>Background Color</u>	<u>Letters</u>
Other equipment	Black	White
  3. Temperatures up to 160 deg F.
  4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  5. Letter shall be a minimum of 1/2" high. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
  7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number.

## 2.05 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Yellow.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: Minimum 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information as indicated elsewhere in the specifications and on the Drawings.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 APPLICATIONS, GENERAL

- A. Products specified are for applications referenced in other Division 15 Sections. If more than single-type material, device, or label is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.

### 3.02 PIPING IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install manufactured pipe markers indicating service on each piping system. Install with flow indication arrows showing direction of flow.
  - 1. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Pre-tensioned pipe markers. Use size to ensure a tight fit.
  - 2. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Self-adhesive pipe markers. Use color-coded, self-adhesive plastic tape, [at least 3/4 inch] [1-1/2 inches] wide, lapped at least 1-1/2 inches at both ends of pipe marker, and covering full circumference of pipe.
  - 3. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Shaped pipe markers. Use size to match pipe and secure with fasteners.
  - 4. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Self-adhesive pipe markers. Use color-coded, self-adhesive plastic tape, at least 1-1/2 inches wide, lapped at least 3 inches at both ends of pipe marker, and covering full circumference of pipe.

- B. Locate pipe markers and color bands where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior non-concealed locations as follows:
1. Near each valve and control device.
  2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and non-accessible enclosures.
  4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.

### 3.03 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; plumbing fixture supply stops; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following:
1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Cold Water: **2 inches square.**
    - b. Hot /HWR Water: **2 inches square.**
    - c. Fire Protection: **2 inches square.**
  2. Valve-Tag Color:
    - a. Cold Water: **Natural.**
    - b. Hot Water: **Blue.**
    - c. Fire Protection: **Red.**
  3. Letter Color:
    - a. Cold Water: **White**
    - b. Hot Water: **White.**
    - c. Fire Protection: **White.**

### 3.04 VALVE-SCHEDULE INSTALLATION

- A. Mount valve schedule on wall in accessible location in each major equipment room.

END OF SECTION 15405



1.00 GENERAL:

1.01 SCOPE:

- A. Provisions of this Section apply to all Plumbing work.
- B. Include the provisions of General, Supplementary and Special Conditions and provisions of the Specifications shall apply to and form a part of this Section.
- C. Provide all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary for the completion of all work shown or specified, except work specifically specified to be done or furnished under other sections of the Specifications. Include performing all operations in connection with the complete installation in strict accordance with the specification and applicable drawings subject to the terms and conditions of the Contract, for the following system:
  - 1. A system of sanitary waste and vent piping.
  - 2. A system of domestic water piping.
- D. Give required notices, file drawings obtain and pay for permits, deposits and fees necessary for the installation of the work. Obtain and pay for inspections required by laws, ordinances, rules, regulations or public authority having jurisdiction. Obtain and pay for certificates of such inspections, and file such certificates with Owner.
- E. "Provide" means to furnish and install, complete and ready for operation.

1.02 DRAWINGS:

- A. Drawings are diagrammatic and subject to requirements of Architectural Drawings. Drawings indicate generally the location of components and are not intended to show all fittings or all details of the work. Coordinate with Architectural, Structural, Electrical, HVAC and other Building Drawings.
- B. Follow the Drawings closely, check dimensions with Architectural Drawings and field conditions. DO NOT scale Drawings for location of system components.
- C. Make no changes without Architect's written permission. In case of doubt, obtain Architect's decision before proceeding with work. Failure to follow this instruction shall make the Contractor liable for damage to other work and responsible for removing and repairing defective or mis-located work.
- D. Do not scale Drawings to locate sprinkler heads. Coordinate with lighting, ceiling grids, ceiling diffusers and/or reflected ceiling plans. Install Sprinkler Heads in center of ceiling tiles.

1.03 APPLICABLE CODES AND STANDARDS:

- A. Comply with the current editions of the following Codes and Standards:
  - 1. ANSI/ASHRAE 15 - Code for Building Services Piping.
  - 2. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
  - 3. NFPA 101 – National Life Safety Code.
  - 4. Other Standards as referenced in other Sections of Division 15.

5. Local Building Code (International Building Code if no local Building Code in effect).
6. Local Plumbing Code (International Plumbing Code if no local Plumbing Code is in effect).
7. NFPA 110 - Emergency and standby power.

1.04 QUALIFICATIONS OF SUBCONTRACTOR:

- A. The Plumbing Contractor shall meet the following qualifications:
  1. The Plumbing Contractor must be approved by the Architect.
  2. The Plumbing Contractor shall have been in business as a Plumbing Contractor for at least three (3) years prior to Bid Date. He shall have a current Master's Plumber's Certificate and Gas Certificate of competency issued by the State of Alabama and the city and county in which work occurs.
  3. The Plumbing Contractor shall have a satisfactory experience record with Plumbing installations of character and scope comparable with this project, and for at least three (3) years prior to the Bid Date and shall have had an established service department capable of providing service inspection or full maintenance contracts.

1.05 CONFLICTS AND INTERFERENCES:

- A. If systems interfere or conflicts, the Architect shall decide which equipment to relocate regardless of which was first installed.

1.06 WORKMANSHIP:

- A. Do all work in a neat and first-class manner. Remove and replace work not done in such manner as directed by the Architect.

1.07 COOPERATION:

- A. Cooperate with all other crafts. Perform work in a timely manner. Do not delay the execution of other work.

1.08 VISITING SITE:

- A. Visit site and become familiar with location and various conditions affecting work. No additional allowance will be granted because of lack of knowledge of such conditions.

2.00 PRODUCTS:

2.01 MATERIALS, SUBSTITUTIONS AND SUBMITTALS:

- A. Unless otherwise noted, provide new, standard, first-grade materials throughout. Equipment and materials furnished shall be fabricated by manufacturers regularly engaged in their production and shall be the standard and current model for which replacement parts are available. Equipment shall be substantially the same equipment of a given manufacturer which has been in successful commercial use and operation for at least three (3) years.
- B. Where materials or products are specified by manufacturer's name, brand, trade name, or catalog reference, such named materials or products shall be the basis of the Bid, without substitution, and shall be furnished under the Contract unless requests for substitutions are approved as noted below. Where two or more brands

are named the choice of these shall be optional with the Contractor.

- C. Substitutions will be considered only if written request for approval has been received by the Architect TEN (10) DAYS prior to the date established for receipt of Proposals. Each request shall include the name of the material or equipment for which substitution is proposed and a complete description of the proposed substitute including drawings, cuts, performance and test data, samples and any other information necessary for evaluation. A statement setting forth any changes in other materials, equipment or other Work that incorporation of the substitute may require shall be included. The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitute is upon the proposer. The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution is final.
- D. If the Architect approves any proposed substitution prior to receipt of Proposals, approval will be set forth in an Addendum. DO NOT rely upon approvals made in any other manner.
- E. No substitutions will be considered after the Contract has been executed, except as described in the General Conditions.
- F. Submittal data and shop drawings, shall be submitted at one time, partial submittals will not be considered. Within 30 days of execution of Contract and before ordering materials and equipment, submit to Architect and obtain his approval of a detailed list showing each item which is to be furnished by make, trade name, catalog number, or the like; together with manufacturer's specifications, certified prints, and other data sufficient for making comparisons with items specified. When approved, such schedule shall be of equal force with these specifications in that no variation there from shall be allowed except with Architect's written approval. Number of Shop Drawings and procedure shall be as directed by the Architect.
- G. All pressure vessels shall be constructed and tested in accordance with applicable ASME Codes and shall bear ASME stamps. Certificates of inspection and approval shall be submitted to Architect.
- H. Similar items of equipment shall be the product of the same Manufacturer.
- I. See section, "ALTERNATES" in other sections of the Specifications and Bid accordingly.

## 2.02 SHOP DRAWINGS:

- A. Before starting work, submit and obtain approval of the following:
  - 1. Equipment piping.
  - 2. Plumbing Equipment, Products and Fixtures.

## 2.03 RECORD DRAWINGS:

- A. When work starts obtain from Architect two (2) complete sets of white prints of the **Plumbing**. All corrections, variations, and deviations, including those required by change orders, if any, must be recorded in colored ink or colored pencil at the end of each working day on these drawings. The marked prints shall be available at all times for the Architect's inspection.
- B. Prior to examining the request for final payment or making any response thereto, the Architect shall receive from the Contractor one (1) complete set of the white prints, marked as stated above, indicating the actual completed installation of the work included under this Contract.
- C. The Architect will forward the marked white prints to the Consulting Engineers for

review. They will then be returned by the Architect to the Contractor for use in preparing record drawings.

- D. When work is completed Contractor shall purchase from the Architect (At Architects' printing cost) one (1) set of reproducible electronic files and prints of Plumbing Drawings for use in preparing record drawings. Contractor shall transfer the information from the marked white prints to the dwg record drawings, removing all superseded data in order to show the actual completed conditions.
  - 1. Accurately show location, size and elevation of new exterior piping work and its relationship to any existing piping and utilities, obstructions, etc., contiguous to the area of work.
  - 2. Block out areas modified by change-order and identify them by change-order number.

#### 2.04 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT:

- A. Provide electrical equipment compatible with the current shown on electrical drawings. Verify current characteristics before ordering equipment.
- B. Should the Contractor with the Architect's/Engineer's approval make changes in electrical equipment from those shown on the Electrical Drawings, he shall be responsible for the coordination and cost of required changes.
- C. Provide factory installed fuses in all equipment requiring fusing for branch circuit protection.
- D. Verify electrical characteristics of all equipment and voltages available with Electrical Section prior to ordering any electrical equipment.

#### 2.05 SLEEVES:

- A. Refer to the Architectural Life Safety Drawings for wall ratings and close all openings to match rating of wall.
- B. Submit details of all pipe penetrations thru rated walls indicating wall construction, penetrating material and method of closing penetration including materials and listing of detail.
- C. All Penetrations thru walls are to be closed. If the wall is not rated, sheet rock joint compound may be used to close space around piping. For walls with ratings opening shall be closed with a U.L. Listed rating system compatible with wall rating. Insulation is to be continuous thru all openings.
- D. For pipe through floors inside rated chases or through non-fire-rated walls: 20 gauge galvanized steel sleeve 1/2" larger than pipe or pipe covering. Pipe insulation to be continuous thru sleeve. Seal opening between sleeve and pipe or pipe covering
- E. For uninsulated pipe through 2 hour fire rated walls, partitions or floors outside chases: Hilti FS605 with sleeve, U.L. Listing #WL1056.
- F. For insulated pipe passing through fire rated partitions or walls or floors outside chases: Hilti #FS611A with no sleeve, U.L. Listing #WL5029. Insulation: 1" thick fiberglass continuous thru wall.
- G. For pipe passing thru concrete floor, concrete walls, and concrete block walls:
  - 1. Uninsulated Schedule 40 steel and copper: Hilti #FS605 with sleeve, U.L. #CAT1155.

2. Insulated Schedule 40 steel and copper: Hilti #FS611A, U.L. #CAT5045.
- H. For 4" and smaller PVC pipe passing thru 3 hour concrete floor, wall or concrete block wall - Hilti #FS611A with collar, UL System #CAJ095.
- I. For 2" and smaller Schedule 40 PVC pipe penetrating a 1H12 concrete floor or wall - Hilti #FS611A sealant, UL #CAT2062 or UL #CAJ2066.
- J. Under this Section, the Contractor shall be responsible for closing and making fire safe all openings exposed during construction (both new and existing) in the floor and deck above. Closing of opening shall be compatible with rating and shall not compromise the rating of the wall or floor being sealed.
- K. Set sleeves before concrete is poured or masonry is erected. In existing construction, grout sleeves firmly in place.
- L. In Mechanical Rooms extend sleeves 1-1/2" above finish floor and waterproof.
- M. Where exposed pipes pass through walls and partitions in finished or exposed spaces, provide chrome plated F & C plates or escutcheons. Seal wall penetration and case work penetration with silicone prior to installing escutcheon.
- N. All wall floor penetrations shall be closed in a neat manner. The method used to the close penetrations shall be compatible with the rating of the wall and shall in no way compromise the integrity of the partition or floor.

#### 2.06 ACCESS DOORS:

- A. Provide access doors for valves, and other items requiring maintenance located above hard ceilings or behind partitions or walls. Doors in fire rated walls and ceilings: UL labeled with fire rating equal to fire rating of wall or ceiling. Provide door styles, sizes and colors as specified under the Architectural section.
- B. Mark lay-in ceilings with paper brads at valve locations and maintenance access points. Bend ends of brads over above ceiling tile.

### 3.00 EXECUTION:

#### 3.01 PROTECTION OF EQUIPMENT:

- A. During construction all fixtures and equipment shall be protected from damage caused by weather, masonry, plaster, paint and job accidents.
- B. When installation is complete, clean equipment and make ready for painting. Adjust all flush valves.

#### 3.02 INSTALLATION OF FIXTURES AND EQUIPMENT:

- A. Install fixtures and equipment to provide normal service access to all components.
- B. Provide sufficient space for removing components, install fixtures and equipment to provide such clearance.
- C. Install fixtures and equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. If manufacture's instructions conflict with contract documents, obtain Architect's decision before proceeding.
- D. All fixtures and equipment shall be firmly fastened in place:
  1. All wall hung fixtures shall be installed on a floor mounted fixture support with

anchoring bolts in all holes of each leg. Bolts shall be sized as per manufacturer's recommendation.

3.03 CUTTING AND PATCHING:

- A. Set sleeves and inserts and lay-out and form openings in walls, beams, girders and structural floors in this Section.
- B. Cut, patch and repair as required to accomplish work and finish to match adjacent work. Architect's approval required before cutting any part where strength or appearance of finished work is involved.
- C. Cutting, patching and repairing of walls, floors, etc., where noted in paragraph "A" above, have been located or sized incorrectly are included in this Section.

3.04 INCIDENTAL WORK:

- A. All power wiring is included in Electrical Section.
- B. Permanent drain and relief connections for **Plumbing Equipment** to nearest floor drain or to grade are included in this Section whether shown or not.
- C. Items obviously omitted from drawings and/or specifications shall be called to attention of the Architect prior to submitting Bid, after award of Contract any changes or rearrangements necessary to complete Contract shall be at no additional cost to Owner.

3.05 FLASHING:

- A. Vent Pipe and Roof Drain Flashing: Specified in "Architectural Roofing Section".
- B. Coordinate all roofing penetrations with Roofing Section.

3.06 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILLING:

- A. Include all excavation and backfilling required to bring the work to line and grade shown, including excavation of rock and all other materials which may be encountered.
- B. Excavate trenches wide enough for proper installation of work. Grade trench bottoms evenly. Provide bell holes as necessary to insure uniform bearing for pipes. Excavate minimum 6" below pipe. Refill cuts below required pipe grade with sand or compacted gravel. Support pipe continuously along its entire length. Do not use piers to support piping.
- C. Backfill after inspection by Architect and authorities having jurisdiction. Backfill compacted areas with "Engineered Fill", sand or fine gravel in accordance with requirements of "Sitework". Backfill paved areas with sand or fine gravel compacted to meet requirements of Paving Section. Backfill shall be free of rock, wood, steel, brick, etc. Do not disturb pipe. Restore or repair pavements and the like after backfilling, to meet the requirements of the authority having jurisdiction.

3.07 PAINTING:

- A. Refinish equipment damaged during construction to new condition.
- B. Paint all non-potable water pipe and insulation with two (2) coats of bright yellow paint in compliance with the Local Plumbing Code and these specifications. Paint piping prior to installing insulation. Paint type to be equal to Paint Specified in Painting Section of the Specifications.

- C. Other painting is specified in "PAINTING SECTION, Finishes Division".

3.08 DEMOLITION:

- A. Refer to the Architectural Demolition Plans for areas to be demolished and remove all fixtures noted to be removed.
- B. All fixtures and equipment noted "To Be Removed" on the drawings shall remain the property of the Owner. If Owner decides against retention of any or all items this Contractor shall remove from the site.
- C. Where fixtures are removed, remove all abandoned or unused piping back to main or nearest active connection and cap or plug.
- D. When vent stack(s) thru roof(s) are abandoned leave existing vent stack thru roof in place, cut pipe and cap as close as possible to underside of roof deck.
- E. Coordinate all system shut down with Owner. Request shut down minimum 72 hours prior to scheduled shut down period. Do not shut down any system without approval of Owner. Perform shut down at premium time if required.
- F. Refer to Architectural Demolition Plans for fixtures to be removed.

3.09 CONNECTIONS TO EXISTING SYSTEMS:

- A. Make connections to existing systems only at time authorized, in writing, by Owner.
- B. Do not take system out of service during occupied working, office or school hours.
- C. Drain existing systems and fill, vent, test, balance and put existing systems into operation after connections have been made.
- D. Repair existing insulation at points of connection to existing work.

3.10 PIPE IDENTIFICATIONS:

- A. Identify all piping exposed to view or accessible through removable ceilings or access panels with plastic snap-on pipe line markers. Color code markers in accordance with ANSI A13.1. Show pipe contents and direction of flow. Markers on lines 8" OD and smaller shall be taped in place; on lines over 8" OD secure with spring clips.
- B. Submit samples of all nameplates, tags, chains and etc., for approval.
- C. Protect all factory identification tags, nameplates, model and serial numbers, stenciling, etc., during construction and replace if damaged.
- D. Label Spacing and Extent:
  - 1. On straight run of pipes; Above suspended ceilings space labels approximately 10 feet on center; elsewhere, 20 feet on center.
  - 2. Wherever a pipe enters or leaves a room or building.
  - 3. At change of direction.
  - 4. At main valves and control valves (not equipment valves).
  - 5. On risers, just above and below floors.

3.11 VALVE TAGS:

- A. 2" X 3" laminated plastic with 1/2" numbers engraved at top, leaving space for further engraving by others. Secure tags with chains to valve yoke or stem, not handles.
- B. Valve tags colors:
  - 1. Plumbing: Red tags with white numbers.
- C. Valve tag locations: At all valves on mains, risers and branches.
- D. Valve tag numbers: Starting with Number 1, number tags in sequence from the lowest point to the highest point in the building. In existing building extend existing sequences.
- E. Starting with Number 1, number valve tags on this floor extending existing sequence. If there are no valve tags on existing valve, provide tags for all existing valves and new valves beginning floor sequence with Number 1.

3.12 VALVE CHARTS:

- A. In all mechanical rooms, provide charts showing number and locations of all valves, type of service, etc. Frame with aluminum, under glass.
- B. In existing buildings include existing valves in the charts of new valves.

3.13 WARRANTY AND INSTRUCTIONS:

- A. See General Conditions - One-Year Warranty.
- B. Contractor shall and hereby does warrant all materials, workmanship and equipment furnished and installed by him to be free from defects for a period of one (1) year after date of substantial completion of the Contract. Should any defects in materials, workmanship, or equipment be made know to Contractor within the one (1) year warranty period, Contractor shall replace such materials, workmanship, or equipment without charge.
- C. After completion of the work, Contractor shall operate the equipment which he installs for a period of ten (10) working days, as a test of satisfactory operating conditions. During this time, Contractor shall instruct the Owner's operating personnel in the correct operation of the equipment. Furnish necessary oral and written operating instructions to the Owner's representative.
- D. Provide three (3) sets of manufacturer's operating and maintenance manuals and parts lists including nearest manufacturer's sales and service representative by name, address and phone for all equipment and materials furnished. Provide a maintenance schedule listing routine maintenance operations and suggested frequency there of. Include all warranty dates on equipment and guarantees. Include names, address and phone of any subcontractor and work performed. Bind above items in loose leaf three (3) ring binders with tab for each class of equipment.
- E. During the period of tests, adjust all controls, regulators, etc., to comply with these Specifications.
- F. Make available to the Owner, without additional cost, service and adjustment of the equipment for the guarantee period.

3.14 PROJECT CLOSE-OUT DOCUMENTS:

- A. Prior to the issuance of a certificate for final payment, submit to Architect and obtain his approval of the following:
  - 1. Record drawings – Plumbing (reproducible). Electronic drawings dwg format



and pdf format.

2. Equipment and Fixture Submittal Data: List of manufacturers representative including name, address and telephone number that supplied requirement (3).
3. Equipment operating and maintenance manuals including: Spare parts required (3).
4. Maintenance schedule (3).
5. Equipment warranty dates and guarantees (3).
6. List of Owner's Personnel who have received maintenance instructions.
7. Record of inspections indicating what system was tested, type of tests, date of tests and those parties witnessing tests.
8. Valve Tag Chart.



TESTING, CLEANING AND ADJUSTING (TCA) - SECTION 15420

1.00 GENERAL:

1.01 SCOPE:

- A. Provisions of this section apply to all Plumbing work.
- B. Include Section 15410, "GENERAL PROVISIONS - PLUMBING", with this Section.
- C. All tests shall be witnessed by the Architect in addition to authorities having jurisdiction. A minimum of 48 hour notice is required prior to performance of test.

2.00 PRODUCTS:

2.01 NOT APPLICABLE

3.00 EXECUTION:

3.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS:

- A. After system have been installed, Test, Balance and Adjust System for proper operation, flow rates, pressures and temperatures. Correct any noise and/or vibration conditions.
- B. Perform all tests as required by local codes. Contractor shall furnish testing equipment. Keep a record of all tests indicating dates of tests, those persons witnessing tests and results of tests.
- C. Provide with the Close-Out Documents a Testing Record.
- D. If local Codes are more stringent, local Codes shall govern.

3.02 SANITARY SYSTEMS:

- A. Test piping by stopping lower outlets and filling with water to 10' hydrostatic head. Stop leaks and repeat test until watertight. All joints shall be exposed throughout test.
- B. Provide "Ball Test" on all piping 3" and larger with ball 1/2" smaller than pipe diameter.
- C. Provide visual inspection of all building drain piping below grade. Visual inspection shall be by means of a video camera routed through the drain system. Where the drain piping is connected to existing drain piping, the visual inspection shall include the existing drain piping from the point of connection, downstream to the point of connection to the public utility. A video tape and written report, noting any defects, on the findings of the visual inspection shall be provided to the owner with the close-out documents. The Plumbing Contractor shall provide personnel and equipment required for the visual inspection.

3.03 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING:

- A. On completion of roughing-in, cap all outlets, make connections with house supply line, and put under full water pressure. Test by applying additional pressure (by temporary pump or compressed air connection) to total hydrostatic pressure 1-1/2 times street pressure but not less than 150 psig for not less than 4 hours.
- B. Immediately and completely stop all leaks and retest until system is watertight. After

testing, leave general pressure on until ready to install fixture (except when necessary to drain to avoid freezing during construction). After completion of all tests, repairs and installation of fixtures, flush all domestic hot and cold water piping with water to remove all sediment scale and until water runs clear, then disinfect.

- C. Disinfect piping with hypochlorite solution of chlorine or compressed chlorine gas applied through an approved chlorinator. Operate all valves and faucets several times to insure the chlorine reaches all parts of the system. Feed water and chlorination agent into the system at rates that will provide a residual chlorine content of not less than 50 ppm after a retention period of 6 hours and 10 ppm after a retention period of 24 hours. Upon completion of treatment, flush treated water from each system until the water supply is satisfactory to the public health authority having jurisdiction. Provide Architect a certificate of compliance from the local Health Department.
- D. Clean air aerators, hose sprays, flush valves, etc. and adjust to proper flow rates.

3.04 COMPLETION OF TEST:

- A. Upon completion of all testing, Contractor shall provide to the Architect copies of test results and include a listing of all personnel witness to the tests.

MATERIALS AND METHODS - SECTION 15450

1.00 GENERAL:

1.01 SCOPE:

- A. Include Section 15410, "GENERAL PROVISIONS - PLUMBING", with this Section.

2.00 PRODUCTS:

2.01 MATERIALS:

- A. All pipe, fittings and valves shall be manufactured in the United States of America.
- B. Pipe and fittings to be the same manufacturer.

2.02 SANITARY - WASTE AND VENT PIPING:

- A. PVC plastic pipe: PVC-DWV, ASTM D-2665.
- B. Joints for PVC plastic pipe: Solvent welded, ASTM B-2564.
- C. Install vent stacks through roof. Terminate 12" above finish roof. Flashing is specified under Roofing Section.
- D. Connect to site sanitary 5'-0" from Building. Verify with Civil Site Drawings exact size, location and invert of site sewer prior to beginning work.

2.03 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING:

- A. Domestic Water Piping: Copper tube.
- B. Copper Tube: ASTM C-88, copper water tube, Type "L" hard temper inside building, Type "K" outside building and below slab on grade. Fittings, cast brass or wrought copper water tube fittings, ANSI B-16.18 or B-16.22.
- C. Joints on copper tube:
  - 1. Inside Building: Properly cleaned fluxed and soldered as recommended by manufacturer, using 95-5 solder and 100% lead free flux.
  - 2. Outside Building and below slab on grade: "Sil-Fos".
- D. Provide temporary construction water at site as required.
- E. Connect to water service 5'-0" from building, provided and installed under Civil Section. Verify exact location with Civil Drawings.
- F. All water piping installed below slab on grade to be type "K" soft copper bent up on both ends with no joints below slab.

2.04 VALVES:

A. Domestic Water Piping Valves:

- 1. Ball Valves: All bronze, 150 psig WP, chrome plated bar stock ball, full

port Teflon seats, stem packing seal and thrust washer, Watts B-6080 or B-6081, Apollo 20-100, Red White 5044F or 5094F, Kitz 56 or 57. Provide valve handle extension to (minimum 1") clear insulation.

2. Check valves 2" and smaller: All bronze, 125 psig WP, bronze disc, swing check, Stockham B-309, Crane 1342, Nibco S-413-B, Milwaukee 1509, Red White 237, Kitz 14.
  3. Check valves 2-1/2" and larger: Iron body, bronze trim, switch check, 125 psig WP, Stockham G-931, Crane 373, Nibco F-918-B, Milwaukee F2974, Red White 435, Kitz 78.
- B. Water pressure reducing valves: Watts, Wilkins, or Cash Acme, complete with inlet strainer, unions, inlet and outlet pressure gages and shut-off valve up stream of strainer.

## 2.05 PIPE HANGERS:

- A. General: Pipe hangers, Grinnell, PHD, Michigan Hanger, or Elcen. Grinnell figure numbers are given for reference. Provide copper clad hangers on bare copper lines.
- B. Pipe hangers for lines 3" and smaller, adjustable wrought ring hangers, Grinnell Fig. 97 or wrought clevis hangers, Grinnell Fig. 260.
- C. Pipe hangers for lines 4" and larger, adjustable wrought clevis hangers, Grinnell Fig. 260.
- D. Parallel piping graded in same direction may be grouped on trapezes. Trapezes for line 4" and smaller, Unistrut P2000 channel, or equal, with rods sized as specified below for largest pipe on trapeze. Guide lines on (but not anchor to) trapezes using Unistrut Series P1100 clamps. Trapezes shall not exceed 3' in length. Space lines to allow at least 3" clear between adjacent pipe or pipe covering and between pipes or pipe covering and rods. Space trapezes as specified for pipe hangers based upon smallest size of pipe on trapeze.
- E. Provide riser clamps on pipe risers on each floor. Clamps in contact with copper or plastic pipe, plastic coated.
- F. Beam Clamps: Grinnell Fig. 229.
- G. Inserts for hangers in concrete structures: Underwriter's listed cast iron inserts. Grinnell Fig. 282.
- H. For fasteners in existing concrete structures use drilled in expansion anchors with load rating at least 150% of pipe hanger rating (power driven anchors are not acceptable).
- I. Size rods for pipe hangers not smaller than the following: 3/8" rods for pipe up to 2", 1/2" for 2-1/2" and 3" pipe, 5/8" rods for 4" and 5" pipe, 3/4" rods for 6" pipe, and 7/8" rods for 8" and 10" and 12" pipe, 1" rods for 14" and 16" pipe and 1-1/8" rods for 18" pipe.
- J. Space pipe hangers at maximum: 5' intervals for cast iron pipe with additional hanger at each fittings. Pipe hanger spacing for screwed, solder joint and welded piping: 1/2", 6 ft.; 3/4" to 1-1/4", 8 ft.; 1-1/2" to 2-1/2", 10 ft.; 3", 12 ft.; 4" to 6", 14 ft.; 8" and over, 16 ft. Polypropylene and PVC plastic pipe 4 ft. horizontally maximum or as directed by manufacturer if closer, and 10 ft. vertically. Install

additional hangers at change of direction and valve clusters.

- K. Install pipe hangers on insulated pipe over pipe covering. Provide sheet metal saddle under hanger length to be 1-1/2 times the pipe diameter, minimum 12" long
- L. On sanitary piping requiring insulation, hanger may be installed directly on pipe and insulation installed over hanger.

### 3.00 EXECUTION:

#### 3.01 PIPE INSTALLATION:

- A. All piping shall be securely anchored in place to the Building Structure.
- B. Cut pipe square and ream full size after cutting. Clean pipe. Make threaded joints with Teflon tape. Do not spring pipe into place.
- C. Provide welding material and labor in accordance with the welding procedures of the Heating, Piping, and Air Conditioning Contractor's National Association or other approved procedure conforming to the requirements of ANSI B-31.9 "Building Service Piping". Employ only welders fully qualified in the above specified procedure and currently certified by recognized testing authority. Use either electric arc or oxyacetylene welding. Provide full perimeter welds at both face end and collar end of each slip-on flange.
- D. Install piping to allow for expansion. Make connections to all equipment to eliminate undue strains in piping and equipment. Furnish necessary fittings and bends to avoid spring of pipes during assembly.
- E. Install chrome plated floor and ceiling plates on pipe passing through finished surfaces in finished spaces.
- F. Make pipe size reductions using reducing fittings. Bushings are prohibited.
- G. Install 3/4" ball or gate valve drains with hose adapters at low points of water piping and at bases of all risers or where shown provide large drains.
- H. Make connections to equipment using screwed unions in sizes 2" and smaller and flanged unions in sizes 2-1/2" and larger. Install unions in all piping connections to each piece of equipment.
- I. Wherever ferrous pipes or tanks and copper tubing connect, provide dielectric insulation unions or couplings, equal to EPCO.
- J. Run piping concealed, except where specifically shown or specified exposed. Plumb all vertical lines and run mains parallel to building walls unless specifically shown otherwise.
- K. Lay underground pressure piping so top of pipe is at least 18" below finished grade. Provide deeper bury if required by local regulations. Support all underground piping solidly along body of pipe. Strongly suspend other piping from building construction.
- L. Run no piping or tubing in direct contact with slag fill. Where necessary to pass through slag, protect piping with not less than two (2) wrappings of polyvinyl chloride tape or equivalent protection approved by Architect.
- M. Install shock arrestors as manufactured by J. R. Smith, Josam, Zurn or Wade as

required by the IPC Plumbing Code and where indicated on drawings. Size in accordance with manufacturer requirements.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF VALVES:

- A. Provide shut-off valves where shown and detailed on Drawings. Locate valves to isolate each item to facilitate maintenance and/or removal.
- B. Locate valves in piping connections to water heaters, etc., so heads and tube bundles can be removed without disconnecting equipment or piping other than union or flange connections immediately adjacent to heat exchangers.
- C. Provide sweat to screw adapters where required.
- D. In Buildings with water pressure exceeding 80 psig, provide and install a water pressure reducing valve(s) immediately upon entering building or as shown on Drawings. The P.R.V. shall be line size and have an integral strainer or separate WYE strainer up stream of P.R.V. Provide a ball or gate valve immediately upstream of P.R.V. and strainer.



1.00 GENERAL:

1.01 SCOPE:

- A. Include Section 15410 "GENERAL PROVISIONS - PLUMBING", with this Section.
- B. Repair existing insulation at points of connection to existing work.
- C. "Exposed" is defined as: Exposed to view when construction is complete. Items which are not "exposed" are "concealed".
- D. Insulate all items subject to sweating or loss of heat.
- E. All insulation shall be installed by licensed applicator and applied in accordance with the Manufacturer's Recommendations.

1.02 INSULATION REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A.
- B. Pipe hanger saddles are specified in Section 15450 "MATERIALS AND METHODS - PLUMBING"
- C. Use insulation and adhesives with Underwriter's Laboratories flame spread rating not over 25 without evidence of continued progressive combustion, and smoke developed rating not exceeding:
  - 1. 50 for pipe covering located in air ducts, plenum or casing.
  - 2. 150 for all other pipe, and equipment insulation.

2.00 PRODUCTS:

2.01 FIBERGLASS PIPE COVERING:

- A. Snap-on glass fiber insulation minimum density 5#/cu. ft. maximum thermal conductivity at 75°F mean temperature 0.25 BTU/(hr) (sq. ft.) (°F/in.) with UL rated vinyl coated and embossed vapor barrier laminate of aluminum foil and kraft reinforced with glass fiber yarns (ASJ).
- B. For all lines seal jacket with self sealing lap and staple with outward clinching staples 3" o.c. Butt adjoining sections of insulation tightly and seal with self-adhering butt joint strips.
- C. Cover fittings to thickness of adjacent covering with factory pre-molded fitting covers. Cover flanged valve bodies with flanged unions. Do not cover screwed unions on hot lines. Finish fittings with a skim-coat of insulating cement and when cement is dry fitting shall be covered with glass fab and vinyl acrylic mastic. Finish fittings exposed in equipment rooms, boiler room, and in finished spaces with vinyl acrylic mastic over glass fab.
- D. At Contractor's option, concealed tees may be insulated with field fabricated tee covers consisting of straight pipe covering on run of tee with notch at branch together with pipe covering on branch contoured to fit notch. Glass fab shall be applied around main, lapping contoured joint at branch by 1" minimum for the full circumference of joint. Cover entire fitting covering with vinyl- acrylic mastic over glass fab, 1/8" thick (dry) coat. Submit sample of fabricated tee covering to Architect

for approval before work is begun.

**2.02 ALUMINUM JACKET PIPING COVER:**

- A. 0.010" thick corrugated aluminum jacket with laminated polyethylene and draft paper adhered liner.
- B. Securely rivet jacket in place and band with flat aluminum bands 18" o.c.
- C. Finish fittings on aluminum jacketed lines with 1/8" thick (dry) coat of vinyl acrylic mastic reinforced with glass cloth.

**2.03 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Acceptable Manufactures for Fiberglass Insulation Materials:
  - 1. Owens-Corning.
  - 2. Certainteed.
  - 3. Knauf.
  - 4. Manville Corporation
- B. Acceptable Manufacturers for Foamed Plastic Closed Cell Elastometric Insulation Materials:
  - 1. Armstrong AP.
  - 2. Rubatex.
- C. Acceptable Manufacturers for Adhesives, Mastics and Coatings:
  - 1. Armstrong.
  - 2. Benjamin Foster.
  - 3. Childers.
  - 4. Marathon.
- D. Acceptable Manufacturers for Metal Jackets:
  - 1. Childers.
  - 2. Manville Metal-Loc.

**2.04 SCHEDULES - PIPING**

- A. Plumbing Piping:
  - 1. Domestic Cold Water Interior, Above Grade:
    - a. Glass Fiber Pipe Insulation
      - 1) All pipe sizes: 1 inch thick.
      - 2) Pipes located in walls: ½ inch thick.
    - b. Foamed Plastic Pipe Insulation
      - 1) All pipe sizes: 1 inch thick.
      - 2) Pipes located in walls: ½ inch thick.
  - 2. Domestic Hot and Recirculating Water Interior, Above Grade:
    - a. Glass Fiber Pipe Insulation
      - 1) All pipe sizes: 1-1/2 inch thick.
      - 2) Pipe located in walls: 1 inch thick.
    - b. Foamed Plastic Pipe Insulation
      - 1) All pipe sizes: 1 inch thick.
      - 2) Pipes located in walls: ½ inch thick.
  - 3. Floor Drain Bodies, Traps and Waste Piping Between Floor Drain and Waste Stack for Floor Drains Serving Refrigeration Equipment, Ice Machine and AC Units; Interior, Above Grade:
    - a. Glass Fiber Pipe Insulation
      - 1) All pipe sizes: 1 inch thick.

## 2.05 INSTALLATION – EQUIPMENT INSULATION GENERAL

- A. Install in accordance with NAIMA Insulation Standards.
- B. Factory Insulated Equipment: Do not insulate.
- C. Exposed Equipment: Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations.
- D. Apply insulation close to equipment by grooving, scoring, and beveling insulation. Fasten insulation to equipment with studs, pins, clips, adhesive, wires or bands.
- E. Fill joints, cracks, seams and depressions with bedding compound to form smooth surface. On cold equipment, use vapor barrier cement.
- F. Insulated equipment containing fluids below ambient temperature: Insulate entire system.
- G. Finish insulation at supports, protrusions, and interruptions.
- H. Equipment in Mechanical Rooms or Finished Spaces: Finish with canvas jacket or as scheduled.
- I. Nameplates and ASME Stamps: Bevel and seal insulation around; do not insulate over.
- J. Equipment Requiring Access for Maintenance, Repair, or Cleaning: Install insulation so it can be easily removed and replaced without damage.
- K. Install in accordance with NAIMA National Insulation Standards.
- L. Exposed Piping: Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations.
- M. Insulated pipes conveying fluids below ambient temperature: Insulate entire system including fittings, valves, unions, flanges, strainers, flexible connections, pump bodies, and expansion joints.
- N. Fit pipe hangers over insulation.
- O. Inserts and Shields:
  - 1. Application: Protect insulated piping at hangers and supports with insulation shield. On pipe sizes over 2 inches, provide insert.
  - 2. Insulation Protection Shield: Galvanized steel formed in half circle to fit insulation. Length and gauge as follows:
    - a. Up to NPS 4: 12 inches long and 22 gauge.
    - b. NPS 6: 18 inches long and 22 gauge.
    - c. NPS 8 through 12: 24 inches long and 18 gauge.
    - d. NPS 14 and Large: 24 inches long and 16 gauge.
  - 3. Insulation-Insert Material: Water repellent treated, ASTM C533, Type I calcium silicate; or ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass of same thickness and vapor barrier jacket specified for surrounding insulation. Insert shall be a minimum of 2 inches longer than the shield.
  - 4. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
  - 5. For Clevis Hangers: Insert shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
  - 6. Option: At Contractor's option, insert may be factory fabricated Thermal Hanger Shield (insulation insert encased in sheet metal shield) equal to Pipe Shield, Inc. "Insulated Pipe Supports."
- P. Continue insulation through metal studs, walls, sleeves, pipe hangers, and other pipe penetrations. Finish firestopping at supports, protrusions, and interruptions. At fire separations, refer to Division 7 and Section 15410: Sleeves.

- Q. Exterior Applications: Provide vapor barrier jacket. Insulate fittings, joints and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe, and finish with glass mesh reinforced vapor barrier cement. Cover with aluminum jacket with seams located on bottom side of horizontal piping.

3.00 EXECUTION:

3.01 PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION:

- A. Bodies of floor drains serving refrigeration equipment, AC units and ice machines and traps and waste piping between such drains and waste stack: "Fiberglass Pipe Covering". 1" thick.
- B. Cold water piping, interior, above grade: "Fiberglass Pipe Covering", 1" thick. Pipe insulation in partitions and chases may be 1/2" thick "Arma-cell" or approved equal.
- C. Hot and Hot Water Return water piping, interior, above grade: "Fiberglass Pipe Covering", 1-1/2" thickness. Pipe insulation in partitions and chases may be 1" thick "Arma-cell" or approved equal.
- D. Exposed P-Traps, stops and supplies on handicapped lavatories, and sinks. Equal to "PRO-WRAP" by McGuire.

## FIXTURES AND EQUIPMENT - SECTION 15490

### 1.00 PRODUCTS:

#### 1.01 SCOPE:

- A. Include Section 15410, "GENERAL PROVISIONS - PLUMBING ", with this Section.
- B. Pay particular attention to requirements in the General Provisions for substitution of products not named or listed as substitutions.

### 2.00 PRODUCTS:

#### 2.01 CLEANOUTS:

- A. Furnish and install cleanouts where indicated on drawings and at all 90-degree bends, angle, upper terminals and not over 50 feet apart on straight runs. All cleanouts to have bronze countersunk tapered slotted plugs, except acid waste piping cleanouts, which shall be standard of piping system used. Flush-with-floor cleanout access covers shall have non-skid covers. All wall cleanout access covers shall have polished satin finish. All cleanouts shall be full size of pipe, piping larger than 6" shall have minimum 6" cleanout covers.
- B. Exposed Cleanouts: Cast brass plug type, J.R. Smith #4470.
- C. Wall type cleanout plug and access covers, J.R. Smith #4472. Cleanout plug must be within 1" of finish wall and must be tapped for access cover.
- D. Install wall cleanouts on stacks at flush valve fixtures 12" above top of flush valve, 12" above finish floor on sinks, lavatories and water coolers and 12" above grab bars at fixtures with grab bars. Locate cleanouts to clear baseboard at floor.
- E. Floor type cleanout access covers: J.R. Smith #4248-NB. Plug must be within 3" of finished floor. Grout cleanout below access cover to seal watertight.
- F. Outside Cleanouts: J.R. Smith #4258 cleanout access encased in a 18" X 18" X 6" deep concrete pad. See Detail on Drawings.

#### 2.02 REDUCED PRESSURE ZONE BACKFLOW PREVENTER AND DOUBLE CHECK VALVE ASSEMBLIES:

- A. One (1) inch and larger: Equal to Watts #909 with gate valves and inlet strainer. Provide additional valve upstream of strainer. Clayton, Beeco, Febco, Conbraco, Wilkins or equal. Provide same size as piping.
- B. One-half (1/2) inch and three-fourth (3/4) inch: Watts #9D, Wilkins #750, same size as pipe.
- C. Pipe relief from backflow preventer full size to nearest floor drain. Provide factory made air gap for relief connection.
- D. Double check valve assemblies: Watts, Clayton or Beeco.

#### 2.03 PLUMBING FIXTURES AND EQUIPMENT:

- A. All "wetted" domestic potable fixtures, piping materials, valves shall meet the Federal Lead Free Guidelines. All materials shall be clearly marked and submitted with complete data during submittal review.

- B. Unless otherwise specified, all fixtures complete as catalogued, commercial grade, white color, exposed metal trim chromium plated.
- C. Fixtures and brass shall be securely anchored. Carriers shall be securely anchored to floor with lug bolts in all holes as recommended by the manufacturer.
- D. Flush valve "YJ" supports shall be installed 1" below vacuum breaker on all water closet flush valves and around vacuum breaker on urinals.
- E. Seal all fixtures at wall and floor with white silicone sealant. Seal countertop fixtures with clear silicone sealant.
- F. Mount all fixtures at standard mounting height unless otherwise noted.
- G. Furnish sinks and lavatories with correct number of drilling required by the faucet and accessories. Cock hole covers are not acceptable.
- H. All items complete as catalogued as shown on drawings:

#### 2.04 SUBSTITUTE MANUFACTURERS:

- A. Where Kohler is listed above, Crane, Eljer, American Standard or Zurn may be substituted.
- B. Where J.R. Smith is listed above, Josam, Zurn or Wade may be substituted.
- C. Where Elkay water coolers are mentioned above, Halsey Taylor, or Oasis may be substituted, only if water ways are constructed of totally lead free materials.
- D. Where McGuire is listed above for traps, outlets and stops, EBC, Kohler, Crane, Eljer or American Standard may be substituted.
- E. Where Symmons is listed above, Chicago Faucet or Powers, Zurn may substituted.
- F. Where Chicago Faucet is listed, T&S Brass may be substituted.
- G. Where Elkay sink (s) are listed above, Just may be substituted.
- H. Where Church is listed above, Bemis, Beneke or Centoco may be substituted.
- I. Where Lochinvar tank type water heaters are listed, A.O. Smith or Rheem may be substituted.
- J. Where Stern Williams is listed above, Fiat may be substituted.
- K. Where Sloan is listed, Toto and Zurn may be substituted.
- L. Where Symmons is listed above for shower control valves, Speakman, Leonard, Powers, T&S or Zurn may be substituted.
- M. Where Armstrong is listed above, the equal of B & G, Taco, Grundfos or Thrush may be substituted.

#### 3.00 EXECUTION:

##### 3.01 INSTALLATION:

- A. Equipment shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation.
- B. See details for mounting instruction and accessories.
- C. Install electric water heaters so elements can be removed without disconnecting and/or removing heater.
- D. Cleanouts on water closet stacks shall be installed minimum 12" above top of the flush valve on standard water closets, minimum 12" above top of grab bar on handicapped water closets and minimum 12" above top of tanks on non-handicapped tank type water closets. On urinal locate cleanouts minimum 12" above top of flush valve on handicapped urinals and 12" above finish floor on standard units. On lavatories and sinks - 12" above finish floor and all other fixtures 12" above floor or above top of fixture.
- E. Stops and supplies are to be installed with chrome plated brass nipples penetrating wall with deep escutcheon at wall. Compression type stops are not acceptable.
- F. All floor mounted fixtures supports are to be securely attached to the floor using anchors in all mounting hole of size as recommended by manufacturer.
- G. Provide wood backing in wall at all flush valve brackets and faucet supports and anchor brackets and supports to wood backing with anchors of sufficient length to penetrate backing.
- H. Handicapped flush valve shall be installed with the pull handle on the open side or side opposite the adjacent wall.





TABLE OF CONTENTS - HVAC - SECTION 15000

<u>SECTION NUMBER</u>	<u>SECTION TITLE</u>	<u>PAGE(S)</u>
15010	GENERAL PROVISIONS - HVAC .....	1 - 13
15020	TESTING, BALANCING AND ADJUSTING (TBA) .....	1 - 3
15050	MATERIALS AND METHODS - HVAC .....	1 - 5
15080	PIPING SPECIALTIES - HVAC .....	1 - 1
15180	INSULATION - HVAC .....	1 - 4
15205	AIR PURIFICATION SYSTEM .....	1 - 6
15300	VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES .....	1 - 7
15740	COILS .....	1 - 1
15760	HEAT PUMP UNITS .....	1 - 5
15763	ENERGY RECOVERY UNITS .....	1 - 4
15820	FANS .....	1 - 2
15840	DUCTWORK .....	1 - 3
15860	DUCT ACCESSORIES .....	1 - 4
15870	OUTLETS .....	1 - 5
15880	FILTERS .....	1 - 1
15900	CONTROLS .....	1 - 4



1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Scope

- A. HVAC means Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning.
- B. Provisions of this Section apply to all HVAC and Building Management and Control System (BMCS) work.
- C. Include the provisions of General, Supplementary and Special Conditions and provisions of the Specifications shall apply to and form a part of this Section.
- D. Provide all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary for the completion of all HVAC work shown or specified, except work specifically specified to be done or furnished under other sections of the Specifications. Include performing all operations in connection with the complete HVAC installation in strict accordance with the specification and applicable drawings subject to the terms and conditions of the Contract.
- E. Give required notices, file drawings, obtain and pay for permits, deposits and fees necessary for the installation of the HVAC work. Obtain and pay for inspections required by laws, ordinances, rules, regulations or public authority having jurisdiction. Obtain and pay for certificates of such inspections, and file such certificates with Owner.
- F. "Provide" means to furnish and install, complete and ready for operation.
- G. All equipment shall be U.L. or E.T.L. Listed as an assembly.

1.2 Drawings:

- A. HVAC Drawings are diagrammatic and subject to requirements of Architectural Drawings. HVAC Drawings indicate generally the location of components and are not intended to show all fittings or all details of the work. Coordinate with Architectural, Structural, Electrical, Plumbing and other Building Drawings.
- B. Follow the Drawings closely, check dimensions with Architectural Drawings and field conditions. DO NOT scale HVAC Drawings for location of system components.
- C. Make no changes without Architect's written permission. In case of doubt, obtain Architect's decision before proceeding with work. Failure to follow this instruction shall make the Contractor liable for damage to other work and responsible for removing and repairing defective or mislocated work.
- D. Do not scale Drawings to locate ceiling diffusers. Coordinate with lighting, ceiling grids and/or reflected ceiling plans.

1.3 Applicable Codes And Standards:

- A. Comply with the current editions of the following Codes and Standards:
  - 1. ANSI/ASHRAE 15 - Code for Building Services Piping.

2. ANSI B9.1 - Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration.
3. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
4. NFPA 90A - Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems.
5. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code.
6. Other Standard as referenced in other Sections of Divisions 15.
7. Local Building Code (International Building Code if no local Building Code in effect).
8. Local Plumbing Code (International Plumbing Code if no local Plumbing Code in effect).
9. Local Gas Code (International Gas Code if no local Gas Code in effect).
10. Local Mechanical Code (International Mechanical Code if no local Code in effect).

1.4 Qualifications Of Subcontractor:

- A. The HVAC Contractor shall meet the following qualifications:
1. The HVAC Contractor must be approved by the Architect.
  2. The HVAC Contractor shall have been in business as a HVAC Contractor for at least three (3) years prior to Bid Date.
  3. The HVAC Contractor shall have a satisfactory experience record with HVAC installations of character and scope comparable with this project and have completed five projects of the same cost (or more) as the cost of this project, and for at least three (3) years prior to the Bid Date shall have had an established service department capable of providing service inspection or full maintenance contracts.
  4. Contractor must have bonding capacity for project of this size and must bond the project.

1.5 Conflicts And Interferences:

- A. If systems interfere or conflict, the Architect shall decide which equipment to relocate regardless of which was first installed.

1.6 Workmanship:

- A. Do all work in a neat and first-class manner. Remove and replace work not done in such manner as directed by the Architect.

1.7 Cooperation:

- A. Cooperate with all other crafts. Perform work in a timely manner. Do not delay the execution of other work.

1.8 Visiting Site:

- A. Visit site and become familiar with location and various conditions affecting work. No additional allowance will be granted because of lack of knowledge of such conditions.

1.9 Scheduled Work Hours And Facility Occupancy:

- A. Schedule all connections to existing systems and shutdowns with the Architect/Owner.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Materials, Substitutions And Submittals:

- A. Unless otherwise noted, provide new, standard, first-grade materials throughout. Equipment and materials furnished shall be fabricated by manufacturer regularly engaged in their production and shall be the standard and current model for which replacement parts are available. HVAC equipment shall be substantially the same equipment of a given manufacturer which has been in successful commercial use and operation for at least three (3) years.
- B. Where materials or products are specified by manufacturer's name, brand, trade name, or catalog reference, such named materials or products shall be the basis of the Bid, without substitution, and shall be furnished under the Contract unless requests for substitutions are approved as noted below. Where two or more brands are named the choice of these shall be optional with the Contractor.
- C. Substitutions will be considered only if written request for approval has been received by the Architect ten (10) days prior to the date established for receipt of Proposals. Each request shall include the name of the material or equipment for which substitution is proposed, specification section/paragraph number and a complete description of the proposed substitute including drawings, cuts, performance and test data, samples and any other information necessary for evaluation. A statement setting forth any changes in other materials, equipment or other Work that incorporation of the substitute may require shall be included. The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitute is upon the proposer. The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution is final.
- D. If the Architect approves any proposed substitution prior to receipt of Proposals, approval will be set forth in an Addendum. Do not rely upon approvals made in any other manner. Prior approval to be secured for "equal" or "approved equal" manufacturer.
- E. No substitutions will be considered after the Contract has been executed, except as described in the General Conditions.
- F. Submittal data and shop drawings, except controls, shall be submitted at one time, partial submittals will not be considered. Provide submittal in three (3) ring binders with tab sheets for each major item of equipment. Before ordering materials and equipment, submit to Architect and obtain his approval of a detailed list showing each item which is to be furnished by make, trade name, catalog number, or the like; together with manufacturer's specifications, certified prints, and other data sufficient for making comparisons with items specified. When approved, such schedule shall be of equal force with these specifications in that no variation there from shall be allowed except with Architect's written approval. Number of Shop Drawings and procedure shall be as directed by the Architect.
- G. Architect and / or Engineer's approval of submittal data does not relieve the

contractor of his responsibility to comply with the contract documents.

- H. It is the responsibility of the Mechanical contractor to coordinate all Electrical requirements of the submitted equipment with the Electrical contractor. Any increase in cost due to a variance between the contract documents and the submitted equipment shall be the responsibility of the Mechanical Contractor.
- I. Similar items of equipment shall be the product of the same Manufacturer.
- J. See section, "ALTERNATES" in other section of the Specifications and Bid accordingly.

## 2.2 Shop Drawings:

- A. Before starting work, submit and obtain approval of detailed drawings of the following, fully dimensioned (including elevations of ductwork and piping) and drawn not less than 1/4"= 1'-0" scale. Submit one (1) set of paper or bond.
  - 1. Ductwork (do not scale diffuser locations, coordinate with ceiling grids and lighting layout). See Section 15860 "DUCT ACCESSORIES".
  - 2. Complete mechanical equipment and fan room plans showing location of equipment, conduit stubs for motors, floor drains, and equipment pads and foundations.
  - 3. Equipment piping.
- B. Submit complete control and power wiring diagrams for approval before installing controls. See Section 15900 "CONTROLS".

## 2.3 Record Drawings:

- A. When work starts, obtain white prints of the HVAC Drawings. All corrections, variations, and deviations, including those required by change orders, if any, must be recorded in colored ink or colored pencil at the end of each working day on these drawings. The marked prints shall be available at all times for the Architect's inspection.
- B. Prior to examining the request for final payment or making any response thereto, the Architect shall receive from the Contractor one (1) complete set of the white prints, marked as stated above, indicating the actual completed installation of the work included under this Contract.
- C. The Architect will forward the marked white prints to the Consulting Engineers for review. They will then be returned by the Architect to the Contractor for use in preparing record drawings.
- D. When work is completed Contractor shall purchase from the Architect (At Architects' printing cost) one (1) set of prints of HVAC Drawings for use in preparing record drawings. Contractor shall transfer the information from the marked white prints to the mylar record drawings, removing all superseded data in order to show the actual completed conditions.
  - 1. Accurately shown location, size and elevation of new exterior piping work and its relationship to any existing piping and utilities, obstructions, etc., contiguous to the area of work.

2. Block out areas modified by change-order and identify them by change-order number.
- E. Ductwork and Control Drawings may be a set of mylar reproducible shop drawings, up-dated to show actual conditions at completion of work.
- F. HVAC piping drawings may be prepared as noted in paragraph "D" above, or HVAC piping may be added to the ductwork shop drawings as noted in paragraph "E" above.

**2.4 Motors, Starters And Electrical Equipment:**

- A. Provide electrical equipment compatible with the current shown on electrical drawings. Verify current characteristics before ordering equipment.
- B. Should the Contractor with the Architect's and Engineer's approval make changes in electrical equipment from those shown on the Electrical Drawings, he shall be responsible for the coordination and cost of required changes.
- C. Provide factory installed fuses in all equipment requiring fusing for branch circuit protection.
- D. Motors:
  1. 1750 RPM open drip-proof construction unless otherwise shown or specified. Integral horsepower three phase motors shall be of premium energy-efficient design with apparent efficiency (power factor X efficiency) not less than ASHRAE 90.1.
  2. All motors served by variable frequency drives ( VFD's) shall be inverter duty rated.
  3. Unless shown otherwise motors less than 1/2 HP shall be single phase, motors 1/2 HP and larger shall be three phase.
  4. Allis-Chalmer, General Electric, Goulds, Louis Allis, and Westinghouse.
- E. Do not run motors until correct overload elements are installed in starters. Trading overload elements for elements of correct size for motors actually furnished shall be included in this Section.
- F. Starters shall be in motor control centers, furnished mounted on packaged equipment or furnished in this section and installed under "ELECTRICAL SECTION" as indicated and/or shown on the Electrical Drawings. All starters furnished with fused control circuit transformers.
- G. Starters shall be equipped with melting alloy terminal overload protection, in a 3 phase. Starters, unless indicated otherwise, shall be across-the-line type with overload and low voltage protection. Starting equipment shall comply with local utility company requirements.
- H. Starters to be Square "D", Allen-Bradley, Cutler-Hammer or approved equal.
- I. For single phase motors provide manual starters equal to Square "D" Class 2510. When installed in equipment rooms provide surface mounted enclosure, and when installed in finished walls outside equipment rooms provide flush mounted enclosure, key operated.

- J. For three phase motors provide magnetic line voltage starters with NEMA I enclosures and melting alloy overload elements.
- K. Provide H-O-A switches, fused control circuit transformers, auxiliary contacts, etc., as shown on control diagrams or required by control sequences and/or arrange for these items to be furnished with the starters or motor control centers specified in Electrical Work.
- L. All starters shall be by the same manufacturer.
- M. Provide thermal overload with equipment for motors 1/2 HP and less at 120/1/60.

2.5 Sleeves:

- A. For pipe through floors inside rated chases or through non-fire-rated walls: 20 gauge galvanized steel, 1/2" larger than pipe or covering.
- B. For uninsulated pipe through fire rated walls or partitions or floors outside chases: Pipe Shields, Inc., Model WFB or approved equal at walls, Model DFB at floors.
- C. For insulated pipe passing through fire rated partitions or walls or floors outside chases: Pipe Shields, Inc., Model WFB-CS for hot lines, VFB-CS-CW for cold lines. Insulation: Calcium silicate for hot lines and foamglass for cold lines, thickness specified for adjacent pipe covering.
- D. For pipe through concrete beams: Schedule 40 black steel pipe, 1/2" larger than pipe or covering. Pipe covering passing through sleeve: calcium silicate in a 24 gauge galvanized steel shield similar to Pipe Shields, Inc. thermal hanger shield. Caulk space between bare pipe insulation jacket and beam with fire retardant rope at both ends of the sleeve and seal with 3M Brand fire barrier caulk CD 25 or Putty 303, thickness and application in strict accord with manufacturer's recommendations, minimum thickness 1".
- E. At Contractor's option, instead of the factory fabricated sleeves specified above for pipe passing through floors and fire rated walls and partitions substitute 20 gauge galvanized steel sleeve 1/2" larger in diameter than pipe or pipe covering and seal one end of sleeve (both ends if both ends are exposed) with 3M Branch Fire Barrier Caulk CP25 or Putty 303, thickness and application in strict accord with manufacturer's recommendations, minimum thickness 1". Where pipe is insulated, insulation shall be continuous thru sleeve, calcium silicate for hot lines and foamglass for cold lines. In exposed areas, after product has dried it shall be sanded smooth for painting under painting section.
- F. Set sleeves before concrete is poured or masonry is erected. In existing construction, grout sleeves firmly in place.
- G. Sleeves for ducts: See Fire Dampers (See Section 15860 "DUCT ACCESSORIES").
- H. Extend sleeves 1-1/2" above finish floor and waterproof.
- I. Where exposed ducts pass through walls and partitions, provide 4" wide 20 gauge galvanized steel closure plates except at grilles and registers. Fit closure plates snugly to duct and secure to wall. Grout around ducts and sound absorbers at equipment room walls.



- J. Where exposed pipes pass through walls and partitions in finished spaces, provide chrome plated F & C plates or escutcheons.

2.6 Access Doors:

- A. Doors in non-fire rated walls and ceilings: 17-gauge steel with hinges and screwdriver latches, Bilco, Milcor, Miami-Carey, or equal. Doors in fire rated walls and ceilings: UL labeled with fire rating equal to fire rating of wall or ceiling. Provide door styles compatible with adjoining surfaces as selected by Architect. Size doors to permit removal of equipment and/or maintenance, minimum size 18" X 18".
- B. Mark lay-in ceilings with paper brads at maintenance access points. Bend ends of brads over above ceiling tile.

3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 Protection Of Rotating Parts:

- A. Equip exposed belt drives with belt guards with holes for measuring speeds of driven shafts.
- B. Provide exposed couplings with coupling guards.
- C. Equip propeller fans with guards.
- D. Equip inlets and outlets of open centrifugal fans with 1-1/2" #10 Diamond mesh galvanized steel screens.
- E. All motors or other equipment exposed to weather shall be provided with weatherproof covers.

3.2 Protection Of Equipment:

- A. During construction, protect mechanical equipment from damage or deterioration.
- B. When installation is complete, clean equipment and make ready for painting.
- C. During construction all ductwork, piping, and equipment shall be stored in a clean/dry location. Any ductwork or piping stored outside that is not protected shall be removed from the job site. Installed ductwork and piping shall have open ends covered at the end of each work day to prevent dust, dirt, and water from entering the ductwork and piping.

3.3 Installation Of Equipment:

- A. Install equipment to provide normal service access to all components.
- B. Provide sufficient space for removing components, install equipment to provide such clearance.
- C. Install equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. If manufacturer's instructions conflict with contract documents, obtain Architect's decision before proceeding.
- D. All equipment shall be firmly fastened in place:

1. Roof curbs shall be secured to deck and structure and curb mounted items shall be secured to curbs.
2. Pad mounted equipment shall be secured to pads using poured in place anchor bolts or cinch anchors.
3. Vibration isolators shall be secured to floors, pads or structure and equipment shall be bolted to the isolators.

3.4 Equipment Supports:

- A. Provide supports for ductwork, piping and equipment. Hot dip galvanize after fabrication all grillage, supports, etc., located outdoors.
- B. Set all floor-mounted equipment, other than condensate pumps, on concrete pads or rails (as indicated of height shown, but not less than 4" high). Coordinate pad height with condensate drain trap requirements. Chamfer rails and pads 1". Where shown, provide reinforced floating pads mounted on vibration isolators. Form, reinforce and pour any pads and rails required but not shown on Structural and Architectural Drawings.

3.5 Cutting And Patching:

- A. Set sleeves and inserts and lay-out and form openings in walls, beams, girders and structural floors in this Section.
- B. Cut, patch and repair as required to accomplish HVAC Work and finish to match adjacent work. Architect's approval required before cutting any part where strength or appearance of finished work is involved.

3.6 Incidental Work:

- A. Provide all motors incidental to the Mechanical Systems. Wiring of motors, switches and starters is included in "ELECTRICAL SECTIONS".
- B. Do all control wiring required for Mechanical work.
- C. Provide motor starters as specified above.
- D. Submit refrigerant piping diagrams as prepared by the HVAC Contractor and/or refrigeration equipment manufacturer for approval.
- E. Final water connections to services are included in this Section.
- F. Permanent drain connections for AC units, etc., and auto air vents to nearest floor drain are included in this Section.
- G. Door louvers are not included in this Section.
- H. Items obviously omitted from drawings and/or specifications shall be called to attention of the Architect prior to submitting Bid, after award of Contract any changes or rearrangements necessary to complete Contract shall be at no additional cost to Owner.
- I. All return air and exhaust air grilles shall be covered with filter media if they are started and operated during construction.

3.7 Flashing:

- A. General: Furnish all fans curbs, pitch cups, metal base flashing and counter flashing required for HVAC Work. Installation of above items is specified in "ROOFING SECTION" with coordination by HVAC Contractor.
- B. Fan curbs for power roof ventilators are specified with the fans.
- C. Pitch Cups: 20 gauge galvanized steel, at least 8" deep, bases mitered and soldered and extending at least 4" horizontally.
- D. Metal Base Flashing: Galvanized steel for ferrous items, and stainless steel for stainless steel duct and aluminum for aluminum duct. Minimum thickness 22 gauge (0.034") galvanized steel, 20 gauge (0.038") stainless steel, 0.032" aluminum. Bases mitered and soldered extending out at least 4" horizontally and 8" vertically.
- E. Metal Counter Flashing: Of material and gauges specified for base flashing, lapping base flashing at least 3".

3.8 Hvac Installation Of And Connections To Items Furnished By Others Or Specified In Other Sections:

- A. Clothes Dryers: Provide Vents.
- B. Duct Mounted Smoke Detectors: Install in duct.
- C. Domestic Water Heaters: Provide gas flues and combustion air vents.
- D. Kitchen Hoods: Provide exhaust fans and grease duct.

3.9 Painting:

- A. Refinish equipment damaged during construction to new condition.
- B. Paint all non-potable water pipe and insulation yellow in accordance with Plumbing Code using paint of type specified in Painting Section.
- C. Paint un-insulated duct surfaces visible through grilles and registers flat black.
- D. Other painting is specified in "PAINTING SECTION, Finishes Division".

3.10 Pipe Identifications:

- A. Identify all piping exposed to view or accessible through removable ceilings or access panels with plastic snap-on pipe line markers. Color code markers in accordance with ANSI A13.1. Show pipe contents and direction of flow. Markers on lines 8" OD and smaller shall be taped in place; on lines over 8" OD secure with spring clips.
- B. Submit samples of all labels, tags, stencils, chains, etc., for approval.
- C. Protect all factory identification tags, nameplates, model and serial numbers, stenciling, etc., during construction and replace if damaged.
- D. Label Spacing and Extent:

1. On straight run of pipes; Above suspended ceilings space labels approximately 10 feet on center; elsewhere, 20 feet on center.
2. Wherever a pipe enters or leaves a room or building.
3. At change of direction.
4. At main valves and control valves (not equipment valves).
5. On risers, just above and below floors.

3.11 Valve Tags:

- A. 2" X 3" laminated plastic with 1/2" numbers engraved at top indicating type service and valve number, leaving space for further engraving by others. Secure tags with chains to valve yoke or stem, not handles.
- B. Valve tags colors: Brass tags with black numbers.
- C. Valve tag locations: At all valves on mains, risers and branches.
- D. Valve tag numbers: Starting with Number 1, number tags in sequence from the lowest point to the highest point in the building. In existing building extend existing sequences.

3.12 Valve Charts:

- A. In all mechanical rooms, provide charts showing number and locations of all valves, type of service, etc. Frame with aluminum, under glass.

3.13 Equipment Identifications:

- A. Provide 2" X 3" or larger laminated plastic nameplates with 1/2" numbers and letters in colors specified below. Screw tags to equipment in obvious locations. Engrave equipment designation and numbers as shown on plans and drawings on upper half of tags, leaving lower half of tag for future engraving by Owner.
- B. Provide similar nameplates for motor starters furnished under this section.
- C. Secure nameplates with acorn head screws.
- D. Colors:
  1. Equipment connected to utility power only - black letters on white nameplates.
  2. Equipment connected to emergency power - red letters on white nameplates.

3.14 Exhaust Fan Identifications:

- A. 2" X 3" or larger laminated plastic nameplates with red letters and numbers on white background, identifying type of fans, number according to plans, and rooms served. Engrave on upper half of tag, leaving lower half for engraving by Owner. Fasten with acorn head screws.

3.15 Access Doors:

- A. Provide access doors for valves, fire dampers, dampers, controls, air vents, and other items located above non-lift-out ceilings or behind partitions or walls.

3.16 Use Of Hvac System During Construction:

- A. Ducted HVAC systems may be used during construction as long as the following conditions are met:
  - 1. All AC units shall have filters installed in the AC units that are equal to the filters that are scheduled for each piece of equipment. The contractor shall be responsible for changing the filters in all AC units during construction at a minimum of every 30 days starting from the day the AC units are started. At the completion of the project, the contractor shall replace all filters.
  - 2. All return air and outside air openings shall be protected with temporary filter media. The temporary filter media shall be changed by the contractor. Temporary filter media is required to protect the installed ductwork. During or after construction, if any ductwork is observed without temporary filter media, the contractor shall be solely responsible for cleaning the entire ductwork system and AC unit. Temporary filter media shall be changed bi-weekly at a minimum.
  - 3. All AC units shall have all correct motor overload elements installed and all safeties shall be wired and operational prior to temporary use of the AC unit.
  - 4. Temporary controls and temporary control sequences may be utilized by the contractor until the permanent controls and control sequences are installed. Temporary control methods shall be the sole responsibility of the contractor.
  - 5. All AC units required to have factory start-up shall have factory start-up completed prior to use.
  - 6. The building envelope for the area served by the AC units shall be substantially complete prior to using the AC units during construction.
- B. Ductless split systems shall NOT be used during construction. Protect all indoor sections of ductless split systems during construction to prevent dust, dirt, or water from entering the unit.

3.17 Warranty And Instructions:

- A. See General Conditions - One-Year Warranty.
- B. Contractor shall and hereby does warrant all materials, workmanship and equipment furnished and installed by him to be free from defects for a period of one (1) year after date of substantial completion of the Contract. Should any defects in materials, workmanship, or equipment be made known to Contractor within the one (1) year warranty period, Contractor shall replace such materials, workmanship, or equipment without charge.
- C. All centrifugal, reciprocating, screw or scroll type refrigeration compressors shall bear five (5) year non-pro-rated parts warranty.

- D. All gas fired air furnaces shall bear ten (10) year prorated heat exchanger warranties.
- E. After completion of the work, Contractor shall operate the equipment which he installs for a period of ten (10) working days, as a test of satisfactory operating conditions. During this time, Contractor shall instruct the Owner's operating personnel in the correct operation of the equipment. Furnish necessary oral and written operating instructions to the Owner's representative.
- F. Provide five (5) sets of manufacturer's operating and maintenance manuals and parts lists including nearest manufacturer's sales and service representative by name, address and phone for all equipment and materials furnished. Provide a maintenance schedule listing routine maintenance operations and suggested frequency. Include all warranty dates on equipment and guarantees. Include names, address and phone of any subcontractor and work performed. Bind above items in loose leaf three (3) ring binders with tab for each class of equipment.
- G. During the period of tests, adjust all controls, regulators, etc., to comply with these Specifications.
- H. Supply initial charges of refrigerant, refrigeration lubricating oil; and anti-freeze necessary for the correct operation of the equipment. Maintain these charges during the guarantee period, with no additional cost to the Owner, unless loss of charge is the fault of the Owner.
- I. Make available to the Owner, without additional cost, service and adjustment of the equipment for the guarantee period.
  - 1. Service shall include:
    - a. On call nuisance issues.
    - b. Replenishing refrigerant and antifreeze if loss occurs due to system failure.
  - 2. Service shall not include:
    - a. Routine maintenance of the equipment unless specified in specific equipment specification section(s).

3.18 Project Close-Out Documents:

- A. Prior to the issuance of a certificate for final payment, submit to Architect and obtain his approval of the following:
  - 1. A letter signed by the subcontractors for HVAC, Electrical, and Temperature Control work stating that they have jointly checked each power circuit and control circuit and mutually agrees that controls and power circuits will function properly.
  - 2. Record drawings - sheet metal work (reproducible).
  - 3. Record drawings - piping (reproducible).
  - 4. Record drawings - control systems (reproducible).
  - 5. Control manufacturer's letter of certification (3).

6. Air balance report (3).
7. Equipment Submittal Data (3).
8. Equipment operating and maintenance manuals (3).
9. Maintenance schedule (3).
10. Equipment warranty dates and guarantees (3).
11. List of Owner's Personnel who have received maintenance instructions.
12. All required factory start-up reports.

END OF SECTION





## TESTING, BALANCING AND ADJUSTING (TBA) - SECTION 15020

### 1.0 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 Scope

- A. Provisions of this section apply to all HVAC work.
- B. All tests shall be witnessed by the Architect in addition to authorities having jurisdiction. A minimum of 48 hour notice is required prior to performance of test.
- C. Provide complete report to Engineer for approval TEN (10) working days prior to Engineer's final site visit.

#### 1.2 Qualifications

- A. All TBA work shall be performed by an independent Test and Balance Agency specializing in Testing, Balancing and Adjusting of HVAC Systems.
- B. All TBA work shall be under supervision of a qualified registered professional engineer regularly engaged in the TBA Agency.
- C. TBA Agency shall be an AABC or NEEB Member and/or shall obtain written approval from the Architect prior to Bidding.

#### 1.3 Approval

- A. Application for approval of the TBA agency shall be submitted prior to Bid.
- B. Submittal information regarding the TBA agency to include:
  - 1. List of at least five (5) projects successfully completed of similar size and scope.
  - 2. Copy of reporting forms to be used for this project indicating scope of TBA work.
  - 3. Name of registered engineer in charge with resume of qualifications. List of personnel that will perform TBA work on project and qualifications.
  - 4. List of instruments to be used with dates of latest calibrations.
  - 5. List of memberships in AABC, NEBB or other similar organizations.

### 2.0 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 Instruments

- A. All instruments used for the TBA work shall be calibrated within six (6) months and checked for accuracy prior to start of work.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 General Requirements

- A. After HVAC system has been installed, Test, Balance and Adjust System for proper operation, air distribution, flow rates, temperatures and humidities. Correct any

noise and/or vibration conditions.

- B. Include a "Deficiency List" with the TBA air and water balance report. Deficiency list shall include TBA items which are not in accordance with Contract Documents.
- C. Perform all tests as required by local codes. Contractor shall furnish testing equipment.
- D. If local Codes are more stringent, local Codes shall govern.

### 3.2 Air System

- A. When system has been completed, remove all trash and dirt, set grille bars and diffuser patterns for required throws and adjust and balance air duct systems so air quantities at outlets are as directed and distribution from each supply outlet is free from drafts and excessive noise, and uniform over the face of each outlet. Do all testing and balancing with filters blanked to provide pressure drops midway between clean condition and manufacturer's recommended change-out condition. Balance air quantities to within 10% of indicated air quantities.
- B. Make adjustments so dampers and volume adjusters close to air outlets will have the least pressure drop consistent with volume requirements. Obtain additional pressure drop required for balancing of shorter runs by adjusting dampers at branch duct take-offs. Adjustable fan drives shall be used for making final adjustments of total air quantities. Change sheaves on drives larger than 15 HP. Provide additional sheaves as required.
- C. Direct reading velocity meters may be used for comparative adjustment of individual outlets, but measure air quantities in ducts having velocities of 1000 feet per minute or more with pitot tubes. Cap pitot tube openings in low pressure ducts with plastic plugs. Cap pitot tube openings in medium and high pressure ducts and kitchen and laboratory exhaust ducts with Duro-Dyne test ports.
- D. Permanently mark settings of dampers and other volume adjusting devices so they can be restored if disturbed.
- E. When air balancing has been completed, submit to Architect an air balance log, including design and actual air quantities, pressures, etc., in each branch duct and at each grille, register, and outlet. Individual outlet air rates are required for boots on boot-box systems.
- F. Include for each system the following information:
  - 1. Fan rpm, motor amps, motor nameplate amps, and amp rating of starter heater.
  - 2. Total air quantity supplied by each system and/or fan.
  - 3. Total outside air quantity supplied by each system.
  - 4. Provide velocity pressure across each duct mounted smoke detector and list manufacturer's required velocity pressure range.
  - 5. Air flow at all grilles.
  - 6. Static pressure profile thru each air handler.

3.3 Coils

- A. Provide the following:
1. Entering and leaving air temperatures.
  2. Outside air temperature at time of test.
  3. Air pressure drop.

3.4 Start-Up and Service

- A. At the beginning of the first heating season, adjust and balance operating phases and repeat at the beginning of the first cooling season or vice-versa, as the case may be, all without charge.
- B. The Contractor and Factory Representative of the AC units and major HVAC equipment shall place every item of such equipment into satisfactory operation with all automatic and safety devices. Further, all adjustment service required shall be performed during the warranty period. Adjustment services does not include lubricating fans or motors and does not include changing filters or adjusting belts.
- C. In addition, submit equipment manufacturers' start-up reports for items listed above. See "Project Close-Out".

END OF SECTION



## MATERIALS AND METHODS - HVAC - SECTION 15050

### 1.0 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SCOPE:

- A. Include Section 15010, "GENERAL PROVISIONS - HVAC", with this Section.

### 2.0 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS:

- A. All pipe, fittings and valves shall be manufactured in the United States of America.

#### 2.2 HVAC DRAIN PIPING:

- A. Standard weight galvanized steel pipe ASTM A-120 with galvanized malleable iron fittings, type "L" hard copper with wrought copper sweat fittings or Schedule 40 PVC, at Contractor's option.
- B. Provide drain traps for AC Unit drain pans. Size traps as required to drain under operating conditions.

#### 2.3 REFRIGERATION PIPING:

- A. ACR hard drawn copper tubing with wrought copper sweat fittings. Joints: Silfossed with continuous flow of dry nitrogen through lines.
- B. Size suction and discharge lines so as to insure oil return at minimum loading.
- C. Small lines 5/8" OD and smaller may be soft copper with flare fittings, provided that all joints are exposed for visual inspection.
- D. Refrigerant piping shall be sized and installed as recommended by the equipment manufacturer. Provide lift traps or double suction risers as required for oil return.

#### 2.4 PIPE HANGERS:

- A. General: Pipe hangers, Grinnell, PHD, Michigan Hanger, or Elcen. Grinnell figure numbers are given for reference. Provide copper clad or plastic coated hangers on bare copper lines. Provide stainless steel or plastic coated hangers in Pool areas subject to chlorine atmosphere.
- B. Equip pipe hangers with vibration isolators as specified under sub-section 2.15 "VIBRATION ISOLATORS".
- C. Pipe hangers for lines 3" and smaller (other than steam and condensate lines), adjustable wrought ring hangers, Grinnell Fig. 97 or wrought clevis hangers, Grinnell Fig. 260.
- D. Pipe hangers for lines 4" and larger (other than steam and condensate lines), adjustable wrought ring hangers, Grinnell Fig. 260.
- E. Parallel piping graded in same direction may be grouped on trapezes. Trapezes for line 4" and smaller, Unistrut P2000 channel, or equal, with rods sized as

specified below for largest pipe on trapeze. Guide lines on (but not anchor to) trapezes using Unistrut Series P1100 clamps. Trapezes shall not exceed 3' in length. Space lines to allow at least 3" clear between adjacent pipe or pipe covering and between pipes or pipe covering and rods. Space trapezes as specified for pipe hangers based upon smallest size of pipe on trapeze.

- F. Beam Clamps: Grinnell Fig. 229.
- G. Inserts for hangers in concrete structures: Underwriter's listed cast iron inserts. Grinnell Fig. 282.
- H. For fasteners in existing concrete structures use drilled in expansion anchors with load rating at least 150% of pipe hanger rating (power driven anchors are not acceptable).
- I. Size rods for pipe hangers not smaller than the following: 3/8" rods for pipe up to 2", 1/2" for 2-1/2" and 3" pipe, 5/8" rods for 4" and 5" pipe, 3/4" rods for 6" pipe, and 7/8" rods for 8" and 10" and 12" pipe, 1" rods for 14" and 16" pipe and 1-1/8" rods for 18" pipe.
- J. Space pipe hangers at maximum: 5' intervals for cast iron pipe. Pipe hanger spacing for screwed, solder joint and welded piping: 1/2", 6 ft.; 3/4" to 1-1/4", 8 ft.; 1-1/2" to 2-1/2", 10 ft.; 3", 12 ft.; 4", 14 ft.; 5", 12 ft. 6", 10 ft., 8" and over, 6 ft. Polypropylene and PVC plastic pipe 4 ft. horizontally maximum or as directed by manufacturer if closer, and 10 ft. vertically. Install additional hangers at change of direction and valve clusters.
- K. Install pipe hangers on insulated pipe (other than steam and condensate lines) over pipe covering. Provide factory fabricated insulated pipe shields equal to Pipe Shields, Inc. "Thermal Hanger Shields" at hangers. Provide shield insulation of waterproofed calcium silicate for hot water piping and foamglass for chilled water piping, same thickness as adjacent pipe covering. At Contractor's option, pipe shields may be field fabricated using waterproof calcium silicate or foam glass insulation with ASJ and 20 gauge galvanized steel protector. Shield length: 1.5 times nominal pipe size but not less than 4".
- L. Wrap bare copper refrigerant lines with sheet lead at hangers.

## 2.5 VIBRATION ISOLATION:

- A. General: Mount all piping and rotating equipment using vibration isolators as specified below. Amber Booth, Korfund, Mason Industries, Peabody, Vibration Eliminator Co., or VMC. Mason Industries part numbers are given for reference. Minimum 95% isolation efficiency.
- B. Isolators for Suspended Equipment: Combination steel spring and rubber in shear isolators, #30N. Static deflections: As required to provide 95% isolation efficiency or 1" static deflection, whichever is greater. Provide isolators for all suspended rotating equipment.
- C. Mount air handling unit sections in contact with concrete pad on single layer of ribbed neoprene on top of housekeeping pads as shown. Neoprene vibration pad shall cover the entire surface of the unit in contact with the concrete pad.
- D. Provide snubbing isolators, similar to those specified above for pipe hangers for flexible connections at fans.

- E. Bellows type flexible connections in water lines: Laminated 3-ply corrugated type 304 stainless joints designed for 150 psig W.P. Joints shall be flanged with Van-Stone flanges and have 5" relaxed face-to-face dimension. For each joint furnish a control unit consisting of four plates, two tie bolts with required nuts, 1" deflection springs, washer, and stop and lock nuts. Flexible connections Keflex, Flexonics, or approved equal. Provide samples if specifically requested (samples will be returned to vendor).
- F. Isolators for Pipe Hangers:
  - 1. Equip all pipe hangers on chilled water, hot water and condenser water lines in equipment rooms with 1" static deflection combination neoprene and spring isolators, #PC-30N.
  - 2. Mount piping riser supports on chilled water and hot water lines using 0.1" static deflection all directional neoprene anchors: #ADA.
- G. Mount air handling unit sections in contact with concrete pad on single layer of ribbed neoprene on top of housekeeping pads as shown. Neoprene vibration pad shall cover the entire surface of the unit in contact with the concrete pad.

## 2.6 THERMOMETERS AND GAUGES:

- A. Mercury in glass red reading separable socket industrial thermometers with die cast metal or high impact plastic casings of appropriate pattern for each installation, 9" scale lengths and ranges shown, Palmer, Trerice, Weksler, Marsh or equal. Install thermometers in brass or stainless steel wells. Equip thermometers installed in insulated lines with 1" extension stems or long enough to permit unions to clear insulation whichever is greater.
- B. Where shown install brass thermometer wells with screwed caps. Install wells at an angle to retain oil. Size well to fit thermometers specified.
- C. Enlarge pipe 2" and smaller to 2-1/2" at thermometers and thermometer wells.
- D. Install 4-1/2" dial pressure gauges where shown. Gauges shall have bronze or stainless steel bourbon tubes, 316 stainless steel or brass movement, non-ferrous or phenolic solid front cases, and accuracy not less than 1% of full scale over the entire range. Gauges shall be Ashcroft, Trerice, Weksler, U.S., Marsh or equal. Gauge with minimum bourbon tube diameter of 3". Provide brass or stainless bar stock needle valves for all pressure gauges. Provide siphons for steam gauges.
- E. Where shown, provide temperature and pressure measurement plugs and caps, equal to Peteron Equipment Co., Inc. "Pete's plug with Nordel seats and seals", flow design or approved equal. Provide one Pressure and Temperature Kit consisting of 0-100 psi pressure gauge with adapters, two (2) thermometers (25E - 125E F and 0E - 220E F), all in carrying cases.

## 3.0 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPE INSTALLATION:

- A. Cut pipe square and ream full size after cutting. Clean pipe. Make threaded joints with Teflon tape. Do not spring pipe into place.

- B. Provide welding material and labor in accordance with the welding procedures of the Heating, Piping, and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association or other approved procedure conforming to the requirements of ANSI B31.9 "Building Service Piping". Employ only welders fully qualified in the above specified procedure and currently certified by recognized testing authority. Use either electric arc or oxyacetylene welding. Provide full perimeter welds at both face end and collar end of each slip-on flange.
- C. Install piping to allow for expansion. Make connections to all equipment to eliminate undue strains in piping and equipment. Furnish necessary fittings and bends to avoid spring of pipes during assembly.
- D. Pitch air conditioning unit drain lines down in direction of flow 1" in 20'.
- E. Install chrome plated floor and ceiling plates on pipe passing through finished surfaces in finished spaces.
- F. Make horizontal water and steam supply line size reductions using eccentric reducers with tops flat in water lines and bottoms flat in steam lines.
- G. Install 3/4" ball or gate valve drains with hose adapters at low points of water piping and at bases of all risers or where shown provide large drains.
- H. Make connections to equipment using screwed unions in sizes 2" and smaller and flanged unions in sizes 2-1/2" and larger. Install unions in all piping connections to each piece of equipment. Provide rubber grommets at pipe penetrations to equipment casings.
- I. Wherever ferrous pipes or tanks and copper tubing connect, provide dielectric insulation unions or couplings, equal to EPCO.
- J. Near heating and air conditioning equipment requiring water valved and capped water outlets of sizes shown, for connection to equipment, including reduced pressure principal backflow preventers shall be provided. Make final connections under HVAC work. Note that all piping and insulation downstream of backflow preventer must be painted yellow.
- K. Run piping concealed, except where specifically shown or specified exposed. Plumb all vertical lines and run mains parallel to building walls unless specifically shown otherwise. All piping shall be run as high as practical and not on the floor unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF VALVES:

- A. Provide shut-off valves in supply and return to each item of equipment. Locate valves to isolate each item to facilitate maintenance and/or removal.
- B. Provide check valve in discharge line adjacent to each pump.
- C. Locate valves in piping connections to boilers, heat exchangers, water heaters, refrigeration machine, etc., so heads and tube bundles can be removed without disconnecting equipment or piping other than union or flange connections immediately adjacent to heat exchangers.
- D. Provide seat to screw adapters where required.



3.3 REFRIGERATION SYSTEM:

- A. Split Systems: When system is complete, but before the pipe covering has been installed, test components with dry nitrogen and make tight at equipment manufacturer's recommended test pressures. Then evacuate the system to 26" Hg. vacuum which the system shall hold for 24 hours. After passing the above tests, charge and leak test under operating conditions using electronic leak detector.
- B. Split and Packaged Systems: Check operation of refrigeration cycle and report head pressure, suction pressure and oil pressure.

END OF SECTION



1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Scope

- A. Provisions of this section apply to all HVAC work.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Specialties – Refrigerant

- A. Install molded desiccant core filter dryer in each liquid line. Provide throw away dryers for lines 1/2" and smaller. Provide replaceable core dryers for lines 5/8" and larger. Dryers shall be Sporlan "Catchall".
- B. Install moisture indicating sight glass in each liquid line.
- C. Service valves: Wing cap valves, Henry, or approved equal.
- D. Expansion valves: Thermostatic valves with external equalizers, Sporlan, or approved equal.
- E. Hot gas bypass valves: Self-contained valves sized to pass gas flow at last step of compressor unloading and shall discharge between expansion valve outlet and distribution. Sporlan, or approved equal.
- F. Install solenoid valve in each liquid and hot gas bypass line where recommended by manufacturer. Hot gas solenoid valve shall be equipped with a high temperature coil.
- G. Install suction line accumulators in all outdoor heat pumps and condensing units where refrigerant lines exceed 85' in length, or where recommended by manufacturer.
- H. Refrigerant circuit access ports located outdoors shall be fitted with locking-type, tamper-resistant caps. Provide owner with any tools necessary to un-lock the caps.

3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

- A. Specialties shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. See Details for mounting instructions and accessories.

END OF SECTION



1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE:

- A. Include Section 15010 "GENERAL PROVISIONS - HVAC", with this Section.
- B. Repair existing insulation at points of connection to existing work.
- C. "Exposed" is defined as: Exposed to view when construction is complete. Items which are not "exposed" are "concealed".
- D. "Attic" is defined as any ceiling space that is adjacent to the roof.
- E. Insulate all items subject to sweating or loss of heat.
- F. All insulation shall be installed by licensed applicator and applied in accordance with the Manufacturer's Recommendations.

1.2 INSULATION REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A.
- B. Pipe hanger shields are specified in Section 15050 "MATERIALS AND METHODS - HVAC".
- C. Use insulation and adhesives with Underwriter's Laboratories flame spread rating not over 25 without evidence of continued progressive combustion, and smoke developed rating not exceeding 50 for all other pipe, duct and equipment insulation.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FOAM PLASTIC PIPE COVERING:

- A. Fire retardant foamed plastic pipe covering, maximum K factor at 75°F mean temperature not exceeding 0.27 BTU/(hr) (sq. ft.) (°F/in). Armstrong "Armaflex II", or approved equal.
- B. Pipe covering may be seamless insulation slipped over piping before erection or may be slit longitudinally and installed over erected piping.
- C. Make fitting covers from segments of pipe covering.
- D. Cement all joints and seams in accordance with manufacturer's instruction using Armstrong 520 adhesive.
- E. Fit pipe hangers over insulation (See PIPE HANGERS). Use hanger shields as specified under pipe hangers.
- F. Thermal performance shall be as follows:
  - 1. 1" thick: R=4.2.
  - 2. 2" thick: R=8.0.

2.2 ALUMINUM JACKET PIPING COVER:

- A. 0.010" thick corrugated aluminum jacket with laminated polyethylene and draft paper adhered liner.
- B. Securely rivet jacket in place and band with flat aluminum bands 18" o.c.
- C. Finish fittings on aluminum jacketed lines with 1/8" thick (dry) coat of vinyl acrylic mastic reinforced with glass cloth.

### 2.3 DUCT INSULATION, INTERNAL:

- A. Glass fiber acoustical/thermal insulation complying with NFPA 90A and UL 181 and having an erosion resistant anti-microbial membrane equal to Johns Manville, Linacoustic ARC® on the air side. Edge coating shall be factory applied to the edges of the liner core. Shop fabrication cuts and field cuts or tears shall be coated with Superseal Duct Butter. NRC (1" thick) not less than 0.70, minimum density 3 lb/cu. ft., and maximum friction correction factor at 2000 fpm average velocity 1.15 (per TIMA test method AHS-1S2-76U). Thermal performance shall be as follows:
  - 1. 1" thick: R=4.2.
  - 2. 1 1/2" thick: R=6.3.
  - 3. 2" thick: R=8.0.

### 2.4 DUCT INSULATION, EXTERNAL FOR CONCEALED:

- A. Formaldehyde free flexible glass fiber insulation with foil-scrim-craft (FSK) facing equal to Johnson Manville Micro-Lite AXG®. Flame spread classification, 25 or less, smoke developed rating not exceeding 50. Minimum density, 3/4 lb./cu. ft., 3" thickness, installed R=8.3 minimum.

## 3.0 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HVAC PIPING INSULATION:

- A. Refrigerant Suction Lines and Hot Gas Bypass Lines: "Foam Plastic Pipe Covering", 1" thick. Jacket piping located outdoors or exposed to view with aluminum jacket.
- B. AC Unit Drain Lines: "Foam Plastic Covering", 3/4" thick. Jacket piping located outdoors or exposed to view with aluminum jacket.

### 3.2 AIR TERMINAL DEVICES:

- A. Ceiling Mounted Supply Diffusers: 2" thick duct insulation on back of diffuser, external for concealed.
- B. Fire Dampers for Internally Lined Ducts and Externally Insulated Ducts: 2" thick duct insulation on all sides, external for concealed.

### 3.3 DUCT INSULATION INTERNAL (AND EXTERNAL WHERE INDICATED):

- A. Apply in accordance with SMACNA "Duct Liner Application Standard" over full coverage adhesive. Coat all edges with adhesive and seal all punctures or tears

with mastic before installing ducts. Cut liner to assure overlapped and compressed longitudinal corner joints. Fasteners shall be sized appropriately for thickness of liner utilized. Provide mechanical fasteners and metal nosings as noted below:

1. For all velocities, provide metal nosings on upstream edge of liner at connections to equipment: Fans, coils, dampers, AC Units, sound absorbers, etc.
2. For velocities up to 2,000 feet per minute: Start fasteners within 3" of the upstream transverse edges of the liner and 3" from the longitudinal joints and space them a maximum of 12" o.c. around the perimeter of the duct, except that they may be a maximum of 12" from a corner break. Elsewhere locate fasteners a maximum of 18" o.c., except that they shall be placed not more than 6" from a longitudinal joint of the liner nor more than 12" from a corner break.
3. For velocities from 2,001 to 4,000 feet per minute: Start fasteners within 3" of the upstream transverse edges of the liner and 3" from the longitudinal joints and space them a maximum of 6" o.c. around the perimeter of the duct, except that they may be a maximum of 6" from a corner break. Elsewhere locate fasteners a maximum of 16" o.c., except that they shall be placed not more than 6" from a longitudinal joints of the liner nor more than 12" from a corner break. In addition to the adhesive edge coating of transverse joints, coat and longitudinal joints with adhesive.
4. For velocities from 4,001 to 6,000 feet per minute: Same as 2 above except that metal nosing shall be installed to secure liner at all upstream transverse edges.
5. Duct size shown does not include allowance for insulation.
6. Where ducts are listed to be lined and wrapped, install wrap per section below "Duct Insulation, External, for Concealed Ducts"

B. Thickness and Extent:

1. Rectangular Return Duct: 1" thick.
2. Rectangular Exhaust Duct Connected to an ERU: 1" thick.
3. Exposed supply duct or exposed OSA duct connected to an ERU: 1" thick.
4. Exposed round supply duct or exposed round OSA duct connected to an ERU to be double wall duct: 1" thick between shells.

3.4 DUCT INSULATION, EXTERNAL, FOR CONCEALED DUCTS:

- A. Adhere insulation to duct surface with approved adhesive applied in strips above 6" wide on approximately 12" centers. Flare door staples may be used for securing the insulation until the adhesive sets. Lap jacket and vapor seal all joints and seams with suitable mastic.
- B. On rectangular and flat oval ducts 30" wide and wider, additionally support insulation with weld pins and speed clips 18" on centers. Seal weld pins with mastic and FSK tape.

C. Thickness and Extent:

1. Supply duct: 2" thick. Supply duct located in Attic: 3" thick.
2. ERU outside air duct: 2" thick. ERU outside air duct located in Attic: 3" thick.
3. Exhaust duct connected to exhaust fans.
4. 2 hour fire wrap on grease exhaust duct equal to Firemaster.

NOTE: Conical and straight spin-ins on both lined and unlined ducts shall be insulated. Insulation shall be slit at damper rods, at spin-ins and sealed vapor tight.

3.5 INSULATION WETTED DURING CONSTRUCTION:

- A. Contractor shall replace any and all insulation wetted during construction at his own expense.

END OF SECTION



## AIR PURIFICATION SYSTEM – HVAC-SECTION 15205

### 1.00 GENERAL:

#### 1.01 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

- A. This section describes the design, performance and installation of an air purification system intended for use as part of another manufacturer's air handling unit or mounted on the duct as shown on the plans, details and equipment schedules.

#### 1.02 REFERENCED CODES & STANDARDS:

- A. The following codes and standards are referenced through out. The edition to be used is that currently enforced by the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) or in absence of such direction that referenced by the current enforceable IBC code or as indicated by the contract documents, except where specifically referenced by this section of the specifications.

1. ASHRAE Standards 62 & 52
2. National Electric Code NFPA 70
3. UL 867 including ozone chamber test required as of December 21, 2007

#### 1.03 RELATED WORK:

- A. Testing, Adjusting and Balancing
- B. Facility Access and Protection
- C. Ductwork
- D. Filters
- E. Water and Refrigerant Piping
- F. Electrical Wiring
- G. Control Wiring

#### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. Basis of design is Top Product Innovations. Global Plasma Solutions and Phenomenal Aire shall be considered equal subject to meeting all specifications herein.
- B. The Air Purification System shall be a product of an established manufacturer within the USA.
- C. A qualified representative from the manufacturer shall be available to inspect the installation of the air purification system to ensure installation in accordance with

manufacturer's recommendation.

- D. Technologies that do not address gas disassociation such as UV Lights, Powered Particulate Filters and/or polarized media filters shall not be considered. Uni-polar ion generators shall not be acceptable. "Plasma" particulate filters shall not be acceptable.
- E. Projects designed using ASHRAE Standard 62, IAQ Procedure shall require the manufacturer to provide Indoor Air Quality calculations using the formulas within ASHRAE Standard 62.1-2013 to validate acceptable indoor air quality at the quantity of outside air scheduled with the technology submitted.
- F. The Air Purification System have been tested by UL or Intertek/ETL to prove conformance to UL 867-2007 including the ozone chamber testing and peak ozone test for electronic devices. Manufacturers that achieved UL 867 prior to December 21, 2007 and have not been tested in accordance with the newest UL 867 standard with the ozone amendment shall not be acceptable. All manufacturers shall submit their independent UL 867 test data with ozone results to the engineer during the submittal process. All manufacturers shall submit a copy with their quotation. Contractors shall not accept any proposal without the proper ozone testing documentation.
- G. The maximum allowable ozone concentration per the UL 867-2007 chamber test shall be 0.007 PPM. The maximum peak ozone concentration per the UL 867-2007 peak test as measured 2 inches away from the electronic air cleaner's output shall be no more than 0.0042 PPM. Manufacturers with ozone output exceeding these ozone values shall not be acceptable.

#### 1.05 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical product data for ion generators including:
  - 1. Schedule of plasma generators indicating unit designation, number of each type required for each unit/application.
  - 2. Data sheet for each type of plasma generator, and accessory furnished; indicating construction, sizes, and mounting details.
  - 3. Performance data for each type of plasma device furnished.
  - 4. Indoor Air Quality calculations using the formulas within ASHRAE Standard 62.1-2013 to validate acceptable indoor air quality at the quantity of outside air scheduled (when projects are designed with outside air reduction).
  - 5. Product drawings detailing all physical, electrical and control requirements.
  - 6. Copy of UL 867 independent ozone test.
- B. Operating & Maintenance Data: Submit O&M data and recommended spare parts lists.

#### 1.06 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

- A. Deliver in factory fabricated shipping containers. Identify on outside of container type of product and location to be installed. Avoid crushing or bending.

- B. Store in original cartons and protect from weather and construction work traffic.
- C. Store indoors and in accordance with the manufacturers' recommendation for storage.

1.07 WARRANTY:

- A. Equipment shall be warranted by the manufacturer against defects in material and workmanship for a period of twenty-four months after shipment, whichever occurs first. Labor to replace equipment under warranty shall be provided by the owner or installing contractor.

2.00 PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL:

- A. The air purification system(s) shall be of the size, type, arrangement and capacity indicated and required by the unit furnished and shall be of the manufacturer specified.
- B. Basis of Design: Top Product Innovations Type C unit
- C. All other Suppliers of comparable products requesting prior approval shall:
  - 1. Submit for prior approval in accordance with the requirements of Section 15010.
  - 2. In addition, manufacturers submitting for prior approval for Bi-Polar Ionization must as part of the prior approval request provide their ASHRAE 62.1-2013 calculations that prove conformance to the ASHRAE Standard with the reduction of outside air to the scheduled values. A letter on the manufacturer's letterhead requesting prior approval must accompany the request for prior approval stating their calculations are ASHRAE compliant. A third party validation study performed on a previous installation of the same application shall also be included.
  - 3. Submit independent test data from ETL or UL showing ozone levels produced during the UL 867 ozone chamber test. Manufacturers without this test data shall not be acceptable.

2.02 BI-POLAR IONIZATION DESIGN & PERFORMANCE CRITERIA"

- A. Each piece of air handling equipment, so designated on the plans, details, equipment schedules and/or specifications shall contain a Plasma Generator with Bi-polar Ionization output as described here within.
- B. The Bi-polar Ionization system shall be capable of:
  - 1. Effectively killing microorganisms downstream of the bi-polar ionization equipment (mold, bacteria, virus, etc.).
  - 2. Controlling gas phase contaminants generated from human occupants, building structure and furnishings.
  - 3. Capable of reducing static space charges.

4. Increasing the interior ion levels, both positive and negative, to a minimum of 800 ions/cm<sup>3</sup> measured 5 feet from the floor.
- C. The bi-polar ionization system shall operate in a manner such that equal amounts of positive and negative ions are produced. Uni-polar ion devices shall not be acceptable.
1. Air exchange rates may vary through the full operating range of a constant volume or VAV system. The quantity of air exchange shall not be increased due to requirements of the air purification system.
  2. Velocity Profile: The air purification device shall not have maximum velocity profile.
- D. Humidity: Plasma Generators shall not require preheat protection when the relative humidity of the entering air exceeds 85%. Relative humidity from 0 - 100%, condensing, shall not cause damage, deterioration or dangerous conditions within the air purification system. Air purification system shall be capable of wash down duty.
- E. Equipment Requirements:
1. Electrode Specifications (Bi-polar Ionization):
    - a. Each Plasma Generator with Bi-polar Ionization output shall include the required number of electrodes and power generators sized to the air handling equipment capacity. Unit shall be capable of treating 6,000 CFM (C6.0) or 10,000 CFM (C10.0). Bi-polar ionization tubes manufactured of glass and steel mesh shall not be acceptable due to replacement requirements, maintenance, performance output reduction over time, ozone production and corrosion.
    - b. Electrodes shall be energized when the main unit disconnect is turned on and the fan is operating. Electrodes shall be made from carbon fiber to prevent oxidation over time.
    - c. Electrode pair shall provide a minimum of 140 million ions per cubic centimeter (C6.0) or 200 million ions per cubic centimeter (C10.0), both positive and negative ions in equal quantities. Devices providing less than the rated ion densities shall not be acceptable.
- F. Air Handler Mounted Units:
1. Where so indicated on the plans and/or schedules Plasma Generator(s) shall be supplied and installed. The mechanical contractor shall mount the Plasma Generator and wire it to the AHU control power (24VAC) as instructed by the Air Purification Manufacturer's instructions or line voltage subject to power available. Each unit shall be designed with an integral illuminated LED and dry contacts to prove ion output is operating properly. The dry contacts shall close to prove the ion generator is working properly and may be daisy chained in series such that only one dry contact per AHU is required to interface to the BAS or the optional DDC controller. Dry contacts proving power has been applied in lieu of the ion output is actually operating, are not acceptable.

- G. Plenum/Duct Mounted Units: Where so indicated on the plans and/or schedules, Plasma Generators(s) shall be supplied and installed. The generator shall be installed through the duct wall and into the air stream with the external power head in a convenient location for visual indication of power, removal and servicing, by the mechanical contractor. The dry contacts shall close to prove the ion generator is working properly and may be daisy chained in series such that only one dry contact per duct is required to interface to the BAS or the optional DDC controller.
- H. Ionization Requirements:
1. Plasma Generators with Bi-polar ionization output shall be capable of controlling gas phase contaminants and shall be provided for all equipment listed above.
    - a. The Bi-polar ionization system shall consist of Bi-Polar Plasma Generator and power supply. The Bi-polar system shall be installed where indicated on the plans or specified to be installed and powered by 24VAC.
    - b. Ionization Output: The ionization output shall be controlled such that an equal number of positive and negative ions are produced. Imbalanced levels shall not be acceptable.
    - c. Ionization output from each electrode shall be a minimum of 140 million ions/cc (C6.0) and 200 million ions/cc (C10.0) when tested at 1" from the ionization generator.
    - d. All manufacturers shall provide documentation by an independent NELEC accredited laboratory that proves the product has minimum kill rates for the following pathogens given the allotted time and in a space condition:
      - A. MRSA - >96% in 30 minutes or less
      - B. E.coli - > 99% in 15 minutes or less
      - C. TB - > 69% in 60 minutes or less
      - D. C. diff - >86% in 30 minutes or less

Manufacturers not providing the equivalent space kill rates shall not be acceptable. All manufactures requesting prior approval shall provide to the engineer independent test data from a NELEC accredited independent lab confirming kill rates and time meeting the minimum requirements stated in section 2.2 B, points 6A, 6B and 6C. Products tested only on Petri dishes to prove kill rates shall not be acceptable.

2. Ozone Generation:  
The operation of the electrodes or Bi-polar ionization units shall conform to UL 867-2007 with respect to ozone generation. There shall be no ozone generation during any operating condition, with or without airflow.
- I. Electrical Requirements:
1. Wiring, conduit and junction boxes shall be installed within housing plenums in accordance with NEC NFPA 70. The contractor shall coordinate electrical requirements with air purification manufacturer during submittals.
- J. Control Requirements:

1. All Plasma Generators shall have internal short circuit protection, overload protection, and automatic fault reset.
2. Integral airflow sensing shall modulate the Plasma output as the air flow varies or stops. A mechanical air flow switch shall not be acceptable as a means to activate the Plasma device due to high failure rates and possible pressure reversal.
3. The installing contractor shall mount and wire the Plasma device within the air handling unit specified or as shown on the plans. The contractor shall follow all manufacturer IOM instructions during installation.
4. All Plasma devices shall have a means to interface with the BAS system. Dry contacts shall be provided to prove there are ions being produced. Systems providing indication that power is applied to the Plasma device, but not directly sensing the power at the ion output, shall not be acceptable.
5. Plasma systems that use multiple modules with ion output alarm wires wired to the same terminal such that all ion modules must fail to show an alarm status shall not be acceptable.

### 3.00 EXECUTION:

#### 3.01 GENERAL:

- A. The Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining all air systems until the owner accepts the building (Owner Acceptance).

#### 3.02 ASSEMBLY & ERECTION: PLASMA GENERATOR WITH BI-POLAR IONIZATION:

- A. All equipment shall be assembled and installed in a workman like manner to the satisfaction of the owner, architect, and engineer.
- B. Any material damaged by handling, water or moisture shall be replaced, by the mechanical contractor, at no cost to the owner.
- C. All equipment shall be protected from dust and damage on a daily basis throughout construction.

#### 3.03 TESTING:

- A. Provide the manufacturers recommended electrical tests.

#### 3.04 COMMISSIONING & TRAINING:

- A. A manufacturer's authorized representative shall provide start-up supervision and training of owner's personnel in the proper operation and maintenance of all equipment.

END OF SECTION

## VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES - SECTION 15300

### 1.00 GENERAL:

#### 1.01 SCOPE:

- A. Include section 15010 "GENERAL PROVISIONS - HVAC", with this section.
- B. This specification is to cover a complete Variable Frequency motor Drive (VFD) consisting of a pulse width modulated (PWM) inverter designed for use on a standard NEMA Design B induction motor.
- C. The drive manufacturer shall supply the drive and all necessary controls as herein specified. The manufacturer shall have been engaged in the production of this type of equipment for a minimum of twenty years. All VFDs installed on this project shall be from the same manufacturer.

#### 1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE

##### A. Referenced Standards:

- 1. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)
  - a) Standard 519-1992, IEEE Guide for Harmonic Content and Control.
- 2. Underwriters laboratories
  - a) UL508C
- 3. National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA)
  - a) ICS 7.0, AC Adjustable Speed Drives
- 4. IEC 16800 Parts 1 and 2

##### B. Qualifications:

- 1. VFDs and options shall be UL listed as a complete assembly. VFDs that require the customer to supply external fuses for the VFD to be UL listed are not acceptable. VFDs with requiring additional branch circuit protection are not acceptable. The base VFD shall be UL listed for 100 KAIC without the need for input fusing.

### 2.00 PRODUCTS:

#### 2.01 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES

- A. The VFD package as specified herein shall be enclosed in a UL Listed Type enclosure, (NEMA rated enclosures are not acceptable) completely assembled and tested by the manufacturer in an ISO9001 facility. The VFD tolerated voltage window shall allow the VFD to operate from a line of +30% nominal, and -35% nominal voltage as a minimum.
  - 1. Environmental operating conditions: 0 – 400 C continuous. Altitude 0 to 3300 feet above sea level, up to 95% humidity, non-condensing. All circuit boards shall have conformal coating.
  - 2. Enclosure shall be rated UL type 1 and shall be UL listed as a plenum rated VFD.
- B. All VFDs shall have the following features:

1. All VFDs shall have the same customer interface, including digital display, and keypad, regardless of horsepower rating. The keypad shall be removable, capable of remote mounting and allow for uploading and downloading of parameter settings as an aid for start-up of multiple VFDs.
2. The keypad shall include Hand-Off-Auto selections and manual speed control. There shall be fault reset and "Help" buttons on the keypad. The Help button shall include "on-line" assistance for programming and troubleshooting.
3. There shall be a built-in time clock in the VFD keypad. The clock shall have a battery back up with 10 years minimum life span. The clock shall be used to date and time stamp faults and record operating parameters at the time of fault. If the battery fails, the VFD shall automatically revert to hours of operation since initial power up. The clock shall also be programmable to control start/stop functions, constant speeds, PID parameter sets and output relays. The VFD shall have a digital input that allows an override to the time clock (when in the off mode) for a programmable time frame. There shall be four (4) separate, independent timer functions that have both weekday and weekend settings. Capacitor backup is not acceptable.
4. The VFD shall be capable of starting into a coasting load (forward or reverse) up to full speed and accelerate or decelerate to setpoint without safety tripping or component damage (flying start).
5. The overload rating of the drive shall be 110% of its normal duty current rating for 1 minute every 10 minutes, 130% overload for 2 seconds. The minimum FLA rating shall meet or exceed the values in the NEC/UL table 430-150 for 4-pole motors.
6. The VFD shall have 5% equivalent impedance internal reactors to reduce the harmonics to the power line and to add protection from AC line transients. The 5% equivalent impedance may be from dual (positive and negative DC bus) reactors, or 5% AC line reactors. VFDs with only one DC reactor shall add an AC line reactor.
7. The VFD shall include a coordinated AC transient protection system consisting of 4-120 joule rated MOV's (phase to phase and phase to ground), a capacitor clamp, and 5% equivalent impedance internal reactors.
8. The VFD shall provide a programmable proof of flow Form-C relay output (broken belt / broken coupling). The drive shall be programmable to signal this condition via a keypad warning, relay output and/or over the serial communications bus. Relay outputs shall include programmable time delays that will allow for drive acceleration from zero speed without signaling a false underload condition.

C. All VFDs to have the following adjustments:

1. Three (3) programmable critical frequency lockout ranges to prevent the VFD from operating the load continuously at an unstable speed.
2. Two (2) PID Setpoint controllers shall be standard in the drive, allowing pressure or flow signals to be connected to the VFD, using the microprocessor in the VFD for the closed loop control. The VFD shall have 250 ma of 24 VDC auxiliary power and be capable of loop powering a



transmitter supplied by others. There shall be two parameter sets for the first PID that allow the sets to be switched via a digital input, serial communications or from the keypad for night setback, summer/winter setpoints, etc. There shall be an independent, second PID loop that can utilize the second analog input and modulate one of the analog outputs to maintain setpoint of an independent process (ie. valves, dampers, etc.). All setpoints, process variables, etc. to be accessible from the serial communication network.

3. Two (2) programmable analog inputs shall accept current or voltage signals.
  4. Two (2) programmable analog outputs (0-20ma or 4-20 ma). The outputs may be programmed to output proportional to Frequency, Motor Speed, Output Voltage, Output Current, Motor Torque, Motor Power (kW), DC Bus voltage, Active Reference, and other data.
  5. Six (6) programmable digital inputs.
  6. Three (3) programmable digital Form-C relay outputs. The relays shall include programmable on and off delay times and adjustable hysteresis. The relays shall be rated for maximum switching current 8 amps at 24 VDC and 0.4 A at 250 VAC; Maximum voltage 300 VDC and 250 VAC; continuous current rating 2 amps RMS. Outputs shall be true Form-C type contacts; open collector outputs are not acceptable.
  7. Run permissive circuit - There shall be a run permissive circuit for damper or valve control. Regardless of the source of a run command (keypad, time-clock control, or serial communications) the VFD shall provide a dry contact closure that will signal the damper to open (VFD motor does not operate). When the damper is fully open, a normally open dry contact (end-switch) shall close. The closed end-switch is wired to a VFD digital input and allows motor operation. Two separate safety interlock inputs shall be provided. When either safety is opened, the motor shall be commanded to coast to stop, and the damper shall be commanded to close.
  8. Two independently adjustable accel and decel ramps with 1 – 1800 seconds adjustable time ramps.
  9. The VFD shall include a motor flux optimization circuit that will automatically reduce applied motor voltage to the motor to optimize energy consumption and audible motor noise.
  10. The VFD shall include a carrier frequency control circuit that reduces the carrier frequency based on actual VFD temperature that allows higher carrier frequency without derating the VFD or operating at high carrier frequency only at low speeds.
  11. The VFD shall include password protection against parameter changes.
- D. The Keypad shall include a backlit LCD display. The display shall be in complete English words for programming and fault diagnostics (LED and alpha-numeric codes are not acceptable). All VFD faults shall be displayed in English words.
- E. All applicable operating values shall be capable of being displayed in engineering (user) units. A minimum of three operating values from the list below shall be capable of being displayed at all times. The display shall be in complete English words (alpha-numeric codes are not acceptable):

Output Frequency  
Motor Speed (RPM, %, or Engineering units)  
Motor Current  
Drive Temperature  
DC Bus Voltage  
Output Voltage

- F. The VFD shall include a fireman's override input. Upon receipt of a contact closure from the fireman's control station, the VFD shall operate in one of two modes: 1) Operate at a programmed predetermined fixed speed or operate in a specific fireman's override PID algorithm that automatically adjusts motor speed based on override set point and feedback. The mode shall override all other inputs (analog/digital, serial communication, and all keypad commands), except customer defined safety run interlock, and force the motor to run in one of the two modes above. "Override Mode" shall be displayed on the keypad. Upon removal of the override signal, the VFD shall resume normal operation.
- G. Serial Communications
1. The VFD shall have an RS-485 port as standard. The standard protocols shall be Modbus, BACnet, Johnson Controls N2 bus, and Siemens Building Technologies FLN. Each individual drive shall have the protocol in the base VFD. The use of third party gateways and multiplexers is not acceptable. All protocols shall be "certified" by the governing authority (i.e. BTL Listing for BACnet). Use of non-certified protocols is not allowed.
  2. The BACnet connection shall be an RS485, MS/TP interface operating at 9.6, 19.2, 38.4, or 76.8 Kbps. The connection shall be tested by the BACnet Testing Labs (BTL) and be BTL Listed. The BACnet interface shall conform to the BACnet standard device type of an Applications Specific Controller (B-ASC). The interface shall support all BIBBs defined by the BACnet standard profile for a B-ASC including, but not limited to:
    - a. Data Sharing – Read Property – B.
    - b. Data Sharing – Write Property – B.
    - c. Device Management – Dynamic Device Binding (Who-Is; I-AM).
    - d. Device Management – Dynamic Object Binding (Who-Has; I-Have).
    - e. Device Management – Communication Control – B.
  3. Serial communication capabilities shall include, but not be limited to; run-stop control, speed set adjustment, proportional/integral/derivative PID control adjustments, current limit, accel/decel time adjustments, and lock and unlock the keypad. The drive shall have the capability of allowing the DDC to monitor feedback such as process variable feedback, output speed / frequency, current (in amps), % torque, power (kW), kilowatt hours (resettable), operating hours (resettable), and drive temperature. The DDC shall also be capable of monitoring the VFD relay output status, digital input status, and all analog input and analog output values. All diagnostic warning and fault information shall be transmitted over the serial communications bus. Remote VFD fault reset shall be possible.
- H. EMI / RFI filters. All VFDs shall include EMI/RFI filters. The VFD shall comply with standard EN 61800-3 for the First Environment, restricted level with up to 100' of motor cables. No Exceptions. Certified test lab test reports shall be provided with the submittals.

- I. All VFDs through 60HP shall be protected from input and output power mis-wiring. The VFD shall sense this condition and display an alarm on the keypad. The VFD shall not be damaged by this condition.
- J. OPTIONAL FEATURES – Optional features to be furnished and mounted by the drive manufacturer. All optional features shall be UL Listed by the drive manufacturer as a complete assembly and carry a UL508 label. The bypass enclosure door and VFD enclosure must be interlocked such that input power is turned off before either enclosure can be opened. The VFD and Bypass as a package shall have a UL listed short circuit rating of 100,000 amps and shall be indicated on the data label.
  - 1. A complete factory wired and tested bypass system consisting of an output contactor and bypass contactor, service (isolation) switch and VFD input fuses are required. Bypass designs, which have no VFD only fuses, or that incorporate fuses common to both the VFD and the bypass will not be accepted
  - 2. Door interlocked padlockable circuit breaker that will disconnect all input power from the drive and all internally mounted options.
- K. The following operators shall be provided:
  - 1. Bypass Hand-Off-Auto
  - 2. Drive mode selector and light
  - 3. Bypass mode selector and light
  - 4. Bypass fault reset
  - 5. Bypass LDC display, 2 lines, for programming and status / fault / warning indications
    - a. Motor protection from single phase power conditions - The Bypass system must be able to detect a single phase input power condition while running in bypass, disengage the motor in a controlled fashion, and give a single phase input power indication. Bypass systems not incorporating single phase protection in Bypass mode are not acceptable.
    - b. The system (VFD and Bypass) tolerated voltage window shall allow the system to operate from a line of +30%, -35% nominal voltage as a minimum. The system shall incorporate circuitry that will allow the drive or bypass contactor to remain "sealed in" over this voltage tolerance at a minimum.
    - c. The Bypass system shall NOT depend on the VFD for bypass operation. The bypass shall be completely functional in both Hand and Automatic modes even if the VFD has been removed from the enclosure for repair / replacement.
    - d. Serial communications – the bypass and VFD shall be capable of being monitored and or controlled via serial communications. Provide communications protocols for ModBus; Johnson Controls N2; Siemens Building Technologies FLN (P1) and BACnet in the bypass controller.
    - e. BACnet Serial communication bypass capabilities shall include, but not be limited to; bypass run-stop control; the ability to force

the unit to bypass; and the ability to lock and unlock the keypad. The bypass shall have the capability of allowing the DDC to monitor feedback such as, bypass current (in amps), bypass kilowatt hours (resettable), bypass operating hours (resettable), and bypass logic board temperature. The DDC shall also be capable of monitoring the bypass relays output status, and all digital input status. All bypass diagnostic warning and fault information shall be transmitted over the serial communications bus. Remote bypass fault reset shall be possible. The following additional bypass status indications and settings shall be transmitted over the serial communications bus – keypad "Hand" or "Auto" selected, and bypass selected. The DDC system shall also be able to monitor if the motor is running under load in both VFD and bypass (proof of flow) in the VFD mode over serial communications or Form-C relay output. A minimum of 40 field parameters shall be capable of being monitored in the bypass mode.

- f. Run permissive circuit - there shall be a run permissive circuit for damper or valve control. Regardless of the source of a run command (keypad, time-clock control, or serial communications) the VFD and bypass shall provide a dry contact closure that will signal the damper to open (VFD motor does not operate). When the damper is fully open, a normally open dry contact (end-switch) shall close. The closed end-switch is wired to a VFD system input and allows motor operation. Two separate safety interlock inputs shall be provided. When either safety is opened, the motor shall be commanded to coast to stop, and the damper shall be commanded to close.
- g. The bypass control shall monitor the status of the VFD and bypass contactors and indicate when there is a welded contactor contact or open contactor coil. This failed contactor operation shall be indicated on the Bypass LCD display as well as over the serial communications protocol.
- h. The bypass control shall include a programmable time delay for bypass start and keypad indication that this time delay is in process. This will allow VAV boxes to be driven open before the motor operates at full speed in the bypass mode. The time delay shall be field programmable from 0 – 120 seconds.
- i. The bypass control shall be programmable for manual or automatic transfer to bypass. The user shall be able to select via keypad programming which drive faults will generate an automatic transfer to bypass and which faults require a manual transfer to bypass.
- j. There shall be an adjustable motor current sensing circuit for the bypass and VFD mode to provide proof of flow indication. The condition shall be indicated on the keypad display, transmitted over the building automation protocol and on a relay output contact closure.
- k. The bypass controller shall have six programmable digital inputs, and five programmable Form-C relay outputs.
- l. The relay outputs from the bypass shall be programmable for any of the following indications.

- 1) System started
- 2) System running
- 3) Bypass override enabled
- 4) Drive fault
- 5) Bypass fault
- 6) Bypass H-O-A position
- 7) Motor proof of flow (broken belt)
- 8) Overload
- 9) Bypass selected
- 10) Bypass run
- 11) System started (damper opening)
- 12) Bypass alarm
- 13) Over temperature

13. The digital inputs for the system shall accept 24VAC or 24VDC. The bypass shall incorporate internally sourced power supply and not require an external control power source. The bypass power board shall supply 250 ma of 24 VDC for use by others to power external devices.
14. Customer Interlock Terminal Strip – provide a separate terminal strip for connection of freeze, fire, smoke contacts, and external start command. All external safety interlocks shall remain fully functional whether the system is in VFD or Bypass mode. The remote start/stop contact shall operate in VFD and bypass modes. The terminal strip shall allow for independent connection of up to four (4) unique safety inputs.
15. The user shall be able to select the text to be displayed on the keypad when the safety opens. Example text display indications include "Firestat", "Freezestat", "Over pressure" and "Low pressure". The user shall also be able to determine which of the four (4) safety contacts is open over the serial communications connection.
16. Class 10, 20, or 30 (selectable) electronic motor overload protection shall be included.

- L. VFD shall be Trane, Graham, Allen-Bradley, ABB, Reliance, Emerson, Cutler Hammer or Johnson Controls.

### 3.00 EXECUTION:

#### 3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation shall be the responsibility of the mechanical contractor. The contractor shall install the drive in accordance with the requirements of the VFD manufacturer's installation manual.

#### 3.02 START-UP

- A. Certified factory start-up shall be provided for each drive by a factory certified service center. A certified start-up form shall be filled out for each drive with a copy provided to the owner, and a copy kept on file at the manufacturer.

#### 3.03 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty shall be 24 months from the date of certified start-up, not to exceed 30 months from the date of shipment. The warranty shall include all parts, labor, travel time and expenses.

END OF SECTION



1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Scope

- A. Provisions of this Section shall apply to all HVAC work.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Coils

- A. ARI Standard 410-89 rated with capacities and dimensions shown.
- B. Provide coils with aluminum fins and seamless copper tubes.
- C. Headers may be iron castings or steel or copper tubing. Braze return bends.
- D. Space fins not closer than 10 per inch, maximum coil depth of 8 rows.
- E. Prove coils tight with 200 psig under water air test.
- F. Coil casings: Stainless steel and flanges drilled for mounting.

3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

- A. Coils shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. See details for mounting instructions and accessories.

END OF SECTION





1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Scope

- A. Provisions of this Section shall apply to all HVAC work.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

2.01 Heat Pump - (MINI-Split)

- A. The Heat Pump system shall be a Mitsubishi Electric, Trane, Daikin, Samsung, Bryant or approved equal split system with Variable Speed Inverter Compressor technology. The system shall consist of a ceiling-suspended indoor section with wired, wall mounted controller and a horizontal discharge, single phase outdoor unit.
- B. Quality Assurance
1. The units shall be tested by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and shall bear the ETL label.
  2. All wiring shall be in accordance with the National Electrical Code (N.E.C.).
  3. The units shall be rated in accordance with Air-conditioning Refrigeration Institute's (ARI) Standard 210 and bear the ARI Certification label.
  4. The units shall be manufactured in a facility registered to ISO 9001 and ISO 14001, which is a set of standards applying to environmental protection set by the International Standard Organization (ISO).
  5. A dry air holding charge shall be provided in the indoor section.
  6. The outdoor unit shall be pre-charged with R-410a refrigerant.
  7. System efficiency shall meet or exceed 13.0 SEER.
- C. Delivery, Storage and Handling
1. Unit shall be stored and handled according to the manufacturer's recommendations.
  2. The wireless controller shall be shipped inside the carton with the indoor unit and able to withstand 105°F storage temperatures and 95% relative humidity without adverse effect.
- D. Warranty
1. The units shall have a manufacturer's parts and defects warranty for a period one (1) year from date of installation. The compressor shall have a warranty of 6 years from date of installation. If, during this period, any part should fail to function properly due to defects in workmanship or material, it shall be replaced or repaired at the discretion of the manufacturer. This warranty does not include labor.
  2. Manufacturer shall have over 25 years of continuous experience in the

U.S. market.

E. Performance

1. Each system shall perform in accordance to the ratings shown in the table below. Cooling performance shall be based on 80°F DB, 67°F WB (26.7°C DB, 19.4°C WB) for the indoor unit and 95°F DB, 75°F WB (35°C DB, 29.3°C WB) for the outdoor unit. Heating performance shall be based on 70°F DB, 60°F WB (21.1°C DB, 15.6°C WB) for the indoor unit and 47°F DB, 15°F WB (8.3°C DB, 6.1°C WB) for the outdoor unit.

F. Indoor Unit

1. The indoor unit shall be factory assembled, wired and tested. Contained within the unit shall be all factory wiring and internal piping, control circuit board and fan motor. The unit in conjunction with the wired, wall mounted controller shall have a self-diagnostic function, 3-minute time delay mechanism, an auto restart function, and a test run switch. Indoor unit and refrigerant pipes shall be purged with dry nitrogen before shipment from the factory.
2. Unit Cabinet  
  
The casing shall be ABS plastic and have a Munsell 0.70Y 8.59/0.97 finish. Cabinet shall be designed for suspension mounting and horizontal operation. The rear cabinet panel shall have provisions for a field installed filtered outside air intake connection.
3. Fan  
  
The evaporator fan shall have three high performance, double inlet, forward curve sirocco fans driven by a single motor. The fans shall be statically and dynamically balanced and run on a motor with permanently lubricated bearings. The indoor fan shall consist of four (4) speeds: Low, M1, M2, and Hi.
4. Vane  
  
There shall be a motorized horizontal vane to automatically direct air flow in a horizontal and downward direction for uniform air distribution. The horizontal vane shall provide a choice of five (5) vertical airflow patterns selected by remote control: 100% horizontal flow, 80% horizontal flow (plus 20% downward airflow), 60% horizontal airflow (plus 40% downward airflow), 40% horizontal airflow (plus 60% downward airflow), and swing. The horizontal vane shall significantly decrease downward air resistance for lower noise levels, and shall close the outlet port when operation is stopped. There shall also be a set of vertical vanes to provide horizontal swing airflow movement selected by remote control.
5. Filter  
  
Return air shall be filtered by means of an easily removable washable filter.
6. Coil  
  
The evaporator coil shall be of nonferrous construction with pre-coated aluminum stake fins on copper tubing. The multi-angled heat exchanger shall have a modified fin shape that reduces air resistance for a smoother, quieter airflow. All tube joints shall be brazed with PhosCopper or silver

alloy. The coils shall be pressure tested at the factory. A condensate pan and drain shall be provided under the coil.

7. Electrical

The electrical power of the unit shall be 208 volts or 230 volts, 1 phase, 60 hertz. The system shall be capable of satisfactory operation within voltage limits of 198 volts to 253 volts. The power to the indoor unit shall have an option of being supplied from the outdoor unit, using Mitsubishi Electric A-Control system or separate power source for indoor and outdoor units.

8. Control

- a. The control system shall consist of two (2) microprocessors, one on each indoor and outdoor unit, interconnected by a single non-polar two-wire cable. Field wiring shall run directly from the indoor unit to the wall mounted controller with no splices.
- b. For A-Control, a three (3) conductor 14 ga. AWG wire with ground shall provide power feed and bi-directional control transmission between the outdoor and indoor units.
- c. Where separate power is supplied to the indoor and outdoor units, a two (2) 20 ga. AWG wire shall be run between the units to provide forbid-directional control communication..
- d. The system shall be capable of automatic restart when power is restored after power interruption. The system shall have self-diagnostics ability, including total hours of compressor run time. Diagnostics codes for indoor and outdoor units shall be displayed on the wired controller panel.
- e. The microprocessor located in the indoor unit shall have the capability of monitoring return air temperature and indoor coil temperature, receiving and processing commands from the wired controller, providing emergency operation and controlling the outdoor unit.
- f. The indoor unit shall be connected to a wall mounted wired controller to perform input functions necessary to operate the system. The wired controller shall have a large multi-language DOT liquid crystal display (LCD) presenting contents in eight (8) different languages, including English, French, Chinese, German, Japanese, Spanish, Russian, and Italian.
- g. There shall be a built-in weekly timer with up to eight pattern settings per day. The controller shall consist of an On/Off button, Increase/Decrease Set Temperature buttons, a Cool/Dry/Fan mode selector, a Timer Menu button, a Timer On/Off button, Set Time buttons, a Fan Speed selector, a Vane Position selector, a Louver Swing button, a Ventilation button, a Test Run button, and a Check Mode button. The controller shall have a built-in temperature sensor. Temperature shall be displayed in either Fahrenheit (°F) or Celsius (°C). Temperature changes shall be by increments of 1°F (1°C) with a range of 67°F to 87°F (19°C to 30°C).
- h. The wired controller shall display operating conditions such as set temperature, room temperature, pipe temperatures (i.e. liquid,

discharge, indoor and outdoor), compressor operating conditions (including running current, frequency, input voltage, On/Off status and operating time), LEV opening pulses, sub cooling and discharge super heat.

- i. Normal operation of the wired controller shall provide individual system control in which one wired controller and one indoor unit are installed in the same room. The controller shall have the capability of controlling up to a maximum of sixteen systems at a maximum developed control cable distance of 1,500 feet (500 meters).
- j. The control voltage from the wired controller to the indoor unit shall be 12 volts, DC. The control signal between the indoor and outdoor unit shall be pulse signal 24 volts DC. Up to two wired controllers shall be able to be used to control one unit.
- k. Control system shall control the continued operation of the air sweep louvers, as well as provide On/Off and mode switching. The controller shall have the capability to provide sequential starting with up to fifty seconds delay.

G. Outdoor Unit

- 1. The outdoor unit shall be compatible with the three different types of indoor units (PKA - wall mounted, PCA - ceiling suspending, and PLA - four way ceiling cassette). The connected indoor unit must be of the same capacity as the outdoor unit.
- 2. Models PUY-A24NHA and PUY-A36NHA shall have the option to connect to two indoor units, within the same confined space, to improve air distribution (total capacity shall be equivalent to outdoor unit).
- 3. The outdoor unit shall be equipped with a control board that interfaces with the indoor unit to perform all necessary operation functions.
- 4. The outdoor unit shall be capable of operating at 0°F (-18°C) ambient temperature without additional low ambient controls (optional wind baffle may be required).
- 5. The outdoor unit shall be able to operate with a maximum height difference of 100 feet (30 meters) between indoor and outdoor units.
- 6. System shall have a maximum refrigerant tubing length of 165 feet (50 meters) between indoor and outdoor units without the need for line size changes, traps or additional oil.
- 7. Models PUZ-A24NHA, PUZ-A30NHA and PUZ-A36NHA shall be pre-charged for a maximum of 70 feet (20 meters) of refrigerant tubing. Model PUZ-A42NHA shall be pre-charged for a maximum of 100 feet (30 meters) of refrigerant tubing. The outdoor unit shall be completely factory assembled, piped, and wired. Each unit must be test run at the factory.
- 8. Cabinet

The casing shall be constructed from galvanized steel plate, coated with a finished with an electrostatically applied, thermally fused acrylic or polyester powder coating for corrosion protection and have a munsell 3Y

7.8/1.1 finish. The fan grille shall be of ABS plastic.

9. Fan

Models PUZ-A24NHA, PUZ-A30NHA, and PUZ-A36NHA shall be furnished with an AC fan motor. Model PUZ-A42NHA shall have two (2) DC fan motors. The fan motor shall be of aerodynamic design for quiet operation, and the fan motor bearings shall be permanently lubricated. The outdoor unit shall have horizontal discharge airflow. The fan shall be mounted in front of the coil, pulling air across it from the rear and dispelling it through the front. The fan shall be provided with a raised guard to prevent contact with moving parts.

10. Coil

The L shaped condenser coil shall be of copper tubing with flat aluminum fins to reduce debris build up. The coil shall be protected with an integral metal guard. Refrigerant flow from the condenser shall be controlled by means of linear expansion valve (LEV) metering orifice. The LEV shall be control by a microprocessor controlled step motor.

11. Compressor

The compressor for models PUY-A24NHA, PUY-A30NHA and PUY-A36NHA shall be a DC rotary compressor with Variable Compressor Speed Inverter Technology. The compressor for model PUY-A42NHA shall be a scroll compressor with variable speed technology. The compressor shall be driven by inverter circuit to control compressor speed. The compressor speed shall dynamically vary to match the room load for significantly increasing the efficiency of the system which results in vast energy savings. To prevent liquid from accumulating in the compressor during the off cycle, a minimal amount of current shall be intermittently applied to the compressor motor to maintain enough heat. The outdoor unit shall have an accumulator and high pressure safety switch. The compressor shall be mounted to avoid the transmission of vibration.

12. Electrical

The electrical power of the unit shall be 208volts or 230 volts, 1 phase, 60 hertz. The unit shall be capable of satisfactory operation within voltage limits of 198 volts to 253 volts. The outdoor unit shall be controlled by the microprocessor located in the indoor unit. The control signal between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit shall be pulse signal 24 volts DC. The unit shall have Pulse Amplitude Modulation circuit to utilize 98% of input power supply.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

- A. Heat pumps shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. See details for mounting instructions and accessories.

END OF SECTION



## ENERGY RECOVERY UNITS – HVAC-SECTION 15763

### 1.00 GENERAL:

#### 1.01 SCOPE:

- A. Provisions of this section apply to all HVAC work.

### 2.00 PRODUCTS:

#### 2.01 SPLIT SYSTEM ENERGY RECOVERY:

#### 2.02 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:

- A. The contractor shall furnish and install packaged outdoor air unit(s) as shown and scheduled on the contract documents. The unit(s) shall be installed in accordance with this specification and perform at the specified conditions as scheduled.

#### B. APPROVED MANUFACTURERS

1. Trane, RenewAire, Valent, JCI, Greenheck, Annexair or approved equal.

#### 2.03 GENERAL UNIT DESCRIPTION

- A. Horizontal air handling units: Factory fabricated units having capacity shown. Units consisting in general of a mixing box section, filter sections, cooling coil section, fan section, access sections, diffuser section, energy recovery wheel section, discharge plenum section, drip pan and drain sections, all the product of a single manufacturer. Provide fan sections, mixing box section, filter sections, diffuser section, and coil sections of the same frame size. Units shall have by-pass damper for unoccupied dehumidification cycle. Units shall have single side access.
- B. Casing: Not lighter than 18 gauge galvanized steel, all sections of casing insulated with 2 1/2" thick 3 lb./cu. ft. coated fiberglass insulation. Double wall construction with non perforated 26 gauge galvanized steel liner on air side. Entire unit to be double wall construction.
- C. Drain Pans: Double construction with insulation between pans and 16 gauge type 304 stainless steel inner pan. Drain pan shall slope to drain.
- D. Coil sections shall contain the coils scheduled. Coils shall comply with Section 238216, "COILS".
- E. Provide spacer sections for installing control bulbs between heating and cooling coils.
- F. Provide hinged and latched access doors in casings at fan sections, filter sections, plenum sections and upstream and downstream from cooling coils. Access doors on positive pressure side of casing shall be air tight under 6" WG static pressure. Construct doors with 2" insulation between two (2) sheet 24 gauge galvanized steel. Set doors in frames arranged so that doors will be flush with exterior of casing. Equip each door with at least two (2) hinges and two (2) sets of double acting latches. Latches shall be made from non ferrous metal, with a lever handle on the outside and a lever handle on the inside of the casing. Lever handle on the outside of the casing shall cam over a door pull with a stop. Latches shall be Vent Fabrics #310 Ventlok latch, or equal. Doors shall be reinforced to prevent wracking

and warping. Provide 3" butt hinges and weld to doors and to door frames.

G. Air filters: See Equipment Schedule and "AIR FILTERS". Provide side access filter sections, complying with the requirements under "AIR FILTERS".

H. Fans: Forward curved, airfoil, centrifugal fans, or plug fans, statically and dynamically balanced to a peak vibration velocity of 0.157 inch/second, with corrosion resistant coating. Bearings shall be self aligning grease lubricated ball bearings. Grease fittings shall be extended to accessible locations after units are installed. Fan and fan motor shall be mounted on spring isolated base inside unit and snubbing isolators shall be provided for discharge flexible connections. Isolators shall comply with the requirements for "VIBRATION ISOLATORS". Fan motor shall be mounted on an adjustable base and shall be equipped with V belt drive sized for 150% motor nameplate rating, adjustable pitch motor pulley for motors 25 H.P. and smaller.

I. Heating components shall include electric resistance heaters.

1. All sheet metal parts in air stream shall be aluminized or galvanized steel. Heaters shall be listed in the Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc., Electrical Appliance and Utilization Equipment list or ETL Listed.

2. Heaters shall have ceramic supported nichrome wire elements, control box and 1/2" insulation between casings and control box. Provide spaces at terminal end of heater so that internal duct insulation will not cause hot spots. Provide NEMA I control boxes when boxes are located inside unit casing and weather type control boxes when boxes are located outdoors. Connections between control box and duct shall be air tight under 1" W.G. static pressure.

3. Control box shall contain three (3) phase heaters. Contactors shall be factory wired to terminal strips.

4. Heaters shall have factory wired automatic high limit control bulb and in addition, a supplementary independent thermal device shall be provided to disconnect all power circuits in case automatic high limit fails.

J. Energy Recovery Wheel

1. The rotating wheel heat exchanger shall be composed of a rotating cylinder in an insulated cassette frame complete with seals, drive motor and drive belt.

2. The total energy wheel shall be coated with silica gel desiccant permanently bonded by a patented and proprietary process without the use of binders or adhesives, which may degrade desiccant performance

3. The substrate shall be a lightweight polymer and will not degrade nor require additional coatings for applications in marine or coastal environments. Coated segments should be washable with detergent or alkaline coil cleaner and water. Desiccant will not dissolve nor deliquesce in the presence of water or high humidity.

4. As the wheel rotates between the ventilation and exhaust air stream it picks should pick up sensible and latent heat energy and release it under the colder air stream. The driving force behind the exchange is the difference in temperature between the opposing air streams which is also



called the thermal gradient.

5. A face and bypass damper shall be provided in parallel with the media for economizer and frost control.

K. Enthalpic Plate – Core heat exchanger (where called for)

1. Energy recovery shall be an integral part of unit from the manufacturer. No field assembly, ducting, or wiring shall be required with the energy recovery option.
2. Latent and sensible energy transfer shall be provided through a flat-plate heat exchanger core, with a minimum total energy recovery effectiveness of 50% tested and certified to AHRI 1060-2005. No additional moving parts or drive mechanisms shall be required to enable energy recovery.
3. The heat exchanger frame shall be constructed with extruded 6063 aluminum rails.
4. The heat exchanger core shall be constructed of a polymer membrane with a 0.5% exhaust air transfer ratio (EATR) tested and certified to AHRI 1060-2005.
5. The core shall be capable of handling regular contact with liquid water from either condensation or periodic cleaning while maintaining both the energy recovery effectiveness and 0.5% EATR rating.
6. The core shall be mold and bacteria resistance tested to ISO 846a and 846c with a rating of 0 for both.
7. The core shall be freeze tolerance tested to 40 freeze thaw cycles from -4°F to +68°F while maintaining both the energy recovery effectiveness and 0.5% EATR rating.
8. The heat exchanger core shall comply with UL 723 and have a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke index of 50 or less.
9. Stainless steel drain pans shall be provided under entire heat exchanger to catch and drain condensation or water used in periodic cleaning.
10. Energy recovery media shall be accessible through a 2" thick, foam-injected, double-wall, hinged access door with quarter-turn latches.
11. A face and bypass damper shall be provided in parallel with the media for economizer and frost control.

L. EVAPORATOR CONDENSOR AND REHEAT COILS

1. Evaporator coils shall be constructed of copper tubes mechanically bonded to a configured aluminum plate fin. For units greater than 30 nominal tons cooling, the hot gas reheat coils must be aluminum fin, mechanically bonded to copper tubing. For units 30 tons or less, hot gas reheat coil shall have a series of flat tubes containing a series of multiple, parallel flow microchannels layered between the refrigerant manifolds. Coil construction shall consist of aluminum alloys for fins, tubes, and manifolds in combination with a corrosion-resistant coating.

2. Coils shall be leak tested at the factory to ensure pressure integrity. The evaporator coil, reheat coil and condenser coil shall be leak tested to 500 psig and pressure tested to 500 psig.
  3. The condenser coil shall have a fin designed for ease of cleaning.
  4. Evaporator coil shall have six interlaced rows for superior sensible and latent cooling.
  5. Reheat coil shall be fully integrated into the supply air and fan system and capable of delivering design supply air temperature.
  6. To prevent re-evaporation of condensate from evaporator coil, the evaporator coil face and the hot gas reheat coil face shall be separated a minimum of six inches.
- M. Pressure test the assembled unit at the factory or in the field. Test pressure shall be five (5) inches W.G. positive on the fan discharge and five (5) inches W.G. negative on the fan suction side. Allowable total leakage shall be 1% of the fan scheduled air flow. Panel deflection shall be limited to 1/200th of the span. Provide certified factory test results or field test results to the engineer for record.
- N. Trane, RenewAire, Valent, JCI or approved equal.

3.00 EXECUTION:

3.01 INSTALLATION:

- A. Units shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. See Details for mounting instructions and accessories.
- C. Manufacturer shall provide field start-up of all units.

END OF SECTION

1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Scope

- A. Provisions of this Section shall apply to all HVAC work.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Fans, Centrifugal – General

- A. Fan Rating: Certified in accordance with AMCA Standard 210 for capacity and sound. Provide fans of class required for service based on static pressures 20% greater than those scheduled. All fans are to be rated for continuous duty.
- B. Provide forward curved blade, radial blade, backward curved blade or air foil blade fans statically and dynamically balanced with L (10) 80,000 hour rated self-aligning, grease lubricated ball or roller bearings rigidly supported by bearing stands.
- C. For all fans furnish adjustable motor bases or rails.
- D. Size V-belt drives for 50% overload, and provide adjustable pitch motor pulleys for drives of 15 BHP and smaller.
- E. For all fans outside casings provide belt and drive guards.
- F. Provide scroll access doors with quick-operating latches for all exhaust fans.
- G. Equip all fans with flanged outlets and casing drains.
- H. Sound power levels shall not exceed those shown.
- I. Size fan motors to provide at least 5% drive loss, with motor service factors not exceeding 1.0. Provide premium efficiency motors as specified under "MOTORS".
- J. Vibration isolators: See "MATERIALS AND METHODS" Section 15050.

2.2 FANS, CENTRIFUGAL IN-LINE:

- A. AMCA approved air and sound rated direct (or) belt driven fans (as scheduled) complete with V-belt drive sized for 50% overload, self aligning grease lubricated ball bearings, adjustable pitch motor pulleys, adjustable motor bases and statically and dynamically balanced backward curved blade wheels, all enclosed in a galvanized steel housing with inlet bell and outlet duct collars. (Fan wheel and motor assembly shall be hinged for access.)
- B. Fans shall be manufactured by Greenheck, Cook, Acme, Twin City or approved equal.

2.3 FANS, CENTRIFUGAL CEILING EXHAUST:

- A. AMCA rated direct drive centrifugal fans for ceiling mounting, complete with removable ceiling grille, disconnect, fan mounted solid state speed control, flexible

duct connection, integral backdraft damper and discharge outlet.

- B. Fans shall be manufactured by Greenheck, Cook, Acme, Twin City, or approved equal.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 Installation

- A. Fans shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. See details for mounting instructions and accessories.

END OF SECTION

1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Scope

- A. Include Section 15010, "GENERAL PROVISIONS - HVAC", with this section.
- B. Provisions of this Section shall apply to all HVAC work.

1.2 Shop Drawings

- A. Ductwork shop drawings shall include details of duct constructions: seams, joints, gauges, reinforcing and hanger details for each pressure class and size range together with details of turning vanes, branch connections, dampers and access doors and elevations of all ductwork.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Ductwork – General

- A. Unless otherwise shown or specified construct ducts of galvanized steel sheet metal using gauges and recommended details as contained in the current edition of the SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards. Ductwork shall include supply air, exhaust air, return air, and outdoor air ducts, together with all necessary fittings, splitters, dampers, quadrants, flexible connections, sleeves, hangers, support, braces, etc. Hang and install ducts in a neat and workmanlike manner from structural members (not roof deck) with adequate bracing and cross bracing to prevent breathing, rattling, and vibration.
- B. No flexible ductwork on return, exhaust or outside air.
- C. Install Duro-Dyne locking quadrants and Duro-Dyne end bearings on all splitters and manual volume dampers located above accessible ceiling and Young #1 regulator, C.P., and Duro-Dyne end bearings elsewhere.
- D. Duct dimensions shown are net inside dimension and do not include insulation thickness.
- E. Duct Turns: Wherever possible, duct turns shall have a centerline radius equal to 1.5 times the duct width in the plane of the turn. Vane other duct turns to provide a dynamic loss co-efficient ("C") not greater than 0.2. No reducing ells or tees to be used.
- F. Duct Sealing: Seal duct seams and joints as noted below. Seal entire circumference of all branch duct connections, tapping collars and spin-ins. Seal ducts using mastic sealant equal to United Duct Sealer.
  - 1. Class "A" Seal: Seal all joints and seams and leak test as specified.
  - 2. Class "B" Seal: Seal entire circumference of all transverse joints, seal all longitudinal joints.
  - 3. Class "C" Seal: Seal entire circumference of all transverse joints.
  - 4. Class "D" Seal: Seal corner of transverse joints.

2.2 Ductwork - Low Pressure

- A. Ductwork: Low Pressure, Pressure and Seal Class shall include: all supply, return, exhaust and outside air ductwork, 2" pressure class, "B" seal.
- B. Construct ducts in accordance with SMACNA Duct Construction Standards for pressure and seal classes noted.

2.3 Ductwork Located Outdoors:

- A. Construct ducts served by exhaust fans as specified for respective exhaust ducts, above. Seal all seams weather tight using glass cloth tape and carbolastic or United Duct Sealer.

2.4 Ductwork, Plenum Casing:

- A. Include all plenum chambers and enclosures for air passage between air intakes, filters, heating and cooling coils and fans. Unless otherwise shown the floors under casings shall serve as the bottom and sides and tops shall be constructed of sheet metal. Provide concrete pads (4" min. height) under all casings. Any passage definitely shown above and clear of floor shall not be classed as a casing and shall be constructed as specified for ducts.
- B. Construct all exterior walls of casings, partitions between decks and fan discharge partitions of 4" thick factory furnished insulated panels having 20 gauge galvanized steel outer skin, 20 gauge perforated galvanized steel inner skin, fiberglass insulation (flame spread 10 20, fuel contributed 10 15, smoke developed 0 20) (and 0.002" thick mylar film between insulation and perforations). Assemble casing panels with joining members to provide structural rigidity to 10" WG pressure differential. Reinforce and support panels as recommended by panel manufacturer. Minimum "U" value (still air both sides) 0.06 Btu/hr sq. ft. F. Minimum NRC 0.95, minimum STC 37. Casing joints and seams shall be air tight under 8" WG pressure and casing joints will be fully insulated to prevent sweating.
- C. Construct portions of casings other than the panels specified above of 18 gauge galvanized steel with standing seams 42" on center. Locate 2" standing seams on casing perpendicular to direction of air flow. Seal seams with United Duct Sealer and fastened with bolts or tinnier's rivets 6" O.C., reinforce casings with members sized and spaced as follows:  $I = 3 \times SP \times C \times L/1000 \times L/1000 \times L/1000$ . Where I = moment of inertia of section, inches fourth, SP= static pressure, ins. WG, C = member spacing inches, L = member length, inches.
- D. Brace casings diagonally with 2 X 2 X 3/16 angles and stay as required.
- E. Calk casing floor angles to pads and secure with expansion bolts 12" O.C.
- F. Construct drain pans inside with double construction with insulation between pans and 16 gauge type 304 stainless steel inner pan with welded joints.
- G. Install coil racks of galvanized angle iron inside casings to permit removing coils without dismantling casings. Equip cooling coils with intermediate drip troughs and eliminators as shown. Pipe drip troughs to main drain pans.
- H. Provide access doors where shown and/or required for access to equipment and/or

controls. Construct doors with 1" insulation between two (2) sheets 24 gauge galvanized steel. Set doors in frames arranged so that doors will be flush with exterior of casing. Equip each door with at least two (2) hinges and two (2) sets of double acting latches. Latches shall be made from non ferrous metal, with a lever handle on the outside and a lever handle on the inside of the casing. Lever handle on the outside of the casing shall cam over a door pull with a stop. Latches shall be Vent Fabrics #310 Ventlok latch, or equal. Doors shall be reinforced to prevent wracking and warping. Provide 3" butt hinges and weld to doors and to door frames.

## 2.5 Flexible Ducts

- A. Flexible duct connectors: A two (2) element spiral construction composed of galvanized steel supporting spiral and coated woven textile fabric with metal or mineral base, UL listed as Class I Air Duct and Connector (UL 181) minimum R=6.0.
- B. Flexible connectors shall not exceed 5 feet in length.
- C. Make connections between flexible ducts and other equipment using galvanized steel draw bands with plated screws and buckles and United Duct seal for high and medium pressure ducts and nylon draw bands for low pressure ducts.
- D. Factory insulate cold flexible ducts using insulation equivalent to that specified for cold ducts.
- E. Flexible ducts: Thermoflex M-KC, Wiremold 57K, Technaflex 57K, or Flexmaster Type 4M. Submit sample for approval of any other manufacturer.

## 3.0 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 Installation

- A. Ductwork shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. See details for mounting instructions and accessories.

END OF SECTION





1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Scope

- A. Provisions of this Section shall apply to all HVAC work.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Sheet Metal Specialties

- A. Make rectangular take-offs in low pressure supply, return and exhaust ducts using 45 degrees entry tap (SMACNA Duct Construction Standards Figure #2-8) with manual damper with end bearings and locking quadrant in branch. End bearings and quadrants shall have air tight duct connections and shaft seals: Ruskin, Duro-Dyne, or approved equal.
- B. Manual balancing dampers: Comply with SMACNA Duct Construction Standards, Figure 2-14 and 2-15. Equip all dampers with locking quadrants and end bearings. End bearings and quadrants shall have air tight duct connections and shaft seal, Ruskin, Duro-Dyne, or approved equal.
- C. When damper quadrants are located other than above lay-in ceilings.
1. Provide all necessary accessories for remote control of balancing dampers without requiring access doors. Substitute Young #1 regulators and an additional end bearing or Ventlock #688 regulators and an additional end bearing for the quadrant (regulators shall be chrome plated), or, Architect/Engineer option.
  2. Provide access door for access to the quadrant (See sub-section 2.04 "ACCESS DOORS", hereinafter).
- D. Provide "Stand-Offs" (hat sections) for damper quadrants, controls, etc., on externally insulated ducts.
- E. Branch duct connections for connecting round low pressure branches to rectangular low pressure trunks: spin-in fittings with integral dampers with end bearings, stand-off and beaded collars. Seal Class of components penetrating duct shall be consistent with duct pressure class. Spin-in shall be Flexmaster – FLD or equal. Submit sample for approval of other manufacturers for prior approval.

2.2 Fire Dampers

- A. Install UL labeled 1-1/2 hour fire dampers wherever sheet metal ducts pass through chase walls, floors, outside fire chases, and elsewhere as shown or required by local Code. Install dampers per SMACNA "Fire Damper Guide" and UL 555.
1. Fire dampers shall be Type "B" "Venation Blind" dampers. Unless otherwise shown folded blades shall not obstruct duct. Dampers in floors shall be spring loaded.
  2. Provide factory fabricated steel integral wall sleeve 3" longer than wall

thickness for each fire damper and install sleeve using bolts and angles as detailed in Figure #1 of SMACNA "Fire Damper Guide".

3. Provide rectangular, round and/or flat-oval collars. See Drawings for sizes and locations.
  4. For aluminum ductwork provide stainless steel fire dampers.
- B. Install access door in low pressure ducts at each fire damper. Install wall or ceiling access door for access to fire dampers not accessible through lift-out ceilings. See sub-section 2.4 "ACCESS DOORS", below.
- C. Install three (3) hour fire dampers where sheet metal ducts pierce 4 hour fire walls. Three (3) hour fire damper shall consist of a three (3) hour UL labeled fire door pivoted in a 3" X 3" X 1/4" angle frame bolted through wall. Equip door frame with angle flange and latch. Install Fire Door as shown in Figure 25 and 26 of SMACNA "Fire Damper Guide".

#### 2.3 Automatic Dampers

- A. Factory fabricated dampers with extruded aluminum airfoil blades and frame with full gasket stops for blades ends. Equip blades with air tight plastic or butyl rubber seals and bronze or nylon bearings. Provide jamb seals. Damper widths from 12" to 60" wide shall not leak any greater than 8 cfm sq. ft. at 4" w.g. and a maximum of 3 CFM sq. ft. at 1" w.g. Ruskin Model CD50 or approved equal.
- B. Automatic dampers located near fan outlets or in ducts having maximum velocities exceeding 1500 FPM shall have extruded aluminum air-foil blades and all linkages shall be located outside of airstream. Such dampers shall have leakage rates not exceeding 1% maximum design flow at 4" WG pressure differential.

#### 2.4 Access Doors

- A. Access doors in plenum casings are specified under "DUCTWORK - PLENUM CASINGS".
- B. Access doors in low pressure ducts: Galvanized steel frame with gasket permanently secured to duct with a removable gasket access port held in place with screw driver or thumb operated latches. Door in insulated ducts: Double thickness with insulation. Doors in non-insulated ducts: A single thickness. Weld door frames to kitchen exhaust ducts. Size doors to permit removal of equipment or maintenance. Minimum size 12" X 12".
- C. Mark access points in lift-out ceilings with brass paper brads. Bend points of brads over top of ceiling.

#### 2.5 Smoke Detectors

- A. Smoke detectors will be furnished and wired under Electrical Work but shall be installed in ducts under this Section.
- B. Install access door in duct at each smoke detector. (See sub-section 2.4 "Access Doors").

#### 2.6 Flexible Duct Connections

- A. Install Neoprene coated glass cloth flexible connections at all duct connections to all fans and AC Units.
- B. Install flexible connections in all ducts at building expansion joints.

2.7 Electrical Grounding

- A. Ground all fans.
- B. Install braided copper jumpers around all flexible connections, taking care that jumpers do not bind flexes.

2.8 Air Flow Measuring Stations (Afms):

- A. Thermal dispersion airflow measurement station. Shall be provided with insertion type mounting style, 304 stainless steel mounting bracket, aluminum alloy tube with individual sensors and BMS connectivity. Using recommended placement guidelines for the specified probe sensor density, measurement accuracy of 3% shall be provided.
- B. Air flow measurement stations shall be Ebtron Advantage series or approved equal.
- C. Install an access door in duct immediately upstream from each airflow measuring station.

2.9 INTAKE AND RELIEF HOOD:

- A. Gravity roof ventilators shall be constructed of heavy gauge aluminum as specified.
- B. Hoods shall be constructed of precision formed, arched panels with interlocking seams.
- C. Bases shall be constructed so that the curb cap is 8" larger than the throat size. Provide 12" bases.
- D. Hood support members shall be constructed of galvanized steel and fastened so that the hood can be either removed completely from the base or hinged open.
- E. Birdscreens constructed of 1/2" galvanized steel mesh shall be mounted horizontally across the intake/discharge area of the hood.
- F. Intake units with throat widths through 42" shall ship assembled when throat lengths do not exceed 84". Relief units with throat widths through 48" shall ship assembled when throat lengths do not exceed 96".
- G. Units shall be factory painted to match roof.
- H. Gravity hoods shall be Fabra Hood Model FHI for intake or Model FHR for relief (as specified) as manufactured by Greenheck, Cook or equal.

2.10 GRAVITY ROOF VENTILATORS:

- A. Factory fabricated spun aluminum ventilator with integral curb cap and birdscreen. Equip hood with galvanized steel curb with wood nailer. Minimum material gauges, hood 20 gauge, base 18 gauge, curb 18 gauge.

- B. Gravity Roof Ventilators shall be manufactured by Greenheck, Cook, or approved equal.

### 3.0 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 Installation

- A. Duct shall be installed in accordance with SMACNA Standards.
- B. Equipment shall be installed in accordance with manufacturers recommendations.
- C. See details for mounting instructions and accessories.

END OF SECTION

1.0 - GENERAL

1.1 Scope

- A. Include section 15010 "GENERAL PROVISIONS" with this section.
- B. Provisions of this Section shall apply to all HVAC work.

2.0 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Grilles, Registers and Diffusers

- A. General: Air devices may be Titus, Price, Nailor, Krueger or approved equal. Where fire dampers are required at grilles, provide steel grilles, not aluminum.
- B. Supply Registers (SR): Adjustable vertical deflection, adjustable horizontal deflection, removable core, opposed blade damper and multi-blade scoop and baked aluminum enamel finish. Titus "1700".
- C. Wall Return Grilles (WRG): Horizontal bars fixed at about 15° angle, close spacing and plaster frames. Baked aluminum, enamel finish. Titus "1700".
- D. Bar Return Grille (BRG): All steel, heavy duty, 16 gauge border, 14 gauge blades, 1/2" spacing, 38° deflection. Provide all frames. Titus "33R". All BRG's are to appear as a one piece grille. BRG's are to be painted as selected by architect. Submit color chart to architect.
- E. Ceiling Return Grilles (R), Ceiling Exhaust Grilles (E) and Transfer Air Grilles (T): All aluminum, 1/2" X 1/2" X 1/2" cube core and plaster frames as needed. Off-white baked enamel finish. Provide 24 x 24 panel so grille will fit in 24 x 24 ceiling grid. Titus "50F".
- F. Architectural Supply Diffuser (S): The diffuser shall have a heavy gauge aluminum face panel, which shall be a one piece assembly, removable by means of four positive locking posts. The exposed surface of the face panel shall be smooth, flat, and free of visible fasteners. The face panel shall project 1/4" below the outside border of the diffuser back pan. The back of the face panel shall have an aerodynamically shaped, rolled edge to ensure a tight horizontal discharge pattern. The back pan shall be one piece precision die-stamped and shall include an integrally drawn inlet. The diffuser back pan shall be constructed of heavy gauge aluminum. The finish shall be #26 white. The pencil hardness must be HB to H. Directional blow clips shall be provided to restrict the discharge air in certain directions. The manufacturer shall provide published performance data for the square panel diffuser. The diffuser shall be tested in accordance with ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 70-1991. Diffuser shall be Titus "OMNI-AA".
- G. Round Nozzle Diffusers (RND): Nozzle diffusers, gel coat (submit color to architect), with ceiling back up plate and locknut, Sehio model PK or approved equal.

2.2 Weather Louvers

- A. Louvers shall be 6" thick extruded aluminum louvers with 12 gauge blades with drainable head frame, drainable blades, water stop, and with angled sill. 57% F.A.

minimum. Equip with 1/2" mesh aluminum birdscreen on inside of louver.  
Finishes: Kynar. Submit color sample to Architect (20 year warranty on finish).  
Ruskin ELF6375DX, Louvers & Dampers, Greenheck, Airolite, or approved equal.

B. Storm Shelter Louvers:

1. The grilles must be furnished and include the following:
  - a. FEMA 361 Standards for 200 + mph wind speed and large missile impact resistance.
2. Performance Requirements: Missile impact protective grille with a nominal 2 x 4 of not less than 15 lbs. in weight at a velocity of not less than 155 ft./sec. Grille must withstand impacts without visible damage and must prevent missiles from penetrating through.
3. Design Wind Load: Incorporate structural supports and mullions required to withstand design wind load of  $\pm 150$  PSF.
4. Warranty: Provide written warranty to the owner that all products will be free of defective materials or workmanship for a period of one year from date of installation.
5. The grilles and related materials herein specified and indicated on the drawings shall be as manufactured by: Ruskin, XP500 Protective Impact Grille, or approved equal.
6. Grille Fabrication:
  - a. Frame:
    1. Material: Hot rolled steel.
    2. Wall Thickness: .25 inch, nominal.
    3. Depth: 8 inches.
  - b. Blades:
    1. Style: Sightproof, horizontally mounted.
    2. Material: Hot rolled steel.
    3. Wall Thickness: .25 inch, nominal.
    4. Centers: 2.125 inches, nominal.
7. Assembly: Factory assemble grille components.
8. Maximum assembly size: 80" wide x 60" tall or 60" wide x 80" tall.
9. Finishes:
  - a. General: Comply with NAAMM "Metal Finishes Manual" for finish designations and application recommendations, except as otherwise indicated. Apply finishes in factory. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces prior to shipment. Remove scratches and blemishes from exposed surfaces that will be visible after completing finishing process. Provide color as indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as selected by architect.
  - b. Fluorocarbon Coating:
    1. Grilles to be finished with an inhibitive thermo-cured primer, 0.2 mil

minimum dry film thickness, and a thermo cured fluorocarbon coating containing "Kynar 500" resin, 1.0 mil minimum dry film thickness.

2. All material shall be thoroughly cleaned and given a pre treatment before application of the Kynar/Hylar coating. The coating shall receive a bake cycle of 17 minutes at 450°F. All finishing procedures shall be one continuous operation in the plant of the manufacturer.
- c. Wind Drive Rain Resistant Louvers: Extruded aluminum, wind driven rain resistant, stationary louvers with horizontally mounted sight proof blades.

1. References:

- A. AAMA 605.2 - High Performance Organic Coatings on architectural Extrusions and Panels.
- B. AMCA 500-L - Test Methods for Louvers.
- C. AMCA 511 - Certified Ratings Program for Air Control Devices.

2. Submittals:

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data including performance data.

3. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings indicating materials, construction, dimensions, accessories, and installation details.

4. Delivery, Storage and Handling:

- A. Delivery: Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened containers and packaging, with labels clearly indicating manufacturer and material.
- B. Storage: Store materials in a dry area indoors, protected from damage and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Handling: Protect materials and finishes during handling and installation to prevent damage.

5. Manufacturer:

- A. Ruskin. Louvers & Dampers, Greenheck, Airolite, or approved equal.

6. Extruded Aluminum Stationary Louvers:

- A. Fabrication: Ruskin Model #EME520DD.
- B. Frame:

1. Material: Extruded aluminum, Alloy 6063-T5.
2. Wall Thickness: 0.081 inch, nominal.
3. Depth: 5 inches.

- C. Blades:

1. Style: Sightproof, double drainable, horizontally mounted.
2. Material: Extruded aluminum, Alloy 6063-T5.

3. Wall Thickness: 0.081 inch, nominal.
4. Centers: 2 inches, nominal.

D. Bird Screen:

1. Material: Aluminum, 3/4 inch x 0.051 inch, expanded, flattened.
2. Frame: Removable, rewireable.
3. Assembly: Factory assembled louver components.

E. Performance Data:

1. Based on testing 48 inch x 48 inch size unit in accordance with AMCA 500-L.
2. Free Area: 44 percent, nominal.
3. Free Area Size: 6.99 square feet.
4. Maximum Recommended Air Flow Thru Free Area: 1,139 fpm.
5. Maximum Pressure Drop (at 1,139 feet per minute): 0.21 inches w.g.

F. Wind Driven Water Penetration Performance:

1. Based on testing 39 inch x 39 inch core area, 41 inch x 44 inch nominal size unit in accordance with AMCA 500-L.
2. Wind Velocity: 29 mph.
3. Rainfall Rate: 3 inches/hour.
4. Air Volume: 6,207 cfm.
5. Core Velocity: 588 fpm.
6. Free Area Velocity: 1,139 feet per minute.
7. Water Resistance Effectiveness: 99.3% (AMCA Class A).
8. Discharge Loss Classification (Intake Test): Class 2 (.3 to .399).

7. Factory Finish:

A. Kynar 500 Fluoropolymer Coating:

1. Conform to AAMA 605.2.
2. Apply coating following cleaning and pretreatment.
3. Cleaning: AA-C12C42R1X.
4. Dry louvers before final finish application.
5. Total Dry Film Thickness: Approximately 1.2 mils, when baked at 450° F for 10 minutes.

8. Color: Color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

3.00 EXECUTION:

3.1 INSTALLATION:

- A. Equipment shall be installed in accordance with SMACNA Standards and manufacturer's recommendations.



- B. See details for mounting instructions and accessories.
- C. Secure louver to structure to comply with FEMA 361 and the following:

END OF SECTION



FILTERS – HVAC - SECTION 15880

1.00 GENERAL:

1.01 SCOPE:

- A. Provisions of this section apply to all HVAC work.

2.00 PRODUCTS:

2.01 FILTERS - AIR:

- A. 30% Filters, 1" or 2" Thick (Maximum allowed by MFR): Throwaway deep pleated filters, maximum face velocity 350 fpm. Maximum initial pressure drop 0.1" WG, UL Class 1, 30% efficiency per ASHRAE Test Standard 52-76, minimum ratio of media area to face area 4.4:1. Turn system over to Owner with clean filters and provide one (1) set of spare filters. Farr 30/30 or approved equal.

3.00 EXECUTION:

3.01 INSTALLATION:

- A. Filters shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. See details for mounting instructions and accessories.

END OF SECTION



PART 1 - GENERAL:

1.01 SCOPE:

- A. Include Section 15010 "GENERAL PROVISIONS", with this Section.
- B. Provisions of this Section shall apply to all HVAC work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 CONTROL SYSTEMS:

- A. Furnish and install complete and ready for operation with control sequences specified on drawings.
- B. Products of a manufacturer maintaining complete service and parts facilities in Alabama continuously for the last three (3) years: Trane, Automated Logic , Johnson Controls, or approved equal.
- C. Control equipment, except for items comprising an integral part of the water or refrigeration piping, shall be installed by trained mechanics employed by the Control Manufacturer.
- D. Include the services of a full time control technician for calibrating and adjusting controls for the first 3 working days after Owner has occupied building.
- E. Before installation, submit for approval five (5) copies of complete power and control wiring and piping diagrams. Hang a photostatic copy of the approved diagram, framed behind glass, in each equipment room. Provide one (1) set of reproducible sepia of "As-Built" control diagrams at completion of project for the Owner's use.
- F. Provide permanent nameplates for control switches and motor starters. Nameplates: engraved laminated plastic with letters legible under normal operating conditions. (White on black).
- G. Permanently identify control devices other than room thermostats, so they may be identified on control diagrams. Provide engraved plastic nameplates for items mounted outside of or on faces of panels. Mark other instruments with indelible ink.

2.02 CONTROL WIRING:

- A. Include control and interlock wiring and power wiring for control panel in this Section. Install in conduit in accordance with provisions of Electrical Work where exposed, concealed in walls or above ceilings other than lay-in type. Provide plenum rated cable above lay-in ceilings (for plenum or non-plenum).
- B. Waterproof and firestop all conduit floor penetrations. Firestop conduit penetrations of fire rated walls partitions.
- C. Wire all devices individually to terminal strips in control panels.
- D. Furnish necessary relays and auxiliary contactors and other accessories required. Provide interlock relays per NEC. Coordinate start-stop stations, auxiliary contacts, etc.,

with supplier of Starters, Variable Frequency Drive (VFD) and Motors Control Centers specified in Electrical Work.

2.03 CONTROL DEVICES:

- A. Room Thermostats: Room Thermostats: (Provide seven (7) day occupied/unoccupied, 24 hour, multi-stage programmable thermostats, with 3-hour override, and battery back-up to meet JCBE standards. Thermostats to be provided with local control and limited range of local. Thermostat covers: lockable high impact plastic. Mount room thermostats with tops 4 feet above floors. Thermostats located in Gymnasiums shall have metal impact resistant ventilated covers, painted to match the wall.
- B. Remote Bulb Thermostats (DDC) and Temperature Transmitters (DDC): Unless otherwise shown use averaging elements not less than 12 feet long for duct or casing cross sections for each 24 square feet of face area.
- C. Thermometers: Pipe line thermometers are specified in another Section. Install digital readout thermometers in ducts where shown on control diagrams, providing averaging bulbs where shown and/or required.
- D. Freezestats: Manual reset, pneumatic not permitted. Locate freezestat bulbs between preheat and chilled water coils in units with chilled water coils and downstream from DX coils in units with DX coils. Provide coverage for each 3' X 3' coil face area section.
- E. Firestats: Single pole double throw, electric, manual reset, pneumatic not permitted. Firestats shown to be connected to the fire alarm system: compatible with fire alarm system, furnished and installed under Controls, wired under Electrical Work. Firestats to be installed in all fans where smoke detectors are not furnished.
- F. Differential Pressure Gauge / Switch:  
Provide for proof of follow for all chillers, boilers, heat exchangers, etc. Pressure gauge / switch to be diaphragm type, 0-5 or 0-15 psid as required by system, minimum burst pressure 7000 psig, high temperature construction gauge / switch,  $\pm 2\%$  accuracy, CSA certified, 1/4" NPT ports, port orientation - Back, switch setting field adjustable, primary wetted parts - 316 s/s, secondary wetted parts 302 s/s and ceramic, dial size - 4.5", dial case to be flanged to mount to unistrut frame, casing to be made for outdoor / indoor use, provide analog out signal for the tin - in to BMCS. Differential pressure gauge / switch manufacturer shall be Orange Research Inc. or approved equal.
- G. Valves: See **Section 15050 "MATERIALS AND METHODS"**.
- H. Program Clocks / Timers:  
Provide digital time clock with 365 day holiday capabilities with 24 single dates, 99 setpoints, separate scheduling for each day of the week, AM/PM format, one minute programming resolution, portable memory module, optional programmer for integration into a Windows based PC for program duplication and modifications, LCD display, daylight savings or standard time, automatic leap year correction, permanent schedule retention, 100 hours of backup, manual override, Nema 3 indoor/outdoor enclosure. Clock/Timer to be Tork or approved equal.
- I. Valve and Damper Operators: Of sufficient power to close/open valves and dampers under operating conditions. Electric valve and damper motors shall have oil immersed gear trains and spring return to normal position. Valves and damper operators to have DDC Controls.
- J. Wells: Install pipe line mounted control and indicating devices in stainless steel or brass

thermometer wells.

- K. Capillary Supports: Securely support all duct-mounted and casing- mounting thermostat capillaries using factory fabricated copper bulb supports.
- L. Provide stand-offs for control devices mounted on externally insulated ducts and equipment.
- M. Anchor all items mounted on gypsum board (dry-wall) using toggle bolts or moly bolts, not expansion shields.
- N. Air flow Measuring Station (AFMS): Provide AFMS with probe, transmitter and cable. Unit to average velocity profile thru multiple probes and provide average readout in CFM on transmitters LED screen. Provide 0-10VDC and 4-20MA output (field selectable) to BMCS. Sensor accuracy to be 2%, installed accuracy to be 3%. ARMS to be Ebtron model GTX116 or equal.

#### 2.04 CONTROL POWER:

- A. Direct Digital Control (DDC). All 120 Volt wiring shall be the responsibility of the Control Sub-Contractor from circuit furnished under Electrical Section. Coordinate circuit locations with General and Electrical Contractors.
- B. Power wiring to all automatic and smoke dampers shall be included under this section.
- C. Wiring and relays between light and fans for interlock shall be included under this section.

#### 2.05 CONTROL PANELS:

- A. Local Control Panels: Construct of galvanized steel with baked enamel finish or aluminum-plywood-aluminum fronts and backs and extruded tops, bottoms, and ends. All panels shall have piano hinges and key locking latches (key panels alike). Permanently label instruments located in panels consistent with labeling on control diagram. Cement photostat of approved diagram inside each panel cover. (Include Local-Remote switching for control point adjusters on face of each panel).

#### 2.06 INTERFACES WITH BUILDING MANAGEMENT CONTROL SYSTEM (BMCS):

- A. Relays actuated by BMCS will be mounted in BMCS Panels located in Fan Rooms, Equipment Rooms, etc.
- B. Wiring from local panels (and Engineer panels) to BMCS panels is included in this Section.
- C. Control point adjusters actuated by BMCS system will be located in BMCS Panels.
- D. Fire Control Panels: Where required will be furnished and installed under Electrical Work. Connections between Fire Control Panel and Fan Starters, damper air solenoids, etc. shall be included under Controls (See Section 15901 "BUILDING MANAGEMENT CONTROL SYSTEM (BMCS)").
- E. Coordinate all Carbon Monoxide sensor locations with the fire alarm contractor.

#### 2.07 CONTROL SEQUENCES:

- A. As indicated on drawings.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 INSTALLATION:

- A. Control diagrams on drawings and/or Control Sequences are intended to indicate, in general, control arrangements. Provide all instruments, relays, operators, switches, etc. required to accomplish control sequences whether or not such devices are actually shown.

END OF SECTION



**NEW JROTC FACILITY FOR  
PLEASANT GROVE HIGH SCHOOL  
(#21-66)**

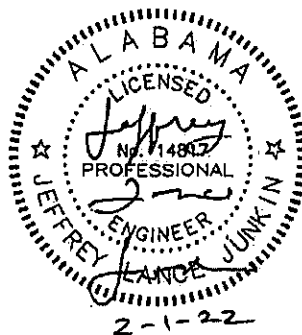
**PROJECT NO. 2205**

**FEBRUARY 2022**

**STEWART ENGINEERING, INC.  
ELECTRICAL CONSULTANTS**

**PHONE (256) 237-0891**

**ANNISTON, ALABAMA 36202**





## ELECTRICAL - SECTION 16000

### 1.0 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 Related Documents

The general provisions of the contract, including General Conditions and General Requirements, apply to the work specified in this section.

#### 1.2 Description of Work

Furnish all labor and materials required to complete the electrical work indicated on drawings or herein specified. Major work included in this section shall be:

- A. Arrange with local utility companies for providing such electrical and electronic services as indicated or herein specified. Pay to utility companies any charges associated with providing these services.
- B. Remove or relocate all electrical or electronic services located on or crossing through the project property, either above or below grade, which would obstruct the construction of the project or conflict in any manner with the completed project or any code pertaining thereto.
- C. Furnish and install complete electrical light and power system.
- D. Connect all meters, switchboards, panelboards, circuit breakers, power outlets, convenience outlets, switches and/or other equipment forming part of the system.
- E. Connect all electrical equipment mentioned in this section or noted on drawings, whether furnished by Electrical Contractor or by others.
- F. Procure and pay for permits and certificates as required by Local and State Ordinances and Fire Underwriters Certificate of Inspection.
- G. Complete alterations and additions to existing Fire Alarm System.
- H. Complete alterations and additions to existing Sound System.
- I. Furnish and install outlet boxes, faceplates, conduit raceways, cable, data outlet faceplates and jacks, patch panels, MDF frame, IDF cabinets and termination connectors and all other equipment needed for complete Telephone and Computer Cabling System.
- J. Visit the Site and determine conditions which affect this contract. Failure to do so will in no way relieve contractor of his responsibility under this contract.
- K. Submit to Architect a Certificate of Final Inspection from local Inspection Department along with assurance of completion of any items on this list.

### 1.3 Qualifications of Electrical Subcontractor

The Electrical Subcontractor shall meet the following qualifications:

- A. In business as an Electrical Contractor for two (2) years prior to the date of opening bids. Employees of a General Contractor will not be acceptable for work for this Section.
- B. Have completed at least five (5) projects with Electrical installations of character and scope comparable with this project. Contractor must supply list of projects, with the project shop drawings, for approval. If Contractor uses subcontractor for any portion of project, the name of this subcontractor must be submitted, along with similar project list, for approval.
- C. If Electrical Subcontractor proposes to use any other Subcontractor for any part of the work, these Subcontractors shall also meet the above qualifications before bid is acceptable.
- D. If Subcontractor's office is located more than 75 miles from jobsite, he shall submit the name of a service company with a 20-mile radius of the jobsite, for approval, who will be responsible through him for service required during the warranty period.

### 1.4 Drawings

- A. Drawings indicate diagrammatically extent, general character and approximate location of work. Where work is indicated but with minor details omitted, furnish and install it complete so as to perform its intended function. For Building Details and Mechanical Equipment follow Architectural, Structural and Mechanical Drawings and fit electrical work thereto.
- B. Take finish dimensions at Job in preference to scale dimension.
- C. Except as above noted, make no changes in or deviations from work as shown or specified except on written order of Architect.

### 1.5 Manufacturers Drawings and Data

- A. Within twenty (20) days after award of contract submit six (6) copies of Manufacturer's drawings to Architect for review of the following items. Partial submittals will be acceptable. Shop drawings of a specified item or system to be in one submittal:
  - 1. Lighting Fixtures
  - 2. Panelboards
  - 3. Sound System
  - 4. Disconnect Switches
  - 5. Fire Alarm System
  - 6. Computer Cabling System
  - 7. Lighting Control Panels
  - 8. Occupancy Sensors and Switches
  - 9. List of five (5) projects that Contractor (and any sub-contractor) has completed similar in size and capacity to this project
- B. Drawings of power equipment to contain exact details of device placement, phasing and numbering in elevation form. They shall also contain elevation view of front panelboard/switchboard outside cover.

- C. See Section 01350 – Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

#### 1.6 Progress of Work

- A. Cooperate with other crafts and schedule work as needed. Do not delay other trades. Maintain necessary competent mechanics and supervision to provide an orderly progression of the work.
- B. Be informed as to equipment furnished by other trades but not liable for added cost incurred by equipment substitutions made by others above wiring indicated on drawings.

#### 1.7 Insurance

- A. This Contractor to carry Workman's Compensation Insurance and Public Liability Insurance and save Owner free from damage from suits arising out of the performance of this contract.

#### 1.8 Protection of Persons and Property During Construction

- A. Take all precautions to provide safety and protection to persons and protection of materials and property as necessary, including protection from injury from rotating or moving equipment, tools, hot surfaces, holes, shafts, falling objects, electrical energy and all other potential hazards. Erect signs, barricades, warning lights, instruct workmen and others who may be subject to construction hazards.
- B. Protect items of equipment from stains, corrosion, scratches and any other damage or dirt, whether in storage at job site or installed. No damaged or dirty equipment, lenses or reflectors will be accepted.

#### 1.9 Service Entrance

- A. Main service shall be as shown on drawings. Verify with the local utility company that the location, arrangement, voltage, phase and connections to utility service as well as required metering equipment are coordinated with and in accordance with requirements of the local utility company. If their requirements are at variance with these drawings or specifications, the contract price shall include any additional cost necessary to meet those requirements without extra cost to the Owner after contract is entered into. Notify Architect of any changes required before proceeding with work.

#### 1.10 Cleaning Up

- A. During the progress of the work keep the Owner's premises in a neat and orderly condition, free from accumulation of debris resulting from this work and at completion of the work, remove all material, scrap, etc., not a part of this contract.

#### 1.11 Operating and Maintenance Instructions

- A. Turn over to Architect one set of marked "as built" drawings, one set of all equipment catalogs and maintenance data and one set of shop drawings on all equipment requiring same. Explain and demonstrate electrical systems to Owner's representative.

1.12 Guarantee

- A. Guarantee that all work executed under this section will be free from defects of workmanship and materials for a period of one year from date of final acceptance of this work. Promptly repair, replace or otherwise make good, any defect becoming apparent during this period, upon notification and at no charge to Owner.
- B. See Section 01910 – Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

1.13 Temporary Systems

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for the furnishing and installation of all equipment and materials necessary for providing temporary power required by all trades during construction. All temporary wiring shall be installed so as not to interfere with the new construction and shall be made in a safe and approved manner.
- B. It shall be the responsibility of the Electrical Contractor to visit the site prior to submitting bid and thoroughly review all existing conditions affecting the temporary system requirements.

2.0 PRODUCTS

2.1 Standard of Materials

- A. All materials shall be new and listed by the Underwriters' Laboratories as conforming to these standards.
- B. Material substitutions will be considered only when evidence of equality and suitability, satisfactory to the Architect, has been presented in writing, with samples, if requested by the Architect. All proposed substitutions shall be approved in writing at least five days prior to bid date.
- C. It shall be understood that the Architect has the authority and may reject any material or equipment not specified or approved, or showing defects of manufacturer or workmanship, before or after installation.

2.2 Conduits

- A. Rigid: To be mild steel piping, galvanized inside and outside, and conform to ASA Specification C80.180.1 and Underwriters' Laboratories Specifications. By Sprang, Republic, Wheatland, Triangle or Pittsburg.
- B. Intermediate Metal Conduit: Shall be hot dipped galvanized inside and outside, and manufactured in accordance with U.L. Standard #6 or #1242. By Allied or approved equal.
- C. E.M.T.: To be of high-grade steel electro-galvanized outside and lacquer or enamel coating inside and conform to ASA Specification C80.1 and Underwriters' Laboratories Specifications. By Sprang, Republic, Wheatland, Triangle or Pittsburg.
- D. PVC: To be of high impact PVC Schedule 40 and conform to Underwriters' Laboratories Standard UL-651. PVC to be used only where indicated on drawings. By Pittsburg, R. G. Sloane or Carlon.

### 2.3 Couplings and Connectors

- A. Rigid & IMC: By Raco, Efcor, Republic or Appleton.
- B. E.M.T.: All steel raintight type. Pressure indented type or cast metal will not be approved. All connectors to be insulated. By Appleton, Raco or Efcor.
- C. PVC: To be of high impact PVC Schedule 40. Joints to be made with PVC solvent cement as recommended by manufacturer. By Pittsburg, R.G. Sloane or Carlon.

### 2.4 Bushings

- A. All rigid bushings 1 1/4" and larger shall be the insulated grounding type. All other bushings shall be OZ. Mfg. Co., Type B or Efcor Type 55 insulated metallic type or by Sylvania.

### 2.5 Conduit Seals

- A. All conduit seals for wall, floor or ceiling penetrations shall be by 3M Company or approved equal.

### 2.6 Conduit Accessories

- A. Conduit clamps and supports by Efcor, Steel City or G. A. Tinnerman. Conduit fittings by Pyle-National, Crouse-Hinds and Appleton.

### 2.7 Building Wire

- A. Conductors shall have current carrying capacities as per N.E.C. and with 600-volt insulation THW #12 minimum. Conductors #3 and smaller to be copper. Conductors #2 and larger to be copper unless specifically indicated aluminum on drawings. Insulation for conductors to be N.E.C. Type THW for #3 and smaller. Insulation for conductors #2 and larger shown in cable specifications. By Phelps-Dodge, Rome, Simplex, General Cable, Okonite or Anaconda.

### 2.8 Cable

- A. Conductors for 0-600 volts shall have copper, current carrying capacities as per N.E.C. with cross-linked polyethylene insulation and thickness to IPCEA standards, and U.L. Standard #44. Rated for wet and dry locations. Type THW or THWN. By Phelps-Dodge, Rome, Simplex, General Cable, Okonite or Anaconda.

### 2.9 Fixture Wire

- A. Conductors for fixtures of 300 watts or less shall be #16 type TFN, for fixtures of more than 300 watts #14 type TFN shall be used. Conductors in channel of fluorescent fixtures shall be type THHN or RHH. Conductors shall be either Phelps-Dodge, Anaconda, Rome or General Cable.

### 2.10 Control and Signal System Wire

- A. Type TFF minimum size #16 copper and fully color coded. Conductors by Phelps-Dodge, Anaconda, Rome or General Cable.

2.11 Junction Boxes (thru 4-11/16")

- A. Sheet Metal: To be standard type with knockouts made of hot dipped galvanized steel by Steel City, Racor, Appleton or approved equal.
- B. Cast: To be type FS, FD, JB, GS or SEH as required for application.
- C. Junction and Pull Boxes (larger than 4-11/16"): To be cast aluminum for all below grade exterior use and where shown all other shall be oil tight, JIC boxes not less than 16 gauge. Hoffman type "CH" Boxes.

2.12 Gutters

- A. Up to and including 8" x 8" shall be a standard manufacturer's item as manufactured by Square D, ITE or B & C Company. Special gutters shall be made of code grade galvanized sheet steel with hinged covers having approved fastening devices. At each location shown for gutters, install a wood backboard not less than 3/4" thick, paint 2 coats of gray enamel, mount all equipment thereon. Conductors serving a gutter shall be extended without reduction in size for the entire length of the gutter. Tap-offs to the switches and other items serviced by the gutter shall be made with Penn-Union and Anderson compression connectors for aluminum conductors. Properly tape and insulate.

2.13 Outlet Boxes

- A. Standard type with knockouts made of hot dipped galvanized steel. Ceiling outlet boxes shall be 4" octagon 1-1/2" deep or larger if required due to number of wires.
- B. Boxes shall be provided with approved 3/8" fixture studs where required. Except when located in exposed concrete block switch and receptacles boxes shall be 4" square for single gang installation. Appropriate gang boxes shall be used for mounting ganged switches. Use Racor square block boxes for exposed block walls. By Steel City, Racor, National or Appleton.

2.14 Safety Switches

- A. Furnish and install safety switches as indicated on the drawings. Switch to be NEMA Heavy Duty type HD and Underwriters' Laboratories listed. Safety switches to be G.E., Cutler Hammer, Sylvania or Square D Heavy Duty type.
- B. Appropriately identify each safety switch by engraving micarta name plate.

2.15 Fuses

- A. Branch feeder fuses to be Bussman Manufacturing Company dual element and fusetrone. Main switch fuses to be Bussman Manufacturing Company dual Hi-Cap. Fuses to be used only where indicated on drawings. Equals by Littell Fuse accepted.

2.16 Manual Motor Switches

- A. Thermal overload protection to be provided for single phase motors by manual switches with overload units rated as required by specific motor to be served. Manufactured by Cutler Hammer or Square D with NEMA Type 1 enclosure.



## 2.17 Wiring Devices

- A. Switches shall be A.C. type as made by Hubbell, P & S, Sierra, Bryant, Slater or Arrow Hart as shown on the drawings.
- B. Receptacles shall be Hubbell, Bryant, P & S, Sierra, Slater or Arrow Hart as shown on the drawings.
- C. Wiring devices shall be gray with stainless steel plates, beige with brass, ivory with ivory bakelite, brown and brown bakelite.

## 2.18 Special Purpose Receptacles

- A. Special purpose receptacles (other than 120V, 20A) shall be complete with a matching cord grip cap of the same manufacturer. See plans for special receptacles required in various locations.

## 2.19 Floor Outlets

- A. Floor outlets shall be an adjustable, galvanized floor box finished with accessories as required for a complete installation for power or communications. Except as identified otherwise on the plans, use Type "A" outlets as follows:
  - 1. Type "A" Outlet: Power outlets shall be Hubbell #2429 floor box finished with #S-2425 brass plate, #SC-3091 service fitting, receptacle and required accessories. Signal outlets shall be the same except #SC-3090 service fitting.
  - 2. Type "B" Outlet: Power outlets shall be Hubbell #2429 floor box finished with #S-3825 brass plate and complete with duplex receptacle and required accessories. Signal outlets shall be the same, less receptacle and with #S-2425 plate and #S-3086 nozzle furnished to the Owner.
  - 3. Type "C" Outlet: Power outlets shall be Hubbell #B-2529 floor box furnished with #S-3042 carpet flange and #S-3040 service fitting with duplex receptacle. Signal outlets shall be the same, except with #S-3041 service fitting.
- B. Where equipment is to be connected above floor level, delete service fitting and nipple or flex to connection from threaded brass floor plate.

## 2.20 Finishes

- A. All electrical items (device and telephone plates, junction, floor outlets, under-floor duct junctions, outlets, and other miscellaneous items) to match finish of building hardware in area installed. Unfinished areas with exposed conduit, shall have surface mounted boxes, gray switches and outlets, galvanized metal plates with beveled edges. All outlets to be gray with stainless steel plates.

## 2.21 Fixtures

- A. Fixtures shall be furnished as shown in fixture schedule on drawings. It shall be specifically the responsibility of this Contractor to verify exact type ceiling and recessing depth of all recessed fixtures, prior to any purchasing of fixtures. Stems shall be approved ball aligner type swivel 30 degrees from vertical and swivel below canopy. Paint stems

same color as fixture trim. Stems in unfinished areas to be unpainted conduit.

2.22 Ballasts

- A. Ballasts shall be (General Electric Maxi Miser II or approved equal by Jefferson, Universal or Advance) (electronic, rapid start, parallel wired with total harmonic distortion of less than 20%. Ballast must be approved by E.T.L. and have a noise level rating in accordance with I.E.S. recommendations. Use ballasts approved for the use in fire-rated ceilings. Provide fuse for each individual ballast. (Ballasts shall be by Advance, Motorola or Magnetek).

2.23 Lamps

- A. Furnish and install 125 volt inside frosted incandescent lamps of proper wattage for all outlets so designated on the drawings. Lamps to be G.E. Company, Sylvania, or Phillips.
- B. Furnish and install fluorescent, mercury vapor and quartz lamps of proper size and type as shown on drawings. Lamps to be G.E. Company, Sylvania or Phillips. (Fluorescent lamps shall be F32T8/SP35 with a minimum CRI of 75.)
- C. All lamps shall be installed new, immediately prior to final inspection, and shall not be used for construction purposes.

2.24 Guarantee and Warranty - Lamps

- A. The guarantee and warranty shall apply to lamps as follows:
  - 1. LED Fixtures: Per manufacturer's warranty period for LED driver.
- B. Guarantees shall begin from date of final acceptance.

2.25 Lighting and Receptacle Panelboards

- A. Furnish and install circuit breaker lighting panelboards as indicated in the panelboard schedule and where shown on the plans. Panelboards shall be equipped with thermal-magnetic molded case circuit breakers with frame and trip ratings as shown on the schedule.
- B. Circuit breakers shall be Square D type QOB (bolt-on) thermal-magnetic, molded case circuit breakers. Breakers shall be 1, 2 or 3-pole with an integral crossbar to assure simultaneous opening of all poles in multipole circuit breakers. Breakers shall have an overcenter, trip-free, toggle-type operating mechanism with quick-make, quick-break action and positive handle indication. Handles shall have "ON", "OFF" and "TRIPPED" positions. In addition, trip indication shall include a VISI-TRIP indicator appearing in the window of the breaker case. Bolt-on (NQOB) circuit breakers shall be able to be installed in the panelboard without requiring additional mounting hardware. Circuit breakers shall be UL listed in accordance with UL Standard 489 and shall be rated 240 volts ac maximum with continuous current ratings as noted on the plans. Interrupting ratings shall be 65,000 rms symmetrical amperes maximum at 240 volts ac maximum. Single pole, 15 and 20 ampere circuit breakers intended to switch fluorescent lighting loads on a regular basis shall carry the SWD marking.
- C. Panelboard bus structure and main lugs or main circuit breaker shall have current ratings as shown on the panelboard schedule. Such ratings shall be established by heat rise tests,

conducted in accordance with UL Standard 67. Bus structure shall be insulated. Bus bar connections to the branch circuit breakers shall be the "distributed phase" or phase sequence type and shall accept bolt-on (NQOB) circuit breakers. All current carrying parts of the bus structure shall be plated.

- D. The panelboard bus assembly shall be enclosed in a steel cabinet. The rigidity and gauge of steel to be as specified in UL Standard 50 for cabinets. Wiring gutter space shall be in accordance with UL Standard 67 for panelboards. The box shall be fabricated from galvanized steel or equivalent rust resistant steel. Each front shall include a door and have a flush, cylinder tumbler-type lock with catch and spring-loaded stainless steel door pull. All panelboard locks shall be keyed alike. Fronts shall have adjustable indicating trim clamps which shall be completely concealed when the doors are closed. Doors shall be mounted with completely concealed steel hinges. Fronts shall not be removable with door in the locked position. Each front shall be furnished with a "hinged trim" accessory. Column width fronts shall have exposed hinges and be screw cover type. A circuit directory frame and card with a clear plastic covering shall be provided on the inside of the door.
- E. Each panelboard, as a complete unit, shall have a short circuit current rating equal to or greater than the integrated equipment rating shown on the panelboard schedule or on the plans. This rating shall be established by testing with the overcurrent devices mounted in the panelboard. The short circuit tests on the overcurrent devices and on the panelboard structure shall be made simultaneously by connecting the fault to each overcurrent device with the panelboard connected to its rated voltage source. Method of testing shall be per Underwriters Laboratories Standard UL 67. The source shall be capable of supplying specified panelboard short circuit current or greater. Testing of panelboard overcurrent devices for short circuit rating only while individually mounted is not acceptable. Also, testing of the bus structure by applying a fixed fault to the bus structure alone is not acceptable. Panelboards shall be marked with their maximum short circuit current rating at the supply voltage and shall be UL listed.
- F. Panelboards shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories and bear the UL label. When required, panelboards shall be suitable for use as service equipment. Panelboards shall be by Square D, General Electric, or Siemens.

## 2.26 Distribution and Power Panels

- A. Furnish and install distribution and power panelboards as indicated in the panelboard schedule and where shown on the plans. Panelboards shall be deadfront, safety type equipped with thermal-magnetic, molded case circuit breakers with trip ratings as indicated on the schedule.
- B. Panelboard bus structure and main lugs or main breaker shall have current rating as indicated on the panelboard schedule. Ratings to be established by heat rise tests conducted according to UL Standard UL67.
- C. Circuit breakers shall be equipped with individually insulated, braced and protected connectors. The front faces of all circuit breakers shall be flush with each other. Permanent circuit identification to be on each breaker. Tripped indication shall be clearly shown by breaker handle taking a position between ON and OFF. Provisions for additional breakers shall be such that no additional connectors will be required to add breakers.

- D. Panelboard assembly shall be enclosed in a steel cabinet. The rigidity and gauge of steel to be as specified in UL Standards. The size of wiring gutters to be in accordance with UL Standards. Cabinets to be equipped with spring latch and tumbler-lock on door trim. Doors over 48" long shall be equipped with three-point latch and vault lock. All locks to be keyed alike. End walls shall be removable. Front locks shall be code gauge, full finished steel with rust-inhibiting primer and baked enamel finish. Each front shall be furnished with a "hinged trim" accessory. A circuit directory frame and card with clear plastic covering shall be provided on the inside of the door. The directory shall be typed to identify the load fed by each circuit. Furnish an engraved micarta plate on front of panel with panel name and rating.
- E. The panelboard interior assembly to be deadfront with panelboard front removed. Main lugs or main breaker shall be barriered on five sides. The barrier in front of the main lugs to be hinged to fixed part of the interior. The end of the bus structure opposite the mains shall be barriered.
- F. Panelboards to be listed by Underwriters' Laboratory and bear UL label. When required, panelboards to be suitable for use as Service Equipment. Panelboards to be by Square D, General Electric, or Siemens.
- G. When utilized as Service Entrance Equipment, this panelboard shall be equipped with built-in surge protection.

## 2.27 Fire Alarm System

### A. General

- 1. The contractor shall complete additions and alterations to existing low voltage, automatic and manual addressable fire alarm system, as specified herein and indicated on the drawings. The system shall include a central control panel, power supply, signal initiating devices, annunciator, remote station equipment, audible and visual alarm devices, provisions for connections to municipal fire circuits, a conduit and wiring system, all necessary devices required to provide a complete operating system.
- 2. The system shall comply with the applicable provisions of the current National Fire Protection Association Standard Number 72, and meet all requirements of the local authorities having jurisdiction. All equipment and devices shall be listed by the Underwriters' Laboratories, Incorporated or approved by the Factory Mutual Laboratories.
- 3. To establish the type and quality of system desired, the equipment specified is that of Notifier Company. No deviation will be considered unless submittals are received and approved, in writing, not less than ten (10) days prior to bid date. Edwards is an approved equal.

### B. Control Panel (Existing)

- 1. Notifier Addressable Model with receiving and alarm zones per plans and battery standby power, shall provide for the connection of alarm circuits as indicated and shall include functions as follows:
  - a. Detect the operation of any signal initiating device.

- b. Indicate on LCD display the device(s) alarming.
  - c. Operate all alarm and auxiliary devices.
2. The Control Panel includes the following features:
- a. A green pilot lamp shall normally be on, indicating that the system is receiving power from the building service supply. A failure of the building service supply shall cause the lamp to go out.
  - b. A trouble lamp and trouble buzzer, operating together, shall signal any trouble condition. Failure of the building service supply, disarrangement in system wiring, or alarm condition shall cause that trouble lamp to come on and trouble buzzer to sound. A self-restoring silencing switch shall be provided to silence the trouble buzzer, which shall be so arranged that the trouble lamp will remain on until the system is restored to normal.
  - c. All alarm signals shall be automatically locked in at the Control Panel until the operated device is returned to its normal condition, and the Panel is manually reset. A switch shall be provided on the Control Panel for silencing the alarm devices. The manual reset switch and the alarm silencing switch shall be of the self-restoring type, which cannot be left in an abnormal position.
  - d. Each signal initiating circuit and each alarm circuit shall be represented on the Control Panel by an amber trouble lamp and a red alarm lamp. The lamps for each circuit shall be identified by a lettered name plate showing the circuit number and/or zone designation. Circuit trouble shall be indicated by the amber trouble lamp lighting. An alarm shall be indicated by both the amber trouble lamp and the red alarm lamp lighting. Audible trouble and alarm devices shall function as herein before specified.
  - e. Each circuit shall include individual supervisory and alarm relays, and shall be so arranged that a fault condition in any circuit, or group of circuits, will not affect the proper operation of any other circuit.

Provide Transient Voltage Surge Suppression at FACP, for both the incoming power supply and the outgoing connection to the remote station receiving unit.

C. Power Supply

- 1. Shall be 24 volt D.C., filtered and regulated, and shall provide sufficient power for all system functions.
- 2. The fire alarm system main power supply shall operate from 120 volt A.C. This connection shall be made in conduit or cable in accordance with local and national codes. Separate over-current protection shall be provided, marked "FIRE ALARM".

3. The 120 volt A.C. main power shall be converted to low-voltage direct current for system operation. The system shall operate on 24 volts D.C. with trickle charged batteries provided as an emergency source of supply for operating the system in the event of the interruption of main power. A changeover relay in the Control Panel shall transfer to standby power automatically upon main power failure and automatically reconnect to main power upon restoration.

D. Fire Alarm Pull Stations

Shall be Notifier Type NBG-12LX flush mounted with FMM-1(A) monitor module. Stations with two sets of contacts will not be acceptable.

E. Smoke Detectors

Notifier Model FSP-851 photoelectric smoke detector, dual chamber design shall be installed where shown on plans.

Type InnovairFlex Duct Housing with photoelectric detector, sampling tubes and shutdown relay shall be installed in air-handling system duct work where shown on plans. Optional feature for actuation of contact closure for fan shut-down and/or damper closure on alarm shall be provided in Control Panel. Remote indicator shall be provided.

Contractor shall wire System such that if the System goes into alarm (any zone), all HVAC units will be shut down.

F. Heat Detectors

Model FST-851 heat detectors, combination fixed temperature and rate of rise, 135 degree F or 190 degree F (Model HD-84), shall be installed where shown on the plans.

G. Signaling Devices

Notifier Model SHG24-1575WR Combination Horn-Strobe unit shall be installed where shown on plans. Notifier Model GXS-4-1575WR Strobe Unit shall be installed where shown on plans. Notifier Model SPK4-24-1575 combination Speaker-Strobe shall be installed where indicated on the plan. All Horn-Strobe units shall meet ADA requirements. Make separate connections to horns and to strobes to permit strobes to operate after system is silenced.

H. Wiring

1. All wiring shall be in accordance with the NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE and the local code having jurisdiction. Unless otherwise specified, minimum wire size shall be 12 gauge for A.C. and power supply connections, 14 gauge for audible alarm and auxiliary circuits, and 14 gauge for signal initiating circuits. Typical diagrams shall be provided for devices and power wiring.
2. Wiring shall be run in conduit. In general the wiring shall consist of:

From the Control Panel.

- a. West Penn No. 995 shielded twisted pair common to all Fire Alarm Stations or Detectors.
- b. 4#14 wires common to each circuit of Fire Alarm Signals.

I. Certified Fire Alarm Contractor

- 1. The Certified Fire Alarm Act requires that the company installing the fire alarm system must be licensed as a Certified Fire Alarm Contractor. The contractor must have a NICET Level III Technician in a position of responsibility, and the license must be issued in the name of the certificate holder and the contractor. The Certified Fire Alarm Act also requires that technicians working for the Certified Contractor must hold a current NICET Level II, or equivalent, certification. Contractors wishing to bid this project will be required to show evidence at the pre-bid conference that he/she meets the certification requirements of the Certified Fire Alarm Act and holds a permit/license issued by the State Fire Marshall.

J. Testing, Guarantee And Service

- 1. A Factory trained representative of the manufacturer shall supervise final testing of the system and it shall be subject to the approval and acceptance of the responsible engineer. On completion of the acceptance tests, the Owner or his representative shall be instructed in the operation and testing of the system. The Owner shall be provided with a written verification of this inspection and certification.
- 2. The Fire Alarm system shall be free from defects in workmanship and materials, under normal use and service, for a period of one year from date of acceptance or beneficial occupancy; whichever earlier. Any equipment shown to be defective in workmanship or material shall be repaired, replaced, or adjusted free of charge.
- 3. The equipment manufacturer shall be represented by a service organization, and the name of this organization shall be furnished to the Architect and Owner. The service organization shall furnish, gratis to the Owner, a one year maintenance and inspection Contract, effective from the date of final acceptance. The contract shall provide for four inspections during the contract year.

2.28 Sound System

A. General

The contractor shall complete alterations and additions to the existing Sound System as specified herein as shown on the plans together with all equipment and accessories required to provide a complete operating System. The System shall be installed by a factory trained sound system contractor for the equipment manufacturer.

The entire System shall be guaranteed for a period of one (1) year from the date of final acceptance of the installation and any defective equipment or parts shall be replaced or repaired, during the guarantee period, at no cost to the Owner.

The manufacturer and model numbers are provided to establish quality of equipment and operating requirements for the system. Any proposed substitution of equipment must be approved by the Architect within ten days prior to bid date. No substitution will be permitted after the project bid date.

B. Console

The existing Control Console is a Dukane Console.

C. Ceiling Speakers

All speakers shall be ceiling or wall mounted as shown on the plans and shall consist of 8-inch speaker with 10-ounce ceramic magnet, 25 volt tapped line, matching transformer, baffle and enclosure. The classroom speaker shall be SOUNDOLIER C10T25 with 62-8 baffle, CS 98-8 enclosure, and 180-2 T-bar support channels. Wall mounted speakers shall be flush wall mounted with SOUNDOLIER 164-8 baffle and 191-78 backbox.

D. Call-In Switch

The classroom call-in switch shall be designed for light annunciator call-in and shall consist of momentary pushbutton switch with stainless-steel face plate. The call-in switch shall be Dukane CA10.

E. Sound System Existing

The Sound System is existing and this contractor shall make additions as called for on the drawings and specifications. Speakers and Call-in Switches added shall be compatible with the existing system. If the addition over loads the existing amplifier then this contractor shall expand the system or replace it to accommodate the existing plus additions.

F. Sound System Installation

1. All wiring shall be in accordance with the local national codes.
2. Wiring shall be run in conduit except where accessible above lay-in ceilings. The wiring shall consist of the following:
  - a. West Penn 357 cable from amplifier to speakers.

2.29 Computer Cabling System

A. General

1. Scope

- a. This document details the products and execution requirements relating to furnishing and installing the telecommunications structured cabling at the building.
- b. All cables, terminations, support, and grounding equipment shall be furnished, installed, tested, labeled, and documented by the telecommunications contractor as detailed in this document.



- c. Product specifications, design, and installation guidelines are contained in this document. If bid documents conflict, this specification document shall take precedence. The successful vendor shall meet or exceed all requirements for the structured cabling system detailed in this document.

## 2. Definitions

- a. Backbone Cabling: The portion of the cabling that connects TR's. Usually consists of multi strand optical fiber and high pair count balanced twisted pair copper.
- b. Horizontal Cabling: The portion of the cabling system that runs from the TR to the WAO including jacks, patch panels, cable, faceplates, wire management and racks.
- c. TR: Telecommunications Room (Includes MDF and IDF)
- d. MDF: Main Distribution Frame (Houses Building Entrance Facilities)
- e. IDF: Intermediate Distribution Frame
- f. WAO: Work Area Outlet
- g. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- h. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
- i. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
- j. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.
- k. STP: Shielded twisted pair.
- l. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

## 3. System Description

- a. Jefferson County Schools intends to acquire a complete voice and data, premise distribution system utilizing a structured cabling system solution for its facility. The Contractor will be responsible for the installation, testing, and acceptance of the approved structured cabling system solution described in the attached specifications and drawings. Work shall be all-inclusive and represent a complete installation. The contractor shall be responsible for all parts, labor, and all other associated apparatus necessary to completely install, test, and turnover for acceptance to Jefferson County Schools the structured cabling system solution described herein.

## 4. Submittals

- a. Product Data: Include data on features, ratings, and performance for each component specified.
- b. Cable Administration Drawings.

- c. Copy of approved manufacturer's Certified Installer certificate.
- d. Contractor's company resume detailing three (3) years of similar project experience.
- e. Documentation that the all-proposed products have been pre-tested as a system and passed the test parameters set forth in Section 2.10 of this specification.
- f. Documentation to support the warranty in accordance with the manufacturer's warranty requirements, and to apply for said warranty on behalf of the Owner. G. Field test reports per part 2.10 of this specification.
- g. The telecommunications contractor shall receive approval from the Owners on all substitutions of material. Substitutions without Owner written approval will not be accepted.
- h. The telecommunications contractor shall have in their employ an RCDD in responsible charge of the project.

5. Quality Assurance

- a. All Contractor employees working on this project shall have industry training and ample experience required to accomplish the work assigned on this project. This training shall include but not be limited to general installation practices, EIA/TIA Standards, Safety Training, and fire stopping. Jefferson County Schools reserves the right to request and receive proof of training at any time during the term of the project.
- b. The Telecommunications contractor's installation crew shall consist of at least 30 percent BICSI certified technicians, as well as certification in the approved manufacturer's solutions to extend all performance warranties at no additional cost to the Owner.
- c. The Contractor shall be fully capable and experienced in the premise distribution systems specified. To ensure the system has continued support, The Contractor shall have a successful history of sales, installation, service, and support of the selected system. The contractor must have a minimum of three (3) years' experience in projects of both similar size and complexity.
- d. The contractor shall accept complete responsibility for the installation, acceptance testing, documentation, and certification of the structured cabling system.
- e. The contractor shall be responsible to make sure all work areas are clean and void of debris after installation is completed.
- f. The work performed on this project will be in conformance with the current edition of National Electric Code, current version of the EIA-TIA guidelines, the current edition of the BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual, and the current NFPA guidelines.
- g. The cabling system described complies with the recommendations and practices of the following reference documents.

- 1) ANSI/TIA-568-C.0 Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises
- 2) ANSI/TIA-568-C.1 Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard
- 3) ANSI/TIA-568-C.2 Balanced Twisted-Pair Telecommunications Cabling and Components Standard
- 4) ANSI/TIA-568-C.3 Optical Fiber Cabling Components Standard
- 5) TIA-569-B Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces.
- 6) ANSI/TIA- 606-B Administration Standard for Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings.
- 7) ANSI/TIA-607-B Telecommunications Grounding (Earthing) and Bonding for Customer Premises.
- 8) ANSI/TIA-758-A Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard.
- 9) NFPA-70 National Fire Protection Agency
- 10) NEC National Electrical Code

6. Coordination

- a. Coordinate layout and installation of voice and data communication cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment suppliers.
  - 1) Meet jointly with telecommunications and LAN equipment suppliers.
  - 2) Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute to other participants.
  - 3) Adjust arrangements and locations of distribution frames and cross-connect and patch panels in equipment rooms and wiring closets to accommodate and optimize arrangement and space requirements of telephone switch and LAN equipment.

7. Warranty

- a. The performance warranty will cover the components and labor associated with the repair or replacement of any failed link, within the warranty period (minimum 20 years), that is a valid warranty claim.
- b. The minimum 20-year performance warranty shall cover applications assurance, transmission performance and the system components of the cable and connectivity system.

- c. Extended warranties shall be provided on all component installations. Any and all warranties shall be provided at no additional cost to Jefferson County Schools.

B. Products

1. Manufacturers

a. Approved Manufacturers:

1) Horizontal Cable

a) Category 6 approved manufacturer:

\*\*Data Cable

\*Superior Essex Datagain Category 6 Plenum Blue

Graybar Part # 22108318

\*\*Voice Cable

\*Superior Essex Datagain Category 6 Plenum White

Graybar Part # 22108387

\*\*Surveillance Camera Cable

\*Superior Essex Datagain Category 6 plenum Green

Graybar part # 22108388

\*\*Wireless Access Point Cable

\*Superior Essex Datagain Category 6 Plenum Yellow

Graybar Part # 22108389

\*\*\*Plenum Cable Where Applicable

b) CATV Coax approved manufacturers:

\*\*General Cable RG6 Plenum

Graybar Part # 25091396

Or approved equals from CommScope or Belden

2) Copper Connectivity

a) Patch Panel approved manufacturers:

\*\*Hubbell iSTATION 48 Port Keystone Patch Panel

Graybar Part # 25868877

\*\*Hubbell iSTATION 24 Port Keystone Patch Panel

Graybar Part # 25868876

b) Workstation Outlet approved manufacturers:

\*\* Data Outlets

\*Hubbell Xcelerator Category 6 Blue

Graybar Part # 99701367

\*\* Voice Outlets

\*Hubbell Xcelerator Category 6 White

Graybar Part # 99701384

\*\* Wireless AP Outlets

\*Hubbell Xcelerator Category 6 Yellow

Graybar Part # 99701389

\*\* Camera Outlets

\*Hubbell Xcelerator Category 6 Green

Graybar Part # 99701370

\*\*\*Outlet colors in patch panels shall match outlet colors in WAO

- c) Faceplate approved manufacturers
  - \*\*Hubbell iStation Stainless Steel w/ID Windows
  - \*\*\* Port counts to be coordinated with Engineer/Owner
- d) Wireless Access Point surface mount boxes
  - \*\*Hubbell iStation 2 Port Office White
  - Graybar Part # 25265349
- e) Patch Cords
  - \*\*Telecommunications Rooms: HC6B01, HC6B03
  - \*\*Workstation Outlets: HC6B07
  - \*\*\*Coordinate quantities with owner.

3) Backbone Cables & Connectivity

- a) Approved Copper Backbone Cable
  - \*\* Superior Essex Category 3 25 Pair Plenum
  - Graybar Part # 22077112
- b) Approved Premise Optical Fiber Backbone Cable
  - \*\* Superior Essex 12 Strand 50um OM3 Plenum
  - Graybar Part # 25512699
- c) Copper Backbone Connectivity
  - \*\*Hubbell NEXTSPEED Category 5e 48 Port Patch Panel
  - Graybar Part # 25713657
- d) Optical Fiber Premise/Backbone Connectivity
  - \*\*Hubbell OptiChannel Rack Mount Enclosures
  - \*FCR2U6SP 2RU Enclosure (MDF)
  - Graybar Part # 25437107
  - \*FCR1U3SP 1 RU Enclosure (IDF)
  - Graybar Part # 25437106
  - \*\*Hubbell OptiChannel Duplex LC Laser Optimized Adapter Panel
  - \*FSPLCDS6AQ
  - Graybar Part # 25196204

4) Cabinets, Racks, and Wire Management

- a) Cabinets and Racks
  - \*\*Cabinets: B-Line V422442ACAXTSSSB (MDF)
  - \*\*Racks: B-Line Two-Post Network Equipment Rack
  - Graybar Part # 95044531
- b) Approved Vertical and Horizontal Cable Management
  - \*\*Vertical Management
  - \*Leviton Veri-Duct Front and Rear
  - Graybar Part # 25013795
  - \*\*Horizontal Management
  - \*Leviton Versi-Duct Front and Rear

- c) Approved Ladder Tray  
\*\*B-Line Tubular Stringer Style Raceway  
Graybar Part # 98306487

5) Classroom A/V Smartboard Connectivity

- a) Teacher Desk/Smartboard WAO's  
\*\*Hubbell iSTATION HDBaseT 2.0 HDMI Extender Kit  
Graybar Part # 25960015  
\*\*HDMI DC5V Power Supply (Provide one for each WAO)  
\*\*Hubbell Stainless 2 Gang Decorator Faceplate  
Graybar Part # 25081046  
\*\*Hubbell 2 Port Decora Frame Black  
Graybar part # 22045981  
\*\*\* One port shall be populated with data outlet, one blanked

- b) AV Wall Box  
\*\*Hubbell 2 Gang AV Box  
Graybar Part # 25689634

6) UPS/PDU

- a. UPS  
\*\*APC 2200va Smart UPS Rack Mount (Provide one for each rack/cabinet)  
Graybar Part # 25387018
- b. PDU  
\*\*TrippLite Metered 20amp Vertical PDU (Provide one for each rack/cabinet)  
Graybar Part # 25092047

2. Identification Products

- a. Cable labels shall be self-adhesive vinyl or vinyl-cloth wraparound tape markers, machine printed with alphanumeric cable designations.
- b. No handwritten labels will be accepted.
- c. All telecommunications outlet/connectors, patch panels, cross connects, racks/cabinets, and other components shall be labeled in accordance with ANSI/EIA/TIA 606B standards.

3. Proposal And Execution

- a. This proposal requires a complete turnkey solution for the following systems (Voice & Data Cabling):
  - 1) It is preferred that one company perform the entire scope of work, which shall be completed using this document and the manufacturer's best practices.
  - 2) The contractor is responsible for any and all stored equipment pertaining to this or any other project for Jefferson County Schools.

- 3) Contractor shall provide on-site training to project management personnel prior to soft opening under the guidance of Isaac Pettway. Training shall include all aspects of daily operation, equipment limitations, emergency operation and repair of all system components.
- 4) The contractor shall examine any and all areas in which work is to be performed. Report in writing any conditions that will adversely affect satisfactory execution of work.
- 5) Do not proceed with work until satisfactory conditions have been corrected. Starting work constitutes acceptance of the existing conditions and this Contractor shall then, at his expense, be responsible for correcting all unsatisfactory and defective work encountered.
- 6) All workmanship shall be subject to approval by Jefferson County Schools, who reserves the right to reject any part of the installation not complying with this specification. The Contractor shall diligently carry out all necessary remedial work or replacement, free of charge without delay to the contract.
- 7) Surge Protection shall be required for all applicable systems. Outside plant copper cabling shall be terminated to associated protectors at both ends.
- 8) Identification and Labeling shall follow the TIA-606-B standard.
- b. All work shall be performed and supervised by technicians and managers qualified to install and test the structured cabling system in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.
- c. Wiring within Wiring Closets and Enclosures: Provide conductors of adequate length. Trim conductors to terminal points with no excess. Properly manage cables with approved horizontal and vertical managers
- d. The wiring scheme for this project shall be T568B.

#### 4. Cables

- a. Horizontal data and voice cables shall be Category 6 Plenum unless otherwise specified.
- b. Horizontal cable links shall not exceed 90 meters (328 feet including patch cords).
- c. All four pairs of each unshielded twisted pair (UTP) cable shall be terminated on a single port. The splitting of cable pairs between different jacks is not permitted. Terminating cable pairs shall be to manufacturers recommendations. Pair untwist shall not exceed ½" (12mm). Cable jacket shall be maintained within 1" (25mm) of termination point.
- d. Each horizontal and backbone cable shall have a service loop. A one (1) foot service loop shall be installed at the work area outlet end in the outlet box. A ten (10) foot service loop shall be installed at the Telecommunications Closet or Main Closet end.

- e. All cabling shall be continuous without splices from the work area to the Telecommunications Closets.
- f. Where exposed, all cables installed by Contractor shall be properly contained in conduit, cable tray, raceway, duct, or J-Hooks. (Maximum 48" Spacing)
  - 1) The maximum bend between cable pulling points shall not be more than 180 degrees total over a maximum of 100 feet.
  - 2) Horizontal fill ratios for conduit, cable trays, raceways and ducts shall conform to NEC, BICSI standards and manufacturer's recommendations
  - 3) At NO point shall cables rest on acoustic ceiling grids or building iron.
- g. Cables above dropped ceilings and in other concealed spaces shall be formed into cable harnesses, neatly run, properly dressed, supported and secured with the appropriate velcro ties.
- h. All exposed cable bundles must be managed with velcro ties at a maximum of every 48-60 inches.
  - 1) All cable ties used shall be hand tightened only to a point where the sheath does not kink.
  - 2) Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces or exposed structural members and follow surface contours where possible.
- i. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
- j. Minimum clearance between cables and power sources shall be according to TIA/EIA568-C.1 standards.
- k. Separation of Wires: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A rules for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cabling from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
- l. All optical fiber and copper cables shall be handled, installed, and supported in accordance with the manufacturer's guidelines. During the laying of the cable, the installer shall take care not to overstress the cable. After the cable is installed, the installer shall make sure that all parts of the cable are supported properly and shall be stress free at both ends and throughout their length.
- m. Appropriate attention shall be given to the handling of copper and optical fiber cables to ensure that the bending radius conforms to the manufacturer's requirements. At no time shall the cable's static or dynamic bending radius be less than four (4) times the diameter for copper and ten (10) times the diameter of fiber.
- n. Where backbone cables and horizontal cables share cable tray, backbone cables and horizontal cables shall be bundled separately.



- o. Make splices, taps, and terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
- p. Backbone cables shall have minimum 10-foot service loops in all telecommunications rooms.

5. Work Station Outlets

- a. All telecommunications outlet/connectors shall be securely mounted at all work area locations.
- b. Cable pair twist shall not exceed ½ inch (12mm) from termination point.
- c. Cable jacket shall be maintained within 1 inch (25mm) of termination point.
- d. All Category 6 WAO's shall be terminated to approved manufacturers IDC Category 6 outlets in faceplate locations with approved manufacturers Category 6 cable extending to TR where it shall be terminated to approved manufacturers Category 6 patch panels.
- e. Wireless Access Points- Category 6 cables shall terminate to patch panels in TR extending to AP locations where it shall be terminated to a Category 6 outlet in a surface mount box. Wireless AP locations to be coordinated with owner.
- f. Patch cords to be provided by contractor, colors and lengths to be coordinated with owner.

6. Installation In Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets

- a. Install plywood backboards on wall of equipment rooms and wiring closets. A 4' x 8' x .75" void free plywood backboard with two coats of white fire-retardant paint.
- b. Mount Wiring Blocks, terminal strips, and other connecting hardware on backboards, unless otherwise indicated.
- c. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields. (IE. Separate Voice, Data, CATV to facilitating troubleshooting)
- d. This contract will not include telephone system or cross connecting of the voice system.
- e. Install the Horizontal data cables on Category 6 patch panels in a rack, sized to accommodate the appropriate number of data cables plus spares as specified.
- f. Cables shall be neatly bundled and dressed to respective panels or blocks. Each panel or block shall be fed by an individual bundle separated and dressed back to the point of cable entrance into rack.
- g. Install horizontal wire management between and below each patch panel.

h. Racks

- 1) Racks shall be securely attached to the floor using minimum 3/8" hardware or by local AHJ.
- 2) Racks shall be placed a minimum of 36" clearance from walls on all sides.
- 3) The contractor shall install 12" cable tray from wall to each rack.
- 4) All racks shall be grounded in accordance of ANSI/TIA/EIA-607 standard.
- 5) All data racks containing active electronic devices shall be equipped with battery backup units.

7. Penetrations

- a. All penetrations, regardless of wall construction, shall be sleeved with an appropriate size conduit so that not greater than a 40% fill ratio is achieved.
- b. Appropriate fire barriers shall be placed around the cables in the sleeves, and unused sleeves shall be properly fire stopped, as required.
- c. All penetration sleeves and conduits shall be fitted with bushings to protect the integrity of cable jackets.

8. Grounding

- a. Comply with Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- b. Ground cable shields, drain conductors, and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
- c. Bond shields and drain conductors to ground at only one point in each circuit.
- d. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate in each equipment room and wiring closet; isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
- e. Signal Ground Bus: Mount on wall of main equipment room with standoff insulators.
- f. Signal Ground Backbone Cable: Extend from signal ground bus to signal ground terminal in each equipment room and wiring closet.
- g. Each distribution rack shall be connected to the ground bus in the telecommunications Closets in accordance with the applicable code requirements and as per EIA/TIA 607.
- h. All voice and data equipment shall be properly grounded in the telecommunications closets to meet the manufacturer's requirements.

- i. The contractor will install a 10" x 2" bus-bar grounding kit on the telecommunication backboard. The contractor will be required to connect to the building ground as per NEC requirement.
  - j. The contractor will ground the wall mount rack according to EIA/TIA standards and appropriate NEC codes.
9. Identification
- a. In addition to requirements in this Article, comply with applicable requirements in Division 16 Section Basic Electrical Materials and Methods and TIA/EIA-606B.
  - b. System: Use a unique, three-syllable, alphanumeric designation for each cable, and label cable and jacks, connectors, and terminals to which it connects with same designation. Use logical and systematic designations for facility's architectural arrangement.
    - 1) First syllable identifies and locates equipment rack where cables originate.
    - 2) Second syllable identifies and locates the patch-panel field in which cables Terminate.
    - 3) Third syllable designates the port/position occupied by cable pairs or fibers in patch panel or fiber optic enclosure.
  - c. Distribution Racks and Frames: Label each unit and field within that unit.
  - d. Cables, General: Label each cable within 4 inches of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - e. Cable Schedule: Post in prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project, in software and format selected by Owner.
  - f. Cable Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cable administration point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors. Follow convention of TIA/EIA-606. Furnish electronic record of all drawings, in software.
10. Field Quality Control
- a. Performance testing shall be used to ensure that the system is capable of meeting the desired specification. All cables shall be tested for CAT 6 compliance. All parameters per TIA/EIA TSB67 shall be verified using a Level IV accuracy field tester (FLUKE DSX-5000). All testing shall be in accordance with ANSI/TIA/EIA-568B requirements; tested to Channel Performance requirements set forth in this document.

- b. Optical fiber cable shall be tested with an OTDR or Optical Fiber Power Loss Meter in accordance with EIA/TIA-455-53A. System loss measurements shall be provided at 850nm/1300nm for multimode fiber, and 1310nm/1550nm for single mode fiber.
- c. Category 6 copper cable testing requirements:
  - 1) Wire map
  - 2) Length
  - 3) Attenuation
  - 4) NEXT
  - 5) Return Loss
  - 6) ELFEXT Loss
  - 7) Propagation Delay
  - 8) Delay Skew
  - 9) PSNEXT
  - 10) PSELFEXT
- d. Upon completion of testing, the Contractor will provide the Owner with a complete record of all testing performed on 3.5 disk and hard copy of all test results in a binder form. The Owner reserves the right to randomly test any cabling. If problems are discovered, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to make corrections in the time frames outlined within the previous sections.

#### 11. Demonstration

- a. Train Owner's maintenance personnel in cable-plant management operations, including changing signal pathways for different workstations, rerouting signals in failed cables, and extending wiring to establish new workstation outlets.

### 3.0 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 Workmanship

- A. All work shall be executed in workmanlike manner and present a neat and mechanical appearance upon completion.
- B. Balance load as equally as practical on services and all feeders, circuits, and panel busses. All wiring in panelboards shall be laced and looped in a workmanlike manner.
- C. Upon completion of work, test entire wiring system and show to be perfect working order in accordance with intent of specifications and drawings. This Contractor to have all systems ready for operation and electrician available to assist in removal of panel fronts, etc., to permit inspection as required.

- D. All work shall be in accordance with the National Electrical Code and the rules and regulations of the local bodies having jurisdiction.

### 3.2 Excavation Cutting and Patching

- A. Provide cutting and patching required for this section of work under supervision of the General Contractor. Coordinate with other trades as work progresses so cutting and patching will be minimal.

### 3.3 Sleeves, Inserts, and Supports

- A. Provide and install No. 16 gauge galvanized steel or iron sleeves in all walls, floors, ceilings, and partitions. Sleeves shall have not more than 1/2" clearance around pipes and insulation.
- B. Contractor shall furnish to other trades all sleeves, insert, anchors and other required items which are to be built in by trades for the securing of all hangers or other supports by the Contractor.
- C. Contractor shall assume all responsibility for the placing and size of all sleeves, inserts, etc., and either directly supervise or give explicit instructions for installation.
- D. Seal all conduits through floor, smoke or fire walls and sound barrier walls. All such penetrations shall be made with an Underwriters' Laboratories firestop assembly. Through floor conduit shall be sealed water tight.
- E. Furnish and install steel angles and channels as required for mounting and bracing heavy equipment, and conduits. Steel shall be securely bolted or welded to structure and equipment bolted to steel framework. Obtain approval of Architect prior to welding.

### 3.4 Roof Penetrations

- A. Furnish roof flashing for all equipment installed under this section that penetrates through the roof. Galvanized sheet, 24 gauge with base extending 6" beyond pipe.

### 3.5 Grounding

- A. All equipment shall be grounded and bonded in accordance with local regulations and National Electrical Code. Ground main service to code size cold water pipe and driven ground rod, maximum of 2 driven rods. All conduits entering a free-standing switchboard or motor control center shall be bonded together with approved grounding lugs and bare copper wire.
- B. Interior metal water piping shall be bonded to the system ground as outlined in NEC Section 250-80.
- C. This Contractor shall bond all metal air ducts to the respective unit grounding conductor. Install additional bonding jumpers at joints, flexible sections, etc., to ensure that entire duct system is bonded.

### 3.6 Conduit Installation

- A. Where rigid conduits enter boxes secure in place by approved lock nuts and bushings.

Where E.M.T. enters boxes secure in place with approved insulated fittings. Conduit ends shall be carefully plugged during construction.

- B. Use of running threads is absolutely prohibited. Conduits shall be joined with approved conduit couplings.
- C. Install conduit runs to avoid proximity to steam or hot water pipes. In no place shall a conduit be run within 3" of such pipes except where crossings are unavoidable, then conduit shall be kept at least 1" from the covering of the pipe crossed.
- D. Before installing raceways for motors and fixed appliances, check locations of motors and appliance connections. Locate and arrange raceways appropriately.
- E. Provide flexible conduit connections to all motors and/or any equipment which has moving or vibrating parts. Sealtite flexible conduit shall be used in all cases where exposed to moisture and in mechanical equipment rooms.
- F. Exposed conduit runs shall be parallel and/or at right angles to building walls and/or partitions.
- G. Where conduit crosses a structural expansion joint, an approved conduit expansion fitting will be installed.
- H. Leave aluminum pull wire in all empty conduit.
- I. Conduit shall be cut square and the ends reamed after threading.
- J. Fasten conduit securely in place by means of approved conduit clamps, hangers, supports, and fastening. Arrangement and method of fastening all conduits subject to Architect's direction and approval.
- K. Apply two (2) coats of asphaltum paints to all underground rigid conduit. Carefully retouch any breaks in paint and allow to dry before covering. Leave exposed until after Architect's inspection.
- L. Conduits shall be sized in accordance with National Electrical Code as amended to date, except when the size is shown larger on the drawings.
- M. Conduit with an external diameter larger than 1/3 the thickness of the slab shall not be placed in the slab. Conduit in the slab shall not be spaced closer than 3 diameters on center. No conduit in porous fill.
- N. E.M.T. may be used where concealed in ceiling or walls where there is no danger of mechanical injury. Rigid conduit shall be used, where embedded in concrete, areas exposed to moisture and danger of mechanical injury, in hazardous areas, and for feeders and motor circuits. PVC shall be allowed for branch circuit conduits installed in floor slab (rigid steel 90's).

### 3.7 Wire and Cable Installation

- A. No conductor shall be smaller than #12 except where so designated on the drawings or hereinafter specified.

- B. Joints and splices on wire shall be made with solderless connectors, and covered so that insulation is equal to conductor insulation. Wire nuts not permitted.
- C. Multi-wire lighting branches shall be used as indicated.
- D. No splices shall be pulled into conduit.
- E. Both conductors and conduits shall be continuous from outlet to outlet.
- F. No conductor shall be pulled until conduit is cleaned of all foreign matter.
- G. In installing parallel conductors, it is mandatory that all conductors making up the feeder be exactly the same length, the same size and type of conductor with the same insulation. Each group of conductors making up a phase or neutral must be bonded together at both ends in an approved manner.

### 3.8 Feeder Designation

- A. Non-ferrous identifying tags or pressure sensitive labels shall be fastened securely to all cables, feeders and power circuits in vaults, pull boxes, manholes, switchgear and at termination of cables. Tags or labels shall be stamped or printed to correspond with markings on drawings so that feeder or cable number or phase can be readily identified.

### 3.9 Circuits and Branch Circuits

- A. Outlets shall be connected to branch circuits as indicated on drawings by circuit number adjacent to outlet symbols, and no more outlets than are indicated shall be connected to a circuit.

### 3.10 Wire Joints

- A. On copper wire larger than #12 joints shall be made with solderless connectors and covered with Scotch #33 Electrical Tape so that insulation is equal to conductor insulation. Connectors by Penn-Union or Anderson.
- B. #12 and smaller wire joints shall be made with T & B Sta-Kon wire joints, complete with insulating caps, Ideal Wing nuts, or Buchanan Electrical Products Series 2000 pressure connectors complete with nylon snap-on insulators.
- C. Joints on aluminum cable #0 and larger shall be made with compression lugs and bolted to terminals using stainless steel bolts and Belleville washers. Torque to 50-to-60-foot pound or torque with torque wrench. Aluminum cable and joints shall be used only where indicated on drawings. Connectors by Penn-Union or Anderson. Connection to panelboard by Burndy Connector and stud.

### 3.11 Outlet Boxes Installation

- A. Outlet boxes shall be securely fastened.
- B. Surface Fixture outlet boxes shall be set so edge of cover comes flush with finished surface.
- C. There shall be no more knockouts opened in any outlet box than are actually required.

- D. Boxes shall be sealed during construction. Protect interiors (including panel cans) from paint and mortar.
- E. Unless otherwise shown, outlets shall be located as follows: centerline of boxes shall be following distance above the finished floor:

Receptacles General -----	1'4" - Centerline
Receptacles Over Counters -----	3'8" - Centerline
Telephone Outlets General -----	1'4" - Centerline
Wall Telephone Outlets -----	4'0" - Centerline
General Clock Outlets -----	7'6" - Centerline
Switches General -----	4'0" - Top
Fire Alarm Pulls -----	4'0" - Top
Fire Alarm Signals -----	6'8" - Bottom
Bells -----	6'8" - Centerline
T V & Computer Outlets -----	1'4" - Centerline

- F. Symbols on drawings and mounting heights as indicated on drawings and in specifications are approximate only. The exact locations and mounting heights must be determined on the job and it shall be the Contractor's responsibility to coordinate with all trades to secure correct installation, i.e., over counter in or above back splashes, in stud walls, and other specific construction features. Mount all receptacles vertical. In block walls (exposed), use nearest joint as approved by Architect.

### 3.12 Fixture Installation

- A. Support of all fixture shall be responsibility of this Contractor. Fixtures shall be supported independent of ceiling from structure members of building. Contractor shall submit typical hanging detail to Architect/Engineer before installing any fixtures. All grid fixtures shall be wired by flex individually to junction and not wired fixture to fixture.
- B. Fixture conductors shall be connected by soldering and tying or by approved connectors.
- C. All stems on fluorescent fixtures shall be installed as follows: except fixtures with slide grip hangers first and last stem in row in first knockout from end of fixture. One stem shall be installed between each two fixtures, stem shall center joint where fixtures join, and attach by use of "joining plates". All fixtures in continuous rows other than recessed grid type shall be connected by nipples with lock nuts and bushings.
- D. Thoroughly clean all fixture lens and reflectors immediately prior to the final inspection.

### 3.13 Installation of Motors, Electric Heaters, and Controls

- A. Provide feeders and make connections for motors, electric heating units and controls.
- B. An approved H.P. rated safety switch shall be provided within sight of each motor and each heating unit. Provide fused switches where branch circuit fuses are not sized for overload protection. Weatherproof switches are to be used where switches are located outdoors. Safety switches shall be as manufactured by G.E., Square D, or Cutler Hammer.
- C. Manual motor starters with thermal overload protection may be used in lieu of safety



switches for motors under 1/2 H.P. Manufacturers shall be same as above.

- D. The heating and air conditioning contractor shall furnish all motor starters.
- E. The temperature control contractor shall furnish and install all low and line voltage wiring necessary for the temperature control systems and interlocking with air handling units, cabinet unit heaters.
- F. The electrical contractor shall install all motor starters, except for factory mounted. He will furnish wire and disconnect switches. He will furnish and install all power wiring from the power panels on packaged equipment. He will not furnish nor install any low and line voltage wiring necessary for the temperature control system and interlocking with air handling units, or cabinet unit heaters.

#### 3.14 Alterations & Additions to Electrical System in Existing Building

- A. Work in existing building shall be performed as indicated or requested to perform its intended function on Electrical and Architectural plans. This contract shall include removing, relocating, extending, etc., any items of electrical nature required to facilitate work as indicated. All circuits interrupted by rework shall be extended and left energized. Contractor shall include night and weekend work in bid as required to keep all outages to a minimum four (4) hours, during non-school hours only.

#### 3.15 Sound System Installation

- A. All wiring shall be in accordance with local and national codes.
- B. Wiring shall be run in conduit except where accessible above lay-in ceilings

#### 3.16 Fire Alarm Installation

- A. All wiring shall be in accordance with Local and National Codes and Article 210 of the National Board of Fire Underwriters Standard Number 72. Unless otherwise specified, minimum wire size shall be 12 gauge for A.C. and power supply connections, 14 gauge for audible alarm circuits and 14 gauge for signal initiating circuits, or wire size as indicated on drawings.
- B. Wiring shall be run in conduit. In general, the wiring from the Control Panel shall consist of:
  - 1. West Penn No. 995 shielded twisted pair common to all Fire Alarm stations or Detectors.
  - 2. 4#14 wires common to each circuit of Fire Alarm Signals.
- C. A factory trained representative for the manufacturer shall supervise the final testing of the system and it shall be subject to the approval and acceptance of the responsible engineer. On completing of the acceptance tests, the Owner or his representative shall be instructed in the operation and testing of the system.

END OF SECTION 16000



### **PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE CHECK-LIST**

**Project:** New JROTC Facility for Pleasant Grove High School

**Funding:** PSCA

**Location:** TBD

**Date/Time:** TBD

**DCM Insp:**

**Please note that all items listed below may not be applicable to this project.**

**1. Introductions / Sign In**

**2. Owner's Comments**

**3. Preface / Pass Along To Others**

**4. Construction set of plans available.**

**5. Verify all alternates accepted.**

**6. E-Verify. Alabama Immigration Law. Be sure that all subcontractors comply with E-Verify requirements.**

**7. List of Sub-Contractors, submit for approval.**

A Complete list of sub-contractors must be submitted and approved by the Architect and Owner prior to any work commencing. Contractor cannot replace subs unless approved by the Architect and Owner (GCS 41)

**8. Cost Breakdown and Progress schedule.**

Cost breakdown and progress schedule must be submitted and approved on proper state forms prior to first pay request.

Start:

Completion Date:

Days:

**9. Method of approving monthly pay request.**

Due by the 25th of each month. Architect will verify, sign and forward to Owner, who will forward to DCM, if applicable.

**10. Allowances.**

A. With the exception of quantity allowances, all allowances indicated are contingency allowances and therefore the Owner may transfer balances for other discretionary uses. Overhead and profit margins SHALL NOT BE ADDED to any amount drawn from original Allowance(s) regardless of the indicated use.

B. Each contingency allowance shall be a "line item" on the Schedule of Values.

C. The following allowance(s) are a part of this project:

•

- 
- D. If applicable, note special material/equipment delivery dates associated with allowances.
- 

**11. Change Orders Requests. No work prior to final approval; Architect can approve in writing if emergency.**

- A. All changes in work are to be submitted via Change Order Request, regardless of monetary value.
- B. COR's must be submitted in sequential order on GC letterhead.
- C. All COR's must be broken down to the fullest degree, including breakdown of GC's cost by GC's labor, materials, subcontractor, sub-subcontractor cost and OH&P. Subcontractor and sub-subcontractor cost must be documented with copies of quotes detailing OH&P included.
- D. COR's applied to allowances cannot include OH&P.
- E. Credit COR's must include a minimum of 5% OH&P.
- F. Upon Owner and/or Architects' approval of COR's, a revised Change Order and Allowance Usage log will be sent to GC via email.
- G. GC is to maintain a COR Log and present updated copy at each OAC meeting.

**12. Shop Drawings.**

- A. Submittal Schedule must be submitted to Architect at or before Pre-Construction Conference. Correlate this submittal schedule with the listing of subcontractors and with list of materials as specified in contract documents. The submittal schedule should be in chronological order following the critical timing of the approval of submittals in accordance with the Work Progress Schedule.
- B. Submit all items proposed for use in work. Do not combine submittals with requests for substitutions
- C. Must bear GC's action stamp as APPROVED OR APPROVED AS NOTED. Contractor shall review and stamp approval and submit shop drawings, product data and samples far enough in advance to allow ample time for Architect review. Color selections may take longer than actual submittal approval, but in any case will not be given via phone calls. If submittals are not marked as approved by the GC, they will be returned without action.
- D. Digital Copies: Provide via email to submittals@lathanassociates.com. Do not send directly to Architect. **See attached Sample.**
- E. Submittal Preparation:
  - **Include the following information on transmittal / email.**
    - Date
    - Project Name and Architect's Project Number.
    - Name of the General Contractor and Contact within company.
    - Subcontractor/Supplier.
  - Clearly state **Number** and title of appropriate Specification Section and **Description** of Item and if applicable
    - Name of the Manufacturer.
    - Model / Style of Item
    -

General Contractor must review and approve shop drawings and submittals prior to submitting to Architect. Allow the Architect no less than three (3) weeks for initial review. Allow more time if the Architect must delay processing to permit coordination with the

sequence of construction, related specification divisions, engineers, consultants and owner's representatives. Allow no less than two (2) weeks for reprocessing.

NOTE: No extension of Contract Time and/or additional costs will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals sufficiently in advance of the Work to permit processing.

- F. Material shall not be fabricated or work performed without approval of respective submittal.
- G. GC is to maintain copies of all approved shop drawings at the site and have available for architect and/or engineers at all times.
- H. GC is to maintain a Submittal Log and present updated copy log at each OAC meeting.
- I. **Important:** Contractor shall perform no portion of the work for which the contract documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Data, Installer Qualifications, etc. until respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.
- J. **Important:** Submittals are not Contract Documents and are not used to make changes in scope of project or intent of Contract Documents, and not used to request or IMPLY substitutions or to otherwise make changes in project requirements.
- K. **Important:** The only changes that can be made to the project once it is bid, is through Change Order Requests and Approvals.
- L. **Important:** After receiving approved digital submittals, General Contractor is responsible for printing and delivering 2 hard copies of the approved shop drawings to the Architect within 10 days. Submittals are not considered complete until 2 copies have been received by the Architect. This may have a direct effect on pay requests or final payment.

**13. CAD Files / PDF**

- A. This project was bid under the assumption that electronic CAD files would not be available.
- B. Electronic CAD files are owned individually by each design professional according to discipline. If electronic CAD files or portions thereof are made available, be reminded that electronic CAD files can be manipulated and do not constitute the Contract Documents. The business of acquiring such files shall be between the contractor and the individual design professional. Fees may or may not be applicable. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to investigate and procure at no added expense to the Owner.
- C. PDF files shall be made available to the General Contractor for use during construction.

**14. Advanced notice of required inspections.**

The contractor will contact the architect by e-mail at [inspections@lathanassociates.com](mailto:inspections@lathanassociates.com) of the date the project will be ready for an inspection by the DCM Inspector: Pre-Roofing, Fire Above Ceiling, Final, and Year End. Special Inspections shall be required for all work of the Storm Shelters and the Fire Water Lines. Schedule well in advance to prevent delays.

- Inspections must be requested 14 days in advance.
- When the DCM Inspector confirms the inspection time, the Architect will send an e-mail confirming the inspection time and date.
- Cancellations of any scheduled inspection must be received in writing by e-mail no less than 48 hours prior to the scheduled inspection. If an inspection is cancelled, it will be rescheduled subject to the DCM Inspector's availability.
- If an inspection is cancelled less than 48 hours prior to the scheduled inspection, the re-inspection fee of \$1,500 will be charged.

**15. Inspection Minimum Requirements.**

The following minimum requirements listed below are provided to aid the contractors and architect in determining if a project is ready for a required inspection.

- Pre-Construction Conference
  - Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Major Subcontractors
  - Inspection Requirements:
    - ✓ Signed construction contract
    - ✓ Verification of payment of permit fee
    - ✓ Fire Alarm Contractor's Certification (from State Fire Marshal)
    - ✓ ADEM permit, if more than 1 acre of land is disturbed
- Pre-Roofing Conference
  - Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Roofing Subcontractor, Roofing Manufacturer's Representative
  - Inspection Requirements:
    - ✓ Roofing submittals must be approved by the architect prior to pre-roofing conference
    - ✓ Roofing manufacturer must provide documentation that roof design and roofing materials meet code requirements for wind uplift and impact resistance
    - ✓ Copy of sample roofing warranty
- Above-Ceiling Inspections
  - Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, MEP Engineers, Major Subcontractors, DCM Inspector
  - Inspection Requirements:
    - ✓ All work must be completed except for installation of ceiling tiles and/or hard ceilings
    - ✓ Space must be conditioned
    - ✓ Permanent power must be connected unless otherwise arranged with the DCM Inspector
- Life Safety Inspections and Final Inspections
  - Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Engineers, Major Subcontractors, Local Fire Marshal, DCM Inspector
  - Inspection Requirements:
    - ✓ Fire alarm certification
    - ✓ General Contractor's 5-Year Roofing Warranty (ABC Form C-9)
    - ✓ Roofing manufacturer's guaranty
    - ✓ Emergency and exit lighting tests
    - ✓ Fire alarm must be monitored
    - ✓ Boiler/Vessels Inspection completed and Certificate of Operation provided by the State of Alabama Department of Labor
    - ✓ Flush/pressure test for new and/or existing fire hydrants
    - ✓ Must have clear egress/access and emergency (for first responders) access to building
    - ✓ Must have ADA access completed
- Year-End Inspections
  - Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Engineers and /or Major subcontractors may also be required to attend
  - Inspection Requirements:
    - ✓ Owner's list of documented warranty items

**16. Above Ceiling Inspection by the Architect, Engineers and DCM Inspector.**

No above ceiling work is to be done after the Above Ceiling Inspection other than correction of deficiencies noted during the inspection. (Pre-Above Ceiling Inspection)

Fire Caulking                      Tented fixtures                      Wire at Light Fixtures                      Debris

Temporary Lighting                      Penetrations                      Pipe Saddles

**Insulation - No Kraft - Exposed Fire-Rated FSK or FRK - Type III, Class A.**

**17. Other inspections required before work is covered.**

Local inspectors may require a full range of inspections on this project, footings, under-slab, etc. A wall inspection will be held before any finish paints are applied.

*\*\* Discuss employment of Geotechnical Engineer if necessary.*

**18. Inspection report distribution.**

Architect will submit field reports promptly to the Owner, GC, DCM Inspector. Architect will fill in all blanks on the field report form.

(GCS 16 & MP 8D)

**19. Record drawings, definitions of procedures.**

G.C. is to keep all changes made in the field red lined daily. Cut and paste all addendums onto the plans at their respected locations. One clean set of plans is to be secured at the job trailer at all times for review by all interested parties. This set with changes could be used as the record drawings. Final pay approval is subject to receipt of these as-built drawings.

**20. Project sign and other job signs.**

State required sign is the only sign allowed on project.

Job trailers with contractor and/or sub-contractor names are allowed.

**21. Overall phasing of project.**

Superintendent is responsible to plan ahead in order to avoid delays and conflicts. GC is to advise Architect on delays of critical path items. Superintendent is to be on site at all times when any work is in progress; no exceptions (GCS 6A & B)

**22. Contractor's duty to coordinate work of separate contractor.**

Contractors employed by others for installation of data, computer and etc. (GCS 40D)

**23. Use of existing site, building and access drive.**

A. Use of existing building site for lay down is to be determined by local owner and Architect. Local owner will advise contractor on proper route to site. Material delivery times are to be made as to not interfere with the school bus schedule. Area is to be reviewed after this meeting, if necessary. Maintain traffic flow.

B. No workmen are allowed in existing building, unless prior approval is granted by the Owner and arranged by the General Contractor. There is to be no communication between workers and faculty/staff or students; through vocal, looks, stares or body language.

C. Since most projects are hard hat areas, the worker's name will be on his/her hat for identification purposes.

D. If a faculty/staff member or student is causing a problem with a worker, the worker is to report the incident to the Project Superintendent. The Superintendent should then report the incident to the Owner. Under no circumstances should the Worker try and handle the problem by him/herself.

E. There is to be no profanity on the job site.

F. School Lunch

G. Use of existing site, building and access drive.

- H. Workmen are expected to dress appropriately. Tee-shirts are expected to be non-offensive to all parties.
  - I. State school properties are tobacco free areas. No smoking, chewing, or dipping of tobacco products are allowed.
  - J. State school properties are drug free areas. Vehicles are subject to search and seizure by law enforcement authorities.
  - K. Firearms are not allowed on school property. Cased, uncased, loaded, or unloaded.
24. **Use of existing toilets.**  
There will be no use of existing toilets. G.C. is to provide proper number of toilets for all workers. School telephone is off limits.
25. **Coordinate any utilities supplied by the Owner / New equipment.**  
Existing sites, normally water only.  
Coordination - OAC /Sub Meetings  
New equipment utilities may be different than those existing utilities that the design is based upon. Coordinate with actual equipment cut sheets.
26. **Coordinate outages with Owner.**  
Provide as much notice as possible. Superintendent is to verify that coolers and freezers are back on line. Coordinate with key testing date, do not disrupt on-going school operations. *Roofing fumes must be minimized with afterburner.*
27. **Keeping existing exit paths open.**  
Required exits are to be maintained at all times.
28. **Routine job clean up.**  
Debris is to be removed daily/weekly from building and site. Do not allow dumpster to spill over. Burning of trash on site is not allowed. (GCS 48, A & C)
29. **Safety is General Contractor's responsibility.**  
As a courtesy, advise the Architect if there has been a problem.
30. **Project limits.**  
Defined on drawings.
31. **Building location relative to critical property line. Easements, Setbacks, etc.**  
Review with Architect before starting work.
32. **Location of property lines, corners, etc.**  
Review with Architect before starting work.
33. **Verify sanitary outfall before committing to floor level.**  
Plumber is to advise Superintendent ASAP and Superintendent is to notify Architect if there is a problem.
34. **Procedure if bad soil is encountered.**  
Contact Architect immediately.
35. **Stockpiling top soil.**  
On existing sites, location is to be approved by the Architect and Owner.
36. **Protect existing trees, shrubbery, landscaping, sidewalks, curbs and etc.**



GC is to leave existing site in same condition as when project started.

*\*\*If disturbing more than 1 acre, discuss ADEM requirements.*

37. **Soil compaction, type soil, lab test, etc.**  
Geotechnical Engineer is to approve compaction. Soil type is listed in the specs. For lab tests, refer to the specs. Testing disclosure.
38. **Soil Treatment.**  
Soil treatment provider is to come to the site with empty tank. Use on site water. Superintendent is to witness the treatment container seals broken and mix prepared. No pre-mixed material is to be brought to the site.
39. **Surveyor to check foundation wall. Location is critical.**
40. **Ready mix plant, file delivery tickets, slump and cylinder test.**  
Protect cylinders until tested. Superintendent is to have on file, at all times, the delivery tickets, slump and cylinder test results.
41. **Quality of concrete work. Concrete testing.**  
Concrete is to be free of hollows and humps. Finish floor areas are to be no more than 1/8" in 10'. Review specs for slump requirements. Do not add water to concrete without approval of Geotechnical personnel.
42. **Materials Testing / Re-testing**
43. **Inspection before pouring concrete.**  
**Two (2) day notice is required before you pour footings.** Architect must approve all concrete placement. Pictures are not acceptable. Prior to footing inspection, all footings will be cleaned of loose soil, debris, and water. Steel is to be properly tied and supported.
44. **What is expected of masonry work, mortar additive.**  
All masonry work shall be as stated in the specs. Full head and bed bull-nose outside corners. Joints are expected on both sides of the units. Pre-formed corner tees, durowall and flashing are required. Mortar mix shall be made with same proportions everyday throughout entire project, using appropriate measuring devices. For tooling of brick or block, refer to specs. No brick or block less than a half unit is allowed at any opening. Full head weeps at 32" on center. All substandard masonry will be removed. Cull blocks; do not lay chipped blocks. Cut holes for electrical outlet boxes the proper size; caulking and oversized plates are not allowed.
45. **Problems with hollow metal (install proper fire labels).**  
Do not paint fire labels. Labels will be attached; rating is to be embossed in minutes and/or hours. Specs require coating the interior of the frames. Grout frames solid.
46. **Pre-roofing conference. No roofing materials installed prior to conference.**  
Contractor, manufacturer and applicable suppliers are required to be present.
47. **G.C. is to have copies of all required roofing warranties in hand at the final inspection.** i.e. Manufacturers' and DCM Five Year warranty issued by the General Contractor and the Roofing Subcontractor, (which is to be dated the date of the substantial completion), or final cannot be held.
48. **Potential conflict of mechanical and electrical equipment.**  
It is the responsibility of the GC to coordinate the installation of all equipment where a conflict may occur. G.C., HVAC, Plumbing and Electrical subs are to read their sections of specs. Each foreman is to sign their section on the master copy, which is kept in the job trailer.

49. **Problems with fire damper installations.**  
Installation of the dampers will be as shown on the plans. All other installation procedures will be unacceptable.
- A. Fire stop material; workmen must be certified to install firestop material. Firestop system must be a UL approved assembly. (See manufactures' manual).
  - B. Stencil all fire walls, both sides every 20ft.
50. **Certificate of Substantial Completion.**  
Architect will provide at the final inspection, provided contractor has copies of all roof warranties and the fire alarm certification.
51. **Project Closeout Procedures / Final payment.**
- A. Warranties must be effective the Date of Substantial Completion. All warranties must identify the product covered.
  - B. Operating and maintenance manuals. All training required for the MPE fields will be completed prior to the final request being released.
  - C. As-built drawings.
  - D. Other requirements. G.C. is to make a list of all over-stocks that are required by specs and have at final for B.O.E. signature and acceptance.
  - E. Final Payment. Punch list items must be completed to the Architect and DCM Inspector's satisfaction, all close out documents must be received by the Architect, all change orders must be fully executed and Certificate of Substantial Completion must be fully executed before final payment is made. (GCS, 34A & B, MP 7 G4)
52. **Advertisement of Completion. Start ad after substantial completion.**
- A. 1 week for projects valued less than \$50,000.00.
  - B. 4 consecutive weeks for projects exceeding \$50,000.00.
  - C. General Contractor is responsible for placement and payment of advertisement.
53. **Time Extensions.**  
The GC can submit time extension request to the Architect on a weekly basis, with reasons for extension. Delays caused by rain, must exceed the five year average. (GCS 23).
54. **Quality Control.**  
Urinals 17" A.F.F. Flush valves at wide side. Rigid conduit under slab. Fire strobes 80" to bottom, within 15' of exits.
55. **Requests For Information (RFI'S)**
- A. All RFI's must be numbered and made in writing to the Architect's email [rfi@lathanassociates.com](mailto:rfi@lathanassociates.com) by the General Contractor. Please include your name, company name, telephone number, and fax number so that we may respond appropriately. Verbal RFI's will not be answered. All RFI's must be in writing.
  - B. The Architect will not accept RFI's directly from subcontractors or vendors.
  - C. The Team List provided within the Specification Manual is for informational purposes only and should not be used to contact Engineers and/or Consultants directly with questions regarding the project.
  - D. All questions that need to be directed to an Engineer / Consultant must be routed through the Architect's office. If applicable, the Architect will contact the appropriate Engineer / Consultant for information.

- E. Bids shall be based upon the official Contract Documents consisting of Plans, Specifications and Addenda. Architect assumes no responsibility for information used by Contractors outside the official Contract Documents.
- F. An RFI Log shall be kept by the Contractor and reviewed at each OAC Meeting. It will be the contractor's responsibility to inform Architect of any outstanding RFI's in a timely manner.

**56. Liquidated Damages**

Liquidated damages will be strictly enforced for not reaching substantial completion by the scheduled completion date. Liquidated damages will be deducted from the General Contractors final payment.

**57. Miscellaneous:**

